The End of the Cold War

Featuring New Evidence on:
The End of the Cold War in Europe, 1989
The Fall of the Wall
Sino-Soviet Relations, 1958-59
Soviet Missile Deployments, 1959
The Iran Crisis, 1944-46
Tito and Khrushchev, 1954
The Cold War International History Project (CWIHP) was established at the Woodrow Wilson International Center for Scholars in Washington, D.C., in 1991 with the help of the John D. and Catherine T. MacArthur Foundation and receives major support from the MacArthur Foundation and the Smith Richardson Foundation. The Project supports the full and prompt release of historical materials by governments on all sides of the Cold War, and seeks to disseminate new information and perspectives on Cold War history emerging from previously inaccessible sources on “the other side”—the former Communist bloc—through publications, fellowships, and scholarly meetings and conferences. Within the Wilson Center, CWIHP is under the Division of International Studies, headed by Dr. Robert S. Litwak. The Director of the Cold War International History Project is Christian F. Ostermann, and the Project’s Administrator is Nancy L. Meyers. CWIHP is overseen by an advisory committee chaired by Prof. William Taubman (Amherst College) and consisting of Michael Beschloss; Dr. James Billington (Librarian of Congress); Prof. Warren I. Cohen (George Washington University); Prof. James G. Hershberg (George Washington University); Dr. Samuel F. Wells, Jr. (Woodrow Wilson Center); and Prof. Sharon Wolchik (George Washington University). Readers are invited to submit articles, documents, letters, and other items to the Bulletin. Publication of articles does not constitute CWIHP’s endorsement of authors’ views. Copies are available free upon request, or by downloading them at cwihp.si.edu.
Director’s Note

In December 1989, following the dramatic collapse of communist regimes throughout much of the Soviet Union’s empire in Central and Eastern Europe, Soviet President Mikhail Gorbachev and US President George H. W. Bush met on board warships of the two countries off the coast of Malta in the Mediterranean. Though the course of events was largely outside the control of the two leaders, the summit, given its timing, went down in the history books as symbolizing the end of the Cold War. Sensing the dawn of a new era, Gorbachev, according to the now accessible Soviet transcript of the meeting, told Bush that it was “very important for us to talk with you about what conclusions can be drawn from past experience, from the ‘Cold War.’” What had happened, the Soviet leader stated, “remained in history: Such, if you will, is the privilege of the historical process. However, to try to analyze the course of previous events—this is our direct responsibility.”

With this issue of its Bulletin, the Cold War International History Project (CWIHP), now in its tenth year, seeks to contribute to a fuller understanding of the Cold War “experience”—in fact, of the very events that Bush and Gorbachev were witnessing as they sojourned under the Mediterranean sun. This issue features a set of documents that highlights findings and insights from a conference series on the “The Collapse of Communist Regimes in Eastern Europe,” sponsored by the National Security Archive (George Washington University), CWIHP, and their international partners ten years after the fall of the Berlin Wall. The documents provide a unique glimpse behind the “Iron Curtain” at the beginning of the end of the crisis-ridden Soviet empire: the culmination of a succession of upheavals, beginning with the 1953 uprising in East Germany and the 1956 Hungarian Revolution, and including the 1968 Prague Spring and the 1980/81 Polish Crisis. Assembled by an international team of scholars, these documents detail the ultimately futile scramble by the communist parties of Central and Eastern Europe to stay in power in 1989—evidence that explains in the actual words of the communist leaders and the opposition forces at the time how the Soviet empire gave way in the face of popular protest, largely without violent repression.

The issue is also the culmination of a multi-year, multi-archival and multi-conference project and a series of Bulletin issues presenting new evidence on these Cold War “flashpoints.” To be true, the documents represent only a small selection from our massive database of thousands of newly-available and translated documents. Largely focused on the communist parties’ perspectives on the tumultuous events of 1988-89, they do not claim to give a comprehensive account of the collapse of communism in Europe. But these documents, most of which are published here in English for the first time, provide a greater sense of the unpredictability, contingency, and complexity of the events of 1989—events driven by the people in Central and Eastern Europe in daring challenge to the ruling, though weakening, elites in Moscow, Budapest, Prague, Warsaw and Berlin. They also speak to the power of history, memory and ideas—and to the role of personalities, above all the ambiguities of Soviet leader Mikhail Gorbachev.

The documentation presented here includes minutes of key meetings between Gorbachev and Eastern-bloc leaders as well as Western statesmen; verbatim transcripts of Eastern European opposition and national “roundtable” meetings; transcripts of controversies within the communist parties and bureaucracies; security police plans, and notes by one of Gorbachev’s closest and most loyal aides, Anatoly Chernyaev, who recorded his thoughts concerning the events of the fateful year 1989 in his diary. Capturing the sense of the fundamental change that was occurring, Chernyaev wrote, after a meeting between Gorbachev and West German Chancellor Helmut Kohl, that he “felt physically that we are entering a new world, where class struggle, ideology, and in general polarity and enmity are no longer determinate. And something all-human is taking the upper hand.”

By contrast, ideology and polarity were very much at issue in the secret conversations between Chinese leader Mao Zedong and Soviet leader Nikita S. Khrushchev in 1958-59, transcripts of which are published for the first time in this Bulletin issue. With both Communist giants staring down the abyss of the emerging Sino-Soviet break, these records of conversations are among the most illuminating and significant documents yet to emerge from the former Communist-world archives. This document edition builds on CWIHP’s earlier publications documenting the talks between Mao and Joseph Stalin, the lead-up to the Korean War, and the rise of the Sino-Soviet alliance.

Other highlights of this issue include a long statement on relations with China by the Vietnamese Workers’ Party General Secretary Le Duan. The document is highly illustrative of the North Vietnamese mindset shortly after the 1979 Sino-Vietnamese military clash. Presented first at CWIHP’s January 2000 conference at Hong Kong University on “New Evidence on China, Southeast Asia and the Vietnam War,” the document created considerable controversy among some of the Chinese and Vietnamese participants as to its provenance and significance. We hope that publication of this document will broaden the debate further.
Several document sets published in this Bulletin show the remarkable range of archival opportunities for historians of the Cold War and reflect CWIHP’s continued efforts to pry open archives and bring new documentation to public attention. Thus, this Bulletin also presents the first Warsaw Pact war plan to be found in the archives, the 1964 Czechoslovakian Plan (obtained through a multilateral effort to document the history of the Warsaw Pact) as well as new Russian documents on Khrushchev’s 1959 military deployments in East Germany (published in collaboration with a German-Russian research team). We are thrilled to also provide samples from an archival “gold mine” for historians of the early Cold War that has been discovered on the fringes of the former Soviet Union, the archives in Baku. The documents which have become available in the context of the CWIHP/National Security Archive initiative on “The Caucasus in the Cold War” are the first installment of top-level documentation on one of the first Cold War crises—the Iran Crisis of 1944-1946. They include Stalin’s 1945 instructions to encourage separatism in Northern Iran in his reach for Iranian oil. Similarly, the 1954 Tito-Khrushchev correspondence, fresh from the archives in Belgrade, introduces CWIHP’s new “Yugoslavia Initiative,” co-sponsored with the London School of Economics and Political Science. The initiative supports the integration of scholars and archives of the former Yugoslavia into the international research on the Cold War.

As several of the research and conference reports in this Bulletin demonstrate, CWIHP continues to monitor opportunities for research in the former communist-world archives and to support the collaborative exploration of our recent international past, reaching across national, language, and disciplinary barriers to “globalize” what just a decade ago was a rather narrow field of research focused almost exclusively on the superpower confrontation. Together with a network of longstanding and new partner institutions around the world, the Project has launched several new documentation initiatives. In addition to those mentioned above, CWIHP’s initiative on “North Korea in the Cold War” is collecting, translating, and publishing documentation from the Eastern bloc archives on North Korea. CWIHP’s initiative on “New Evidence on Latin America and the Cold War,” co-sponsored with Yale University’s Latin American Studies Center, the Woodrow Wilson Center’s Latin American Program and the Centro de Investigaciones y Estudios Superiores en Antropología Social (Mexico City) has begun to involve researchers and archivists from Latin America, the former communist world and the United States in joint efforts to document the Cold War throughout Latin America. Besides efforts to facilitate dialogue over new archival documentation in the war-torn Southern Caucasus, to create linkages between American and Vietnamese scholars, and to gain access to Russian, Chinese and Eastern European archives on the “Détente” years, CWIHP plans to explore the Cold War in South Asia and Africa.

Conferences remain an essential part of CWIHP’s activities. Besides those mentioned above, CWIHP recently (co-)sponsored a number of international conferences, including “Stalin and the Cold War, 1945-1953” (New Haven, CT, September 1999); “Documents on the Cold War,” (declassification workshop, Hanoi, Vietnam, January 2000); “Cold War in the Balkans: History and Consequences,” (Plovdiv, Bulgaria, May 16-18, 2000); “New Evidence on the Korean War,” (Washington, DC, June 2000); “Cold War Archives in the Decade of Openness” (Washington, June 2000); “Armenia, Azerbaijan and Georgia in the Cold War,” (Tbilisi, October 2000); “Maukow bend and Mauferland—Lessons of the Wall” (Berlin, June 2001); and a major international “summit” to celebrate the Project’s tenth anniversary (March 2001). CWIHP cooperated on, or participated in, several other meetings, including “The Twentieth Century International System” (for scholars from Russian regional universities, held in Moscow, June 2000); “The End of the Cold War,” (Columbus, OH, October 1999); “Forty Years of Cold War? Issues, Interpretations, Periodization,” (Rome, June 2000); “Changing Chinese—American-Soviet Relations and the Transition of the Cold War,” (Shanghai, June 2001); and a historic conference on “The Bay of Pigs—40 Years Later,” (Havana, March 2001), at which some 400 pages of Cuban archival documentation were made available. In order to involve military archivists and historians from former Warsaw Pact countries further into the Cold War research community—and to enhance access to military archives—CWIHP also hosted a series of archival workshops for the Archives Working Group of the Partnership for Peace Consortium of Defense Academies and Strategic Studies Institutes.

In addition to providing a forum to Washington’s policy and scholarly community for the discussion of important new documentation, CWIHP is broadening its outreach to college and high-school teachers and students. In July 2001, for example, the Project co-hosted the National History Day Summer Institute for high-school teachers; other recent activities in this area include co-sponsorship of a summer school on the new Cold War history, hosted by George Washington University; cooperation with the University of Maryland’s College Park Scholars Program; joint ventures with C-SPAN and the Close-up Foundation; and a Cold War colloquium at the History Faculty of Cambridge University (UK).

We are also expanding CWIHP’s website, featured in the September/October 2001 Foreign Policy issue (“Net Effects”), to incorporate translated Russian, Chinese, Cuban and Eastern European documents in addition to those presented here. The Project is also actively engaged in developing a web-based catalogue to digital archival collections.

“This is not a project, but a movement,” a colleague recently exclaimed at the Project’s March 2001 Ten-Year Anniversary Summit that showcased many of these findings and activities. Indeed, the Project’s success is really the success of its remarkable, ever-growing, interna-
tional network of individual and institutional partners. Over the past two years alone, CWIHP has supported or linked up with new Cold War research organizations, established often under difficult financial or political conditions, in Baku, Bucharest, Helsinki/Tampere, Hong Kong, Reykjavik, Tirana, Saratov, Shanghai, Sofia, London, Rome/Florence, Tomsk, Belgrade and Zurich. They complement longtime partnerships with US and Canadian institutions as well as Cold War research groups in Beijing, Berlin/Potsdam, Budapest, Moscow, Prague, Warsaw. Much of this inspiring cooperation would not be possible without the financial support by the John D. and Catherine T. MacArthur Foundation, the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation, the Korea Foundation and other donors.

This Bulletin issue, as others before it, is one result of this remarkable international collaboration. As the editor, I am particularly grateful for advice as well as editorial and other support to Jordan Baev, Thomas Blanton, Ashley Bullock, Bill Burr, Malcolm Byrne, Sarah Campbell, Chen Jian, Anatoly Chernyayev, Jan Chowniecki, Dan Cook, Gregory Domber, Fred Ferrer, Gary Goldberg, Christopher Goscha, Sven Gronlie, Hope Harrison, Jamil Hasanli, Jim Hershberg, Hans-Hermann Hertle, Alexander Kingsbury, Caroline Kovtun, Mark Kramer, Robert Litvak, Geir Lundestad, Vojtech Mastny, Stephen Matzje, Christina Mayer, Nancy Meyers, Mike Thurman, Christa Mayer, Nancy Meyers, Mircea Munteanu, Catherine Nielsen, Olav Njolstad, Andrzej Paczekowski, Zachary Pease, Erich Pryor, Anzhela Reno, Priscilla Roberts, Janine Rowe, Svetlana Savranskaya, Radek Špík, Valentyna Tereshchenko, Richard Thomas, Mike Thurman, Stein Tonnesson, Kathryn Weathersby, Odd Arne Westad, Paul Wingrove, David Wolff, Vladislav Zubok and this issue’s patient contributors.

Christian F. Ostermann

1 The full document is published in this Bulletin issue.

“Poland 1980-1982: Internal Crisis, International Dimensions,” Jachranka-Warsaw, 8-10 November 1997, co-organized with the Institute for Political Studies of the Polish Academy of Sciences (Warsaw) and the National Security Archive; “The Crisis Year 1953 and the Cold War in Europe,” Potsdam, 10-12 November 1996, co-organized with the Center for Contemporary History Research (Potsdam) and the National Security Archive; “Hungary and the World, 1956: The New Archival Evidence,” Budapest, 26-29 September 1996, co-sponsored with the Institute for the History of the 1956 Hungarian Revolution (Budapest) and the National Security Archive; and “Czecho- slovakia and the World, 1968: The New Archival Evidence,” Prague, 18-20 April 1994, co-sponsored with The Prague Spring 1968 Foundation (Prague) and the National Security Archive. For information on these conferences, see past issues of CWIHP Bulletin, in particular nos. 8/9, 10 and 11.

3 Earlier conferences on Cold War flashpoints included:

10 Co-sponsored with the Library of Congress and the Department of Defense.
11 Co-sponsored with the National Security Archive. See the editor’s introduction to the section in this Bulletin.
12 Co-sponsored with the Center for Contemporary History Research (Potsdam).
13 Organized by the Institute of Universal History (Russian Academy of Sciences), the National Security Archive and the Moscow State Institute of International Relations.
14 Sponsored by the Mershon Center (Ohio State University). See the report by Richard Herrmann and Ned Lebow in this Bulletin.
15 Organized by the Fondazione Istituto Gramsci.
16 Organized by the Center for Cold War International History Studies (East China Normal University, Shanghai) and the Modern Historical Documents Studies Center (Beijing University).
17 Organized by the Universidad de La Habana, Centro de Estudios sobre Estados Unidos, Instituto de Historia de Cuba, Centro de Investigaciones Historicas de la Seguridad del Estado; Centro de Estudios sobre America, and co-sponsored by The National Security Archive.
18 CWIHP plans to publish many of these documents. See the report in this Bulletin.
19 For information on the Consortium see http://www.pfpconsortium.marshallcenter.org.
Table of Contents

New Evidence on the End of the Cold War

New Evidence on the Soviet Factor in the Peaceful Revolutions of 1989 By Vladislav M. Zubok .................................................. 5
One the Eve: A Glimpse Inside the Politburo at the End of 1988 .............................................................................................................................. 24
The Tbilisi Massacre, April 1989: Documents ................................................................................................................................. 31
Soviet Approaches to Eastern Europe at the Beginning of 1989 By Jacques Lévesque .................................................................................. 49
The Political Transition in Hungary, 1989-90 By Csaba Békés and Melinda Kalmár ................................................................. 73
Hungarian Secret Police Memorandum, May 1989 ............................................................................................................................... 88
Poland 1986-1989: From “Cooptation” to “Negotiated Revolution” By Paweł Machcewicz .......................................................... 93
The Fall of the Wall: The Unintended Dissolution of East Germany’s Ruling Regime By Hans-Hermann Hertle ........................................................ 131
1989: Bulgarian Transition to Pluralist Democracy By Jordan Baev .................................................................................................................. 165
Czechoslovak November 1989 By Oldrich Tuma ............................................................................................................................... 181
Czechoslovak Regime Documents on the Velvet Revolution .................................................................................................................. 194
“We Are the Opponents of Violence … We Want to Live as Dignified and Free People” ........................................................................ 210
The Last Days of a Dictator By Mircea Munteanu ........................................................................................................................... 217
At Historic Crossroads: Documents on the December 1989 Malta Summit .................................................................................. 229

New Evidence on the Cold War in Asia

The Khrushchev-Mao Conversations, 31 July-3 August 1958 and 2 October 1959 By Vladislav M. Zubok ........................................ 243
Le Duan and the Break with China Introduction by Stein Tønnesson ........................................................................................................... 273
Translated and Annotated by Christopher E. Goscha ............................................................................................................................... 279

New Evidence on Cold War Military History

Planning for Nuclear War: The Czechoslovak War Plan of 1964 By Petr Lûnák ........................................................................................................ 289
“Operation Atom” The Soviet Union’s Stationing of Nuclear Missiles in the German Democratic Republic, 1959 By Matthias Uhl and Vladimir I. Ivkin ........................................................................................................... 299

New Evidence on the Iran Crisis 1945-46

From the Baku Archives ........................................................................................................................................................................ 309

New Evidence from the Former Yugoslav Archives

The Tito-Khrushchev Correspondence, 1954 .................................................................................................................................................. 315

Research Notes and Conference Reports

The Moldovan Communist Party Archives By Jim Hershberg .................................................................................................................. 325
Moldova, Romania and the Soviet Invasion of Czechoslovakia by Mark Kramer .......................................................................................... 326
The Sino-Soviet Alliance: New Publications By David Wolff .................................................................................................................. 335
Policymakers and the Cold War’s End: Micro and Macro Assessments of Contingency By Richard K. Herrman and Richard Ned Lebow .................................................................................................................. 337
Conference on Cold War Endgame By Fred I. Greenstein and William C. Wohlforth .................................................................................. 341
New Evidence on China, Southeast Asia and the Vietnam War: Conference Report By Priscilla Roberts .................................................................................................................. 345
Update on the Stasi Archives By Gary Bruce ............................................................................................................................................... 348
Western Intelligence Gathering and the Division of German Science By Paul Maddrell .................................................................................. 352
Letters to the Editor ........................................................................................................................................................................................................... 360
New Evidence on the End of the Cold War

New Evidence on the “Soviet Factor” in the Peaceful Revolutions of 1989

By Vladislav M. Zubok

In 1999 Eastern European countries celebrated the tenth anniversary of their peaceful liberation from communism. In the commemorative discussions, at conferences, workshops and in the press one would have expected a detailed, informed and dispassionate reconstruction of the events of the “annus mirabilis” when the Soviet empire in Central and Eastern Europe ceased to exist. Surprisingly, however, this was not so. First, the events of ten years ago remain the subject of heated and partisan debate in the Central and East European countries; even what seemed to be certain ten years before (e.g. the role of “reformist” wings of the ruling communist establishments, the positions of various factions of anti-communist movements, etc.) are now no longer certain and, in fact, are vigorously questioned. Second, the international aspects of the collapse of communist Europe, the role of “the Gorbachev factor,” and of the devolution of the bipolar Cold War are not evaluated and recognized in a balanced way. Sometimes they are even passed over in silence.

Other equally strong passions and biases are present in the discussions and literature produced in the United States and in the former Soviet Union. For many American authors, the collapse of the Soviet Union’s external empire was the beginning of the West’s victory in the Cold War. This created a strong temptation to regard the events through “triumphalist” lenses. Former CIA director Robert Gates contends in his memoirs that the years 1989-1991 were a triumph of the strategy of containment, as formulated in 1946 by George F. Kennan—a vindication of “the belief that, denied new conquests, the inherent weaknesses of Soviet communism ultimately would bring it down.” Other former officials, particularly President George Bush, his National Security Adviser Brent Scowcroft, and Robert Hutchings, then a member of the National Security Council staff dealing with Central and Eastern Europe, recognize the importance of Soviet non-involvement. At the same time, they, as well as Gates and other “triumphalist” authors, argue for the importance of “the American factor,” “strategic prudence” and the “vision” of the policy-makers in Washington. Specifically, they point to the United States’ quiet mediation in Poland and other Eastern European countries between “reformist” communists and anti-communist forces, and consistent successful efforts to allay the fears of the Soviet leadership regarding the rapid pace of change. Still, the main focus of the “triumphalist” literature in the United States is elsewhere, on the secret policies and initiatives of the Reagan Administration between 1981 and 1987—on the military, economic, political and psychological factors— that, in this view, broke the back of the Soviet empire and set the stage for the “victory” of the West.

On the Russian side, Mikhail Gorbachev, his assistants and ministers Anatoly Chernyaev, Georgi Shakhnazarov, Vadim Medvedev, Alexander Yakovlev, and Eduard Shevardnadze, emphasize in their writings and speeches that Soviet domination in Central and Eastern Europe had already been doomed by the mid-1980s. They claim that communist leaders of those countries were incapable of change, and did not follow advice from Moscow to alter their traditionalist policies. They emphatically claim that there was no alternative to the Soviet policy of non-involvement during the peaceful revolutions of 1989 which they say stemmed logically from the reformist strategy of overcoming the legacies of the Cold War and integrating the Soviet Union into Europe.

A large group, primarily former party apparatchiks, military and former KGB officials of the last Soviet administration, denounce Gorbachev’s “new thinking” and point to the writings of American “triumphalists” as a proof of Gorbachev’s ineptitude, at best, and high treason, at worst. Some contend, specifically, that the “peaceful revolutions” in Central and Eastern Europe were not totally spontaneous, that one could discern the “hidden hand” of the CIA and other Western intelligence agencies. Some intimate that 1989 was the beginning of the “betrayal,” when the Soviet Union lost its geostrategic advantages and valuable “allies.” The evidence for these claims, however, is largely absent, and those Gorbachev critics closely involved in security affairs and foreign policy (e.g., former KGB chief Vladimir Kryuchkov, Marshal Dmitri Yazzov), conspicuously avoid blaming Gorbachev for the “loss” of Central and Eastern Europe. It is easy to notice that the fallout of the Soviet Union’s collapse continues to be the main obstacle to serious and sober discussion of 1989 and many other issues of recent history.

In addition, growing apprehension about US goals, specifically deep mistrust of the American world role, tend to color the fluctuating assessments of the year when Moscow “lost” its geopolitical security belt in Central and Eastern Europe.

Still, serious and balanced research has appeared on the international context and Soviet aspects of 1989. The well-documented book by two veterans of the Bush Administration NSC staff, Philip Zelikow and Condolezza Rice, reveals that the real priority for Washington was NATO’s unity and particularly a peaceful reunification of.
Germany within the Western alliance. A heated discussion took place from 1992 to 1995 between the proponents of “realism” and its critics, with the critics claiming that under Gorbachev foreign policy “became increasingly inconsistent with power transition and other realist theories,” and that the Soviet withdrawal from Eastern Europe was even more inconsistent. Canadian political scientist Jacques Lévesque focused on “the enigma of 1989” and concluded that “new thinking” and Gorbachev’s personality played an outstanding, unique role in transforming the realities of power and ending the Cold War in Central and Eastern Europe. Gorbachev, says Lévesque, replaced the faded Stalinist imperial consensus with a new neo-Leninist utopia, based not on force and party monopoly, but on consensus and pluralism. This, more than anything else, led to the quick disappearance of the Soviet European empire in 1989. “Rarely in history,” he writes, “have we witnessed the policy of a great power continue, throughout so many difficulties and reversals, to be guided by a such an idealistic view of the world, based on universal reconciliation, and in which the image of the enemy was constantly blurring, to the point of making it practically disappear as the enemy.”

The most difficult task for researchers is finding links between Soviet policies (or non-policies) and the developments in the East-Central European countries during the year of great change. What was the degree of “spontaneity,” and was the element of a “hidden hand” present there? The main problem remaining is that posed by Lévesque—the spectacular non-use of force—in total violation of the “realist” prescriptions of behavior for a great power. Was there at any point a danger of Soviet intervention? What options were discussed in the Kremlin as it witnessed the meltdown of the Soviet empire? How did domestic constraints (e.g., economic and financial crises) and “new thinking” affect the Soviet view of “Eastern Europe”? There are still many gaps in the historical narrative and documentary evidence about 1989. Overcoming the passions of the day and narrow national agendas is a prime purpose of a project developed by the National Security Archive at George Washington University and the Cold War International History Project at the Woodrow Wilson International Center for Scholars, in collaboration with other universities and research centers in the United States, Russia and East-Central Europe. The new evidence obtained through these efforts enhances our understanding of the “peaceful revolutions” of 1989 as an integral part of the intellectual, cultural and political ferment that took place inside the Soviet bloc.

An important part of the story of 1989 is the final demise of Stalin’s imperial, xenophobic legacy in the Kremlin after Mikhail Gorbachev came to power. Within just a few years, from 1985 until the end of 1988, the idea of “Eastern Europe” as a geopolitical glacis [predpolie] of the Soviet Union came to be replaced by the idea of a “Common European House.” The hostile blocs of NATO and the Warsaw Pact were to be replaced by the integrationist international structures.

This striking change of mindset stemmed from many factors, the most important of which was the death of communist ideology. At a critical oral history conference in May 1998, Anatoly Chernyaev, veteran of the CPSU CC International Department, recalled the common feeling he had with Italian “Eurocommunists” whom he had met in the 1960s—that “the ideology had stopped working long ago.” Another long-term factor was, ironically, the position of the USSR as a superpower and the persistent strivings of the Soviet leadership to gain international recognition as a “normal” state. They sought it not only through military build-up, but also through détente, trade, and economic cooperation with Western Europe. At certain points, for instance in the early 1970s, Soviet political ties to France and West Germany became more important and perhaps warmer on a personal level than relations with some members of the Warsaw Pact. Soviet diplomats as a professional corps, and various Moscow-based academic “think-tanks,” became to a considerable extent a “pro-détente lobby.” They even attempted, whenever possible, to encourage the leadership to reform relationships inside the Warsaw Pact, holding NATO as an example.

The combination of these two developments eroded the “imperial-revolutionary” foundation of the Soviet imperial mentality. Soviet expansion was never geopolitical; it was “geo-ideological,” a blend of realism and ideological messianism. At the same time as that blend faded, neither of its components could serve as justification for preserving the Soviet presence in Central and Eastern Europe. In particular, even though Marxist–Leninist prescripts had served since Stalin’s time as a window-dressing for Soviet security interests, those interests were not systematically spelled out and developed and, consequently, no consistent Soviet “realist” school emerged beneath the ideological façade. This inherent weakness of “realist” thinking in the Soviet political establishment played an important role during 1989.

There was also a lack of conceptual understanding of how to end the Cold War and what would, in this case, be the fate of the East-Central European “empire.” The same could be said about the West (where dominant “realist” thinking precluded any conceptualization of the world beyond containment of communism and bipolarity). But the Soviet case was a unique one: in the minds of an important segment of Soviet apparatchiks and academics the end of the Cold War came to be linked to the issue of profound domestic reforms and, ultimately, with the idea of integration of the USSR into the same world capitalist system that had emerged in opposition to Soviet communism. They secretly believed that through détente and rapprochement with Western countries they could help the country resume the process of modernization, as Stalinist autarky and a mobilizational regime had clearly
outlived its usefulness.\(^{15}\) This prepared the stage for a remarkable willingness on the part of many in the Soviet establishment to accept “Western influences.” For a long time, between 1956 and 1981, the intellectual and cultural ferment in Eastern Europe, particularly in Poland, Czechoslovakia and Hungary, served as a substitute for the “real West.” Consequently in the minds of putative Soviet reformers, Eastern Europe occupied an important place as a source of “third way” ideas.

This all came to an end in the 1980s. Ironically, the defeat of Solidarity in Poland put an end to the intellectual preeminence of Eastern Europe in the intellectual life of the reformist-minded part of the Soviet establishment. “Eurocommunism” and “communism with human face” had already been in crisis by the end of the 1970s. The complete ideological vacuum on the Left pushed Soviet intellectuals and their friends in the apparat to look for ideas elsewhere, beyond the Left, and beyond Eastern Europe, in the “real West,” including the United States. This process accelerated by leaps and bounds after 1985 when Gorbachev granted the upper caste of the Soviet “official” intellectual class (intelligentsia) the long-forgotten privilege of meeting foreigners without first asking permission from the highest authorities.\(^{16}\) The Soviet leader himself developed a new reference circle among foreign politicians and statesmen, including not only “Eurocommunists,” but increasingly Western European Social Democrats, leaders of the “non-aligned movement,” and even leaders of the conservative Right (former US President Richard Nixon, British Prime Minister Margaret Thatcher and later US President Ronald Reagan).\(^{17}\)

All the evidence indicates that Gorbachev and his advisers had no new policy for Eastern Europe as they moved, step by step, from confrontation to reconciliation with NATO powers; on this point his modern-day critics are right. In his defense, Gorbachev suggests that immediately after he assumed power he let Eastern European communist leaders understand that they were now on their own and that the so-called “Brezhnev doctrine” was dead.\(^{18}\) Chernyaev, who observed Gorbachev for six years when he was in power, confidently claims: “If you presented Gorbachev with the question: would you sacrifice the freedom that you had given to the

---

Source: National Archives.

*President Ronald Reagan and Vice President George Bush with General Secretary Mikhail Gorbachev on Governor’s Island, New York (December 1988).*
countries of Eastern Europe, to your colleagues in Poland, in Czechoslovakia, and elsewhere, in the name of preserving the imperial image, of great power status in the old Soviet meaning of the word, he would say that the question for him was absurd.” In reality, however, in the context of 1985-88, “the freedom” that Gorbachev had “given” to Eastern Europeans meant stagnation and preservation of the “status quo.”

Lévesque points out several reasons for Soviet “immobility” with regard to Eastern Europe, stressing politics, ideology and personality. But perhaps there was one more reason for Moscow’s “neglect” of the regions: Soviet foreign policy was focused on the more important task of achieving détente with the Western powers, for this was the level of “grand diplomacy” where Gorbachev’s skills of persuasion and compromise shone brightly and where spectacular breakthroughs could be achieved. By contrast, messy East-Central European affairs could be a bottomless pit and the communist apparatchiks there were too far below him for him to want to be bothered with them.

This, however, does not exhaust the problem of the glaring disconnection between the new approaches of the Soviet leadership towards the West and the lack of any policy towards its allies in Eastern Europe. In the past the Kremlin had acted differently at least once. In 1953, when Stalin’s successors rapidly turned from the near-war situation to “détente,” they simultaneously sought to change regimes, leadership and policies in the Eastern European countries. Subsequently however, Soviet leaders never systematically coordinated the “great power” and “alliance” levels of their foreign policy. Neither Nikita S. Khrushchev in 1959, nor Leonid I. Brezhnev in 1971-72, cared much about how Soviet allies felt about the dramatic rapprochement between the USSR and the Western countries and neither did anything to prepare those allies for the new policy. Against this background, Gorbachev’s approach was hardly surprising, but it was not the only possible course. In an interesting episode, soon after Gorbachev came to power, a hard-line senior official of the CC International Department, Oleg Rakhmanin, decided that it was time “to discipline the socialist camp.” According to the recollections of one of his colleagues, everybody in the Department had long known that the bloc had become a mess: “Kádár was doing whatever he wanted, Honecker was hiding some things from us, making deals with West Germany, trading with them, accepting loans, letting people travel, nobody knew what he was doing; the Poles flirted with the Americans and planned to purchase Boeings instead of our airplanes.”

Rakhmanin tried to call the allies “to order” and published two articles to that effect in Pravda. “Liberal-minded” people in Eastern European communist establishments complained about them to their Moscow colleagues. When Gorbachev learned about the incident, he grew angry, and soon Rakhmanin was sacked. When various Eastern European politicians later approached Gorbachev or his advisers, seeking support for their plans to change the political status quo, they came back empty-handed. At the same time, Gorbachev never tried to undercut conservative Eastern European leaders on their home turf; for instance, he remained silent on the Prague Spring during his visit to Czechoslovakia in the spring of 1987. Although he had sharp disagreements with Romania’s dictator Nicolae Ceauºescu, in public he avoided any criticism of him and even presented him with Soviet awards. In Hungary, it was not Gorbachev’s actions, but the “Gorbachev effect,” that caused Janós Kádár to retire. The Soviet leader’s meticulous non-interference, against the growing tension in Eastern Europe, was, in retrospect, a lucky chance for the anti-communist reformers there, but a gross miscalculation from the viewpoint of traditional Soviet political interests.

By 1988, Gorbachev’s foreign policy had begun to put heavy strains on the status quo within the Warsaw Treaty Organization. In particular, Moscow initiated moves for “getting around the Americans” and for “smothering” Western European members of NATO “in [a] tender embrace” by building up contacts and building down the military stand-off in Europe. The Soviets used new, bold methods to advance the traditional goal of fomenting divisions inside NATO, the boldest and most far-reaching of which were unilateral reductions of Soviet troops in Central Europe.

Whatever Gorbachev’s intentions, in terms of power relations, his foreign policy was ruinous. NATO, despite its porous and fragile appearance, remained strong, and Western Europeans were not prepared “to end the cold war” with the Soviet Union without American consent. Meanwhile, the foundations of the Soviet presence in Eastern and Central Europe were rapidly eroding. Gorbachev and Shevardnadze had no coherent policy at all for the Warsaw Pact. Adopted in July 1987, the new doctrine of the Warsaw Pact, a carbon copy of the Soviet one, undermined the fundamentals of Soviet military presence in the satellite countries. Instead of rejuvenating and reforming the alliance, this doctrine introduced new elements of instability. As with every outdated and unpopular institution, the Warsaw Pact ran the risk of crumbling during rapidly changing times.

But even more important for Soviet behavior and ultimately for events in Central and Eastern Europe in 1989 were domestic changes in the Soviet political and cultural environment. The beginning of radical de-Stalinization and ideological revisions from the top opened the possibility for a split between conservative and reformist elements in the party establishment, and for an across-the-board attack on the foundations of Soviet foreign policy since 1917. Ironically, it was the savy Janós Kádár who, on the basis of Hungarian experience, concluded in 1987 that Gorbachev would bring a catastrophe upon the USSR through his domestic policies. But, paradoxically, a majority in the Politburo, the Central Committee, and state apparatus worried more about the allies, rather than about domestic
destabilization. They supported moderate reformism, but feared that radical de-Stalinization could break up the Soviet bloc and throw Eastern Europe into turmoil as had occurred after Khrushchev’s 20th Party Congress speech in 1956. An important debate inside the Politburo occurred in March 1988 as a result of the so-called “Nina Andreeva letter.”³⁵ KGB chairman Viktor Chebrikov warned about “the meltdown [of Soviet] mentality.” In a Politburo session, the spokesman of ideological conservatives, Yegor Ligachev, for the first time raised the specter of disaster for the communist “camp.”

Arguably, we will muddle through, will survive the attacks [of anti-Stalinist forces in the Soviet mass media], but there are socialist countries, the world communist movement—what to do about them? Would we risk breaking apart this powerful support that had always existed side by side with our socialist countries? History has become [the tool of] politics and, when we deal with it, we should think not only about the past, but also about the future.³²

Gorbachev ridiculed as panic-mongers those who blamed him for destruction of “what had been built by Stalin.”³⁵³ And Shevardnadze declared that “primitivism and intellectual narrow-mindedness had prevented Khrushchev from implementing to the end the line of the Twentieth Party Congress.” He bluntly said that, so far as “the communist and working class movement today”³⁴ was concerned, there was not much to rescue. As to the socialist bloc—“take for instance Bulgaria, take the old leadership of Poland, take the current situation in the German Democratic Republic, in Romania. Is it socialism?”³⁵⁵

On 18 May 1988, a “think tank” expert and consultant to the CC International Department, Vyacheslav Dashichev, published an article in Literary Gazette with the first reassessment of the Cold War. He wrote that both sides, not only the United States, had contributed to the origins of confrontation. Among other points, he criticized Soviet “hegemonism” in relations with the countries of Eastern Europe and China, and blamed the Brezhnev leadership for renewing the arms race and thus failing to prevent the collapse of détente in the 1970s.³⁶

During 1988, Gorbachev completely discarded the old “revolutionary-imperial” basis for Soviet foreign policy, particularly its key concepts of “class struggle” and bipolarity.³⁷ In October, Chernyaev, observing the meeting between Gorbachev and West German Chancellor Helmut Kohl, wrote in his diary: “I felt physically that we are entering a new world, where class struggle, ideology, and, in general, polarity and enmity are no longer decisive. And something all-human is taking the upper hand.”³³⁸ By that time the full panoply of international principles of “the new thinking” included: freedom of choice, mutual respect of each other’s values, balance of interests, reunification of Europe in an “all-European house,” a nuclear-free world, and renunciation of force.³⁹ In late October, Gorbachev began preparations to deliver his principles to the world from the most salient podium, the General Assembly of the United Nations. He told his “brain trust”—Shevardnadze, Yakovlev, Dobrynin, Falin and Chernyaev—to prepare a speech that would be an answer to Churchill’s famous “Iron Curtain” speech at Fulton College (Missouri) in March 1946. It “should be an anti-Fulton—Fulton in reverse,” he said. “We should present our worldview philosophy based on the results of the last three years. We should stress the process of demilitarization and humanization of our thinking.”⁴⁰ The concept of “anti-Fulton” supposed, of course, the dismantling of the Iron Curtain dividing Eastern Europe from the West.

One can hardly overestimate the huge pressure exerted on Gorbachev by the USSR’s economic and financial crisis that reached grave proportions by the end of 1988. In November, the Soviet leader cited the Soviet military burden (“two and a half times as much as the United States spends on defense”) to obtain approval for the decision on unilaterally withdraw half a million elite Soviet troops from Central Europe.⁴¹ In a later December Politburo session, he admitted: “In no other country is [the military burden] so bad. Perhaps only in poor countries, where half of their budget goes to military spending.”⁴² Only future research may determine what percentage of the Soviet gross national product was spent on the Cold War by the end of the 1980s; figures vary from 10 percent of direct costs to 70 percent of indirect costs related to military, defense, international assistance and propaganda needs.⁴³

The importance of structural factors notwithstanding, the role of new ideas, the euphoria of “new thinking,” is crucial to understanding the attitudes of Gorbachev, Shevardnadze and others around them toward the problem of a divided Europe.⁴⁴ It would go too far to say that “realist” calculations were completely absent from their minds. For instance, according to Shakhnazarov, he was “absolutely convinced” well before 1989 that the GDR would unite one day with the Federal Republic,⁴⁵ and he argued about it with leading Soviet experts on Germany, among them Vladimir Semyonov and Yuri Kvitsinsky. In November 1987, Vyacheslav Dashichev, head of the scientific-consultative council at the Foreign Ministry for the affairs of “socialist states,” presented to the ministry a report arguing that it was impossible to “open” the process of European integration without re-opening the issue of German reunification. Dashichev argued that reunification would leave NATO without a cause and would help ease the US out of Europe.⁴⁶ It is hard to say whether these unrealistic assumptions found much support. The “realist” conclusion for other, more sober-minded analysts could be very different: if reunification of Germany was inevitable, then “other countries of Eastern Europe would become independent, and would be more attracted to the West.” The question was when, and at what price? ⁴⁷

Not a trace of these discussions surfaced during the crucial debates on the conceptual reformulation of Soviet
foreign policy in July-August 1988. I was present at a special emergency conference of Soviet foreign affairs specialists convened by Shevardnadze, and was struck by the fact that there was still a virtual “taboo” that precluded all speakers, even behind closed doors, from frankly talking about the potential implications of the German question for Central and Eastern Europe. In his crusade for a new universalist thinking, Gorbachev dispensed with Stalin’s cynical logic of Realpolitik without supplying any moderate, “enlightened” version of “realism.” For Gorbachev’s predecessors from Stalin to Andropov, “realism,” which was based on strength, coercion, and balance of power, was like mother’s milk; they cared about power and empire as much, if not more, as they did about the “socialist” perspective and “proletarian internationalism.” The stalwart from the past, long-time Foreign Minister Andrei Gromyko, admitted privately his “mistake” in 1985 of supporting Gorbachev. He called Gorbachev and his advisers “the Martians” for their ignorance of the laws of Realpolitik. “I wonder how puzzled the US and other NATO countries must be,” he confessed to his son. “It is a mystery for them why Gorbachev and his friends in the Politburo cannot comprehend how to use force and pressure for defending their state interests.”

By the end of 1988, it was already clear that the changes in Soviet domestic and foreign policy were causing strains in the Soviet alliance so severe that they could no longer be ignored. The Politburo discussed contingencies, and in late January 1989, Gorbachev assigned the Politburo Commission on Foreign Policy (created earlier for other purposes and headed by Alexander Yakovlev) to work in collaboration with various agencies and “think tanks” on contingencies regarding future developments in East-Central Europe. Yakovlev solicited a number of analytical papers from academic and state institutions: most of them predicted an overall crisis of the alliance. There were frank conclusions that Soviet allies were already quietly rejecting “socialism” and were “in a powerful magnetic field” of the West. Looking at scenarios, a memorandum from the Institute of Economics of World Socialist System (IEMSS) concluded that if the ruling parties did not make concessions to the opposition forces, they faced a “political eruption;” another predicted “a most acute social-political conflict with an unfathomable outcome.” However, the thrust of all papers, particularly those from the IEMSS, headed by Oleg Bogomolov, opposed any form of Soviet intervention in East-Central Europe. The typical conclusion was that any political-military intervention did not guarantee success, but instead might trigger a chain-reaction of violence and lead to the self-destruction of the Soviet bloc.  

Yakovlev, and Gorbachev himself, were very much inclined to heed this advice. One reason for the policy of non-interference was best put by Fedor Burlatsky: “We have given our allies so much bad advice in the past that we now hesitate to give them good advice.” The guilty conscience of 1956 and particularly the suppression of the Prague Spring in 1968 weighed on the Gorbachevites as part of their generational experience. Gorbachev did not suffer from the trauma of 1968 as some of his intellectual advisers did. But his own experience as a member of the “Suslov commission” on Poland in 1980-81 made him very sympathetic to anti-interventionist voices around him. Georgy Shakhnazarov, one of the anti-interventionists and, by fortunate coincidence, the chief supervisor of policy toward Eastern Europe in Gorbachev’s entourage and the CC CPSU, wrote to the General Secretary in October 1988: “We should clearly see that in the future any possibility to ‘put out’ crisis situations by military means must be fully excluded. Even the old leadership seems to have already realized it, at least with regard to Poland.”

The first few months of 1989 were the last time the Soviet leadership could still focus, at least occasionally, on East-Central Europe. Increasingly, an avalanche of domestic developments, most of them triggered by Gorbachev’s reformism but still very much unintended, began to engulf the Soviet leadership. Although Shakhnazarov’s portfolio over East-Central European policy prompted him to send several concerned memos to Gorbachev, the lion’s share of his time was devoted to writing memos and reports on domestic problems, drafting new legislation, and, after the March 1989 semi-free parliamentary elections, drafting Gorbachev’s speeches to the Congress of People’s Deputies that opened on 25 May. Beginning in late 1988, moreover, the explosion of liberation movements in the Baltic states and the volatile situation in the Caucasus grabbed the Kremlin’s attention. The use of the army against nationalist Georgian demonstrators in Tbilisi (the “Tbilisi massacre”) on 8-9 April 1989 produced the first political eruption of this volcanic year and inflicted for the first time an irreparable blow to Gorbachev’s reputation in the country. Instead of becoming the most urgent concern of the leadership, the Eastern European crisis was overshadowed by the arc of instability inside the Soviet Union itself, and by the major political show in Moscow. “The attention of all of the leadership switched to internal problems;” summarized Shakhnazarov, “and so Eastern Europe was [put] on the back burner.”

By that time, conservative critics inside the USSR were already openly arguing that Gorbachev’s perestroika had no path or rudder. On 2 May 1989, Chernyaev confessed to his diary that he, too, could not see where events would take them: “Most likely we will come to a collapse of the state and some kind of chaos.” Gorbachev “feels that he is losing the levers of power irreversibly.” Behind his declarations was “emptiness.” Increasingly focused on the growing economic and financial chaos at home, Gorbachev and his reform-minded supporters were not in the least inclined to bail out bankrupt communist regimes. Chernyaev recalls that around that time Gorbachev said to the Politburo that he had information from various sources that Poland was “crawling away from us. ... And what can we do? Poland has a $56 billion debt. Can we take Poland...
on our balance sheet in our current economic situation? No. And if we cannot—then we have no influence.”

There were no dissenting voices, although many of the people who then worked with Gorbachev later came to criticize his “passivity” on Eastern Europe. The Politburo leaders also had to agree that economic and financial alternatives for consolidating the European empire had shrunk to a minimum; “socialist integration” had failed and the Soviet Union was nothing more than “a provider of cheap resources.” Even the jewels of Stalin’s empire, Poland and East Germany, began to look to Gorbachev and the reformers like liabilities.50

One interesting argument has been advanced by Gorbachev’s supporters since 1990: that by 1989 they were ready to withdraw all Soviet military forces from Central Europe, but they wanted to do it very gradually, largely because of domestic constraints, not geopolitical realities. In Chernyaev’s recent restatement of this thesis (often repeated by Shevardnadze in the past), the fear of the reformers was as follows: “Once we start to withdraw troops, the howling begins: ‘What did we fight for, what did 27 million of our soldiers die for in World War II? Are we renouncing all that?’ For Gorbachev at that time those issues were very sensitive.”59

In retrospect, Gorbachev and his advisers emphatically claimed that “realist” practices and bargaining would never have ended the Soviet-American confrontation.60 This counterfactual can never be proven by history. What can be established, however, is that the way the Cold War ended did contribute to the disintegration of the Soviet Union. The logic of linkage between the two goals, the end of the Cold War and the successful transformation of the Soviet Union, led Gorbachev to renounce the use of force in the domestic context as well, at a point when nationalist forces began to break the country apart. There could be, in effect, two kinds of linkages between the preservation of the Soviet Union and that of the Eastern European empire. One, traditional in Russian history, was: preservation of the empire requires consolidation of its “outer” rim. Another, based on “new political thinking” was: in order to preserve and transform the Soviet Union, one has to bid farewell to the empire and the use of force. In May 1989, Gorbachev told the Politburo: “We have accepted that even in foreign policy force does not help [nichego ne daiet]. So especially internally “we cannot resort and will not resort to force.” Even those closest to Gorbachev abhorred the possible collapse of the state that was implicit in such a choice.62 But the Soviet leader remained an incorrigible optimist as much as Stalin had been a dark pessimist.

Gorbachev’s decision greatly accelerated the collapse of communist regimes in East-Central Europe. The “Brezhnev doctrine” and Soviet military doctrine, with their emphasis on Central Europe’s geostrategic importance, was already dead, but the Warsaw Pact still functioned and East-Central European communist leaders could still rule for years, exploiting the capital of fear of Soviet intervention to restrain the revolteous opposition. Nobody in Moscow intended to unleash revolutions in East-Central Europe, nor had anybody decided which course to pursue if they were to erupt.63 Meanwhile, swift dismantling of the Cold War mentality in Europe, developments in the Soviet Union, and vigorous public assurances by Gorbachev about the “universal values” of freedom of choice and the non-use of force, pulled the rug from under the East-Central European dictators.

The giant Soviet military, intelligence and diplomatic machinery reacted to the breakdown of the European status quo like a beheaded hydra. By 1989, most of the established patterns and ways of working out foreign policy had been broken and abandoned. Gorbachev and Shevardnadze achieved something similar to what Nixon and Kissinger had attempted in 1969-1972: they had created a virtually unlimited space for foreign policy innovations by means of keeping the rest of the party leadership, the military and other hierarchies out of the loop. The real engine of this system was Gorbachev’s personal diplomacy. In a parallel to the Nixon of the Watergate period, Gorbachev became increasingly engrossed in the mounting domestic crisis and delegated much of day-to-day foreign policy activities to Shevardnadze and Yakovlev. In the end, Eastern Europe, which had been the focus of the Soviet leadership and bureaucracies from Stalin’s and Khrushchev’s times, was largely neglected by Gorbachev’s foreign policy.64

Gorbachev’s personality had much to do with the peaceful death of communism in Eastern Europe (with the exception of Romania). Lévesque writes about Gorbachev’s inconsistency in his actions and his “reformist illusions.” The Soviet leader continued to believe that the “socialist basis” could be “preserved” in Eastern Europe, and these illusions helped him to ignore a torrent of alarmist and worst-scenario voices and merely to watch with sympathy the spectacular process of dissolution of the communist regimes, first in Poland and Hungary, then in the GDR and the rest of East-Central Europe.65 But there were other traits of Gorbachev’s character at work as well: his belief in his “lodestar” and the magic of persuasion as a substitute for actions. Those who know Gorbachev also point out that he had a deep personal, almost physical aversion to spilling blood.66 Gorbachev’s friends stress his moral principles and different generational experience that contrasted with his predecessors’ fears of “losing Central Europe.” His political enemies believe that Gorbachev “surrendered” Eastern Europe to the West in exchange for his international stardom and the mantle of the “new thinker.” They think that Gorbachev’s romance with the West distorted his priorities and made him willing to tolerate the collapse of communism in Eastern Europe.67

It is simply stunning to observe how easily the Iron Curtain fell in 1989, and how complacently the central Soviet leadership reacted, in contrast to the alarmist and warning signals from Soviet representatives in Central
European countries. Strikingly, Gorbachev, Yakovlev, and Shakhnazarov did not even arrange for a “fire brigade” or emergency meetings to discuss developments in Hungary and Poland in the spring. On 3 March 1989, the Chairman of the Council of Ministers of Hungary, Miklos Nemeth, informed Gorbachev about the decision “to completely remove the electronic and technological protection from the western and southern borders of Hungary. It has outlived its need, and now it serves only to catch citizens of Romania and the GDR who try to escape illegally to the West through Hungary.”  

The only words Gorbachev could utter at this historic juncture were: “We have a strict regime on our borders, but we are also becoming more open.” When the Hungarian leadership sent a note to Shevardnadze about their agreement with West Germany (they received DM 1 billion in loans in exchange for opening the border for East Germans who fled to the West via Hungarian territory), Shevardnadze only answered: “This is an affair that concerns Hungary, the GDR, and the FRG.”

The cable traffic and other communications between Moscow and Warsaw at the critical moment when the Poles voted for Solidarity on 4 June 1989, and during the following two months when the issue of Jaruzelski’s presidency was at stake, is not yet available. Mieczysław Rakowski, a leading reformer in the Polish United Workers’ Party (PUWP), recalls that Gorbachev only called him to find out “what is going on.” But he meticulously refrained from any specific advice or anything that could be interpreted as interference in Polish developments. At the same time, Shevardnadze and Soviet ambassadors in the East-Central European countries (particularly in the GDR) acted to prevent involvement of the Soviet military forces and encouraged the non-violent resolution of crises. Shevardnadze, presumably on Gorbachev’s instructions, worked closely with his counterparts, US Secretary of State James Baker and West German Foreign Minister Hans-Dietrich Genscher, during the UN General Assembly meeting in September 1989 in New York to resolve the growing crisis over East German refugees in Prague and Budapest.

Moscow hoped to prevent open Western interference in the crises in Eastern Europe. Soviet officials were genuinely concerned about the new position of the Bush Administration, realizing that there was no consensus in Washington on Reagan’s “romance” with Gorbachev. The Bush Administration included many veterans of the Ford Administration who had been severely criticized from the Right for continuing détente with the Soviet Union; they feared lest that the Gorbachev–Reagan détente would become, again, a political trap for them. Robert Gates, Richard Cheney, and Brent Scowcroft, among others, dismissed “new thinking” as atmospherics at best and a deception campaign at worst, especially since Gorbachev posed as a neo-Leninist who gave no inkling of abandoning the goals of communism. Even the Soviet withdrawal from Afghanistan, completed by February 1989, did not convince them. Scowcroft interpreted it as merely “cutting losses” and a retrenchment of Soviet power. “What was not evident was whether their [the Soviets’] appetite also had been dampened. Instead of changing, Soviet priorities seemed only to narrow.”

As a result, almost a year was lost for the development of a US-Soviet partnership—the goal in which Gorbachev had invested so much. Only after his first six months in power did Bush decide to move “beyond containment,” toward engaging the Soviet Union in the process of peaceful unification of Europe. Bush’s trip to East-Central Europe in July and his personal communications to Gorbachev soon assuaged Soviet fears. Starting in September 1989, Shevardnadze struck up an extraordinary friendship with Baker. And at the Malta summit in December, after the collapse of all the East European communist regimes save Romania’s, Bush and Gorbachev consolidated their mutual trust and respect. The US and West German leadership chose to cooperate fully with Moscow, provided Gorbachev’s hands-off course would continue. It did. On 5 October 1989, Chernyaev wrote in his diary: “Gorbachev is flying to the GDR to celebrate its 40th anniversary. He is very reluctant. Called me two times. Today called and said: I will not say a word in support of Honecker. But I will support the Republic and the revolution.” By that time Chernyaev and other denizens of the Kremlin and the Old Square’s party headquarters could watch CNN and other Western TV channels. Chernyaev recorded the combined
effect of alarmist reports from Soviet agencies abroad and television coverage of events in his diary: "Today in Dresden—20,000 demonstrate. Yesterday there was a demonstration in Leipzig. Information is reaching us that, in the presence of Gorbachev, people will storm the Wall. Awful scenes when a special train [with East German refugees] passed from Prague to the GDR via Dresden. West German television shot everything and now is broadcasting it."80 Other Soviet observers also admit that West German television reports from Prague about the refugees had “a shattering effect” on them.81

According to Lévesque, the situation in Eastern Europe really began to spin out of control with the events in Poland in August 1989. But it was the East German refugee crisis, the demonstrations throughout the GDR, and the unexpected collapse of the Berlin Wall that produced such an acceleration of events that the Soviet leadership lost any chance to contain them.82 Chornyaev had no illusions about the course of events. “A total dismantling of socialism as a world phenomenon has been taking place. This may be inevitable and good. For this is a reunification of mankind on the basis of common sense. And a common fellow from Stavropol [Gorbachev] set this process in motion.”83

This last line perhaps hints at a most interesting phenomenon: the transformation of perceptions and ideological orientation of communist apparatchiks in the midst of revolutionary change. Whatever his prior illusions, Gorbachev decided—like Imre Nagy in Hungary in 1956 and Alexander Dubček in Czechoslovakia in 1968—to support the peaceful revolutions that overcame the Cold War in Europe. In Berlin-Treptow, at the statue of the Soviet soldier commemorating "liberation," the Soviet leader recited the poem by Fedor Tyutchev:

The oracle of our times has proclaimed:  
Unity must be forged only with iron and blood.  
But we will attempt to “forge” it with love,  
And then we shall see which is more lasting.84

In the words of Zelikow and Rice, “it was certainly a strange way for the leader of the Soviet Union to warn the FRG” to respect the right of the GDR to exist.85

But euphoria over witnessing “democratic revolution” in the GDR led to a remarkable degree of wishful thinking on Gorbachev’s part about the nature of processes in East Germany and elsewhere in East-Central Europe. Once Erich Honecker was finally ousted by the SED Politburo, the new GDR leader, Egon Krenz, met with Gorbachev on 1 November to discuss the GDR’s future. When Krenz tested the Soviet leader on his attitude toward Germany’s reunification, Gorbachev responded that, in his opinion, it would be explosive and most Western leaders supported “the preservation of the realities of the postwar period, including the existence of two German states.”86 He had doubts about the US, but Shakhnazarov, who was present, interjected that American remarks in favor of German reunification were probably made for domestic consumption. In retrospect, it is obvious that the Soviet leader was very much impressed by the opinions of Willy Brandt and Egon Bahr, who at that time seemed to strongly believe that “liquidation of the republic [the GDR] would have been a bust for the Social Democrats.”87

Gorbachev, hobbled by his own economic crisis at home, was in no position to bankroll the GDR. He was visibly shocked to learn that the GDR owed the West $26.5 billion and had a $12.1 billion budget deficit for 1989. “Astonished, Comrade Gorbachev asked whether these numbers were exact. He had not imagined the situation to be so precarious.”88 He then admitted that for the GDR, like for Hungary and Poland, there was no way to survive economically without turning to the West. “Today some people criticize us: they say, what is the Soviet Union doing—allowing Poland and Hungary to ‘sail’ to the West? But, Gorbachev said, “we cannot take Poland on our balance sheet. Poland … still owes almost $50 billion … You [Krenz] need to take this into account in your relationship with the FRG.”89

Gorbachev and Krenz discussed a detailed plan for the GDR. But the Soviet leader, as was his policy and style, refrained from any direct advice or firm commitments. According to the East German record, Krenz told Gorbachev that travel laws would be revised to let East Germans travel (without money) to the West. According to the Soviet record of the meeting, Krenz said: “We have already taken a number of steps. First of all, we gave orders to the border troops not to use weapons at the border, except in cases of direct attacks on the soldiers. Second, in the Politburo we adopted a draft of the Law on Foreign Travel at the Politburo. We will present it for a public discussion, and we plan to pass it in the [Volkskammer] even before Christmas.” The issue of inter-Berlin border control had always been a primary concern of the Soviet leadership during the Cold War, and was, in 1958-61, the cause of a grave East-West confrontation. But this time, remarkably, Gorbachev did not even raise it, implying perhaps an assumption that the GDR leadership would respect the regime of the Berlin Wall. When the Soviet ambassador to the GDR asked Moscow what to do, Shevardnadze’s deputy instructed him not to interfere in the discussion concerning the new travel laws and to consider them as sovereign decisions of the GDR.90 By leaving this crucial matter to the chaotic and disorganized SED establishment, Gorbachev and Shevardnadze took a huge gamble—and indeed, the opening of the Berlin Wall turned out, post facto, to be an inadvertent, but understandable consequence of this decision.

During this period, the United States turned out to be more conscious of geopolitics than Gorbachev and his people. Early in 1989, for instance, Henry Kissinger brought to Moscow a scheme for the preservation of stability in East-Central Europe through mutual restraint. Gorbachev, however, was not interested. Instead of global status quo, his goal was US-Soviet cooperation in...
changing the world. At the Malta summit, Bush Administration officials were jubilant when Gorbachev openly recognized the American role in Europe and assured them that the Soviets “don’t want bridgeheads in Cuba and Central America.” As this global historical change occurred, American strategists found it hard to believe that the Cold War was really over without a single shot. They could not quite grasp how the Soviets, who had allegedly sought in the late 1970s to threaten the Persian Gulf and support left-wing movements in Africa, Central America, and Southeast and Southwest Asia, might now renounce their imperial ambitions in 1989. Lingering doubts prevailed, even as the Soviet Union, much against its traditional interests, joined the United States in a coalition against Saddam Hussein’s Iraq a year later. Speaking to his advisers, Bush vowed not to “overlook the Soviet desire for access to warm water ports.” It was one of ironies of 1989 as a milestone of international history that, as the Soviet leadership was burying Stalin’s geopolitical legacy, the US national security elite successfully implemented the assumptions of “realism” in building a strong and unified Europe under the American leadership.

In Poland, Hungary, East Germany, Czechoslovakia, Romania, and Bulgaria, millions of people marched for freedom and democracy and thought they were making history. They were making it indeed. But students of this history ten years later should not forget the sense of extreme uncertainty that permeated all the actions of the democratic “opposition” along with all the motley disparate forces that joined it. The tensions in Eastern Europe were underscored by the 4 June Chinese crackdown against democratic students in Tiananmen Square in Beijing. The macabre finale of Ceaușescu’s trial and death in Romania came as the long-awaited shot from the rifle that hung on the wall of East-Central European house throughout much of the summer and fall of 1989. Yet, the uncertainty was not tinged with fear. Instead of making people numb, cautious and passive, it mobilized them in feverish excitement and made them pry open the doors and traps that for decades seemed to be locked from inside, mined and protected. It probably would not have made much of a difference to mass democratic mobilization in Eastern Europe if Moscow had interfered politically and, instead of sitting on its hands, had deployed unusually deft statecraft to try to help transform the unpopular political regimes. During the German refugee crisis, the Warsaw Pact virtually ceased to exist as an alliance, and after 12 November, as a perceptive scholar wrote, “Eastern Europe, in its entirety, [had] finally hurled itself through the Berlin Wall.”

Would it have been possible to stem the tide after October? There was no means to do so without major bloodshed, and according to the analyses done by liberal-minded Moscow experts in early 1989, the outcome would have been disastrous for Gorbachev’s efforts to promote reforms at home and peace in the world. Even Stalin had spent several years stuffing the genie of East-Central European nationalism and drive for independence into the sealed communist bottle. Once the genie was liberated again in every country—from Poland to Bulgaria—nothing less than a massive and bloody use of force could have undone or stopped the process.

Some scholars write that Gorbachev (had history given him more time) would have preserved the Warsaw Treaty by integrating it into non-communist governments, beginning with Poland. Lévesque, for instance, concludes that Gorbachev’s “project” in Eastern Europe “was far from being devoid of realism” and that its prospects “were excellent in the summer of 1989.” I disagree. While it is unimaginable that the flood of popular revolutions in East-Central Europe would have occurred without Gorbachev and “perestroika” in the Soviet Union, the Soviet Union (or its successor, Russia) never could have re-consolidated the region on a new, non-totalitarian, non-coercive basis. The non-communist Polish government, for instance, might have stayed for tactical reasons in the alliance with the Soviet Union for a year or two. But democratic politics and the historic national sentiments of the vast majority of Polish people pushed inexorably for a reorientation of the country towards economic, cultural, political, and ultimately military alliance with the West. The same went for the other East European countries. And, as the story of NATO expansion revealed, the US polity could not resist the idea of incorporating the area into its sphere of responsibility. Therefore one must search in vain for signs of “realist” designs in Gorbachev’s non-policy towards Eastern Europe. There were none. “The Soviet factor,” nevertheless, proved to be a crucial factor in the success of the peaceful revolutions in Eastern Europe and in the fall of the Berlin Wall. The Gorbachev leadership adhered to the illusory belief in “socialism with human face” as a possible third option for Eastern Europe, between old style communism and capitalism. And it was categorically against any direct interference, either by military or non-military means, lest it compromise Gorbachev’s global project of a new world order based on his “new thinking.” One day, when the Central and East Europeans overcome their post-communist hangover, and the political bickering between former reformed communists and former dissidents becomes history, memorials may be erected to remember the “annis mirabilis” of 1989. And perhaps, among the various figures on the bas-relief frieze, there might be a place for Gorbachev, the inadvertent liberator.
DOCUMENTS

[Editor's Note: Excerpts from the notes of Anatoly Chernyaev are printed here as a courtesy with permission of their author. Originals and complete transcriptions are stored at the Archive of the Gorbachev Foundation, fond 2, opis 2. We are very thankful to Mr. Chernyaev for his generosity and remarkable addition to our understanding of the Soviet role in the end of the Cold War. Copyright on the documents belongs to Mr. Chernyaev. These are excerpts from the forthcoming book edited by Vladislav Zubok, Thomas Blanton, and Svetlana Savranskaya, in the National Security Archive series published by Central European University Press entitled “Masterpiece of History: Gorbachev’s ‘New Thinking’ and the Collapse of Communism in Eastern Europe.”]

DOCUMENT No. 1
Georgy Shakhnazarov’s Preparatory Notes for Mikhail Gorbachev for the Meeting of the Politburo, 6 October 1988

Mikhail Sergeevich!
Maybe you will find these thoughts useful.

Today we are discussing the results of our talks with the leaders or prominent figures from a number of socialist countries—[Laotian Prime Minister Kaysone] K. Phomvihan, Wo Thi Khong, [East German leader] E[rich] Honecker, [Romanian leader] N[icolae] Ceausescu, [former Polish Leader Eduard] Gierek. Now [Mongolian People’s Revolutionary Party leader Jambyn] Batmunkh is asking for a meeting.

Each country has its unique situation and we would be correct not to approach them across-the-board [chokhom]; we are seeking to figure out the specifics of each of them, and to build our policy on the basis of such an analysis.

At the same time today’s exchange and, broadly speaking, everything that we know, all the information we receive, encourages us to take a multi-faceted evaluation of the situation in the socialist commonwealth. Notwithstanding all their differences and nuances, there are multiple signs that some similar problems are increasingly plaguing the fraternal countries. The very similarity of symptoms of the disease testifies to the fact that its catalyst [vozbuditel] is not some kind of a malignant germ that has managed to penetrate their lowered defenses, but some factors rooted in the very economic and political model of socialism as it had evolved over here, and had been transferred with insignificant modifications to the soil of the countries who had embarked on the path of socialism in the post-war period.

We have already laid bare weaknesses of this model and are beginning to remove them in a systematic way. This is actually the super-task of perestroika—to give socialism a new quality. A number of countries have followed us and began, even ahead of us, the process of deep reforms. Some of them, the GDR [East Germany], Romania, the KPDR [North Korea] still do not admit its necessity, but they do it rather for political reasons, because their current political leadership does not want to change anything. In reality all of them need changes, although we do not tell them this publicly to avoid criticism for trying to impose our perestroika on our friends.

But the fact is that obvious signs of a crisis require radical reforms everywhere in the socialist world. And subjective factors play a huge role. For instance, in more than backward Laos, Phomvihan is acting skillfully, and there are some good results. But those who stubbornly turn a deaf ear to the call of the time are driving the malaise ever deeper and aggravate its manifestations in the future.

And this concerns us in a direct way. Although we laid aside our rights of “senior brother” in the socialist world, we cannot renounce the role of a leader, the role that will always objectively belong to the Soviet Union as the most powerful socialist country, the motherland of the October Revolution. When it came to a crisis in any of them, we had to come to rescue at the cost of huge material, political and even human sacrifices.

We should clearly see, moreover, that in the future any possibility to “put out” crisis situations by military means must be fully excluded. Even the old leadership seemed to have already realized this, at least with regard to Poland.

Now we must reflect on how we will act if one or even several countries become bankrupt simultaneously? This is [a] realistic prospect, for some of them are on the brink of monetary insolvency (Poland, Hungary, Bulgaria, Vietnam, Cuba, GDR). Even Czechoslovakia, which has so far stayed afloat, now has rapidly rising external debt.

What shall we do if social instability that is now taking an increasingly threatening character in Hungary will coincide with another round of trouble-making in Poland, demonstrations of “Charter 77” in Czechoslovakia, etc.? In other words, do we have a plan in case of a crisis that might encompass the entire socialist world or a large part of it?

We are worried about this. When we receive from time to time alarmist cables we do what we can, but all this is at best like applying lotion to sores, not a systematic, thoughtful strategy for treatment of the disease, not to mention preventive measures.

It is high time to discuss these issues at the Politburo in the presence of experts. We should not bury our head in the sand like an ostrich, but we should look into the future with open eyes and ask ourselves the sharpest questions:

Could the socialist countries come out of the pre-crisis situation without Western assistance?
What price will they have to pay for this assistance?
To what extent should we encourage such a course of events or put up with it?
To what degree are we interested in further presence of Soviet troops on the territory of a number of allied countries (excluding the GDR)?

We should assign to the newly-established CC International Commission [the task of preparing materials for this discussion.] This is a huge problem, in scope as well as in significance, we need to tackle it continuously, but the first exchange should take place as early as late December [1988]–early January 1989. There will be a working conference of the Party leadership of the commonwealth in Prague in February, and this gives us a chance to share some of our conclusions with our friends. They are already expecting it, although each of them, of course, sees the situation from “his own angle.”

[Source: Published in G. Kh. Zhakhnazarov, Tsena prozreniia [The Price of Enlightenment]. Translated by Vladislav Zubok (National Security Archive).]

DOCUMENT No. 2
Excerpt from Anatoly Chernyaev’s Diary,
28 October 1988

Kohl met one-on-one with Gorbachev (plus me and Horst Teltschik, assistant to the Chancellor). And when I saw this striving at the highest level to speak as one human being to another human being (mutually), I felt physically that we were entering a new world, where class struggle, ideology, and, in general, polarity and enmity are no longer decisive. And something all-human is taking the upper hand. And then I came to realize how brave and far-sighted M.S [Gorbachev] is. He declared a “new thinking” “without any theoretical preparation” and began to act according to common sense. His ideas are: freedom of choice, mutual respect of each other’s values, balance of interest, renunciation of force in politics, all-European house, liquidation of nuclear armaments etc. All this, each by itself, is not original or new. What is new is that a person—who came out of Soviet Marxism-Leninism, Soviet society conditioned from top to bottom by Stalinism—began to carry out these ideas with all earnestness and sincerity when he became the head of state. No wonder that the world is stunned and full of admiration. And our public still cannot appreciate that he has already transferred all of them from one state to another…

[Source: Anatoly Chernyaev, 1991: The Diary of an Assistant to the President of the USSR (Moscow: TERRA, 1997). Translated from Russian by Vladislav Zubok (National Security Archive).]

DOCUMENT No. 3
Anatoly Chernyaev’s Notes from
the Politburo Session,
21 January 1989

Communist Party of the Soviet Union
Central Committee

21 January 1989

Gorbachev is speaking about the Trilateral Commission, with which he met ([former US Secretary of State Henry A.] Kissinger, [former French President Valéry] Giscard d’Estaing, [former Japanese Prime Minster Yasuhiro] Nakasone). It [the commission] is interested in everything that is going on, especially in our country. It is working on all issues of European world policy. I would emphasize two issues.

First is how are you—meaning we, the Soviet Union—going to integrate into the world economy? These issues are [being] considered in the Trilateral Commission. If you are going to integrate, we should be ready for it, they said to me.

Giscard told me directly that for us (the USSR) this problem would be extremely difficult, but for them as well.

Second issue. They are coming to the conclusion that the biggest fights of perestroika are still ahead of us. And in the international sphere the main problems for us will emerge in the Third World. They think that the West “lets the Third World live,” and the Third World, in turn, “lets the West live.” But how are we going to deal with the Third World? They believe that in 10-20 years we all will have to deal with a federation of states named Europe.

Kisa [Kissinger] just shrugged at this statement by Giscard, and asked me a direct question: How are you going to react if Eastern Europe wants to join the E[uropean] C[ommission]? It is not an accident that they asked me about it. They know that our friends are already knocking on the door. And we should also look at what processes are going on there now—the economic and the political—and where they are drifting.

What is going on in Hungary, for example? An opposition party led by [Miklos] Nemeth has emerged there. Hungary is on the eve of a serious choice. Of course, it will be different. And I think that every country should have, and has, its own face. And we will continue to be friends, because the socialist basis will be preserved in all of them. The roads of our development will be very diverse, while we will preserve our commonality. We need a mechanism that will ensure our mutual understanding and interaction. There will be a lot of political, economic, and military-political questions. We should consider them in the Central Committee’s Commission on Eastern Europe. We should undertake situational analysis with scholars. For
example, how would we react if Hungary left for the EC? Comrades, we are on the eve of very serious things. Because we cannot give them more than we are giving them now. And they need new technologies. If we do not deal with that, there will be a split, and they will run away.

And then there is the question of what we should present to the working groups of the leaders of the socialist countries. By the way, let the Commission give us a substantiated answer whether we need this meeting at all. Before it, we should work out what we can give to our friends, and compare it with what the West can give them.

The answer to this question, I am sure, lies with our perestroika, with its success. And we should try to involve our friends, to get them interested in our economic reforms. Let [Aleksandr] Yakovlev, with scholars, look at it. We are facing a serious problem there.

The peoples of those countries will ask: what about the C[ommunist] P[arty of the] S[oviet] U[nion], what kind of leash will it use to keep our countries in line? They simply do not know that if they pulled this leash harder, it would break.

It is time to transfer our relations to the forms that we practice in our relationship with China, but we can get to such forms only via the market, and, of course, via technological and scientific developments in our own country.

In that case, we would break the old rule that we keep them attached to us only by means of energy resources.

At the same time, we cannot just tell them that we would cut the deliveries. That would be a betrayal.

Kisa hinted at the idea of a USSR-US condominium over Europe. He was hinting that Japan, Germany, Spain, and South Korea were on the rise, and so, let us make an agreement so that the “Europeans do not misbehave.”

We should work on this range of issues also, but in such a way that it would not leak, because in Europe they are most afraid of that what they understand the Reykjavik summit means. And if you remember, in Reykjavik they saw an effort at conspiracy between the USSR and the USA over Europe.

My impression from the meeting with the Trilateral Commission is the following: they understood in the West that the world needs a peaceful breathing spell from the arms race, from the nuclear psychosis, as much as we need it. However, we need to know it all in detail in order not to make mistakes. They want to channel the processes in such a way as to limit as much as possible our influence on the world situation, they are trying to seize the initiative from us, present criteria of trust as tests: if the Soviet Union would not want to agree to something, we would act in a way to gain more points.

That is why we have to keep the initiative. This is our main advantage.

[Source: Archive of the Gorbachev Foundation (Moscow), f. 2, op. 2. Translated by Svetlana Savranskaya (National Security Archive).]

DOCUMENT No. 4
Excerpt from Anatoly Chernyaev’s Diary, 2 May 1989

Inside me, depression and alarm are growing, the sense of crisis of the Gorbachevian idea. He is prepared to go far. But what does it mean? His favorite catchword is “unpredictability.” And most likely we will come to a collapse of the state and something like chaos. He feels that he is losing the levers of power irreversibly, and this realization prevents him from “going far.” For this reason he holds to conventional methods but acts with “velvet gloves.” He has no concept of where we are going. His declaration about socialist values, the ideals of October, as he begins to tick them off, sound like irony to the cognoscenti. Behind them—emptiness.

[Source: Published in Anatoly Chernyaev, 1991: The Diary of an Assistant to the President of the USSR (Moscow: TERRA, 1997). Translated by Vladislav Zubok (National Security Archive).]

DOCUMENT No. 5
Excerpt From the Diary of Anatoly Chernyaev, 5 October 1989

M.S. [Gorbachev] is flying to the GDR [to celebrate] its 40th anniversary. He is very reluctant. Called me two times. Today [he called and said]: I polished the text (of the speech) to the last letter—you know, they will scrutinize it under a microscope… I will not say a word in support of [East German leader Erich] Honecker. But I will support the Republic and the Revolution.

Today in Dresden—20,000 demonstrate. Yesterday there was a demonstration in Leipzig. Information is coming in that in the presence of Gorbachev people will storm the Wall. Awful scenes when a special train [with East German refugees] passed from Prague to the GDR via Dresden. West German television shot everything and now is broadcasting this all over the GDR. All Western media are full of articles about German reunification.


In a word, the total dismantling of socialism as a world phenomenon has been proceeding…Perhaps it is inevitable and good…For this is a reunification of mankind on the basis of common sense. And a common fellow from Stavropol [Gorbachev] set this process in motion.
Gorbachev: The Soviet people are very interested in everything that is going on in the GDR. We hope to get the most recent information from you, although, of course, we know a lot. The situation in the GDR, judging by everything we see, is moving at an increasing speed. Is there a danger of getting left behind the reforms? Remember, we said in Berlin that to be behind is always to lose. We know that from our own experience.

Krenz: [...] At the Politburo we came to the conclusion that the crisis has not emerged [just] in the last several months. Many problems have accumulated over the years. But the main mistake was probably that we did not make serious conclusions based on the new processes of social development, which began in the Soviet Union, other socialist countries, and which were ripe in the GDR itself. Because if you have the most important ally, you have to understand and share its problems and hardships. One cannot declare friendship in words, and at the same time stay on the sidelines when your ally is trying to deal with its difficult problems. People who are used to thinking of us as close allies felt that suddenly we have lost our unity with the Soviet Union, and that we ourselves erected this barrier.

Gorbachev: From the political point of view, the situation is clear, but from a simply human standpoint—[it is] dramatic. I was also concerned about this. In general, I had good relations with Honecker, but it seemed recently as if he lost his vision. If he had been willing to make the necessary changes in policy on his own initiative 2 or 3 years ago, everything would have been different now. But apparently, he had undergone some kind of a shift, he ceased to see real processes in the world and in his own country. It was a personal drama, but because Honecker occupied a very high position, it grew into a political drama.

Krenz: Yes, you are right, it is a drama, and for me too, because Honecker brought me up, he was my political mentor.

Gorbachev: Some people now speculate about that, but I think you should not react to that.

Krenz: For Honecker the turn probably occurred exactly in 1985, when you were elected General Secretary of the CC CPSU. In you he saw a threat to his authority, because he considered himself the most dynamic political leader. He lost all touch with reality, and did not rely on the politburo collective. [SED CC Secretary for Economics Günter] Mittag and [SED CC Secretary for Ideology and Propaganda Joachim] Hermann did him a very bad service in this respect. The first as a strategist, and the second as an executive.

 [...] Gorbachev: This is a familiar picture. Some time ago, when I already was a Politburo member, I practically did not know our budget. Once we were working with [Chairman of the USSR Council of Ministers and Politburo member] Nikolai Ryzhkov on some request of [former KGB chief and General Secretary Yuri V.] Andropov’s having to do with budgetary issues, and we, naturally, decided that we should learn about them. But Andropov said: Do not get in there, it is not your business. Now we know why he said so. It was not a budget, but hell knows what.

 [...] Gorbachev: We knew about your situation, about your economic and financial ties with the FRG, and we understood how it all could turn out. For our part, we were carrying out our obligations to the GDR, including those on oil deliveries, even though some of it had to be reduced at a certain time. Erich Honecker was not very honest with us about those things. We knew about that, but we exercised reserve and patience, led by the highest political considerations.

Krenz: It is very important to define the division of labor between the GDR and the Soviet Union better. It is one of our main reserves. The situation here is far from ideal. We need to remove the existing barriers. There should be only one criterion—efficiency and mutual benefit.

Gorbachev: The issue of the division of labor stands as a major problem in our country as well. The republics that produce raw materials demand a redistribution of money, because they think that those that produce finished products get too much. They present very harsh conditions, up to the limiting and stopping of deliveries.

By the way, yesterday in the Supreme Soviet one of the deputies—[reform economist] Nikolai Shmelev—raised the question about getting the real information about all our foreign economic relations, including the relations with the socialist countries, to the Supreme Soviet.

Krenz: We are prepared to discuss seriously those issues once again with our Soviet comrades.

Gorbachev: I suggested the topic of cooperation to Honecker many times. He was in favor of direct connections, but spoke about cooperation and especially about joint ventures without any enthusiasm. But it is precisely cooperation that had the greatest potential for mutual benefit. You cannot ride on the deliveries of our raw
You must know: all serious political figures—[British Prime Minister Margaret] Thatcher, [French President François] Mitterand, [Italian Prime Minister Giulio] Andreotti, [Polish President Wojciech] Jaruzelski, and even the Americans—though their position has recently exhibited some nuances—are not looking forward to German unification. Moreover, in today’s situation it would probably have an explosive character. The majority of Western leaders do not want to see the dissolution of NATO and of the Warsaw Treaty Organization. Serious politicians understand that they are factors of a necessary equilibrium. However, Mitterand feels like he has to mention his sympathy for the idea of the German unification. The Americans are also speaking about such sympathies for the Germans’ pull toward the unification. But I think that they do it as a favor to Bonn, and also because to some extent, they are anxious about too much rapprochement between the FRG and the USSR. Therefore, I repeat, the best course of action now is to continue the same line in the German affairs which we have successfully developed so far. By the way, [former FRG Chancellor and SPD leader] Willy Brandt shares this opinion as well. He believes that the GDR is a great victory of socialism, even though he has his own understanding of socialism. A liquidation of the republic, in his opinion, would have been a bust for the Social Democrats. Therefore, I think, we all should start from the following formula: history itself decided that there should be two German states. But of course, you cannot get away from the FRG. The need for human contacts presumes normal relations with the FRG. You should not disrupt your ties with the FRG, although, certainly, they should be kept under control.

I am convinced that we should coordinate our relations with the FRG better, although Honecker tried to evade this necessity. We know about your relations with the FRG, and you know about our relations with it. Why should we try to hide anything from each other? It would make sense to talk about the possibilities of trilateral cooperation between the USSR, the GDR, and the FRG, especially in the economic sphere. [...] The situation in Hungary and Poland today is such that they have nowhere else to go, as they say, because they have drowned in financial dependence on the West. Today some people criticize us: they say, what is the Soviet Union doing—allowing Poland and Hungary to “sail” to the West[?] But we cannot take Poland on our balance. [Former Polish leader Edward] Girek accumulated $48 billion dollars of debt. Poland has already paid off $49 billion, and it still owes almost $49 billion. As far as Hungary is concerned, the International Monetary Fund has dictated its harsh ultimatum already under the late Hungarian leader Janós Kádár.

Krenz: This is not our way.

Gorbachev: You need to take this into account in your relationship with the FRG.

[...] Gorbachev: We need to think through all of this, and to find formulas that would allow people to realize their human needs. Otherwise we will be forced to accept all kinds of ultimatums. Maybe we can direct our International Departments and Foreign Ministries to think about possible initiatives together. Clearly, your constructive steps should be accompanied with demands for certain obligations from the other side. Chancellor Helmut Kohl keeps in touch with me and with you. We need to influence him. Once under the pressure of the opposition, he found himself on the horse of nationalism. The right wing starts to present their demands for the unification of Germany to the Soviet Union, and appeals to the US. The logic is simple—all the peoples are united, why do we Germans not have this right?

Krenz: We have already taken a number of steps. First of all, we gave orders to the border troops not to use weapons at the border, except in the cases of direct attacks on the soldiers. Secondly, we adopted a draft of Law on Foreign Travel at the Politburo. We will present it for a public discussion, and we plan to pass it in the Volkskammer even before Christmas. [...] Gorbachev: Kohl was visibly worried when I mentioned the perverse interpretation of some of our agreements with the FRG in my 8 October speech in Berlin. He immediately gave me a telephone call regarding that.

Krenz: Yes, he is worried; I noticed it in my conversation with him. He was even forgetting to finish phrases.

Gorbachev: Kohl, it seems, is not a big intellectual, but he enjoys certain popularity in his country, especially among the petit-bourgeois public.

[...] Gorbachev: I was told that he [Honecker] did not adequately understand even our discussions in the Politburo. But we do not have any ill feelings towards him. Had he made the right conclusions two or three years ago, it would have been of major significance for the GDR, and for him personally. In any case, one cannot deny the things your Party and people have achieved in the past. We have a complete mutual understanding about that.

Krenz cordially thanks Gorbachev for the support, openness, and good advice.

[Source: Notes of A.S. Chernyaev, Archive of the Gorbachev Foundation, f. 2, op. 2. Translated by Svetlana Savranskaya (National Security Archive).]
DOCUMENT No. 7
Excerpt from Anatoly Chernyaev’s Diary, 10 November 1989


But the main thing is the GDR, the Berlin Wall. For it has to do not only with “socialism” but with the shift in the world balance of forces. This is the end of Yalta…of the Stalinist legacy and the “defeat of Hitlerite Germany.” That is what Gorbachev has done. And he has indeed turned out to be a great leader. He has sensed the pace of history and helped history to find a natural channel.

[Source: Notes of Anatoly Chernyaev, the Gorbachev Foundation Archive, f. 2, op. 2. Translated by Vladislav Zubok (National Security Archive).]

Vladislav Zubok is a senior fellow at the National Security Archive.

1 The author’s observation at the conference on the 10th Anniversary of the Polish Roundtable, 7–10 April 1999, organized by the University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Michigan.


6 See Valery Boldin, Collapse of the Pedestal: Details for M.S. Gorbachev’s Portrait (Moscow: Republic, 1995) and its English-language version Ten Years that Shook the World. The Gorbachev Era as Witnessed by His Chief of Staff (New York: Basic Books, 1994); Vladimir Kryuchkov, A Personal File (Moscow: Olympus, 1997); Leonid V. Shebarshin, Zapiski nachalnika razvedki (Moscow: Mezdunarodnye ontoshieniya, 1994); Nikolai S. Leonov, Likholetie (Moscow: Terra, 1997); Valentin Falin, Politische Erinnerungen (Munchen: Droemer-Knaur, 1993) and his Die Perestroika und der Zerfall der Sowjetunion, Hamburger Beiträge zur Friedensforschung und Sicherheitspolitik, Heft 77 (Hamburg, April 1993); Juli Kwitzinskij, Vor dem Sturm: Erinnerungen eines Diplomaten [On the eve of the storm: memoirs of a diplomat] (Berlin: Siedler, 1993); Vitalii Vorotnikov, On the eve of the storm: memoirs of a diplomat [Berlin: Siedler, 1993]; Vitalii Vorotnikov, A bylo eto tak: iz dnevnika chlena Politbiuro TsK KPSS [As it happened: From the diary of a member of the CC CPSU Politburo] (Moskva: Soviet veteranov knigoizdaniya SI-MAR, 1995).


8 S.F. Akhromeev, G.M. Kornienko, Through the Eyes of a Marshal and a Diplomat: A Critical View of Foreign Policy of the USSR before and after 1985 (Moskva: Mezdunarodnie ontoshieniya, 1992), pp. 314-315; see also the criticism of Gorbachev and Shevardnadze’s foreign policy in the last chapter of Anatoly Dobrynin, In Confidence: Moscow’s Ambassador to America’s Six Cold War Presidents (1962-1986) (New York: Time Books, 1995) and Anatoly Gromyko, Andrei Gromyko v Labirintakh Kremlia: Vospominania i razmishlenia yina [Andrey Gromyko in the labyrinth of the Kremlin: His Son’s Recollections and Reflections] (Moskva: IPO “Avtor,” 1997); Letter from Oleg Baklanov, Valentin Varennikov, Vladimir Kryuchkov and Nikolai Lenov to Director of Watson Institute of Brown University, Thomas Bierstecker, April 1998, in which they declined to participate in a conference on the end of the Cold War, claiming that it still “continues.”


**11** See in particular “The End of the Cold War in Europe, 1989: ‘New Thinking’ and New Evidence.” Transcript of the Proceedings of the Musgrove Conference of the Openness in Russia and Eastern Europe Project, Musgrove, St. Simon’s Island, Georgia, 1-3 May 1998, prepared by Svetlana Savranskaya, and a collection of documents from the Gorbachev Foundation and other sources prepared for this conference by Vladislav Zubok and Thomas Blanton. The documents and the transcript are being prepared for publication.


**13** Recollections of Sergei Tarasenko at Musgrove, Transcript, pp. 19-20.


**15** I rely here on excellent research on the origins of “new thinking” by Robert D. English. See also Robert D. English, Russia and the Idea of the West: Gorbachev, Intellectuals, and the End of the Cold War (New York: Columbia UP, 2000).


**17** This is based on the analysis of Gorbachev’s conversations with foreign leaders. Transcripts of these conversations are available in the Archive of the Gorbachev Foundation in Moscow. For the impact of Thatcher’s visit on Gorbachev, see Chernyaev’s Notes from the Politburo Meeting, 2 April 1987, Gorbachev Foundation Archive , f. 2, op. 1 [Editor’s Note: see also statement made by David Wolff at the 1993 Musgrove Conference (footnote 11)].

**18** M.S. Gorbachev, Zhizn i reformi [Life and Reforms] (Moskva: Novosti, 1995), pp. 311-320; Gorbachev emphasized this point to this author at a meeting in Moscow at the Gorbachev Foundation on 20 February 1996.

**19** Musgrove meeting, Transcript, p. 39.

**20** Lévesque, The Enigma of 1989, pp. 52-59.

**21** Chernyaev made this point at Musgrove, Transcript, p. 105.


**23** Shakhnazarov at Musgrove, Transcript, p. 42; also Chernyaev, My Six Years with Gorbachev, pp. 35-36.

**24** Shakhnazarov at Musgrove, Transcript, p. 42.


**26** Ibid., pp. 66-67.

**27** Gorbachev on Western Europe at the Politburo, 23 and 26 February 1987, Chernyaev’s notes; also Dobrynin on Gorbachev’s ideas of trying “to oust the maximum possible number American troops from Western Europe,” In Confidence, p. 570 and Sugibo doveritelno, p. 607.

**28** Chernyaev’s Minutes of the Defense Council meeting, 8 May, 1987, Gorbachev Foundation Archive.

**29** See Chernyaev, Shest let s Gorbachevim, pp. 131-141; Grinevsky about “naivete” of this policy at the conference “Understanding the End of the Cold War,” Brown University, May 1998.

**30** Lévesque, The Enigma of 1989, p. 66.

**31** In early March 1988 the newspaper Soviet Russia published a feature article by “a professor from Leningrad,” Nina Andreeva, under the title “I cannot forsake my principles.” It quickly became a manifesto of the forces that opposed the reforms. Some Politburo members, including Yegor K. Ligachev, encouraged this process. Gorbachev was then on a trip abroad, but when he returned, he addressed the issue at the Politburo and used the “Andreeva affair” as an occasion to rout ideologically conservative forces.

**32** Anatoly Chernyaev’s notes from the Politburo Meeting, 24-25 March 1988, Gorbachev Foundation Archive, f. 2, op. 1.

**33** Ibid.

**34** Ibid.

**35** Ibid.


**37** For an explanation of the revolutionary paradigm, see Zubok and Pleshakov, Inside the Kremlin’s Cold War.

**38** Entry for 28 October 1988 in Anatoly Chernyaev, [1991: The Diary of an Assistant to the President of the USSR] (Moscow: TERRA, 1997), pp. 11-12.

42 Record of the Politburo Meeting, 27-28 December 1988, *Istochnik*, 5-6, 1993; an even more radical version is in Chernyaev, *Shest let s Gorbachevym*, pp. 255-256.
43 See Akhromeyev’s opinion cited above. Also Chairman of the Council of Ministers Nikolai Ryzhkov in an interview with Michael McFaul in the summer of 1992, the Hoover Institution’s Oral History Project, cited in Wolforth, “Realism and the End of the Cold War,” p. 113. The figure of 70% was mentioned by Chernyaev and Shakhnazarov without a source reference during the Brown University conference.
44 See Lévesque, *The Enigma of 1989*, pp. 252-55
45 Shakhnazarov at the conference in Musgrove, Musgrove Transcript, p. 64. Unfortunately, no contemporaneous documentation to corroborate his words has so far emerged.
46 Dashichev, “Nekotorye aspekty 'germanskoii problemy', 17 November 1987.” Dashichev presented a copy to Jaques Lévesque; this document is now on file at the National Security Archive; also see Lévesque, *The Enigma of 1989*, pp. 69-71.
47 Musgrove, Transcript, p. 64.
52 Musgrove, Transcript, p. 87.
54 Shakhnazarov’s explanation at Musgrove, Transcript, p. 87; also see changing ratio of documents on foreign and domestic problems in Shakhnazarov’s memoirs, *Tsena svobodi*, pp. 384 B 407.
55 Musgrove, Transcript, p. 88.
57 Musgrove, Transcript, p. 58.
58 Chernyaev’s Notes from the Politburo meeting, 10 March 1989, Gorbachev Foundation Archive, f. 2, op. 1.
59 Musgrove, Transcript, p. 79.
60 Statements by Chernyaev, Shakhnazarov and Tarasenko at the Brown University conference and the conference at Musgrove (the author’s notes).
63 On this neglect see also Lévesque, *The Enigma of 1989*, p. 90.
64 Lévesque, *The Enigma of 1989*, pp. 83, 178-181, 255. I disagree with Lévesque’s assertion that Gorbachev was misinformed about the seriousness of the brewing crisis in Eastern Europe. On the contrary, Soviet ambassadors and intelligence chiefs in Eastern European capitals, as well as some “roaming” Soviet ambassadors (e.g., Vadim Zagladin, who traveled to Czechoslovakia in July 1989), warned Moscow repeatedly of the grave situation. At the same time, few could predict what direction and character the revolutions in Eastern Europe would take.
67 Record of conversation between M.S. Gorbachev and the member of the CC of the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party, chairman of the Council of Ministers of the People’s Republic of Hungary, Miklos Nemeth, 23 March 1989, Chernyaev’s notes, Gorbachev Foundation Archive.
68 Record of conversation between Gorbachev and
Nemeth, 23 March 1989, Chernyaev’s notes, Gorbachev Foundation Archive.

Record of conversation between Gorbachev and Nemeth, 23 March 1989, Chernyaev’s notes, Gorbachev Foundation Archive.


Author’s conversation with Rakowski on 8 April 1999, at the conference on the anniversary of the 1989 Polish Roundtable, organized by the University of Michigan, Ann Arbor; also see Lévesque, The Enigma of 1989, p. 125. Rakowski told Lévesque that Gorbachev refused to see him in Moscow for consultations.

There is intriguing evidence on that in the memoirs of the last Soviet ambassador to the GDR, Vyacheslav Kochemasov, Meine letzte Mission (Berlin: Dietz, 1994), pp. 168-169. Kochemasov claims it was his own decision to order the Soviet military commander to refrain from interference during the crucial confrontation in Leipzig; on Shevardnadze’s activities in New York, see statements by Tarasenko at Musgrove, Transcript, p. 98.

Bush and Scowcroft, A World Transformed, p. 135.

Both Soviet reformers and their American sympathizers felt that, because of the change of administration, the momentum of 1986-88 was halted. Chernyaev calls 1989 the “wasted year,” and Matlock’s title for the early Bush foreign policy is “Washington fumbles” (The author thanks Thomas Blanton for bringing this similarity to his attention).

NATO allies and domestic critics had urged Bush to come up with a policy much sooner.


Notes of Anatoly Chernyaev, 5 October 1989, Gorbachev Foundation, fond 2, opis 2.


Notes of Anatoly Chernyaev, 5 October 1989, Gorbachev Foundation Archive, fond 2, opis 2.

Zelikow and Rice, Germany Unified and Europe Transformed, p. 83. I slightly changed the translation of Tyutchev’s words that Zelikow and Rice quoted.

Zelikow and Rice, Germany Unified and Europe Transformed, p. 83.

Record of conversation between M.S. Gorbachev and General Secretary of the Central Committee of the Socialist United Party of Germany Egon Krenz, 1 November 1989, notes by A.S. Chernyaev; Gorbachev Foundation Archive, for East German minutes see Niederschrift des Gesprächs des Genossen Egon Krenz mit Genossen Michail Gorbatschow am 1.11.1989 in Moskau available at SAMPO–BArch, Berlin, IV 2/20391, p.20, and were quoted in part by Zelikow and Rice, Germany Unified, pp. 87-91. Published in full in this Bulletin issue.

Ibid.

Ibid. p. 15

Ibid. p. 26

Ibid; Kochemasov, Meine Letzte Mission, pp. 185-186; Zelikow and Rice interviewed other Soviet officials on this episode, see their Germany Unified, p. 99.

Chernyaev at Musgrove, Transcript, pp. 158-159; on Kissinger’s initiative see Michael Beschloss and Strobe Talbott, At the Highest Levels: The Inside Story of the End of the Cold War (Boston: Little, Brown, 1993), pp. 14-17, 19-21, 45-46.

Soviet record of the meeting at Malta, 2-3 December 1989. The record can be found in Chernyaev’s notes at the Archive of the Gorbachev Foundation; it was partially published in Godi trudnikh reshenii [The Years of Difficult Decisions], (Moskva, 1993), pp. 173-197; Bush and Scowcroft, A World Transformed, p. 165. Pavel Palazhchenko who interpreted at the summit shared with me his astonishment at the concern of the Americans with their own backyard instead of Eastern Europe.


Ibid., pp. 257-258; Zelikow and Rice, Germany Unified and Europe Transformed, p. 70.

See also the German version of this conversation, published in this issue of the Bulletin.

Gorbachev had visited East Berlin in early October for the 40th GDR Anniversary.

See the article by Hans-Hermann Hertle in this issue of the Bulletin.
On the Eve:
A Glimpse Inside the Politburo at the End of 1988

[The following minutes of the 27-28 December 1988 meeting of the Politburo of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union provide a unique glimpse into the discussions within the Soviet leadership, as it assessed the US presidential transition from Ronald Reagan to George Bush and the brewing problems throughout the Soviet empire in Central and Eastern Europe. The meeting took place in the wake of a major reshuffle of the Soviet party leadership and reorganization of the central party apparatus in the summer of 1988 which sidelined key conservative leaders, such as Andrei Gromyko, Mikhail Solomentsev, Victor Chebrikov and Yegor Ligachev. More immediately, the meeting followed Gorbachev’s historic 7 December 1988 speech to the United Nations General Assembly in which he recognized the right of all countries to determine their own destinies (implicitly thereby renouncing the “Brezhnev Doctrine” under which the Soviet Union had reserved the right to preserve loyal regimes within the “Socialist Commonwealth” and justified its August 1968 invasion of Czechoslovakia to crush the “Prague Spring”); supported universal human values rather than the class struggle to form the basis for international relations; and proposed unilateral Soviet troop and tank reductions in Europe and Asia. Not all members of the Soviet leadership had supported Gorbachev’s initiative at the UN, which had not been cleared by the Politburo beforehand. Not until the December 27-28 session did the Politburo publicly pronounce its blessing on the UN speech.—Christian F. Ostermann]
these lines.

And here is the viewpoint of liberal circles: The USSR is not renouncing socialism, instead it is rescuing it, as President [Franklin D.] Roosevelt once rescued American capitalism through the New Deal. They remind us that capitalism, in order to solve its problems, many times borrowed socialist ideas of planning, state regulation, social programs based on the principle of more social fairness. So they do not want to allow the Right to play on their version and to devalue our peace initiatives. […]

If this [conservative] version prevails, it will have a serious political effect. Incidentally, some elements of this concept are present in the thinking of [President-elect George H.W.] Bush. As if they are passing from Reagan to Bush. They are present in Western Europe: they say that under [US President Ronald] Reagan the United States has built up its military potential, activated their support to freedom fighters in various regions, and thereby convinced the Soviet Union that expansionist policy has no future. Some Europeans also want to consider the source of change of Soviet policy as American power.

This seems to be the most influential current. In essence it is close to the official viewpoint. Its danger [vred] is obvious, since, if it takes root and becomes the foundation of the policy of the future administration, it will contribute to the arms race and to military interference by the US in other countries. I am now following these things very closely. […]

Now we should work out a longer-term plan of practical measures to implement the announced concept [at the UN]. On this issue the Politburo has received considerations from departments of the CC, the Foreign Ministry, the Ministry of Defense, and the Committee of State Security [KGB]. They provide a program of actions for the near and distant future. Perhaps this is still a first draft. We should pull our heads together and give it time. […]

In what was discussed during the days of my stay in New York, the major issue was about the future of perestroika. And this I would like to emphasize before the Politburo. Could there be a reverse? Incidentally, this is the object of most intense speculation among the Far Right. […] And if you analyze the content of recorded foreign broadcasts [by a special service called radioperekhvat] in languages of our country on all foreign stations, the emphasis is clearly on the difficulties of perestroika, on growing obstacles to the process in the economy, in relations among the nationalities, in the process of democratization and glASNost, etc.

When I had to stay in isolation [during the trip], I tried during those twelve days, day by day, to analyze and systematize the material on this score and to give my assessment. [Radio voices] are hammering away at the Soviet audience that perestroika is losing ground, grinding to a halt, that it has not given anything to the people, that in the leadership and the party chaos reins, that the country is sliding toward chaos. And no matter what the leadership would undertake, it sooner or later will end up in a trap. And [that] the future of the present leadership hangs by a thread. To be frank, they say that Gorbachev is living through his last days. According to the most optimistic forecasts, he can have a year, a year and a half. True, Vladimir Alexandrovich [Kryuchkov]?

Kryuchkov. [Chairman of the KGB] People say many things.

Gorbachev. You do not want to speak up. It is so. I should not say that we are very surprised by all this. I do not want to be excessively cheerful [zlishnee bodriachestvo], but if they are upset, if they try to make these forecasts, it means that they are afraid of our perestroika. […]

Of course, it is still premature to draw serious conclusions about the policy of the future administration, but something can be said on the basis of contacts and some information. First, it is hard to expect that this administration will aggravate relations with the USSR or will get involved in some risky international adventure [avantiura] that can undermine these relations. There seems to be solid ground for saying this. On the other hand, Comrades, I believe with full certainty that the administration is not ready for a new serious turn in relations with the USSR which would correspond to the steps our side has undertaken. At least such is the picture today. So they say: we stay prudent, we will not hurry.

Still, at the last moment, when I managed to break away from Reagan [otorvatsia ot Reigana] I spoke to Bush about this indecisiveness. He snapped back: you must understand my position. I can not, according to American tradition, step up front until a formal transfer of power has taken place. This I understand, no question about it. We will have understanding. And he assured me—there will be continuity. He believes we should build on what has been achieved, and he will make his own contribution.

All that we have received through different channels says that, from their side, they will add to our efforts to develop our relations.

We should take into account that Bush is a very cautious politician. They say his idiosyncratic feature is the “natural caution” of Bush. It is inside him. We should see it. And what can make Bush act? Only [a threat] of the loss of prestige for the administration. So we need [these sort of] circumstances which we have now created by our initiatives to promote this process.

The mood of the present administration mostly reflects centrist sentiments in political circles of the US and Bush himself says: I am in the center. Most of those who today turn out to be in Bush’s team are people who in America are called traditionalists. These people were brought up in the years of the Cold War and still do not have any foreign policy alternative to the traditional post-war course of the United States with all its zigzags to the Right, to the Left, even with its risky adventures. And we should understand it. And much will depend on how we act. I think that they
[in the US] are still concerned lest they might be on the losing side, nothing more. Big breakthroughs can hardly be expected. We should produce smart policy.

[Georgi] Arbatov has just shared with the following ideas. They [the Americans] have suddenly sent a trial balloon: we are not ready, let’s wait, we will see. In general, they will drag their feet, they want to break the wave that has been created by our initiatives. In response they heard that, of course, we could wait because we have much to do in other directions—Europe, Asia, Latin America. Then they say: Well, you misunderstood us.

So we should have a thoughtful, dynamic, practical policy. We cannot allow the future administration to take a protracted time out and slow down the tempo of our political offensive.[…]

Shevardnadze. […] There is a draft resolution [on Point 1 of the Politburo agenda]. Of course, I do not consider it a final draft. We will have to work on it.[…]

It is not true that the draft [zapiska] has not been cleared with the Ministry of Defense. The reasons are well known: comrades were not in place, only Comrade Lobov was present and all these issues, all these points we agreed upon with him. We went to him, obtained his signature, etc. But this is not so important. I fear another thing. What, for instance, does the Ministry of Defense propose in its report? To present data to the Supreme Soviet only after the discussion by the Defense Council and the Politburo, etc. Should we do it, if we are getting ready for a new Supreme Soviet with a new status, new rights, new content and forms of its work? I believe it should not be done.

I have serious reservations about a proposal that the Supreme Soviet receive information only about the main lines of military build-up, and not the [actual] plans of this build-up as the draft suggests. This may result in the absence of any details in discussion of this issue by the Supreme Soviet and in the same negative consequences we have already spoken about. Specific plans will continue to be adopted and implemented in secrecy [v zakritom poriadke] without the Supreme Soviet [s’ approval]. We should not let this happen. It is absolutely unclear how the Supreme Soviet, without information about specific plans, will be able to consider seriously and approve defense expenditures. This is a very serious issue. It is also hard to understand the reasons for the objection against this clause of the [Foreign Ministry’s Politburo draft resolution] where it says about a presentation for a plan and schedule of withdrawal of our troops from the territories of Allies and about its discussion with the friends.

As far as I know, a specific schedule of withdrawal has not been discussed at the Committee of Ministers of Defense [of the Warsaw Pact]. We should have such plans, to agree on them with the allies and to announce them publicly so that everybody knows about our firm intention to carry out what was stated at the United Nations, in a systematic, purposeful and orderly way. Otherwise, if everything is to be decided in a usual business order [v rabochem poriadke], as comrades [from the Ministry of Defense] write, we will become a target for allegations that we are trying to sidetrack the issue of withdrawal [from Eastern Europe] and troop restructuring [pereformirovanie] [and] to do everything contrary to what was announced from the pulpit of the General Assembly.

The following issue [in the proposals of the Ministry of Defense] is in direct contradiction to what was said at the [UN] session and to the clause of the [Foreign Ministry] draft resolution. I have in mind the formula of the Ministry of Defense that [Soviet] forces that will stay on the territory of the socialist countries after [unilateral] cuts should adopt a more, I stress, more defensive posture. These are just words but they have significance in principle. Cde. Gorbachev spoke about giving these forces a different, unequivocally defensive structure. An important and big difference. We will be caught by hand on every, so to say, detail. And now they tell us to speak not about structure, but about some kind of abstract direction. Behind this difference in terminology stands various methods of implementation of the General Secretary’s address. In practice we should act in accordance with the speech at the U.N., so that will deeds would not diverge from the words.

I cannot agree either with the way the draft of the Ministry of Defense treats the issues of glasnost and openness, which are today of principled importance, of highest importance. When we carry out our unilateral steps, glasnost and openness would be maximized, in my opinion. Otherwise the desired effect will be lost, and, it seems to me, our policy will sustain a propaganda defeat. Our opponents will not hesitate to take us up on this and to sow doubts [to the effect] that the declared steps are not implemented in full.

[The military] proposes not maximum, but a permissible openness. What permissible openness means is not clear. Even more important [is] that even this permissible glasnost and openness is suggested to be applied only to the withdrawal of our troops from the territory of the Allies. As to the reduction measures on our territory, apparently no glasnost is permitted. This is, probably, wrong as well.

In general, my conclusion is that the amendments [to the Foreign Ministry draft proposed in the Ministry of Defense’s] draft resolution, in particular to the military-political section, are designed not to allow genuine glasnost and openness. And I still believe that these issues are of great importance.

In conclusion, Mikhail Sergeevich [Gorbachev], several words. You spoke about some informational reports…They want us to be nervous. And look at them, they are serious people, serious politicians…

tion. During this program chairman of the GDR government said that one should keep in mind the plots of imperialist intelligence services and their subversive activities against perestroika. Well, Matlock then said: “I have a special request from my leadership, both the current and the future one, to declare that we support perestroika.”

Shevardnadze. You know, sometimes we help ourselves to blow up some foreign authorities. We found an analysis of this guy [former National Security Adviser Henry] Kissinger. Look what remained of his theory after your speech.

Gorbachev. Nothing remained.

Shevardnadze. If one says, another, second, third, we should not take it as absolute wisdom. I think we should treat it more seriously.

Gorbachev. We are used to the fact, that if, in our country, someone speaks up, then it is necessarily an official viewpoint. And there they just talk [boltaïtur], you see. […]

Gorbachev. When we discussed [alternative military service] at the Defense Council, and even considered it in the Politburo, we spoke about reductions of troops by five hundred thousand. Then, in order to resolve the issue [relating to the drafting of] students, we said: add to these five hundred another hundred thousand, to remove the issue of the enlistment of students, but let’s continue talking everywhere about five hundred thousand. These five hundred [thousand] are straight army troops, and the one hundred [thousand] are construction troops. Eduard Amvrosievič [Shevardnadze] would like to announce the figure six hundred thousand, and I told him—no, because if we start comparing troop numbers, they will always poke their finger at the fact that these are construction troops, and we will insist that they are not. Therefore, officially we speak about 500 thousand.

Yakovlev. Yesterday I met with Matlock. He told me that Bush is more professional, better informed, but at the same time is more cautious. He tried to convince me that he always took part in the preparation of specific decisions, [that he] was interested in details, [that] knew many, that is: he cast the new president in the best possible light.

What else should we keep in mind in terms of putting pressure on the Americans? They are very afraid of our European and Pacific policies. They would not like to [have to] jump on [an already] departing train, a runaway train no less. They are used to being in the driver’s seat. They are upset by our active foreign policy in other regions. […]

Most importantly, Mikhail Sergeevič [Gorbachev], you spoke many times about it, is the disappearance of the enemy image. If we continue to advance in this direction and carry out this business, we will ultimately pull the carpet from under the feet of the military-industrial complex [of the United States]. Of course, the Americans will be forced to change their approaches radically.

Yazov. In accordance with the decision of the Defense Council taken on 9 November [1988], the Ministry of Defense has already worked out the plans for withdrawal of troops from the GDR, CSSR, HPR [Hungarian People’s Republic] and PPR [Polish People’s Republic].

After your speech at the United Nations I attended a Party conference of the Group of Soviet Forces in Germany. There was not a single question or provocative remark. Fourteen people spoke, all with approval. On Saturday I was at the conference in Kiev district of Moscow. There was a question: “Would the withdrawal affect preparedness for defense?” I answered. There were no more questions; everyone reacted with understanding. The entire armed forces of the country regard this with understanding. In the [session of the] Committee of the Defense Ministers that was held in Sofia, all ministers took it with understanding.

I believe we are ready to report to the Defense Council on our plans to implement those proposals that have been publicized at United Nations.

The Ministry of Defense does not object to publicity on the issues of military build-up in the Supreme Soviet. But according to the Constitution the Defense Council approves, so I believe that before moving them to the Commission of the Supreme Council, all the issues should be considered at the Defense Council. I do not know why Cde. Shevardnadze disagrees with this. Before Mikhail Sergeevič [Gorbachev] presented these proposals at the United Nations, this issue had been considered by the Defense Council and over here, in the Politburo. How could it have been otherwise? The Americans do not open [up] everything for us either. What we really learn from them we cannot buy for any money in the world. And why should we pass everything right away through the Commission of the Supreme Soviet? Today the Commission of the Supreme Soviet includes a very broad group [of people]. And not everybody should know everything.

Gorbachev. I think this is a misunderstanding. […]

There are many things that the Americans consider behind closed doors.

Yazov. Absolutely true.

Gorbachev. There are things that the Congress does not even consider. They can be done at the discretion of the President and the National Security Council.

Yazov. Now, on the formula about defensive direction, in his speech Mikhail Sergeevič [Gorbachev] really has mentioned cuts of 10 thousand tanks. In doing this, we have to touch on all the troops that are located in the
Group of Soviet Forces in Germany. We have to include our tank divisions in the reduction. There are motorized regiments in tank divisions. We intend to preserve these motorized regiments. And to remove tank regiments from the tank divisions that stay in Germany, so that more tanks could be withdrawn. In this situation should we really reveal the entire structure only because we want more glasnost?

I believe that this is the prerogative of those countries that provide their territory for our troops. In any case, we will reveal what can be revealed, but it is not necessary to go all the way.

As to the schedule for withdrawal, we are ready to make a report about it. We propose to withdraw three divisions from Eastern Europe during this year and three divisions next year.

As to the part concerning the USSR and Mongolia, we are also prepared to report to the Defense Council on the schedule.

Ligachev. I would like to mention two or three circumstances...In a word, perestroika in international relations is very substantial. By the way it does not lose its class character, which was stressed by Mikhail Sergeevich [Gorbachev] in his report at the 19th Party Conference. At the same time we spoke, and justifiably so, about the priority of common human values, common human interests. I believe that if it were not for common interests of the countries that belong to different social-economic systems, there would be no unity in actions. A common interest exists apparently in the following directions. The huge burden of military budgets. It is felt by the world of socialism as well as by the world of capitalism. Issues related to the survival of humanity, ecological problems have become burning issues. All this, taken together, and above all our policy of initiatives, have led to some changes for the better. […]

Foreign policy is a very large complex of issues. And most important among them, cardinal, is disarmament. […] We need disarmament most of all. We carried this burden, with relation to the military budget, with the result that in the economic area we could hardly solve anything important. […]

But this does not mean that we should weaken the defense preparedness of the country. We have enough ways, approaches, and means to reduce the excessively large military expenditures and to use rationally, pragmatically the means for strengthening the defense readiness of the country. We should tell this to the party, [and] to the party activists. Today, when the world has already begun to disarm, slowly but surely, in the final analysis, the power of the state will be determined not by military might, but by a strong economy and by political cohesion of society.

Vorotnikov. […] I would mention only one point. You, Mikhail Sergeevich [Gorbachev] in your speech have emphasized the ambiguous approach to perestroika and the reaction by the capitalist circles, including the United States. But even in the socialist countries we run into serious problems.

Maybe in our draft resolution we should formulate directions of our policy towards the socialist commonwealth after all? Indeed, there is nothing in the draft, beside [the point about] telebridges that should be arranged together with socialist journalists. I consider the situation in a number of socialist countries so complicated [neprostai] that we should in one or another document clarify our thinking. It flows from your speech.

Gorbachev. Comrades, let us call it a day. Our action that we have been preparing for so long and implemented has evoked a large amount of publicity. It elevates us to a new level in our thinking and work. […] In general, I think that our resolution encompasses all these directions [political, diplomatic, ideological follow-up]. But the comrades should read it once again. Perhaps they will add something useful to it or suggest some corrections. […]

I also have points to add. Vitaly Ivanovich [Vorotnikov] said that people ask within the country: how did it come about that we “strip down” independently? And Yegor Kuzmich [Ligachev] approached this theme from another angle: the Party should know. We will still keep it a secret, speaking frankly. And we will keep this secrecy for one reason: if we admit now that we cannot build a longer-term economic and social policy without [unilateral cuts], then we will be forced to explain – why. Today we cannot tell even the Party about it; first of all we should bring about some order. If we say today how much we are removing for defense from the national revenue, this may reduce to naught [the effect] of the speech at the United Nations. Since such a [disastrous] situation does not exist in any other country. Perhaps only in poor [nischenskih] countries, where half of their budget goes to military spending.

Shevardnadze. For instance, in Angola.

Gorbachev. Yes. But there the budget and everything is different. We are talking about another story. If we take this [glasnost approach] now, then [people] will tell us: your proposal is rubbish, you should cut your military expenditures by three-fourths. How do we go about it, comrades? First, in our plans we build in military expenses twice as large as the growth of national income, then our national income turns out to be going down the tubes, but we stick to our military plans. So you should [be able to] figure out [prikinte] what is going on here. For that reason we should be patient for a little bit longer. But you are all right—we will have to speak about it. Meanwhile only in a political sense. […] By the time of 13th Five-Year Plan, Yuri Dmitrievich [Masliukov] we will implement all these decisions and will have something to say. Then our expenditures on this article [defense] will be somewhat
closer to the American expenditures.

[...] A lot of work should be done on the issue of our [military] grouping in Eastern Europe. We should do it in a systematic way [planomerno]. I know that all these proposals are being prepared for the Defense Council. We agreed to hold it in early January and to discuss all these issues. [...] 

[...] See that younger officers do not develop a [negative] mood: is it worth continuing military service, continuing to be in the army. This should be prevented, comrades. … A country like ours cannot live without [an army]. Everything depends on many factors. I believe that whatever happens we should modernize the army. Incidentally, the army is needed for the maintenance of internal stability. This is an important tool in every sense. That is it. Let’s finish our exchange. It was necessary. It is really a grand-scale policy-making. I propose to instruct Comrades Shevardnadze, Zaikov, Yakovlev, Yazov, V.M. Kamentsev to finalize the draft resolution of the CC on this issue having in mind the discussion at the Politburo.

MEMBERS OF THE POLITBURO. Agreed.

[Source: Center for the Storage of Contemporary Documentation (TsKhSD), Moscow, fond 89, perechen’ 42, dokument 24. Translated by Vladislav Zubok.]

Address by Soviet President Mikhail S. Gorbachev to the 43rd U.N. General Assembly Session, 7 December 1988
(Excerpts)

Two great revolutions, the French revolution of 1789 and the Russian revolution of 1917, have exerted a powerful influence on the actual nature of the historical process and radically changed the course of world events. Both of them, each in its own way, have given a gigantic impetus to man’s progress. They are also the ones that have formed in many respects the way of thinking which is still prevailing in the public consciousness.

That is a very great spiritual wealth, but there emerges before us today a different world, for which it is necessary to seek different roads toward the future, to seek—relying, of course, on accumulated experience—but also seeing the radical differences between that which was yesterday and that which is taking place today.

The newness of the tasks, and at the same time their difficulty, are not limited to this. Today we have entered an era when progress will be based on the interests of all mankind. Consciousness of this requires that world policy, too, should be determined by the priority of the values of all mankind.

The history of the past centuries and millennia has been a history of almost ubiquitous wars, and sometimes desperate battles, leading to mutual destruction. They occurred in the clash of social and political interests and national hostility, be it from ideological or religious incompatibility. All that was the case, and even now many still claim that this past—which has not been overcome—is an immutable pattern. However, parallel with the process of wars, hostility, and alienation of peoples and countries, another process, just as objectively conditioned, was in motion and gaining force: The process of the emergence of a mutually connected and integral world. [...] 

The very tackling of global problems requires a new “volume” and “quality” of cooperation by states and sociopolitical currents regardless of ideological and other differences.

Of course, radical and revolutionary changes are taking place and will continue to take place within individual countries and social structures. This has been and will continue to be the case, but our times are making corrections here, too. Internal transformational processes cannot achieve their national objectives merely by taking “course parallel” with others without using the achievements of the surrounding world and the possibilities of equitable cooperation. In these conditions, interference in those internal processes with the aim of altering them according to someone else’s prescription would be all the more destructive for the emergence of a peaceful order. In the past, differences often served as a factor in pulling away from one another. Now they are being given the opportunity to be a factor in mutual enrichment and attraction. Behind differences in social structure, in the way of life, and in the preference for certain values, stand interests. There is no getting away from that, but neither is there any getting away from the need to find a balance of interests within an international framework, which has become a condition for survival and progress. As you ponder all this, you come to the conclusion that if we wish to take account of the lessons of the past and the realities of the present, if we must reckon with the objective logic of world development, it is necessary to seek—and the seek jointly—an approach toward improving the international situation and building a new world. If that is so, then it is also worth agreeing on the fundamental and truly universal prerequisites and principles for such activities. It is evident, for example, that force and the threat of force can no longer be, and should not be, instruments of foreign policy. [...] 

Freedom of choice is a universal principle to which there should be no exceptions. We have not come to the conclusion of
To request a Working Paper, please write to the:
Cold War International History Project
Woodrow Wilson International Center for Scholars
One Woodrow Wilson Plaza
1300 Pennsylvania Ave., NW
Washington, D.C. 20004-3027
coldwar1@wwic.si.edu
The Tbilisi Massacre, April 1989:
Documents

[On 9 April 1989, Soviet Army troops and Interior Ministry forces opened fire on a mass demonstration in front of Government House in Tbilisi, Georgia. The demonstration had begun as a hunger strike by several hundred students to denounce attempts by the Abkhazian minority to secede from Georgia—one of a growing number of ethnic, nationalist, even separatist disturbances that perestroika had unleashed within the Soviet Union. The protest quickly escalated into an anti-government demonstration with calls for a restoration of Georgia’s independence. Cutting off escape routes and using toxic gas and metal entrenching tools, the government forces under the command of Gen. Igor Rodionov quickly put a violent end to the peaceful demonstration, killing at least nineteen people. Several hundred demonstrators, many of them women and youth, suffered injuries as a result of crowd rush, stabbing and poisonings. Soviet leader Mikhail Gorbachev, who had been abroad during the crisis, quickly criticized the use of force by the Soviet Army and the Georgian Communist leadership. But to opposition groups within the USSR and East-Central Europe, the Tbilisi massacre became a chilling reminder of the fragility of perestroika and the potential for violent reactions by the authorities.

The documents printed below (in excerpts) were published by S. V. Popov, Yu. V. Vasil’yev and A.D. Chernev in the journal Istoricheskiy Arkhiv. The three cables from Georgian leader Dzhumbar Patiashvili to Moscow had been published earlier in the stenographic record of the first USSR Congress of People’s Deputies by A. I. Luk’yanov, but, according to Popov et al., contained a mass of inaccuracies if compared to the archival copies in the Center for the Storage of Contemporary Documentation (TsKhSD). Additional materials on the Tbilisi massacre are likely to be found the records of the Presidential Archive, the Ministry of Interior Archives as well as the General Staff Archives, thus far largely inaccessible to researchers.—Christian F. Ostermann]

**DOCUMENT No. 1**

**Telegram from First Secretary of the Georgian Communist Party, Dzhumbar I. Patiashvili, to the Central Committee (CC) of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union (CPSU), 7 April 1989**

*Incoming enciphered message No. 217/sh*

From Tbilisi
Received 7 April 1989
8:40 p.m.

The situation in the Republic has recently worsened and is practically getting out of control. A gathering in the village of Lykhny of the Abkhazian ASSR [Autonomous Socialist Socialist Republic] on 18 March of this year which raised the question of the secession of the Autonomous Republic from the GSSR [Georgian Soviet Socialist Republic] served as the pretext. However, events have gone beyond these bounds.

Extremist elements are whipping up nationalist sentiments; calling for strikes and disobedience to authority, are organizing disturbances, and are discrediting Party and government [sovetskiy] bodies. Emergency measures need to be taken in the existing situation.

We consider it necessary:

1. To immediately bring to criminal and administrative responsibility the extremists who are expressing anti-Soviet, anti-socialist, and anti-Party slogans and appeals (there are legal justifications for this);

2. Introduce a special situation [curfew] in Tbilisi with the involvement of additional forces of the MVD [Ministry of Internal Affairs] and the ZAKVO [ZakVO, Transcaucasian Military District];

3. To carry out a number of political, organizational, and administrative measures to stabilize the situation, using Party, government, and administrative activists [aktiv];

4. Not to permit publications which aggravate the situation access to national and Republic mass media.

We request your consent for points 1, 2, and 4.

Secretary of the CC of the Georgian CP
D. Patiashvili

DOCUMENT No. 2
Telegram from D. I. Patiashvili to the CC CPSU,
8 April 1989

Incoming enciphered message No. 219/sh
From Tbilisi
Received 8 April 1989
8:50 p.m.

I report that the situation in Tbilisi continues to remain tense.

A gathering of many thousands of people is taking place at Government House whose main slogans remain as before: “Secession from the USSR, the creation of an independent Georgia”, “Liquidation of autonomies”, etc.

A 3,500-person rally in the Abkhazian ASSR [Autonomous Socialist Soviet Republic] of people of Georgian nationality directed against the secession of Abkhaziya from the GSSR has taken place.

In a number of higher educational institutions parts of the student body have declared a hunger strike in support of the demonstrators. As a whole the CP [Communist Party] CC, the government, and local Party and government authorities have a grip on the situation and are taking the necessary measures to stabilize the situation.

Yesterday, 7 April, a meeting of the Bureau of the CC Georgian CP [GCP] took place and today there was a meeting of the Party activists of the Republic at which measures of Party, government, and law enforcement agencies were approved to strengthen political, organizational, and indoctrination work in labor collectives and places of residence; also, an appeal of the CC of the Communist Party, the Supreme Soviet, and the Council of Ministers of Georgia to the Party members and workers of Georgia has been adopted.

In particular, it was planned to hold meetings of activists in all regions of the Republic and meetings of primary Party organizations with the participation of members of the Bureau and the CC GCP where practical plans of action were worked out for the development of projected measures. A series of speeches of eminent figures of science and culture of the Republic and representatives of the working class and peasantry have been organized on television and radio and in the press. “Roundtables” and youth meetings are being held in higher educational institutions on current issues of the public life of Georgia, the destructiveness of illegal activities, the measures of responsibility for what has been done, and the need to strengthen discipline and order for the further development of democracy and glasnost.

After the activists’ meeting everyone fanned out and went to workplaces to explain its materials and the Party policy in present conditions and the unity of the Party and the people in carrying out the tasks of perestroika.

Workers’ groups [druzhiny] consisting of 4,685 people have been created at 111 Tbilisi enterprises and institutions to maintain discipline and orderliness. Specific plans have been developed and are being carried out together with the MVD and ZAKVO [sic] to maintain law and order and adopt, if necessary, exhaustive measures to prevent disorders and illegal acts. The entire staff of the CC, the Supreme Soviet, the GSSR Council of Ministers, the Tbilisi City Party Committee and City Executive Committee are efficiently performing their functions and actively working among the population and demonstrators.

No more additional measures on the part of the CC CPSU or the USSR government are required at the present time besides those adopted earlier.

This is reported for your information.

Secretary of the CC GCP, D. Patiashvili


DOCUMENT No. 3
Telegram from D. I. Patiashvili to the CC CPSU,
9 April 1989

Incoming enciphered message No. 220/sh
From Tbilisi
Received 9 April 1989
10:25 a.m.

In Tbilisi after 9:00 p.m. on the night of 8 April 1989, in spite of all measures being taken by the Party, government, and the forces of law and order, the situation at a demonstration of about 15,000 people at the Republic Government House and also in other parts of the city began to be inflamed by extremists and got out of control. Besides anti-Soviet, anti-socialist, and anti-Russian exhortations, appeals began to be spread by extremists for physical violence against Communists, leaders of the Republic, and members of their families. The demonstrators, among whom

⭐⭐⭐

DOCUMENT No. 3
Telegram from D. I. Patiashvili to the CC CPSU,
9 April 1989

Incoming enciphered message No. 220/sh
From Tbilisi
Received 9 April 1989
10:25 a.m.

In Tbilisi after 9:00 p.m. on the night of 8 April 1989, in spite of all measures being taken by the Party, government, and the forces of law and order, the situation at a demonstration of about 15,000 people at the Republic Government House and also in other parts of the city began to be inflamed by extremists and got out of control. Besides anti-Soviet, anti-socialist, and anti-Russian exhortations, appeals began to be spread by extremists for physical violence against Communists, leaders of the Republic, and members of their families. The demonstrators, among whom
were many drunks and drug users, were called upon to organize the entire population of the Republic to strike, commit civil disobedience, and violence against those who did not support them. Groups of extremists began to be delegated together with demonstrators to nearby cities and rayons of the Republic. An attempt was made in the city of Rustavi to seize a metallurgical works.

The leaders of the so-called “National Liberation Movement” have begun to publicize their plans to seize power in the Republic. In order to ensure public order and prevent unforeseeable consequences in this situation, a decision was made at 4:00 a.m. to use force to clear the square and Government House of the demonstrators. Subunits of the Republic MVD and the Transcaucasian Military District were used in accordance with a plan developed earlier by competent authorities. As they approached the place where the demonstration was being held, its participants were called upon by leaders of the Republic, members of the CP CC, Party and government activists, and also the Catholicos of Georgia Ilya II to stop the demonstration and peacefully disperse. However, the demonstrators did not react to this. In turn, the organizers of the demonstration inflamed passions to hysteria, calling upon them not to spare their blood or their lives to confront the forces of law and order.

The MVD subunits and ZAKVO [sic] troops did not use small arms or silent weapons [kholodnoye oruzhiye]. Instructions about the cautious treatment of women and adolescents were strictly observed. As the first ranks of the demonstrators were driven back, accompanied by fierce resistance by extremists using sticks and stones, the crowd began to become disorderly and moved toward a youth lying on a sidewalk who had declared a hunger strike. Moreover, there were quite a few provocateurs in the crowd who were using silent weapons. As a result of the crush which had formed, 16 people died (13 young women and 3 [young] men) and more than 100 received injuries of varying severity, among whom were 22 servicemen (13 of them were hospitalized). First aid was given to the victims.

At the present time the square at Government House has been cleared of demonstrators and has been taken under guard by troops. The necessary measures are being taken to detain and arrest the ringleaders of the disorders and prevent new demonstrations. A governmental commission has been formed headed by the Chairman of the Georgian SSR Council of Ministers, Cde. Z.A. Chkheidze in connection with the tragic consequences of the measures which were taken.

A plenum of the CC GCP is planned for today to review the current situation and identify the measures ensuing from it.

We request your agreement to introduce a curfew in the city of Tbilisi beginning today in order to prevent mass disorders and to stabilize the situation.

Secretary of the CC GCP, D. Patiashvili


---

**DOCUMENT No. 4**

Resolution of the CC CPSU Politburo

“Measures to Normalize the Situation in Tbilisi,”

10 April 1989

1. Approve the text of the Appeal of the CC CPSU General Secretary and Chairman of the Presidium of the USSR Supreme Soviet, Cde. M.S. Gorbachev, to Communists and all workers of the Georgian SSR.

2. Be guided by the views expressed at the meeting of the CC Politburo when taking measures to normalize the situation in the city of Tbilisi.

CC CPSU Politburo


---

**DOCUMENT No. 5**

Note from A. S. Kapto, A. S. Pavlov, and Ye. Z. Razumov to the CC CPSU

In connection with the aggravation of the political situation in the Georgian SSR we consider it advisable to send the following recommendations to local Party committees (attached).

We request your agreement.

A. Kapto  Ye. Razumov  A. Pavlov

To the CP CC’s of union republics, kray, and oblast’ Party committees

The aggravation of the political situation in the
Georgian SSR which is noted in the TASS report of 10 April again shows the entire importance of timely preventive measures on the part of local Party, government, and law enforcement bodies. The CC CPSU directs the attention of the CP CC’s of union republics, kray, and oblast’ Party committees to the need for a deep and comprehensive analysis of the situation which has unfolded in each region and the implementation of effective work to put an end to various kinds of antisocial manifestations.

Party committees and primary Party organizations ought to ensure high political vigilance, not permit complacency and lack of principle in evaluating extremism and nationalism, decisively put an end to any fabrications directed at undermining the foundations of the state, and not ignore any instance of illegal actions.

It is necessary to more diligently improve mass political work in labor collectives and the population’s places of residence. Sound out the mood of the people sensitively, react quickly to their needs and requests, and root out bureaucratism and red tape. Pay special attention to the organization of educational work among the student population. Mobilize all Party, government, and Komsomol activists for these purposes. Increase the responsibility of leadership cadre for the political situation in each collective and their personal participation in educational work and public speeches before workers and youth.

The CC CPSU stresses the exceptionally important role and responsibility of the mass media for an objective treatment of the processes which are occurring and the correct formation of public opinion.

It is necessary to concentrate the attention of law enforcement bodies on the adoption of timely and decisive measures directed at people committing violations of socialist law, facilitating the kindling of ethnic strife with their inflammatory actions, and inciting people on the path to anarchy and disorder.

In this regard, Party committees and the leaders of law enforcement agencies, using the mass media and the entire arsenal of ideological and educational work, are to ensure the explanation and deep study of the USSR Supreme Soviet Presidium decrees published in the press directed at a fuller and more effective use of the means of protecting the Soviet constitutional order and ethnic equality; [they] permit a more active struggle to be waged against various kinds of extremist elements.

It is recommended that Party committees investigate additional measures in their Bureaus to strengthen discipline, order, and organization in every way in each region.
DOCUMENT No. 7
Decree of the CC CPSU Secretariat
“The Issue of the Events in the City of Tbilisi,”
29 April 1989

No. ST 100/105I
Top Secret

The Commission consisting of Cdes. G.S. Tarazevich (Chairman); G.V. Sergeev; V.L. Govorov; V.P. Pirozhkov; N.I. Demidov; and O.V. Kvilitaya is charged with studying the circumstances of the events which took place on 9 April in the city of Tbilisi and reporting to the CC CPSU.

Results of the voting: V. Chebrikov for
A. Yakovlev for
V. Medvedev for
N. Nikonov for
M. Gorbachev for
Ye. Ligachev for
L. Zaykov for
E. Shevardnadze for
O. Baklanov for
N. Slyun’kov for


DOCUMENT No. 8
Findings of the Commission of the USSR Congress of People’s Deputies to Investigate the Events which Occurred in the City of Tbilisi, 9 April 1989

1. Introduction

The Commission to investigate the events which took place in the city of Tbilisi on 9 April 1989 was created by the USSR Congress of People’s Deputies and composed of 24 persons, among whom were representatives of 9 union republics, state and public figures, well-known scientists and writers, and representatives of the army and church. A.A. Sobchak was elected Chairman of the Commission; Kh. Yu. Aasmeyah, A.I. Golyakov and V.P. Tomkus were chosen as Deputy Chairmen and S.B. Stankevich was chosen as the Secretary.

In accordance with the assignment of the Congress, the Commission considered its mission to be to explain the actual nature of the events which took place on the night of 9 April in the city of Tbilisi, the reasons for the tragedy, the legality of the decisions adopted at various levels of the Party, state, and military leadership associated with them [the events], and to evaluate a number of the consequences of these events. In the process of the Commission’s work the need was uncovered to respond to a more general issue: the conditions and permissible limits of using Soviet Army sub-units to maintain public order.

The members of the Commission familiarized themselves with documents received from the commissions which investigated these events under the chairmanship of G.S. Tarazevich, the USSR Ministry of Defense; Chairman, General-Major of the Medical Service G.A. Sofronov; and the Georgian SSR Supreme Soviet, Chairman, Professor T.G. Shavgulidze; and also with materials (cipher messages, notes, written reports, stenographic records of meetings, etc.) received from the CC CPSU and CC GCP, the Presidiums of the USSR Supreme Soviet and the Georgian SSR Supreme Soviet, the USSR Ministry of Defense, the command of the ZakVO, the Ministries of Internal Affairs of the USSR and the Georgian SSR, the USSR Procuracy, and other state and public organizations.

The Commission met with the Chairman of the USSR Supreme Soviet, General Secretary of the CC CPSU, Cde. M.S. Gorbachev.

The Commission heard the Politburo members who are CC Secretaries: Cdes. Ye.K. Ligachev, and V.M. Chebrikov; USSR Foreign Minister Eh.A. Shevardnadze; Candidate members of the Politburo: First Deputy Chairman of the USSR Supreme Soviet, A.I. Luk’yanov; CC CPSU Secretary G.P. Razumovsky; USSR Minister of Defense, D.T. Yazov; USSR Minister of Internal Affairs, V.V. Bakatin; several senior officials of the CC CPSU staff; the leaders of the CC GCP; the leadership of the USSR Ministry of Defense, MVD, the Georgian SSR MVD, the USSR KGB, and the Georgian KGB; representatives of the Main Military Procuracy and the Procuracy of the Georgian SSR; and also the commands of ZakVO, units, and subunits of the Soviet Army, Internal Troops, and militia who took part in the 9 April 1989 operation. Conversations were held with eyewitnesses to the events: militia members [rabotniki]; Georgian SSR Ministry of Health and first aid workers; servicemen of the Soviet Army and Internal Troops; representatives of the public; veterans of Afghanistan [voiny-internatsionalisty]; clergy (including the Patriarch of the Georgian Orthodox Church, Catholicos of Georgia Ilya II); representatives of the Popular Front and the unofficial organizations of Georgia; and individual citizens, in particular, those victims who were treated in medical institutions in the city of Tbilisi.

Materials were studied which had been published in
the periodic press and also the numerous letters and telegrams which had been sent to the Commission from citizens who live in various regions of our country.

In the process of their work, members of the Commission travelled to the city of Tbilisi and met with representatives of the Georgian public and ZakVO, and visited hospitals and the military units which participated in the events.

To gain a correct evaluation of the events which occurred in the city of Tbilisi on 9 April 1989 it is necessary to proceed from the idea that the country has entered upon an irrevocably democratic path of development which is meaningless without the constant exercise of the most diverse forms of popular social activity. The main substance of this is the aspiration to express one’s own interests and take a realistic, constructive part in democratic development by legal means, within the bounds of a strict observance of public order. And in these conditions the duty of state authority and law enforcement bodies is to afford realistic guarantees and protection for such activity.

But of course actions of an anti-social, illegal, and violent nature are possible in the course of these processes. And here the duty of state authority is to display firmness and use force within necessary limits.

The principal significance in this connection is an objective evaluation of the situation. Inaction by the authorities against violence and violations of law would be unforgivable. But the use of force against a peaceful meeting or demonstration which results in casualties is also unforgivable. In both cases this is a blow against perestroika and democracy.

Evaluating what took place, the Commission found that perestroika has caused an awakening of national consciousness and an attempt to achieve genuine economic independence and state sovereignty, which today characterize the social and political situation not only in Georgia but in other union republics. The conditions for the tragic events of 9 April 1989 in Tbilisi developed over a long [period of] time. Signs of a crisis were displayed in them which involved many areas of government administration and public life in the Republic and in the country as a whole.

The Commission notes that in the process of democratization unavoidable differences and extremes appeared in the views and appeals expressed, in the evaluations of trends, and the paths and forms of future political development of the Republic and the entire country. Together with public movements and organizations striving for democratic renewal of the economic and political system of socialism, unofficial organizations appeared in the Republic whose program also contained positions of an anti-socialist and nationalistic nature. Their activity ran counter to perestroika and seriously inflamed the political situation in the Republic.

In these conditions, the most important task for the government and Party leadership of the Republic was to justify its role as the political and ideological vanguard, to act in the spirit of perestroika with the conviction [that it could] influence the mood of people and not permit its own estrangement from the actual development of the political processes of the Republic. However the leadership of the CC GCP did not manage to find contact and establish dialogue with the public. Subsequently, as social processes developed the popularity of unofficial groups increased and the leadership embarked on a course of confrontation. It is this which in particular could explain the circumstance in which petitions to hold demonstrations were greeted with refusal, as a rule, with few exceptions, as a result of which illegal meetings began to be held in practice without previous notification to the authorities. Thus the leadership of the Republic gradually lost control over political processes, Party influence over the masses waned, and its authority fell among the broad strata of the population. This occurred back during the events of 1988, when only an active political position of the Georgian intelligentsia and an appeal by M. S. Gorbachev to the Georgian people helped relieve the situation. But the leaders of the Republic themselves were already inclined to use force by then.

Unfortunately the necessary changes in the position and actions of the Georgian leadership did not subsequently occur.

The Commission thinks that such facts as the self-isolation of the leadership of the Republic and the inadequate, at times panicky, evaluation of specific situations, and the inability to positively influence the situation with political methods were some of the main causes which led, in the final account, to the tragic consequences of the events of 9 April in the city of Tbilisi.

2. The Situation in the Republic on the Eve of the Events of 9 April and the Mechanism of the Decisionmaking to Halt the Demonstration

At the end of March and the beginning of April 1989, a serious worsening of the political situation occurred in connection with events in Abkhazia, which served as a direct pretext for the unofficial organizations to hold an unauthorized multi-day demonstration in front of Government House in Tbilisi. However by 6 April, the anti-Abkhazian nature of the demonstration had sharply changed, in connection with the replacement of the leadership of the Abkhazian Oblast’ of the GCP, and an extremist demand was advanced for the withdrawal of Georgia from the USSR. At the same time, many urgent
issues troubling the public were discussed at the demonstration. Thousands of citizens participated in it (from morning to late evening). Hundreds of demonstrators remained at Government House at night. All this led to the disruption of the operation of transportation and of several government institutions in the center of the city and to breaches of the peace in the capital. The appeal of the CC GCP, the Presidium of the Supreme Soviet, and the Council of Ministers of the Georgian SSR broadcast on republic radio and television had no positive effect on the demonstrators. [The] organizers [of the demonstrations] sent their representatives to work groups, higher educational institutions, and schools with a call to begin a strike and join with the demonstrators, and they resorted to picketing. Many higher educational institutions and schools suspended classes.

However, it is necessary to stress that a majority of workers and employees of the capital of Georgia did not support these calls and continued to work.

In the course of the demonstration, irresponsible calls to disobey the legal instructions of authorities were spread, and slogans of a nationalistic, anti-socialist, and anti-Soviet nature were advanced, in particular: “Down with the Communist regime!”, “Down with Russian imperialism!”, “USSR the prison of peoples!”, “Down with Soviet power!”,”Liquidate Abkhazian autonomy!”, etc. The organizers of the demonstration continued to inflame the situation and called for the demonstrations, strikes, and hunger strikes to continue until 14 April.

Thus, the political situation in Tbilisi on the eve of the events of 9 April was characterized as an emergency and demanded the adoption of urgent and crucial decisions from the leadership of the GCP and the government of the Republic.

The Commission notes, however, that in the course of the investigation no terrorist acts were identified and no facts were established indicating that there was a real attempt to seize power or that there were politically motivated incidents of violence or assaults [pokusheniya] against workers of government and Party organizations, Party members, or citizens of non-Georgian nationality.

It is typical that the demonstration was accompanied by such a passive form of protest as the declaration of a mass multi-day hunger strike (more than 100 [people] at Government House took part in a hunger strike).

It was necessary to stop the unauthorized demonstration during this period, but this task should have and could have been carried out by the authorities who were entrusted by law with ensuring public order, the authorities of the Republic MVD. The Commission notes that the MVD of the Georgian SSR and the Directorate of Internal Affairs of the city of Tbilisi did not perform the responsibilities entrusted to them to stop the unauthorized demonstration, although, according to a statement of the Georgian MVD, they repeatedly raised with the leadership of the Republic the issue of stopping the demonstration that was underway in front of Government House and restoring the normal situation in the capital with the aid of the forces at their disposal. However, this suggestion was not approved by the leadership of the Republic for fear of complications in the form of mass demonstrations by the population which, in their opinion, the available forces of the Internal Troops and militia could not handle.

The leadership of the Republic considered that this measure could have been implemented on condition that a curfew was introduced, for which additional military subunits needed to be brought in.

Therefore they decided to appeal for help to the Soviet authorities. At 8:35 p.m. on 7 April, a well-known telegram, prepared by the Second Secretary of the CC GCP, B.V. Nikol’skiy, was sent to the CC CPSU over the signature of the First Secretary of the CC GCP, D.I. Patiashvili. In the opinion of the Commission, the evaluation of the political situation in the Republic contained in this telegram did not completely correspond to the real state of affairs and was not a sufficient justification for concentrating military subunits in the city of Tbilisi and introducing a state of emergency (curfew).

The Commission notes the existence of serious oversights and violations of law committed by both Soviet as well as Republic authorities in the process of preparing and implementing measures to stop the demonstration at Government House in Tbilisi on the night of 9 April.

A meeting was held in the CC CPSU on 7 April 1989 under the leadership of Politburo member and CC CPSU Secretary Cde. Ye. K. Ligachev in which the following took part: Politburo members Cdes. V.A. Medvedev, N.N. Slyun’kov, V.M. Chebrikov; Candidate members of the Politburo Cdes. A.I. Luk’yanyan, G.P. Razumovskiy, D.T. Yazov; Chairman of the USSR KGB, V.A. Cde. Kryuchkov; Deputy USSR Minister of Internal Affairs Cde. V.P. Trushin., and a number of senior officials of the CC CPSU staff. The issue of the situation in Georgia was examined.

The work of the meeting was not recorded and its conclusions were not documented. One can judge the content of the decisions worked out only from the explanations of the participants of the meeting. At the meeting consent was actually given to granting the verbal requests of the leadership of the Republic to make Internal Troops and Soviet Army subunits available. A directive of the General Staff of the USSR Ministry of Defense and an order of the USSR MVD were issued on this basis to send the corresponding military subunits to Georgia.
It was recommended that the leadership of the Republic collectively discuss the situation which had arisen and find a way out of the current situation using political means.

A warning was made about the need to observe extreme caution and to use troops only in an exceptional situation. The leadership of the Republic was informed by telephone that, in view of the current situation, it should make specific decisions about the use of the troops being sent to Georgia jointly with the command of ZakVO. Thus it was not recommended at that moment that a state of emergency be introduced and a curfew be declared in the city of Tbilisi.

The Chairman of the Presidium of the USSR Supreme Soviet, M. S. Gorbachev, returned to Moscow from a foreign trip on 7 April 1989 at 11:00 p.m. and was informed about the situation in Georgia. He then made a suggestion to send Cdes. Eh. A. Shevardnadze and G.P. Razumovskiy to Georgia.

The next day a second meeting was held in the CC CPSU devoted to the situation in Georgia. It was led by Politburo member and CC Secretary Cde. V. M. Chebrikov. The participants were the same as on 7 April 1989 with the exception of Cde. Ye. K. Ligachev, who had gone on leave. Politburo member Cde. Eh. A. Shevardnadze and USSR Minister of Internal Affairs Cde. V.V. Bakatin were also present at the meeting. As [had occurred] the day before, the work of the meeting was not recorded and the decisions made were not documented. By this time an enciphered message of 8 April 1989 had been received signed by D.I. Patiashvili, saying that the situation in the city was stabilizing and was under control. Cdes. Eh. A. Shevardnadze and D.I. Patiashvili had an exchange of opinions by telephone. Referring to the stabilization of the situation on the night of 7-8 April, Cde. D.I. Patiashvili considered the arrival of Cdes. Eh. A. Shevardnadze and G.P. Razumovskiy to be unnecessary and the participants of the meeting agreed.

Thus the dispatch to Georgia of subunits of the Internal Troops, special militia subunits, and troops of the Soviet Army was done by agreement of the above meetings in the CC CPSU on 7 and 8 April. This was in contradiction to existing legislation according to which the right to make such decisions belonged not to Party, but to the appropriate government agencies. Such a decision-making procedure leads to virtual inaction of the constitutional agencies of Soviet power, as happened in this case.

At the Republic level the plan of measures to normalize the situation in the Republic, including measures to introduce a state of emergency and bring in troops from the Transcaucasian Military District, was first adopted by the Bureau of the CC GCP and then approved by a meeting of Party activists of the Republic held on 8 April 1989. At this meeting of activists an evaluation of the situation was given, a plan of measures to normalize the situation was approved, and a decision was made for all of the activists to go to the demonstration, take part in it, and try to convince the participants to stop the demonstration and normalize the situation. However, this most important decision was not carried out by the Party activists.

The issue of halting the unauthorized demonstration was repeatedly discussed by the Bureau of the CC GCP. The decision to halt the meeting was adopted by the Bureau of the CC GCP on 8 April. At a meeting of the Defense Council of the Republic held the same day, the issues associated with this were discussed, in spite of the fact that it had no authority to do this. The time to carry out the operation was determined later by a narrow circle of people (Cdes. D.I. Patiashvili, B.V. Nikol’skiy, K.A. Kochetov, and I.N. Rodionov) considering that toward morning the fewest number of people remained in the square, as a rule, no more than 200 hunger strikers and their relatives.

The Commission notes that the decisions made at the meetings of the Bureau of the CC GCP and the Defense Council of the Republic were not documented properly or in a timely manner, which gave a number of participants at the meeting an opportunity to deny their participation in the adoption of the decision to halt the demonstration in front of Government House.

The supervision of the preparation and the conduct of the operation to halt the meeting and to develop a plan of operations was entrusted to the Commanding General of the ZakVO, General [-Colonel] I.N. Rodionov, as the one senior in rank and on the basis of the authorization given to him by a decision of the Bureau of the CC GCP, subordinating to him all the men and equipment made available to bring order to the city.

The Commission thinks that the senior officials of the CC CPSU staff present at this time in Tbilisi (V.N. Lobko, V.S. Buyanov, and A.Ye. Selivanov) could have helped the Party leadership of the Republic both in a correct evaluation of the existing situation and in stabilizing and improving the situation by political means.

On the evening of 8 April 1989, an instruction of the Georgian SSR Council of Ministers was issued, signed by the Chairman of the GSSR Council of Ministers, Cde. Z.A. Chkhheidze, by which the Georgian SSR MVD was directed to enlist servicemen of the Internal Troops and the Soviet Army in taking measures to remove the demonstrators from the area adjacent to Government House. This is the only document about halting the unauthorized demonstration in Tbilisi not adopted by a Party, but by a government body. However, the order contained in the instruction to involve
servicemen in carrying out this task is illegal since the government of the Republic had not provided such authority.

At the same time the Commission notes that the Presidium of the Georgian SSR Supreme Soviet (Chairman Cde. O.Ye. Cherkeziya) removed itself from making the necessary constitutional decisions in the developing situation.

The marshalling of troops and the preparation for the operation to halt the unauthorized demonstration occurred in the following manner:

Right after the meeting in the CC CPSU on 7 April 1989, a verbal instruction followed from the USSR Minister of Defense, General of the Army D.T. Yazov, to Generals K.A. Kochetov and I.N. Rodionov to go to Tbilisi, where they were to act in accordance with the situation as they saw it. On the same day (7 April 1989 at 4:50 p.m.) the Chief of the General Staff, General of the Army M.A. Moiseyev, issued a directive on behalf of the Minister of Defense to send an airborne regiment to the Tbilisi area to place the most important facilities under guard and organize monitoring of the main roads leading in and out of Tbilisi. At the same time three military units of the Tbilisi garrison were brought to full combat readiness.

On order of Deputy USSR Minister of Internal Affairs I.F. Shilov subunits of the Internal Troops and special militia subunits (OMON), totalling more than 2,000 men, were also sent to Tbilisi from various regions of the country.

After their arrival in Tbilisi on the evening of the same day, Generals K.A. Kochetov and I.N. Rodionov met with the First and Second Secretaries of the CC GCP, D.I. Patiashvili and B.V. Nikol’skiy. At this meeting the Party leaders of Georgia again insistently requested that a curfew be introduced, referring to the lack of a sufficient number of troops. Only then was the illegal decision made to make a show of military force.

On the morning of 8 April 1989, three squadrons of combat helicopters overflew the city at low altitude and about noon combat equipment with armed soldiers proceeded through the streets of Tbilisi along three routes and past the demonstrators.

This action played a provocative role. In reply, individual groups of demonstrators resorted to further violation of the law: they began to seize transport equipment and used it to close off both the exits from Rustaveli Avenue and the exits to the streets adjacent to the Avenue (29 buses, trolleys, and heavy duty vehicles were used in all; six of the vehicles had their tires deflated). At the same time people began to gather in the square. Toward evening a demonstration by women was held around the residence of D.I. Patiashvili, demanding that troops be withdrawn from Tbilisi. No one talked with them; subsequently the women (numbering about 700) went to the square and joined the demonstrators. Thus the show of military force directly resulted in a sharp increase in the numbers of demonstrators. In this complicated situation it would have been more advisable to hold off with a decision to forcibly stop the demonstration, but having lost the capability by that time to realistically evaluate and manage the processes which were occurring, the Party leadership of the Republic did not see any way out of the given situation other than to use force.

General I.N. Rodionov charged the Chief of the Operations Directorate of the USSR MVD Internal Troops Staff, General Yu. T.Yefimov, who had arrived in Tbilisi on 7 April 1989, with developing a specific plan of operations to force the demonstrators out of the square in front of the Government House.

The plan of operations and the schedule of troop operations were signed by General Yu.T. Yefimov and Minister of Internal Affairs of Georgia, Sh. V. Gorgodze, and then approved by General I.N. Rodionov.

An order with the assignment of missions to individual subunits was given verbally. No reconnoitering with subunit commanders took place.

The operation to stop the demonstration began on 9 April at 4:00 a.m. and ended tragically. The Commission notes that violations of both the procedure for making such a decision and its realization were committed while introducing the curfew in Tbilisi on the evening of 9 April on the basis of a resolution of the Presidium of the Georgian SSR Supreme Soviet.

3. The Actual Course of the Operation to Stop the Demonstration

According to the decision approved by the leader of the operation, General-Colonel I.N. Rodionov, by 3:30 a.m. on 9 April troops were concentrated on Lenin Square; they were charged with the mission of forcing the demonstrators from the square in front of Government House along Rustaveli Avenue to Republic Square. They consisted of the 4th Motorized Rifle Regiment of the Independent Special Purpose Motorized Rifle Division (4-y MSP OMSDON), Moscow City-650 men; a special purpose militia detachment (OMON), Perm’-120 men; OMON, Voronezh City-40 men; the Higher Militia School (FSH), Gor’kiy City-450 men; the 8th Motorized Rifle Regiment (8-y MSP), Tbilisi-650 men; the Georgian SSR MVD-250 men; and an airborne regiment (VDP)-440 men.
The following took part in the operation: 2,550 men, 6 armored personnel carriers (BTR), 8 airborne combat vehicles (BMD), 4 fire trucks, and 2 ambulances.

Before the start of the operation General-Major Yu. T. Yefimov verbally assigned the following missions to the commanders of the subunits:

The 4th MSP is to move slowly along Rustaveli Avenue from Lenin Square to Republic Square to force the demonstrators to the line—the “Iveriya” Hotel [sic].

According to the written explanation by Yu.T. Yefimov, approved by an MVD Commission under the chairmanship of Deputy Minister V.P. Trushin, the mission assigned to the 8th MSP was described otherwise than it was written in the decision, namely:

The 8th MSP is to move at the start of the operation with two battalions to the square in front of Government House along Chitadze and Chichinadze Streets, where they are to cut off a group of hunger strikers from the main mass of demonstrators in the square.

VShM (Gor’kiy City)—moving behind the 4th MSP is to close the exits to Rustaveli Avenue from adjacent streets.

A similar mission was given the OMON units. The commander of the firefighting unit was assigned the mission of extinguishing any fires that broke out and with instructions to pay special attention to the armored vehicles accompanying the troops. The mission to disperse the demonstrators using water was mentioned in the decision but it was cancelled afterwards by Yu.T. Yefimov and Sh.V. Gorgodze.

VDP (consisting of two battalions)—moved in a line behind the 4th MSP with the mission to take the square in front of Government House, Rustaveli Avenue, and the streets adjacent to it under guard. Be ready in case of need to help the 4th MSP.

The Internal Troops were equipped and armed with the following to carry out the missions entrusted to them: helmets, bulletproof vests, rubber truncheons; 50% of the personnel had shields, the officers had their personal weapons with them (“PM” pistols) with two clips. A crew to use the “Cheremukha” special agent and directly subordinate to the acting commander of this regiment, Lt. Col. A.M. Baklanov, moved in the 4th MSP.

At 2:50 a.m. on 9 April 1989, the Chief of the Directorate of Internal Affairs of Tbilisi City, Col. R.L. G ventsadze, spoke to the demonstrators, calling on them to disperse before the troops used force. In his words, the demonstrators did not let him speak in front of a microphone and he was forced to use a portable megaphone. Forty-five minutes before the start of the operation, the Catholicos of Georgia, Iliya II, appealed to the demonstrators. The speech of the Catholicos was heard in deep silence; after his call to reason a 7-minute silence settled in and then a common prayer, “Otche nash”, followed. The demonstrators maintained order and calm and there were no visible signs of fear: many sang and danced. Then one of the leaders of the unofficial groups, I. Tsereteli, spoke out with a call to not disperse, to not offer resistance, to maintain calm, but best of all to sit (“they don’t beat sitters!”), which many of them then did, mainly in the area of the stairs of Government House. He concluded his appeal at 3:59 a.m. At 4:00 a.m. General-Colonel I.N. Rodionov, gave the order to begin the expulsion operation.

The Commission notes that the actual situation in the square by that time (the presence of 10,000 people), and the readiness with which the participants of the demonstration intended to continue it, required especially deliberate and cautious decisions in conducting the operation. But none of these circumstances were taken into consideration in an exchange of opinions by telephone between D.I. Patiashvili and I.N. Rodionov. These officials displayed flagrant irresponsibility in unquestioningly confirming the earlier adopted decision.

At 4:05 a.m. four BTRs [armed personnel carriers] appeared on Rustaveli Avenue in the area of the Government House. They crossed the entire width of the avenue, and people let them do so without hindrance, withdrawing in part toward Government House and in part toward the Artist’s House and the Kashveti Church [khram, literally “temple” or “shrine”, but later referred to correctly as a church]. The armored vehicles were followed by extended lines of troops, which at 4:07 a.m. stopped at the line from the entrance to Artist’s House to the right lawn in front of Government House. Thus the main mass of demonstrators were left at the stairs of Government House.

Lt. Col A.M. Baklanov suggested to the demonstrators by megaphone that they vacate Rustaveli Avenue and warned them that force would be used if they refused. It should be noted that many did not hear these warnings due to the noise in the square.

When the troops arrived at their forming-up positions, the demonstrators started to leave the square; however, they were not given sufficient time to disperse. Thus it was also not taken into consideration that almost all the exits from the square were closed off by transport vehicles, that is, the evacuation routes were sharply restricted. Three minutes later the operation to force people from the square continued.

The troop lines of the 4th MSP began to hem in the demonstrators both toward Government House and along Rustaveli Avenue. Thus the majority of the demonstrators
located to the left of Government House continued to remain in place, involuntarily preventing the free exit of those people hemmed in from the front. The situation was seriously aggravated by the fact that at this time the 1st Battalion of the 8th MSP, following the verbal order of General-Major Yu. T. Yefimov, began to move to the square from Chichinadze Street. As a result of the movement of the line of servicemen on one side and the increasing density of the mass of people provoking resistance from the demonstrators on the other, a crush began in the area of the right lawn. It is here that most of the dead and victims [sic] of the civilian population were found. Among those who received injuries were also many militia workers and servicemen.

At this stage, some of the demonstrators actually ended up surrounded, that is, squeezed between servicemen and demonstrators who had been unable to leave. A frantic confrontation occurred. The use of rubber truncheons and toxic substances with the grossest violation of instructions and the use of small entrenching tools in dispersing the demonstrators actually turned into savage treatment of Soviet people.

Having studied all the documentary materials available to it, the Commission has come to the firm conclusion that there are no convincing arguments justifying the advisability of bringing a company of a Soviet Army airborne regiment into an operation to force people from the square.

According to the explanation of General Yu. T. Yefimov, when the line of troops was moving forward along Rustaveli Avenue, because of a widening of the avenue in the area of Government House the left flank allegedly was exposed which created, in Yu. T. Yefimov’s words, a real threat not only of a penetration into the rear of the servicemen by the demonstrators, but their encirclement.

To close this gap, at General Yu. T. Yefimov’s request, General I. N. Rodionov allocated a company of paratroopers and thereby allowed Soviet Army servicemen to get involved in performing functions uncharacteristic for them, grossly violating the General Staff directive about entrusting army subunits only with missions to guard especially selected facilities. In the opinion of the Commission there was no real threat of a disruption of the operation to expel the demonstrators in this situation, hence there was no need to bring in a company of paratroopers.

By 4:21 a.m. the clearing of the square in front of Government House had been concluded. The 1st Battalion of the 8th MSP joined up with the 4th MSP, which continued the expulsion of the demonstrators.

At this stage of the operation, the Internal Troops, overcoming the active resistance of the demonstrators squeezed along Rustaveli Avenue, used the “Cheremukha” special agent. According to the reports of the leadership of the Internal Troops, the special agent was used by: the first line—Dzhordzhiashvili Street to L. Ukrainka Street; the second line: Lunacharskiy Street to Chavchadzhe Street; the third line—in front of the Communications Building.

Because of increased resistance on their approach to Republic Square (the exit was blocked by trolleys and buses), Lt. Col. A. M. Baklanov independently gave an order to use the non-standard product K-51 containing a toxic agent, CS. Four grenades were used, one of which did not work.

The unauthorized decision by Lt. Col. A. M. Baklanov to use product K-51, who later concealed the fact of the use of this product, ought to be specially noted.

The accuracy of the description of the lines of use of toxic agents provokes doubt. According to copious testimony of the victims, they were poisoned at earlier approaches (right at Government House and the Kashveti Church).

An incident of a rifle wound to the head of one of the demonstrators took place at the completion of the expulsion operation.

The Commission notes that the special agent was used by the 4th MSP in violation of a current regulation (see Attachment No. 1 to USSR MVD Order No. 0507 1970*). There are residences from the first line of the use of the special agent to the end of Rustaveli Avenue (beginning with the “Tbilisi” Hotel). In Point 23 of Section III of the regulation it mentions warning the civilian population before using a special agent and even evacuating them. However, General Yu. T. Yefimov, ignoring this requirement, gave the order to use “Cheremukha” in a residential area. The same occurred at the next lines. There is information that individual servicemen entered living quarters, where they used the “Cheremukha” special agent.

* - The Attachment is not being published.

The Commission notes with special alarm the premeditated attempts by the Internal Troops leadership to hide the fact itself of the use of toxic agents.

The use of the “Cheremukha” special agent was officially admitted on 13 April, but under pressure of incontrovertible evidence.

Next there was a gradual admission of the use of various modifications of “Cheremukha” and CS gas (product K-51).

For a long time representatives of the Soviet Army also denied the fact of the use of small entrenching tools.
It is appropriate to mention that information about the demonstrators and their intentions was reported by commanders and political workers in distorted form when instructing the servicemen who had been enlisted in the operation.

Thus, a combined analysis of the actual progress of the operation to expel the demonstrators permits us to reliably state that only as a result of the grossest violations of current law, regulations, and instructions, bordering on criminal negligence, on the one hand, and the illegal actions of the organizers and some of the demonstrators, on the other, did it end tragically. The business of the investigation is to look into the degree of culpability both of the conduct of the leaders who approved it and the direct agents [ispolniteli] as well as those demonstrators who committed illegal acts.


The Commission has familiarized itself with the initial medical documentation (the medical history, the outpatient records, the forensic medical examination reports, etc.) of various institutions and organizations of the USSR Ministry of Health, a report of a USSR Ministry of Defense commission, the findings of the Medical Subcommission of the Georgian SSR Supreme Soviet, the findings of the USSR Ministry of Health Institute of Forensic Medicine, the report of the International Red Cross medical mission to the Georgian SSR, and a number of other documents regarding the medical consequences of the events which took place in Tbilisi on 9 April of this year.

Members of the Commission conducted additional scientific research and consultations with specialists enlisted for this purpose.

An analysis of available information permits a determination of the scale and nature of the medical casualties associated with the operation to expel the demonstrators.

The total number of demonstrators in the confined area at Government House and the television studio building has not been established, but according to estimates it was 8-10,000. The number of women apparently was close to 50%. It is also known that among those who took part in the demonstrations were many adolescents and elderly people. The weather was described as moderately warm (+9°C), high humidity (90%), and the wind was calm.

The location of the events was well lit by street lights. The density of the demonstrators grew from the periphery of the square by degrees to Government House where the hunger strikers (more than 100 people) and the leaders of the demonstration were located.

A medical aid station of the city health department had been operating in the Artist’s House as of 4 April.

The “expulsion” operation was carried out at night (4:00 a.m.-5:00 a.m. local time). This circumstance needs to be specially noted inasmuch as at nighttime a person’s reactions and immunity to harmful factors is sharply reduced in accordance with the nature of biological rhythms.

It has been established that rubber truncheons, “special agents”—toxic irritants—small entrenching tools, and in one case (according to a finding of the forensic medical commission) firearms were used against the demonstrators by the “expulsion forces.” For their part, the demonstrators used makeshift objects against the “expulsion forces” as resistance grew.

According to data from the medical aid station personnel, the arrival of the first wounded demonstrators—women, adolescents, and men—was noted five minutes after the start of contact with the “expulsion forces.” The influx of the injured in the next 5 minutes became massive. The medical aid station spaces were soon completely filled. Therefore many people were given medical aid in the street. In view of this, additional first aid teams and ambulances were called in.

Testimony has been recorded of cases in which servicemen impeded medical workers rendering aid to the victims. The documents of the first aid vehicle depot of Tbilisi city note six cases of attacks on ambulances with damage to them.

Many participants in the event—civilians, militia workers, and civilians—received injuries of different kinds and severity. The tragic result was that 16 demonstrators died at the site of the incident and three died soon after in a hospital. There were no cases of deaths among servicemen and militia workers.

Some difficulty is being encountered [in trying to make an] exact determination of the number of victims, both of demonstrators as well as of servicemen and militia workers. Nevertheless the Commission has sufficient material to characterize the medical consequences of the events of 9 April as a whole.

According to information of the Georgian SSR Ministry of Health, during the expulsion operation and for several hours afterwards, 251 people visited hospitals in Tbilisi, of which 183 were hospitalized. In succeeding days, an undulating growth in the number of those who turned for medical aid (13, 21, 27 April, and 5 May) occurred. During the period from 9 April through 9 May, the total...
number of those who came to medical institutions was from three to four thousand. About 500 in all were hospitalized, and at the present time about 1000 people are on the dispensary registry and undergoing treatment.

According to information of the Georgian MVD, in the course of the events 37 militia workers of Tbilisi City were injured; 22 of them were injured from the actions of servicemen. According to information of the USSR MVD, the number of servicemen who were injured was 69, but the report of the USSR MOD commission produced data that a total 152 servicemen were injured (132 Internal Troops, 22 Soviet Army), of which 26 were hospitalized (22 Internal Troops, 4 Soviet Army). According to a report of the USSR Procuracy, 189 servicemen were injured in these events.

The Commission established that of the 20 Soviet Army servicemen mentioned in the Ministry of Defense report in fact only three received injuries in the course of the events under examination.

The damage to the health of those who took part in the events of 9 April was expressed both in the form of injuries, poisoning by toxic substances, or a combination of both, and in various psychological and emotional disorders of the “mass catastrophe syndrome.”

The demonstrators suffered 290 casualties: contusions—40%, closed head injuries—30%, wounds—20%, and various fractures—10%.

A selective analysis of the medical histories and a poll of a part of victims permits us to establish that the majority of injuries (including head injuries) were inflicted by rubber truncheons; in 21 cases the injuries were associated with the use of a small entrenching tool. It was often noted that people with serious injuries also had been poisoned by toxic substances (combined injuries).

An analysis of the course of the illnesses of people who turned for medical aid due to poisoning presents great difficulties.

The Commission especially notes that the concealment of the use of toxic substances on 9 April and then incomplete information about this issue (the use of CN—on 13 April, the use of CS—on 3 May), and the belated and insufficiently systematized testing for the presence of toxic substances at the site impeded the diagnosis and treatment of those affected and created an extremely unfavorable and tense social situation.

This circumstance, as well as the panic rumors, the concealment of the use of toxic substances, the uncertainty in the diagnosis, and also the published calls to go for medical help—all this and several other circumstances promoted the undulating nature of the number of treat-

ments for medical aid during the succeeding month.

Cases of the “secondary effects of poisoning” occupy a special place in a number of these phenomena, for example the outbreak of doctor’s visits [obrashcheniya] on 28 April after flowers were moved from Government House to the church. The circumstances connected with this event have not been sufficiently identified up to now.

The Commission thinks that even in such cases, when based on complaints of a worsening of health, there were indications only from the victims themselves of contact with toxic substances, these cases could have been classed on a sufficient basis as a display of a “syndrome of a reaction to a mass catastrophe.”

In all, about 300 victims of toxic substances were recorded (including 19 servicemen and 9 militia workers). The main mass of them involve people who had been poisoned on 9 April in the square in front of Government House and in several other places along Rustaveli Avenue. In the clinical severity of injury they (according to the evidence of the USSR Ministry of Health commission) were distributed in the following manner: serious—2%, medium severity—7%, slight—91%.

Data about the place, type of toxic substances used, and the nature of the injury suffered was contradictory. However, thanks to the results of detailed research testing of the air, soil, vegetation, clothing, and tissue of the corpses, and also a survey of the victims and eyewitnesses, the Commission was able to clear up these questions to a considerable degree. According to the testimony of victims on the special dispensary registry, [the following] were poisoned by chemical substances: immediately in front of Government House—49%; in the area of Rustaveli Avenue-Chitadze Street—15%; near the First Middle School—9%; at the “Rustaveli” movie theater—3%; and in the area of the Kashveti church—24%.

A comparatively small part of the demonstrators were poisoned on Rustaveli Avenue adjacent to Republic Square and also on several neighboring streets.

From this information it ensues that the main places where toxic substances were employed were the square in front of Government House and in the area of the Kashveti church, which does not coincide with areas of toxic substance use referred to by the leaders of the operation.

As follows from the report of the USSR Ministry of Defense commission, three weeks after the events on Rustaveli Avenue in the sector from Pioneers House to the Communications Building the presence of CN and CS was observed in the soil and in two tests even in the atmosphere (in an underpass), which can indirectly confirm the use of a considerable quantity of toxic substances.
The use of chloroacetophenone (KhAF, CN) is indisputably admitted in the form of “Cheremukha” products and the substance CS in K-51 grenades (a toxic irritant substance).

In four tests of the soil taken in the area of Rustaveli Avenue around Government House and the Kashveti church, the research of the Tbilisi State University Chromato-Mass Spectrometry Center also found chloropicrocin (a toxic asphyxiant). No explanation has yet been found for its appearance in these tests.

The experience of the use of so-called “police toxic substances” both in our country and abroad shows that the use of these substances within established rules does not lead to serious consequences. Cases of serious poisoning are extremely rare, and fatal outcomes are unique. The picture of the intoxication of the demonstrators in Tbilisi differs remarkably from the usual cases of the use of such types of toxic substances.

It is characterized by its massive nature, a considerable number of poisonings of medium and great severity, and with specific features of a clinical manifestation in the form of signs of “neurotropic” activity.

The Commission thinks that it could have appeared as a result of a combination of a number of circumstances and factors:

1. The circumstances of the weather situation—high humidity and calm wind, which impeded the dispersal of the gas cloud and created a high concentration.

2. The use of toxic substances in a dense mass of people deprived of the opportunity to leave the afflicted location.

3. The use, from the testimony of eyewitnesses and victims, of toxic substances in the form of an aerosol at a distance close enough to perhaps have created a critical concentration of toxic substances.

4. The combination of toxins with physical injuries and psychological stress, which aggravated the clinical finding of injury (a “neurotropic effect”).

5. The increase of the degree of toxic activity of toxic substances on an organism at nighttime in connection with the reduction of the organism’s resistance.

It ought to be noted that the factual data and the ideas presented are not sufficient to completely exclude the probability that some of the victims were poisoned by some other unidentified toxic substance.

The question of identifying the direct causes of the deaths of the 19 demonstrators occupied a special place in the Commission’s work.

The materials and findings of various groups of experts received by the Commission gave an unambiguous explanation of the factors which led to the deaths of the victims.

In this regard the Commission brought in a group of scientists, and specialists in the field of pathological anatomy and forensic medicine who studied all the available material and came to the conclusion the direct cause of death of all those who died, with the exception of one case of serious skull and brain injury, was suffocation (asphyxia). In the opinion of specialists in the field of asphyxia two simultaneously operating factors played a role—both the compression of the body and the inhalation of chemical substances, which the corresponding macroscopic and microscopic data point to. The combination of the inhalation of chemical substances and the compression of the body mutually intensified their negative effect and served, in the opinion of the specialists, as the reason for the deaths of the victims. In two cases there were additional circumstances in the form of concomitant illnesses.

Nevertheless, it is not possible in each specific case to precisely determine from the available materials the predominance of one or the other factor in the development of asphyxia. The findings of the specialists have been sent to the USSR Procuracy.

5. Conclusions and Recommendations

The tragedy which occurred on 9 April 1989 in Tbilisi, the deaths of innocent people, caused deep pain in the hearts and consciousness of the Soviet people.

The members of the Commission of the USSR Congress of People’s Deputies share these feelings and express sincere condolences to the families, relatives, and friends of the victims and also to all who suffered on that bitter April morning.

The events of 9 April inflicted a significant blow to perestroika and shook our entire society. The show of force, the damage to the health, and the deprivation of people’s sacred gift—life—are incompatible with common human moral principles and values.

The Commission turns to all citizens of the country with an appeal—the most acute problems which life puts before us, conflicts, and misunderstandings can only be resolved by political methods, dialogue, and persuasion.

The Commission calls upon all Soviet people not to allow the sad events of 9 April in Tbilisi to be used to incite mistrust and hostile attitudes toward the Soviet Army.
The Commission calls upon the Congress of People’s Deputies and the USSR Supreme Soviet to draw up and adopt laws strictly regulating the use of force within the country as a top priority.

On the basis of the available materials, the Commission of the USSR Congress of People’s Deputies comes to the following conclusions:

1. The reasons for the tragic events of 9 April 1989 in Tbilisi were that under the conditions of democratization of the entire public and political life of our society, the leadership of the Republic did not manage to direct the acute and dynamically developing processes of perestroika in Georgia, properly evaluate the situation in the Republic, and make adequate political decisions.

The former Secretaries of the CC GCP, D.I. Patiashvili and B.V. Nikol’skiy, bear responsibility for the political and other consequences of the events of 9 April 1989 in Tbilisi.

2. The organizers of the unauthorized demonstration at Government House (I. Tsereteli, Z. Gamsakhurdia, G. Chanturiya, and other leaders of unofficial organizations) should bear criminal, political, moral, and other responsibility for their actions. In the course of their actions they committed various breaches of the peace, issued appeals to disobey legal demands of the authorities, and when a real threat of the use of armed force was created, did not take measures to stop it [the demonstration] and thus did not try to prevent the tragic outcome of the events.

3. The decision to sent sub-units of the Internal Troops, the Soviet Army, and special sub-units of the militia were formalized by a directive of the USSR Ministry of Defense General Staff (Cde. M.A. Moiseyev) and by an order of the USSR Minister of Internal Affairs (Cde. I.F. Shilov) after a meeting in the CC CPSU on 7 April 1989 (chaired by Cde. Ye. K. Ligachev). Inasmuch as the subject was not simply about troop redeployment but was actually about carrying out operations, introducing individual elements of a state of emergency in the city of Tbilisi, establishing control of entrances to and exits from the city, and taking the most important public and government buildings and other facilities under guard, it ought to be recognized that these decisions were made in gross violation of the law.

4. The instruction of the Georgian Council of Ministers (Cde. Z.A. Chkheidze) of 8 April 1989 to clear the square in front of Government House of demonstrators and to carry out other measures to preserve public order involving the participation of Internal Troops and subunits of the Soviet Army was illegal since existing legislation does not provide the government of the Republic with such authority.

5. Serious violations were committed during the preparation and execution of the operation to clear the square, manifested in the fact that the operations plan was not corrected in accordance with the actual situation. It was insufficiently studied by the commanders of the sub-units, reconnoitering was not done, and the men and equipment of the Tbilisi city government Directorate of Internal Affairs were not brought into the operation in due measure. In spite of the USSR Minister of Defense’s order, paratroop sub-units were used not to guard facilities but to expel demonstrators. Gross violations of public order were committed by the use of special agents; in particular, non-standard special agents (product K-51) were used, and rubber truncheons and small entrenching tools were used illegally.

Generals K.A. Kochetov, I.N. Rodionov and Yu. T. Yefimov bear personal responsibility for these violations and oversights which led to the tragic consequences.

The Minister of Internal Affairs of Georgia, Sh.V. Gorgodze, who removed himself from execution of his direct responsibilities, also bears responsibility in due measure.

6. In the opinion of the Commission, the officials, who issued the order to use special agents and [heavy] equipment on the demonstrators on 9 April in Tbilisi, should be called to official and other forms of account. According to current regulations these “are used in exceptional situations to stop mass unrest accompanied by pogroms, brutality, destruction, arson, and to repel mass attacks on official and administrative buildings, the premises of public organizations and other important facilities, and also in cases when the violent actions of violators of public order threaten the lives and health of citizens, the members of Internal Forces units, and the civilian militia.” The Commission has established that on 9 April 1989 in Tbilisi, no grounds to take such measures existed.

7. During the operation to halt the demonstration by clearing the square in front of Government House and Rustaveli Avenue, bodily injuries of varying degrees of severity (including injuries from the use of special agents—tear gases) were inflicted on the demonstrators, servicemen of the Internal Troops and the Soviet Army, and militia workers. Nineteen demonstrators died (mainly women). The Commission perceives the need for criminal liability of the specific individuals guilty of the deaths of people and the infliction of serious bodily injuries.
8. It is also necessary to resolve the issue of the senior officials who:

— violated Point 59 of the Internal Troops Combat Duty Regulations, which prohibits the use of the “Cheremukha” special agent against women, adolescents, children, and in other specifically mentioned instances;

— violated current regulations according to which it is categorically prohibited to use a rubber truncheon against women, children, the aged, invalids with obvious signs of disability, and also to hit people in the face and head;

— used articles with CS tear gas, which is not approved for use in the Internal Troops, at the concluding stage of the operation to expel the demonstrators.

9. The Commission raises the question of the responsibility of those people who permitted the violation of the guaranteed rights and legal interests of citizens when introducing and implementing the curfew in the city of Tbilisi.

10. Political, moral, and in necessary cases, legal responsibility should be borne by any official of both Party and government bodies who permits the concealment of the fact of use of special agents of the “Cheremukha” and article K-51 types containing CS gas.

11. The Commission notes that in the periodical press many items have appeared based on rumors, conjecture, false reports, and a distorted picture of the real course of events. Thus, the Commission has not found evidence of the existence or operation in the square of specially formed groups of guerilla extremists, or the allegation that the first wounded and killed supposedly appeared even before the troops came in contact with the demonstrators.

The widely spread information about the multitudes of people who reportedly were missing after 9 April and the use by demonstrators of specially prepared silent [kholodnoye] weapons and firearms has also not been confirmed.

The Commission notes the lack of facts behind the statement by General I.N. Rodionov at the USSR Congress of People’s Deputies that “a real threat of the seizure of vitally important facilities of the Republic had been created” by 9 April. Neither the reports of KGB organizations, nor the official reports of the Republic MVD, nor any other document contain any specific facts of this kind.

The Commission notes that a positive aspect in settling the conflicts between the civilians and military during the curfew in effect in Tbilisi was the organized actions of the veterans of the war in Afghanistan, which facilitated the normalization of the situation. The Commission also notes that, while performing their official duties in difficult extraordinary conditions, many militia workers not only helped medical personnel in the evacuation of the victims but they gave medical aid themselves to the injured civilians and hunger strikers.

In conclusion the Commission submits the following suggestions for the consideration of competent government bodies:

1. Party organizations which accordingly consented or made decisions at the federal or Republic level about sending troops and conducting this operation acted according to a long-held procedure and in the face of the decisions of the XIX Party Conference about the need to delimit the functions of Party and government institutions. In a state committed to the rule of law, the decisions of Party organizations at any level can have obligatory significance for institutions of state power and administration, including the Army, only after they are embodied in a legal act of a competent state institution, a law or a government decree.

In this regard an urgent need has occurred for an acceleration of the practical division of functions of Party and government institutions by making the necessary changes in existing legislation and corresponding Party documents.

2. The events of 9 April in Tbilisi pointed out obvious flaws in existing legislation and the practice of making the most important state decisions about introducing a special situation [osoboye polozheniye] or state of emergency using subunits of the Soviet Army to maintain and restore public order inside the country, in particular the possibility of using the armed forces to resolve internal conflicts directly on the basis of decisions adopted by Party, not government organizations.

A clear and exhaustive legislative regulation of the substance and the procedure for introducing martial law (in the case of the armed conflicts) a special situation (in the case of internal unrest) or a state of emergency (in the case of disasters) is required, excluding the situation which developed in Tbilisi when the introduction of a curfew assigned a subunit of the Soviet Army the mission of maintaining public order, which should only be handled by MVD personnel.

3. It seems advisable to review the question of
increasing the strength of the Internal Troops and manning them on a mainly professional basis. It is necessary to determine legislatively the procedure and mechanism for using federal and Republic subunits of the Internal Troops.

4. It is necessary to prohibit legislatively the use of the Soviet Army to put down mass unrest, stipulating the possibility of using Army subunits for these purposes only in exceptional cases directly stipulated by law—by a decision in each individual case by the Chairman of the USSR Supreme Soviet with a subsequent report to the USSR Supreme Soviet.

5. The rights and responsibilities of militia and Internal Troops personnel need to be spelled out legislatively as to when they perform their responsibilities which are associated with halting illegal activities and mass disorder.

6. The Commission directs attention to the need to strengthen the investigatory group on this case by bringing in workers from the Georgian SSR Procuracy and taking additional measures for the quickest possible conclusion of the preliminary investigation of the case which was brought in connection with the events of 9 April 1989 in Tbilisi.

7. The powers of parliamentary commissions created by the Congress of People’s Deputies and the USSR Supreme Soviet need to be spelled out legislatively, in particular the need to provide for the responsibility of officials for giving Commissions knowingly false testimony.

The Commission expresses gratitude to the governmental and public organizations and also to all citizens and officials who gave assistance in its work and helped establish the truth.

Chairman of the Commission A. Sobchak


Executive Secretary of the Commission S. B. Stankevich

Members of the Commission:


[Source: TsKhSD, f. 89. (Collection of documents, Xerox copy). Published in Istoricheskii Arhiph 3 (1993), pp. 102-120. Translated for CWIHP by Gary Goldberg.]

1 On Gorbachev’s reaction, see Anatoly Chernyaev, My Six Years with Gorbachev. Translated and edited by Robert English and Elizabeth Tucker (University Park, PA: The Pennsylvania State University Press, 2000), pp. 218-221.

2 D. I. Patiashvili, from July 1985 to April 1989 First Secretary of the CC GCP, member of the CC CPSU.

3 Iliya (Il’ya) II (I. G. Gugushauri-Shiolashvili), since 1977 Catholicos-Patriarch of all Georgia.

4 Translator’s note: This term denotes weapons other than firearms, such as bayonets or clubs.

5 Z. A. Chkheidze, Chairman of the Council of Ministers of Georgia.

6 The appeal by M. S. Gorbachev to Communists and Workers of Georgia was published in the Republic press on 13 April and in the central press on 14 April 1989.

7 A. S. Kapto, Chief of the CC CPSU Ideological Department; A. S. Pavlov, Chief of the CC CPSU State and Legal Department; Ye. Z. Razumov, First Deputy Chief of the CC CPSU Party Policy and Personnel Work Department.


On the back of the document there are the following notes of workers of the CC CPSU General Department: “Cdes. Razumovskiy is on a business trip, Zaykov and Ligachev are on leave. Baklanov is on a business trip.” “Agreement has been reported to Cdes. Kpto, Pavlov, and Razumov. 11.04.89.” “It has been reported to Cdes. Fedeyev, Polyakova, and Smirnova. 11.04.89.” [N. M. Fedeyeva; V. I. Polyakov[a]; A.A. Smirnova, Chief of the Secretariats (Offices) of the CC CPSU State and Legal Department, the Party Policy and Personnel Work Department, and the Ideological Department.

[Translator’s note: The name appears as Polyakova in the text, but as Polyakov in the footnote] “It has been reported to Cde. V.I. Boldin [Chief of the CC CPSU General Department] and permission has been given for distribution to the field [na mesta]. 11.04.89.” “A copy of the telegram has been sent to the 4th Sector [of the CC CPSU General Department which handled enciphered communications] for the CP CC’s, kray, and oblast’ committees. 11.04.89.”V.I. Boldin.

9 G. S. Tarazevich, as of 1985 Chairman of the Presidium of the Belorussian SSR Supreme Soviet, as of 1986 simultaneously Deputy Chairman of the Presidium of the USSR Supreme Soviet.

10 G. V. Sergeyev, First Deputy USSR Minister of Health.
11 V. L. Govorov, Chief of USSR Civil Defense, Deputy USSR Minister of Defense, [General of the Army].
12 V. P. Pirozhkov, General-Colonel, Deputy Chairman of the USSR KGB.
13 N. I. Demidov, General-Lieutenant of Internal Service, Deputy USSR Minister of Internal Affairs.
14 O. V. Kviltaya, as of March 1989 First Deputy Chairman of the Georgian SSR Council of Ministers.
15 G. G. Gumbaridze, First Secretary of the CC GCP from April 1989 to December 1990.
16 See document No. 7.
17 The document was initialed by A. S. Pavlov before the vote.
18 Translator’s note: Gorbachev’s name was placed to the left and on the same line as Ligachev’s name.
19 V. V. Bakatin, as of 1988 USSR Minister of Internal Affairs.
20 Reference to the mass demonstrations and strikes in Tbilisi in the autumn of 1988.
21 This is about the demonstrations for Abkhazian self-determination, which became widespread in the spring of 1989.
22 See Document No. 1.
23 B. V. Nikol’skiy, Second Secretary of the CC GCP.
24 V. P. Trushin, First Deputy USSR Minister of Internal Affairs, General-Colonel of Internal Service.
25 See Document No. 2.
26 K. A. Kochetov, First Deputy USSR Minister of Defense, General of the Army.
27 I. N. Rodionov, Commanding General of the Transcaucasian Military District, General-Colonel.
28 V. N. Lobko, Inspector of the CC CPSU Party Policy and Personnel Work Department; V. S. Buyanov, Senior Organizer of the CC CPSU Ideology Department; A. Ye. Selivanov, Senior Organizer of the CC CPSU Party Policy and Personnel Work Department.
29 O. Ye. Cherkerziya, Chairman of the Presidium of the Georgian SSR Supreme Soviet.
30 M. A. Moiseyev, Chief of the General Staff of the USSR Armed Forces as of December 1988, [General of the Army].
31 Editor’s note: The Chief of the General Staff is ex-officio a First Deputy Minister of Defense and, as such, has the legal authority to issue orders in the Minister’s name.
32 I. F. Shilov, Deputy USSR Minister of Internal Affairs, General-Lieutenant of Militia.
33 Yu. T. Yefimov, Deputy Chief of Staff of the Internal Troops; Chief of the Directorate of Combat Service of the USSR MVD Main Directorate of Internal Troops, General-Major.
34 Translator’s note: Although not noted here, the parent “Moscow” division was the elite USSR MVD Internal Troops Dzerzhinskiy division actually headquartered in nearby Reutovo designated to quell civil unrest; it was used in October 1993 during the “White House”-led “coup”.
35 Sh. V. Gorgodze, Georgian SSR Minister of Internal Affairs, General-Lieutenant of Internal Service.
36 I. S. Tsereteli, one of the leaders of the movement of unofficial organizations in Georgia, chairman of the National Independence Party of Georgia.
37 Z. K. Gamsakhurdia, son of the Georgian writer K. S. Gamsakhurdia. He participated in the dissident movement from the end of the 1950s and had been subjected to repression. In 1989 he was the most prominent leader of the opposition movement in Georgia.
38 G. O. Chanturiya, one of the leaders of the opposition movement in Georgia; chairman of the National Democratic Party of Georgia.
Soviet Approaches to Eastern Europe at the Beginning of 1989

By Jacques Lévesque

The following three documents, which have never before been published, are highly interesting and instructive for the considerable light they shed on both the Soviet’s approach and their expectations concerning the situation in Eastern Europe, and for the prospects for change in the region at the beginning of 1989, virtually on the eve of the serial collapse of the communist regimes. The documents help us to understand Soviet permissiveness in the face of these momentous events, a permissiveness which was the most remarkable and surprising phenomenon of 1989. To be sure, as the documents show, the serial collapse was as unexpected in Moscow as it was in the West and in Eastern Europe itself. This unexpected Soviet permissiveness contributed a great deal to the rapidity with which the collapse occurred.

The documents help dispel simplistic views about Soviet behavior which were voiced in the West in the aftermath of 1989, claiming for instance that the Soviet leaders had very poor information on the situation in Eastern Europe, or that they had decided to write off the region as too costly a burden. As the reader will note, Soviet analysts saw the situation as potentially explosive. Considerable change was expected, but based on the assumption that events might well take a turn favorable to Soviet interests, such change was considered risky, yet desirable. The available information was abundant and accurate, and the analysis was sophisticated (at least in two of the documents). However, this analysis was predominantly premised on some of the basic ideological tenets of perestroika, namely that a reformed and democratized socialism was both possible and viable and that a reformed Soviet Union would yield new forms of influence.

Up to the beginning of 1989, and even in the months that followed, Eastern Europe was notably neglected in Gorbachev’s foreign policy. First priority was given to the East-West rapprochement and reconciliation, which was to be achieved primarily through arms control and disarmament, areas in which the USSR had much to offer in bringing about a new convergent and “more integrated” world. Since some degree of change and democratization in Eastern Europe was considered a necessary ingredient for the realization of the “common European home,” a more proactive Soviet policy was in order there.

The ambivalence of Gorbachev’s politics

But if Soviet policy in Eastern Europe was subordinated to the needs of its policy towards the West, as the documents clearly show, it suffered from Gorbachev’s wavering as well as from contradictions in his approach. While on the one hand, he preached change and the virtues of reformed socialism, on the other hand, in the name of “freedom of choice,” he refused to pressure the conservative leaders of Eastern Europe to engage in reforms. Against the advice of his reformist supporters, in the name of “non-interference,” he declined to give explicit and direct support to the reformist challengers of the conservative leaderships. Only indirect signals were sent. This was not only a matter of principle. Gorbachev was convinced that reform could work in Eastern Europe, but he believed that the initiative had to come from the top leadership of these countries. He thought that change imposed from outside could cause destabilization there, which would have had very negative effects on perestroika on the home front. In fact, Gorbachev wanted the best of both worlds in Eastern Europe: change and relative stability. The result was increasing polarization in the region at the beginning of 1989. With Gorbachev’s encouragement the reformist leaderships of Poland and Hungary pressed ahead, while in a majority of the countries of the area, the conservative leaderships practiced immobilism, defensively, but with Soviet tolerance.

Because Gorbachev’s policy toward Eastern Europe was a low priority it was subjected to dual imperatives, pulling in divergent directions. The needs of perestroika also had negative consequences of a different type for the countries of Eastern Europe. To improve Soviet economic performance, Moscow was much more demanding and stingy in its economic relations with its allies than it had been in the past. It refused all demands for special economic assistance, and even unilaterally reduced its subsidized oil exports. This of course, created not only economic but also political difficulties for both the reformist and conservative regimes of the Warsaw Pact, while Gorbachev was preaching reform as a panacea for all problems. Therefore it is not surprising that East European leaders complained privately to their Soviet counterparts about Soviet neglect.

In a memorandum sent to Gorbachev on 10 October 1988, his chief advisor for Eastern European affairs, Georgii Shakhnazarov, wondered to what degree the Soviet Union had to encourage the East European countries to develop closer economic relations and seek greater assistance from the West. He recommended that the Soviet leadership pay more attention to their various problems. He suggested that a thorough examination of all these problems be put on the agenda of the new International Commission of the Party, which had been created the month before, chaired by Aleksander Yakovlev. Apparently, it took three months before the process even started.
The volatile situation of Poland and Hungary in January 1989

By the end of January 1989, the political situation in Poland and Hungary was evolving very rapidly—both as a result of the reformist courses of their respective leaderships, encouraged by Moscow, and under pressure from opposition groups. The communist parties in these countries were preparing to negotiate major political arrangements, in uncharted waters, with uncertain outcomes. It was in this context that Yakovlev asked the Institute of the Economy of the World Socialist System at the USSR Academy of Sciences (commonly referred to as the Bogomolov Institute) to prepare a report on the political situation in Eastern Europe, as well as in each particular country, with an assessment of all possible developments and their implications for the USSR. After receiving the report Yakovlev ordered similar documents to be prepared by the International Department of the Central Committee, the Ministry of Foreign Affairs and the KGB. He then organized a meeting among the authors of the four reports to contrast and discuss their conclusions. It is the first three of these reports that are published below. Unfortunately, as far as I can ascertain, the report from the KGB remains inaccessible.

Comparison of these three documents is instructive. All three are located within the general framework of the ideology of perestroika and novoe myshlenie (new thinking). But each represents significantly different shades of that elastic and eclectic ideology. They highlight the heterogeneity of the reformist camp which was setting the political agenda of the USSR at the time. The documents provide rare and fascinating indications of some parameters within which Soviet leaders could read the situation in the following crucial months.

From the Bogomolov Institute: a boldly reformist approach

In the context of February 1989, the report of the Bogomolov Institute is radically reformist—certainly the most reformist of the three. Far from complacent, it presents an alarming picture of the general situation in Eastern Europe, and the predicament of the region’s communist parties. At the time, it was quite usual for reformers to dramatize both the internal situation of the USSR as well as its foreign policy, in order to press for change and reform. For example, in the event of a renewal of martial law in Poland, the report evokes the specter of “an Afghanistan in the center of Europe.”

The memorandum embodies one of the basic assumptions on which perestroika rested, one which proved to be a fatal illusion: that by taking the initiative in a process of change, a communist party could regain legitimacy, keep control of the process and save a considerable degree of influence. This “initiativist ideology” became a sort of a fetish of the reformers in their struggle against the conservatives. They even argued that it was the only way for communists to save their power and influence. This went along with an open-ended conception of socialism which, in 1989, was getting closer to and more compatible with social democracy which the memorandum calls a “contemporary socialist vision.”

Even the Polish and Hungarian parties come under criticism for not having been bold and quick enough in “seizing the initiative.” For by doing so, and in working out power sharing agreements with opposition groups, they could, according to this line of argument, achieve a new political preponderance. The report therefore recommends that the Soviet leadership adopt a more proactive policy in supporting more overtly the reformist elements within the communist parties of the conservative Eastern European countries.

The author, Matyana Sylvanskaya, was quite conscious of the precariousness of the position of the Polish Party and even mentioned the possibility that it could lose power and that the “socialist idea” could be defeated in Poland. But this was a worst case scenario. Thus, for Gorbachev and his entourage, the best case scenario seemed to have been realized several weeks after the writing of these reports, when the Polish Party signed an agreement with the representatives of Solidarity. Indeed, this agreement provided for elections in which the opposition was to be satisfied with 35% of the seats in a new parliament, leaving 65% of the seats to the communists and their allies.

Later, in the summer of 1989, the Hungarian Party prepared to transform itself into an explicitly Western-style social-democratic party, and faced free elections. According to reliable polls reported by Radio Free Europe, the Party was expected to win close to 40% of votes, twice as many as its nearest challenger. It would then have remained the pivotal force of Hungarian politics. This was seen in Gorbachev’s reformist entourage as a positive prospect. To be sure, Gorbachev himself was not yet prepared to accept party pluralism and free political competition in the USSR. But the issue was already being covertly discussed by those around him, and it was even suggested to him that he take the initiative of splitting the CPSU, so as to have two socialist parties competing with each other, one reformist, the other conservative.

As alarmist as it might be, even in its pessimistic scenarios, the Bogomolov Institute memorandum never anticipated the withdrawal from the Warsaw Pact of any East European country in the foreseeable future. On the contrary; the “certain degree of Finlandization” it advocated pertained only to internal political and economic developments. In order to make a more forceful case for the acceptance of important internal change, the author located her argument at the very core of perestroika’s highest expectations. She argued that if the USSR willingly lets the European socialist countries “take a mid-way position on the continent,” this would increase the interest of the Western countries in the economic and political stability in the area, thereby reinforcing the process of disarmament.
and détente and reducing the economic burden of these countries on the USSR. All of these developments, in turn, would accelerate the rise of the “common European home.” Moreover, the author argued that such a policy would create a very favorable image of the USSR in the world, and most importantly in Eastern Europe, where the ground for anti-Soviet and nationalist force would shrink, while “the prestige of the Soviet Union and its ideological-political influence on the broad strata of the population will grow.” In other words, a non-antagonistic Warsaw Pact (which together with NATO was to become one of the two pillars of a new pan-European security structure contemplated by novoe myshlenie) would be reinforced. To better capture the expected results of the advocated policy, the author used a formulation which wonderfully translates the essence of what perestroika wanted to be: “it will be a revolution from above [...] which will prevent a revolution from below.”

Gorbachev did not adopt a really proactive policy towards Eastern Europe in 1989. But this document does much to help us understand why he took such a benevolent attitude toward the rapid and unexpected turn of events there. He believed it was the best way to create and preserve a new image and influence for the Soviet Union and a voluntary acceptance of the Warsaw Pact. He was given explicit assurances to that effect by Walesa, Mazowiecki and Havel, and more implicitly by the United States which pledged to respect the security interests of the Soviet Union in return for its permissiveness.

From the Central Committee: a “centrist” perspective

The approach, analysis and recommendations of the memorandum of the Central Committee’s International Department also belong to the realm of the perestroika ideology. They are, however, substantially different from, and certainly more conservative than those of the Bogomolov Institute. While they may be labeled as “centrist,” this is not to say they were closer to Gorbachev’s view, as Gorbachev often described himself as a “centrist” both during and after his tenure.

The report was less alarmist and more sanguine about the prospects for “a smooth movement toward democratization and the new form of socialism [...] if the initiative for democratic changes originates with the ruling party.” Indeed, it emphasized that “we should not exaggerate the danger of one of the countries simply switching to the capitalist way of development.” At the same time, as Gorbachev continued to do, it advocated patience towards the conservative leaderships of the area.

The International Department tried to make the case for a reversal of the neglect of Eastern Europe by the Soviet leadership. Admitting that the region had become strategically less important for the USSR, it insisted that “the degree of our interdependence with the socialist countries remains higher than with the rest of the world,” and somewhat prophetically indicated that the stability of the USSR and the future of socialism in the world depended very much on what was going on in the region. In order to stress the importance of Eastern Europe for the USSR, the authors dismissed the idea of the region as an economic burden, and even tried to demonstrate that existing economic ties were beneficial for the USSR.

The option that the USSR might use force in Eastern Europe under certain circumstances was not even mentioned in the Bogomolov Institute report. It had already been discarded by the leadership. It was explicitly rejected in the memorandum by the International Department. But significantly, the document made a recommendation that is entirely absent from the first one. The author wrote that we “should leave a certain vagueness as far as our concrete actions are concerned under various possible turns of events, so that we do not stimulate the anti-socialist forces to try to ‘test’ the fundamentals of socialism in a given country.” Gorbachev did not pay heed to such advice. In the summer of 1989, he increasingly openly rejected the Brezhnev Doctrine, in order to better establish the credibility of novoe myshlenie for Western audiences.

Advocating greater interaction between new socialism and modern capitalism, the report of the International Department calls for the clarification of the “possibilities and the limits” of that interaction. At about the time it was written, in Poland, one of Solidarity’s negotiators, Andrzej Stelmachowski (later Minister of Education), talking with General Wojciech Jaruzelski on the sidelines of the Round Table negotiations, asked him: “What are the limits to the changes that the Soviets are willing to accept in Poland?” Jaruzelski responded: “I do not know myself. Let us find them together.” No wonder Jaruzelski did not know—Gorbachev and the Soviet leaders did not know themselves! As far as the content of “renovated” or “modern” socialism was concerned, people like Yakovlev were against setting “artificial” limits to what was supposed to be an experimental process. To be fair, it must be said that there was a clearer sense of limits in the realm of foreign policy. The Soviet leaders took the continued existence of the Warsaw Pact for granted, as did the main opposition forces in Eastern Europe. While the Bogomolov Institute’s memorandum suggested that Eastern European countries should be allowed to move towards economic integration with Western Europe and to serve as a bridge and “advance” for the Soviet Union, the memorandum of the International Department insisted on a coordinated and common policy between the USSR and Eastern Europe in dealing with Western economic institutions. The objective was to ensure a step-by-step integration of COMECON with the European Economic Community. Gorbachev and
Shevardnadze were definitely closer to this approach. 6

**From the Foreign Ministry: a short and muddled report**

The report submitted by the Ministry of Foreign Affairs to Yakovlev was disconcerting in many respects. While the first two reports were sophisticated and consistent in their respective analyses, this one was not. Therefore it is revealing not so much for the course of action it advocates for Eastern Europe but in other regards.

The Foreign Ministry’s report suffered not only in quality but also in quantity. Only one third of the length of the Bogomolov Institute’s document, it reads like a botched memorandum written by a poorly prepared and supervised official. This probably reflects the fact that Eastern Europe was indeed a very low priority for Shevardnadze’s Ministry. Policy toward Eastern Europe had always been the responsibility of the Central Committee, to which Soviet ambassadors to these countries reported directly. Even if Shevardnadze was claiming responsibility for all areas of foreign policy for his Ministry in 1989, it is clear that he and his associates were almost entirely focused on the East-West relationship.

The memorandum borrowed arguments from the arsenal of the reformist discourse, but also from the conservative sources. Yet, it did not amount to a coherent centrist position. Rather it was typical of the ideological confusion experienced by many well-intentioned Soviet apparatchiks at that time. They often parroted the slogans of perestroika and novoe myshlenie without being able to turn them into operative policy recommendations, and, in effect, continued to use much of the traditional language.

In 1989, both the radical reformers and the conservatives were making alarmist assessments of the situation in Eastern Europe for obviously different reasons. As we have seen, the reformers did so in order to promote reform. The conservatives, on the other hand, did so to raise concerns about the threats to socialism stemming from the changes. The alarmist tone of the Foreign Ministry’s report was in line with the latter. It warned against the mobilization of “forces alien to socialism” which could take advantage of the access to parliamentary and government institutions to eject the communist parties from power, either “partially or fully.” At the same time, it took up one of the pet slogans of perestroika, stressing that the “trend toward political pluralism is becoming universal” without showing its benefits to the East European communist parties. Contrary to the analysis of the two other reports, the moderation exhibited by the Western countries concerning Eastern Europe was seen as tactical, with no change in their long term goals.

These are not the only contradictory elements in this document. Showing more zeal in this respect than the document from the Central Committee, the first and “most important” of the Foreign Ministry’s recommendations was “not to permit the erosion of socialism in Eastern Europe” and to keep “all the countries of this region on the socialist path of development.” Yet, not surprisingly, the memorandum rejected the use of force. It pleaded for maintaining ambiguity on this issue. At the same time, it recommended that the USSR should refuse to support the use of force by one or the other of the communist regimes, because “repressive actions” would contradict the “international norms in the sphere of human rights.” This reflected the fact that showing concern for international norms and human rights was one the trademarks of Shevardnadze’s Ministry in the policy of East-West rapprochement.

---

**DOCUMENT No. 1**

Memorandum to Alexander Yakovlev
from the Bogomolov Commission
(Marina Sylvanskaya),
February 1989

**CHANGES IN EASTERN EUROPE AND THEIR IMPACT ON THE USSR**

Societies in Eastern European countries are beginning to change their character. Attempts to build socialism with Stalinist and neo-Stalinist methods, the spread [tirazhirovaniye] of which occurred in the region under consideration not without the active involvement of the Soviet side, ended up in a stalemate. This situation was expressed in an aggravation of contradictions and a growth of crisis developments. The degree and scale of conflicts vary: from the more or less hidden social-political tension, fraught with sudden explosions, to chronic crisis without any visible ways out, signaling the beginning of disintegration of the social-political system not excluding cataclysms as well. Such processes are irreversible; they are the result of the long-term evolution of the regime, and in a majority of countries they accompany a transition to a new model of socialism but also can lead to a collapse of the socialist idea. In the last year or year and a half the development of events in Eastern Europe has sharply accelerated and has acquired elements of unpredictability.

**General characterization of social-political processes in the countries of Eastern Europe**

Crisis symptoms are visible in all spheres of public life inside the countries as well as in relations among them. **In the economy**, the intensity of these symptoms varies from a slowdown of economic growth, a widening social and technological gap with the West, a gradual worsening of shortages in domestic markets and the growth of external debt (GDR, Czechoslovakia, Bulgaria) to a real threat of economic collapse (Yugoslavia, Poland). Particularly dangerous is open and hidden inflation that has
become a common phenomenon and only varies by its rate: creeping and galloping inflation is predominant, but one cannot exclude its escalation into hyperinflation (Poland, Yugoslavia). A “shadow economy” and corruption are gaining in strength everywhere and periodically surface in the form of scandals and swindles that carry political connotations.

In the political sphere the crisis manifests itself first of all in the dramatic weakening of the positions of the ruling communist parties, in some cases so dramatic that one can speak about a crisis of confidence in them. Some of these parties undergo an internal crisis: their membership is decreasing since rank-and-file members do not want to bear responsibility for decisions which they could never influence. The old social base is eroding. Infighting in the leadership threatens division (most probably in Yugoslavia; there are obvious symptoms in Hungary, [but] obliterated in Poland and Czechoslovakia). Under pressure from multiplying and intensifying alternative political structures (the embryos of new parties, clubs, and movements) the HSWP [Hungarian Socialist Worker’s Party] and PUWP [Polish United Workers’ Party] have become so weak that they have to share power and accept a coalition form of government, [have to] agree to a transition to a genuine multi-party system, and to the legalization of dissenting opposition forces. In somewhat other forms this occurs in the UJC [League of Yugoslav Communists]. Alternative forces are developing an international character. Conservatives are acquiring international contacts (for instance, in GDR, ČSSR [Czechoslovakia], SRR [Socialist Republic of Romania]).

The sphere of ideology is very much affected. Its old forms block the renewal of the social system or provide a rationale for resistance to reform (GDR, Romania, Czechoslovakia). Strongly dogmatic social sciences are incapable of working out a convincing ideological rationale for long-needed reforms. In the public consciousness—particularly among the youth—apathy, hopelessness, [a] nostalgia for pre-Revolutionary (i.e. pre-World War II and even earlier) times, [and] a lack of faith in the potential of socialism are spreading. Extreme manifestations of these sentiments can be seen in increasing emigration (Poland, Yugoslavia, Hungary, GDR, Czechoslovakia, Romania). The positions of individual social groups are becoming dangerously radicalized; there is a growing trend towards anarchy and violence (Poland, Hungary, GDR, Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia). The spread of video equipment, satellite broadcasting, and personal computers with printers is bringing about the explosion of an independent culture (Poland, Hungary, Czechoslovakia).

A degradation of common ties is taking place in various forms. Interest in present forms of integration is visibly weakening as well as hopes to substantially increase its effectiveness through direct ties and cooperation in technology. Due to profound structural problems and flaws in the mechanism of trade cooperation, bilateral trade with the USSR is decreasing, which produces very negative consequences for the national economies of our partners and creates additional obstacles in the path of economic reforms (underutilized capacities in most countries [and] clearing [kliringovyie] inflation). In some cases inter-ethnic relations have grown worse: the Hungarian-Romanian conflict became open; mutual antipathy between Germans and Poles, Poles and Czechs, Czechs, Slovaks and Hungarians has increased.

The countries can be divided into two groups by the degree to which they display crisis tendencies.

In Poland, Hungary, and Yugoslavia crisis processes are developing intensely and openly: having broken to the surface once they have acquired a certain inertia. The acuteness of the social-political situation in these countries stems first of all from the mass scale of workers’ protests. “A new workers movement” is being born. Its scope is such that it is impossible any longer to treat the strikes as sporadic excesses any longer or, as was the case of Poland, to write them off as the influence of anti-socialist forces inside the country and abroad. The strikes are obviously escalating into an ongoing social conflict between the workers and the party and state techno-bureaucracy. Rank-and-file communists often actively take the side of strikers. The trade union movements are getting rapidly politicized (some symptoms of this latter process can also be observed in Bulgaria and Czechoslovakia). Official trade unions are beginning to play the role of a legal opposition; independent trade unions are proliferating; trade union pluralism is taking root.

In all three countries living standards of very substantial parts of the population are falling, their incomes are shrinking to the social minimum and even further. Simultaneously differentiation in income is becoming more pronounced, and a black market organization is emerging.

Public consciousness is coming to realize processes heretofore hidden from it, such as the fact of the continuing exploitation of wage labor. Some leaders of the UJC have publicly admitted the existence of the struggle for the redistribution of added value produced by workers, and their exploitation (in particular, through inflation). A discussion about specific forms of exploitation has begun in Poland.

The public consciousness of the working class and other working people is increasingly being formed [by forces and factors] outside of the ruling communist parties. The pressure “from below” plays an ambiguous role: by pushing the leadership toward reforms, it simultaneously curbs and even sometimes blocks attempts to revitalize the economy, to modernize the structure of public production at the expense of income growth and a reduction of living standards. When an ongoing crisis erupts from time to time (“crisis inside crisis”) without getting a peaceful and constructive resolution, problematic and even deadlock-type situations emerge as a result. The probability of social explosions is increasing.

The social-class nature of the ruling parties that are
undertaking the turn toward radical reforms is in question now, since it is very problematic that they will be able to rely on the entire working class, particularly on its largest groups employed in the coal industry, metallurgy, shipbuilding, and other traditional industries which are undergoing a crisis in the whole world. Besides, it is well known that Marxist-Leninist parties traditionally see their historic mission first of all in expressing the interests of workers as the most progressive class whose interests objectively coincide with the interests of the workers. In contemporary conditions this understanding has increasingly complicated taking practical steps towards the revitalization and modernization of the economy, since the short-term material interests of the working class (or at least a substantial part of it)—workers employed in physical labor—clash with longer-term interests of society as a whole: a change of the structure of public production in accordance with the requirements of the scientific and technical revolution [NTR] requires a unique “secondary accumulation at the expense of internal sources,” that is, a temporary self-limitation in the area of consumption.” The governments of Poland and Hungary are seeking to accelerate the changes in the structures of public production by carrying out the policy of “socialist Thatcherism.” Since such a policy hurts substantial segments of the working class and moreover lacks convincing ideological justification, the workers, including rank-and-file party members, rise in protest, quoting previous ideological formulas.

The ruling parties are chronically and badly late in [providing the] necessary reaction to the course of social-political developments. None of them has so far proved to be capable of seizing the initiative. Apparently this is due to the lack of clear prospects for renewal [and] there is a lack of a contemporary socialist vision. So far this problem has been alleviated because of the absence of constructive alternative programs. But today the opposition has most obviously been attracting the intellectual potential of the countries (Poland, Hungary), and has been developing its own ideology and policy.

The developing situations in Yugoslavia, Hungary, and Poland touch on geopolitical and geostrategic interests of the Soviet Union to varying degrees. Whatever the outcome of the Yugoslav crisis, it would only marginally affect our society, without any serious direct ideological effect. On the other hand, the course of events in Hungary and especially in Poland will affect us directly and very painfully by buttressing the position of [our] conservative forces and breeding doubts on the chances of the survival of perestroika.

In Czechoslovakia, GDR, Bulgaria and Romania (all the differences in economic position notwithstanding) analogous internal social-political conflicts are still implicit, even though they have not yet manifest themselves distinctly, nevertheless they have for now a hidden [latent] character. They tend, however, to worsen, and there are telling symptoms that demonstrate [to political scientists] real harbingers of tension:

- Underfulfillment of excessively optimistic plans and programs (particularly regarding consumption), unexpected growth of inflation, declining indicators of living standards, proliferation of uncontrollable spontaneous processes in the economy.
- Growing dissatisfaction with the existing situation in the sphere of distribution of material goods and with equality of opportunity, aggravation of the problem of social justice.
- Intensifying discussions at party forums, more frequent resignations of politicians, reshuffling of personnel.
- Fermentation in the intelligentsia, particularly in its creative components.
- Exacerbation of the generational conflict.
- A moral crisis, proliferation of social pathologies (crime, drug addiction, etc.).
- Accumulating feelings of social frustration [obdelennost’] (deprivation) in large social groups, spilling over into “witch hunts,” sometimes into aggressive ethnic conflicts, anti-worker, or on the contrary, anti-intellectual sentiments.

These symptoms are manifesting themselves in various combinations and in varying force. Social-political conflicts remain hidden largely due to harsh controls exercised by repressive structures over public life and to strict limitations on the mass media. But in some cases [these factors] are no longer sufficient to prevent acts of protest (in Czechoslovakia, GDR, and even Romania).

Further tightening of the controls and persecutions can either trigger an uncontrollable chain reaction—all the way to an explosion (it is quite possible in Czechoslovakia)—or encounter a negative reaction of world public opinion and the introduction of very painful economic and political sanctions. For instance, the repressive totalitarian regime in Romania is increasingly finding itself in international isolation, and amicable contacts with N. Ceaușescu, while promising no advantages in relations with the SRR today [and] even less in the longer term, can only compromise politicians [who engage in such contacts] in the eyes of world public opinion.

Forecast of Developments in the Situation

In the countries of the first group the crisis has acquired visible forms and the sides in the conflict are lined up, but the prospect of further developments is not clear; there are several alternatives. There are none among them that would presuppose the preservation of traditional forms of governance by the ruling parties and their full control over society. Despite all assurances and words, real chances to keep developments in the framework of socialist renewal are shrinking. The existing model of socialism can be transformed only with enormous difficulty
into a more effective and modern social structure. There are serious obstacles to a resolution of the crisis situation with the fewest losses. Furthermore, deadlock and catastrophic scenarios are coming to the fore.

Poland

1. Most favorable scenario: The conclusion of a so-called anti-crisis pact at “roundtable” talks, which could mean an unstable compromise between the PUWP (and its allied parties), Solidarity (and the forces of the opposition intelligentsia) and the official trade unions (VSPS). [There should be a] gradual transition to a mixed economy, decentralization, and privatization of “the giants of postwar industrialization” using shareholding capital and a transition to one or another version of a market economy. Movement towards genuine party-political pluralism (free elections, redistribution of seats in the Parliament, bringing representatives of the present opposition into the government, [giving them] access to mass media) could increase the support on the part of the population of the country and the West. The latter could ameliorate the situation with payment of the external debt [and] opening channels for new credits, which could somewhat reduce internal economic tension. However, even in this case workers’ protests would hardly be neutralized, therefore political instability would continue for a long time, periodically producing micro-crises. This would complicate the decisive and energetic program of reforms. The weakening of the PUWP would inevitably continue as a result of the ideological crisis and internal struggle, but it would take a more gradual course, in a form which could permit an explosion to be avoided. Relations with the USSR would remain ideologized while Poland would remain a member of the Warsaw Pact.

Conditions for realization: preservation and consolidation of the authority of the present party-state leadership (W. Jaruzelski); containment of the pressure “from below” in a framework that would preclude radicalization of both trade union confederations.

2. Pessimistic scenario: Failure of the anti-crisis pact resulting from a clash between the conservative forces in the PUWP, radicalized VSPS and the extremist wing of Solidarity, while minimal political contacts between the party-government leadership and the opposition survive. A protracted “deadlock” situation. Slow and ineffective changes in the economy, de facto pluralism in society without effective mechanisms of making and implementing decisions. Growing elements of spontaneity [and] anarchy. Transformation of Poland into a chronic “sick man of Europe.”

3. Deadlock scenario: Failure of the anti-crisis pact with an aggravation of relations with the opposition. Rapid escalation of the conflict to an explosion (the most probable time in this case – the spring of 1989). Renewal of martial law or a situation approximating a civil war – “Afghanistan in the middle of Europe.”

4. Recently, the first weak symptoms of yet another scenario have emerged. It is close to the first but is related to the formation of a Christian Democratic Party of Labor which, hypothetically, may grow into a big political force if supported by Solidarity (in a role of a Catholic trade union) and the oppositionist Catholic intelligentsia. The PUWP would probably welcome such a scenario since it could promise cooperation with the Church which seeks to avoid an explosion. Yet the paucity of information provides no clues as to the change of the position of the Church which has so far preferred to stay in the role of arbiter [treteyskiy sud’ya].

This last month produced good chances for development of events according to the first scenario. There is no absolute guarantee that it will be realized, since there are no assurances that the traditionalist forces would not dispute the policy [kurs] of the 10th Plenum of the CC PUWP at the forthcoming party conference, and that Solidarity would and could contain the rising mass protest and observe the two-year armistice. The specific conditions of Poland do not exclude the first and especially the second scenarios sliding back into a deadlock. The chance for an explosion in Poland is far greater than in other countries of Eastern Europe.

In a longer-term perspective even the most favorable scenario does not ensure preservation of the socialist choice. An evolution towards a classic bourgeois society of the type of Italy or Greece is highly likely.

Hungary

1. Most Probable Scenario: Radical reforms in the state sector of the economy, partial reprivatization of industries and agriculture, transformation of the economy into a mixed one, functioning on the basis of market relations. Further strengthening of organizational ties with the European Economic Community [EEC] and perhaps with the European Free Trade Association [EFTA], growing cooperation with Austria. Step-by-step rebuilding of the parliamentary system on the foundations of party pluralism. Along with the inevitable decline of cooperation with COMECON and formal continuation of membership in the Warsaw Pact, there will come a strengthening tendency towards neutralism and possibly a movement towards some kind of Danube Federation if this idea takes shape and gains support among Hungary’s neighbors.

Conditions for realization: the Hungarian Socialist Workers Party, as a result of considerable strengthening of positions of its reformist wing in its leadership and in the party as a whole, seizes the initiative in transformation of the social-economic and political structures; gradual formation of a coalition with the Social Democratic movement (not excluding the transition of a considerable number of the party members to the Social Democrats or the peaceful split into two parties). Even if the influence of other parties increases in the short run, the course of events will probably become a modification of the first
scenario, since none of the movements can compete in strength and influence with the reformist circles of the HSWP and the forces of Social Democratic orientation.

2. Pessimistic scenario: Concessions to the conservative wing of the party which retains strong positions in the middle and lower ranks. Attempts to minimize deviations from the traditional scheme. Inconsistency and compromises in carrying out reforms. The growth of economic and political tension. Further decline of living standards, the growth of a strike movement, politicization of trade unions. Possible declaration of inability to pay the external debt, aggravated relations with creditors, including international monetary and financial institutions. Creation of obstacles on the path to the legal constitution of some oppositionist parties and movements. Postponement of parliamentary elections. Further fall of authority of the reformist wing in the present leadership of the HSWP and of the supporting forces in the party and government apparatus. Weakening electoral chances of the HSWP (even as far as electoral defeat). Transition of initiative to alternative political forces. As a result, a return to the necessity of radical reforms, but under new, economically and politically less propitious circumstances.


The first scenario would provide Hungary with the financial and economic support of the West in a scale sufficient to escape the crisis without a social cataclysm. The next development would signify an evolution of the social structure in the direction of the socialist ideal, but in a form which Social Democrats imagine it (chiefly the Austrian [Social Democrats]).

The possibility of development along the first scenario is still not excluded, but more probable is a middle path between the first and the second. An unavoidable complication in this case could direct events to a channel of the first scenario or increase the probability of a complete switch to the second.

The third is the least probable, but it is impossible to completely exclude it. A catastrophic development of events unintentionally provoked, for example, the introduction of public security forces into some domestic conflict, is even unimportant and marginal. This scenario is most quickly possible not as the result of an intentional confrontation after political pluralism is formalized but as a consequence of a spontaneous development of events that got out of control.

Yugoslavia

1. The Most Favorable Scenario: The realization of the new economic strategy of the UJC: formation of an open economic system, creation within the framework of the Federation as a whole of an “internal market”, encompassing goods, services, capital, [and] the labor force, serving to remove internal barriers to the path of the free circulation of the principal factors of production. Support of more or less close organizational contacts with the “Common Market.”

   Conditions for realization: receiving credits from the West, support for reforms by broad sectors of the population, [and] political unity of the public. Development along this path would ensure an escape from the crisis, but the results which it would bring are described in Yugoslavia in different ways, namely:

   - a unique post-capitalist society, preserving a system of self-management;
   - a recapitalization, that is, the transformation of the present system into another, where mixed, private, and foreign-ownership predominates and market logic operates. In this case the population could in time attain a high level of living conditions and partial social security in the same measure that a highly-developed capitalist society provides it.

2. Pessimistic scenario: Reform reaches a certain level then begins to go into reverse. If in the next 2-3 years it does not manage to overcome the obstruction on the part of the conservative dogmatists and everything boils down to the next compromise the opportunity will be maintained for a choice between the first and third scenarios; the chances of the first will fall and of the third will grow.

3. Deadlock scenario: Adherents of preserving the status quo at any price, supported by the army and state security organs try to create a “Titoist Stalinism”, that is, a “firm hand” regime, a dictatorship.

   A weakening of the position of the UJC is unavoidable in any case, but in the first scenario it would be the least. Whether pluralism will take final party and political forms is not yet completely clear.

   The first scenario at the present time is not likely because of a lack of political unity in society [and] serious ideological and national differences. It will not receive the necessary support from the political governing elite and will hardly win a majority of workers to its side. A post-capitalist society with elements of Yugoslav self-management evidently is as illusionary as the system itself.

   For now the most probable is apparently the second scenario, for the reforms will be made by the professional management level which has been in power for 40 years and developed the mechanisms of self-management and uses them successfully. Thereby the opportunity is preserved both for the first and the third scenarios.

   Preconditions for the third scenario recently show up all the more distinctly: in the political arena a potential dictator [Slobodan Milosevic] arises [and] all the more often the army begins to declare its support for him.

   The first scenario’s implementation is not yet out of question, but the most probable seems to be some kind of middle way between the first and the second scenarios. Inevitable aggravation of the internal situation in this case
may propel events towards the first scenario or raise the chances of complete slide-back towards the second scenario. [...] 

In a long-term perspective the present situation in the countries of the second group appears to be more dangerous for the fate of socialism, and crisis phenomena there will inevitably move from hidden to open form. Czechoslovakia is the first candidate. In Bulgaria and Romania (probably, also in the GDR) changes will come with a change of leaders which will occur from natural causes. The character and tempo of subsequent events will depend on the degree to which the new generation of leadership, willing to defuse the accumulated tension and raise personal prestige, comes to relax the grip of the repressive apparatus over society. Much depends on the character and rate of the future development of events. The available data provides no evidence for a substantive forecast of alternatives, but it seems to be obvious that the more the tension is driven inside, the higher the chances for an explosion in one of these countries, with all the ensuring consequences.

**Czechoslovakia**

With high degree of probability one can except rapid escalation as soon as this coming spring or in the fall. Causes: combination of strong public discontent with an unjustifiably harsh crackdown on recent demonstrations, with the first unpopular results of economic reforms (absence of bonuses in many unprofitable enterprises, etc.). Preventing such a course of events is possible by undertaking, at M. Jakeš’s initiative, a decisive replacement of a considerable part of the current party-government leadership, removal of all publicly compromised people, joining efforts with L. [Czechoslovak Prime Minister Ladislav] Adamec and a beginning of practical steps towards socialist renewal and broad democratization. However, since, first, the General Secretary of the CC CPCz has already twice failed to live up to public expectations and to declare himself an advocate of a new course, and, second, there is too little time left for preparation of such a step, the chances for a such a favorable outcome are minimal. Extrapolation of the current situation points to a crisis, during which order would be restored by force and all problems would again be driven inside.

In the course of further events one may expect a consolidation in the political arena of the country of the positions of a new political force—the Club of Socialist perestroika, headed by well-known leaders of the “Prague Spring” C. Čísar and Černík who adhere to socialist positions. This group has a solid constructive platform and can expect an influx of a large number of supporters: possibly up to 500-750 thousand. In a struggle with this political adversary, the leadership of the CPCz has minimal chances for a victory. However, the struggle against the politicians and ideas of 1968 will be acute and will lead to a quick and sharp escalation of the crisis.

**Romania**

1. **Favorable scenario:** Changes take place in the leadership of the country. As a result, N. Ceaușescu is replaced by reasonable politicians capable of understanding and putting into practice the ideas of radical reforms and a renewal of socialism. There are favorable preconditions in Romania for the use of market relations, a relatively dynamic restructuring, and modernization of the economy with a real liberation of economic initiative and the creation of a multi-sector competitive economy.

2. **Middle-deadlock scenario:** The present leadership of the country or continuity of policy remains. If the resources that are freed as the external debt gets paid off are used to reduce social tension, then it is possible to maintain general political stability for quite a while, while maintaining the political problems of the country and its further lagging behind in scientific and technical progress. If, however, the leadership chooses to ignore the task of improving the living standards of the population and diverts the liberated resources for the realization of new ambitious projects, then one cannot exclude a social explosion. In case the processes of renewal in other socialist countries by that time have not proven the feasibility of the policy of reform, there could be the danger of a decisive shift of the country in the direction of the West (including its exit from the Warsaw Pact) as the population has become disenchanted with socialist values and was traditionally brought up in the spirit of community with the Latin [romanskiy] world. Financial and material support from the West, highly probable if there are real changes, may prove to be very effective for a country possessing a good deal of natural and economic resources.

Since the regime still has not exhausted its resources and has recently been accumulating the experience of combined repressive measures and social maneuvering to maintain social stability, the second scenario seems to be more likely. In its favor is a relatively low level of national self-consciousness and the absence of organized opposition in Romania. At the same time, an obvious irrationality of the policy of the current leadership produces growing dissatisfaction not only on the grass-roots level, but even among the ruling elite [verkhushka]. Therefore, a possibility of some kind of changes “from the top” cannot be excluded.

**German Democratic Republic**

The conservative nature of the party leadership, the sectarian and dogmatic character of its positions on ideological questions, authoritarianism and harsh control of the repressive apparatus over the society are weakening the authority of the party and heightening tensions in the country, as well as negativist sentiments among the population. Nevertheless the current policy may survive a change of the leadership for some time.
There is no formal center of opposition in the GDR, although non-conformist movements with more or less formalized platforms do exist. So far they do not represent any force capable of applying a palpable pressure from below or to destabilize the situation. With a degree of probability one can surmise that there are forces in the current ruling apparatus who not only can evaluate the situation soberly and analyze critically, but who can work out a constructive program of changes. Reformist sentiments most likely do not come to the surface because potential advocates of a new course do not have sufficient assurances that the process of renewal in the USSR is irreversible. Besides they understand that deep reforms in the GDR will hardly remain an internal affair and may trigger a change in the status quo in the center of Europe.

With this in mind, a perestroika in the GDR, if it occurs, will require from the USSR and other socialist countries a reevaluation of a number of established positions and perhaps a reappraisal of its interests in the center of Europe. Under conditions of democratization and glasnost’ this question will probably become the central one and its resolution will depend on the determination of the [GDR] leadership in carrying out reforms. In the long run one can foresee the proclamation of such goals as the creation of a unified neutral German state on the basis of confederation. An intermediate slogan “one state—two systems” may be also advanced.

### Bulgaria

Latent ferment and differentiation of social-political forces are present. So far they manifest themselves in local, impulsive outbreaks of resistance to official ideology and the concept of social development, without growing into any significant movements. Further behavior [dinamika] and the directions of social-political shifts will be determined primarily by economic trends. The leadership of the country has worked out a concept of economic reform, but practical measures for its realization have not yet been sufficiently prepared, so real results ought not be expected in the immediate future.

More likely is a deterioration of the economic situation, particularly because of growing indebtedness to the West and the threat of an inability to pay, which would inevitably bring about unwanted social, and then political consequences. Against this background, hotbeds of tensions might proliferate, including strikes, particularly among unskilled and low-skilled workers.

The ideological influence of the party on the society is declining. A mood of opposition is intensifying among intellectuals who resent the use of force against ecologists and the persecution of a number of scientists for critical speeches. There are seeds of alternative movements and extremist elements are becoming more active. Alternative political forces are still weak and not organized, but they can broaden their social base.

Withdrawal from the political scene of the present number one in the Party may provide an impetus for intra-party differentiation between the supporters of the old leadership and those who seek a genuine renewal. Forces capable of carrying out more balanced and reasonable policy do exist in the party, they enjoy enough authority, but they will face a difficult legacy.

The overall trend of social-economic and political development of the country tends toward the Hungarian scenario with certain differences, time disparities, national specifics and an eclectic stratification of experience of other countries. The fate of the latter [Hungarian] experiment may exercise a serious influence on future developments in Bulgaria.

### Possible consequences for the USSR

The prospect of the weakening of the positions of the ruling parties including their removal from power, its transfer into the hands of other political forces, decline of Soviet influence on the countries of Eastern Europe, [and] drawing them into the orbit of economic and political interests of the West require the formulation of the most rational and reasonable reaction of the Soviet Union. We face a choice: to thwart the evolution described above or take it in stride and develop a policy accepting the probability and even inevitability of this process.

Attempts to thwart the emerging trends would be tantamount to fighting time itself, the objective course of history. In the long term these kind of steps would be doomed and in the short run would mean wasting means and resources for an obviously hopeless cause. Attempts to preserve the status quo in Poland, Hungary, and Yugoslavia, which has lost its objective foundations, as well as the support of conservative forces in the GDR, Czechoslovakia, Romania, and Bulgaria will lay an excessive burden on our economy, for the price of maintaining existing relations will increase in time. The use of forceful pressure on our part will inevitably reinforce the conservative wing in the upper echelons of power, slowing reforms where they have begun, [and] worsening the crisis. Social-political tension in the societies will increase, anti-Soviet sentiments will grow stronger, which might spill over into balancing on the brink of a very acute social-political conflict with an unforeseeable outcome. The direct forceful intervention of the USSR into the course of events on behalf of the conservative forces that are alienated from the people, most evidently signify the end of perestroika, the crumbling of trust of the world community in us, but will not prevent a disintegration of the social-economic and social-political systems in these countries, will not exclude mass outbreaks of protest, including armed clashes. In this, not only nationally isolated events, but mutually interacting, “detonating” explosions can be expected.

In the framework of possibilities opened by new thinking and cooperation between the USSR and the United States, East and West, “architects” of American
foreign policy can be seen as changing their priorities. They prefer the support of perestroika in the USSR and the creation of an external environment favorable to its success. Serious Western politicians warn against playing on problems of the socialist community [or] its disintegration which, in their opinion, can bring about unforeseeable consequences for the Western world. Responsible Western circles are coming to the conclusion that by cooperating with reformist forces they can achieve more than by attempting to pull individual socialist countries from the sphere of influence of the USSR.

Working through [the options for] a future Western strategy towards Eastern Europe, bourgeois political scientists and some think tanks consider a scenario of “Finlandization” of a number of countries of the region.13 What could be the possible consequences of such a scenario for the USSR? The following aspects should be considered: military, international political, internal political, economic, and ideological.

1. Poland will certainly not leave the Warsaw Pact, since this is against its national, state, and geopolitical interests. Hungary will also hardly raise this issue in the foreseeable future. The forthcoming withdrawal of a part of the Soviet troops stationed on the territories of both countries will significantly reduce the political acuteness of this problem. The GDR will also not raise the question of leaving the Warsaw Pact, since its party and state cadres consider this organization as one of its mainstays. Only in the distant future, if détente and the construction of a “common European home” progresses sufficiently far, might the issue of a unified German confederate state be put on the agenda. From the international angle this will most likely end up with the neutralization of both parts of Germany and the establishment of special relations of the FRG with NATO and the GDR with the Warsaw Pact. The positions of Bulgaria and Czechoslovakia depend on many uncertain factors, but they will hardly leave the Warsaw Pact in the foreseeable future. If relations with us worsen, the Romanian leadership may take up this issue, but with skillful ideological orchestration of this step we will not really lose anything since geopolitical location will force self-isolated Romania to consider our interests. In the case of Yugoslavia, as it is well-known, the question of the Warsaw Pact does not figure at all.

So it is not necessary that the Warsaw Pact—at least in the foreseeable future—sustain significant losses, and the countries of Eastern Europe which are undergoing today serious transformations will stay in alliance with us.

2. As long as new foreign policy trends emerge in these countries of Eastern Europe with which the US and the West associated the special hopes of their differentiated policy, the new foreign policy tendencies taking shape [in] the USSR can consciously seize the initiative from the West, as well as from the oppositionist, social-reformist forces inside these countries (Poland, Hungary) by consciously adopting a certain degree of “Finlandization” of these countries. Such a policy will demonstrate the seriousness of our global aims to get involved in world economic, political, and cultural relations. Renunciation of the diktat with regard to socialist countries of Eastern Europe will nurture a more benevolent image of the USSR in the public opinion of these countries and around the world, and it will make the US seriously correct its foreign policy towards Eastern Europe.

The very chance that European socialist countries may take an intermediary position on the continent will intensify the interest of Western Europe both in the maintenance of economic and political stability of Eastern Europe, and in the stimulation of the process of disarmament and détente on the continent and around the world. Inevitable consequences of this will be the growth of the independence and significance of the European factor in world politics and economics, which will help the efforts of the Soviet Union aimed at containing an anti-Soviet consolidation of the Western world and at developing a “common European home.” The economic burden of the USSR will be alleviated. Anti-Soviet and nationalist influences will operate on the shrunken ground, and the authority of the Soviet Union and its ideological-political influence on the broad strata of the population will grow—of course, if the political shift is viewed as a result of our conscious decision and not a result of the pressure of hostile forces. This will be a “revolution from above” in foreign policy which will prevent a “revolution from below.”

3. It cannot be excluded that in some countries of Eastern Europe the crisis has gone so far and reforms have come so late that the ruling parties will not be able to retain power or will have to share it in a coalition with other political forces. By itself the fact of a transfer of power to alternative forces does not mean an external and military threat to our country. On the contrary, history gives examples when the Soviet Union developed relations with the non-communist leadership of Eastern European countries that were not too bad. The normal political activity of communist parties (as one of several political parties) should not instill fear in non-communist governments that, under the guise of international aid there will be a violation of popular sovereignty with a possible violation of its wishes expressed through free elections. Guarantees of non-interference in the internal affairs of neighboring countries [and] respect for their political stability should be seen under present circumstances differently than in 1950s-1970s, for we ourselves have recognized the need for a different understanding of socialism in principle, have stopped trying to expand over the entire world the model that existed in our country, [and] we have begun to realize the need for accounting in the socialist model for some basic characteristics of the Western mode of development (market, competition, civil society, civil liberties, etc.).

There is no question, of course, of renouncing the support of communist and workers’ parties, but an obligatory precondition for such a support should be
voluntary recognition of their leadership by their people, their legitimation. They should pay as any other party in a normal democratic society for the loss of trust. The same logic dictates to us the need for the support of business, civilized contacts not only with those political parties in the countries of Eastern Europe which are currently at the helm, but also with the internal opposition, constructive opposition in society—the same as our practice is toward non-socialist states. Unwillingness to accept contacts with alternative forces in these countries could be interpreted as a form of interference into internal affairs, i.e. something which we have rejected as a matter of principle.

4. The objective outcome of the natural development of the trend towards “Finlandization” could be a new, middle-of-the-road position of the East European states, since they, according to their internal order, the nature of economic ties and real international position would pass from the sphere of monopolistic influence of the USSR into the sphere of mutual and joint influence of the Soviet Union and European “Common Market.” It is not excluded that in the foreseeable future the European Economic Union will provide the status of an associate member to some countries of Eastern Europe. They could in this case become the first trailblazers in the process of integration between East and West. This process not only poses no threat to the interests of the USSR, but, on the contrary, will allow [us] to multiply the benefits we receive today from our cooperation with Finland and Austria by linking with Western markets, the achievements of Western science, equipment, and technology. When a common market starts functioning in Western Europe in 1992, East European countries drawn into the orbit of the EU may facilitate access to this sphere for us.

5. In a new situation we will have to liberate ourselves from some persistent ideological stereotypes, for instance from the assumption that only a communist party in power can provide guarantees for the security of Soviet borders. We will have to rethink the notion of a “world socialist system.” But the utility of these [notions] was purely fictional; it existed only in a realm divorced from reality [zhizn’], in the didactic ideology which we have been striving to overcome. Consequently, the rejection of such categories and dogmas may only promote a new system of ideological coordinates that are emerging in the process of perestroika and the formation of a new political thinking.

An optimal reaction of the USSR to the evolutionary processes taking place in Eastern Europe would be, as it turns out, an active involvement which would put them [the processes] under control and would make them predictable. Even if some decline of Soviet influence in Eastern European affairs takes place, this would not cause us fatal damage, but, perhaps on the contrary, resulting from self-limitation, would put our goals in a rational harmony with our capabilities. For we speak about a voluntary abandonment of only those levers of influence that are incompatible with the principles of international relations proclaimed by the Soviet Union in the spirit of “new thinking.”

Of course, such a turn of events may produce collisions and conflicts, for instance if openly anti-Soviet, nationalistic groupings get legalized in this or that country. But their persecution and keeping [them] in the underground will only help them gain in popularity, but [their] surfacing, against the backdrop of our restrained policy and with thoughtful criticism of them from friends of the USSR will lay bare the lack of perspective and short-sightedness of anti-Soviet assumptions.

Favorable international conditions for the progress of reforms in the socialist countries of Eastern Europe will give a powerful side effect to the process of internal perestroika in the USSR. Structural modernization of their economies [and] the development of market relations will help to overcome the elements of parasitism in their economic relations with the USSR and to transfer them onto the healthy ground of mutual profitability.

Possible practical steps of the USSR

In the light of the aforementioned, the following measures seem to be advisable:

- Working out a strategic program to develop our relations with East European socialist countries in the framework of a new model of socialism and a proportional reflection of this program in official documents and speeches.
- Advancement of our proposals to reform the Warsaw Treaty Organization, stipulating a larger role for the fraternal countries in the leadership of the Warsaw Pact, creation of regional commands (the example of NATO) under the leadership of representatives of the appropriate countries. This would help to “tie” them into the Warsaw Pact, which in practice is still regarded as a predominantly Soviet formation.
- A further gradual reduction of our military presence in Eastern Europe taken at our own initiative and by agreement with the host countries, working out a schedule for the withdrawal of troops, the creation of the most propitious conditions for demilitarization of Central Europe (and its possible neutralization), [and] reduction of American presence on the European continent.
- Development of bilateral consultations on mutually beneficial measures permitting an alleviation of the consequences of restructuring in the countries of Eastern Europe, particularly where strong tensions might lead to an upheaval.
- In case appropriate proposals are made, we should agree to some form of continuous and periodic consultations with West European countries and the US on the issues of prevention of upheavals in one or another country of Central and Eastern Europe.
- Introducing the practice of genuine consultation
on the issues of foreign policy with our allies instead of informing them about decisions that have already been adopted.

- Carrying out a serious analysis of the activities of Soviet embassies in Eastern European socialist countries, in some cases leading to replacement of ambassadors and leading officials of the embassies who act against the interests of our foreign policy in its new phase. Special attention should be paid to our cadres in the countries where potential escalation of tension and even upheaval is possible. During the replacement of cadres we should send to these countries those officials whose appointment will be taken as a sign of the attention [and] high priority the USSR has for relations with socialist countries.

- When arranging summits in socialist countries, one should borrow the methods utilized in leading capitalist countries (organization of “assault landings” [desanty] of leading Soviet scientists, cultural figures, etc.).

- It is necessary to work out without delay an integrated line of conduct on the issues of “blank pages” in relations with each East European country (We should not ignore the existing negative consequences that resulted from our postponement of the resolution of these problems with regard to Poland and Hungary).

- It is highly important to radically change our information policy with regard to events in socialist countries of Eastern Europe, to cover events in an objective light and to explain the processes that are taking place there, since it is equivalent to the explanation and justification of measures that lay ahead for us in carrying out our economic and political reforms.

- While covering events in fraternal countries, responding to the speeches of their leaders, we should express a manifest support to those pronouncements which signal their acceptance of reformist ideas (particularly with regard to the leaders of the GDR, Czechoslovakia, Bulgaria and Romania), thereby leading [them] to understand with which forces and trends the sympathies of the Soviet Union lie.

- Any initiatives associated with the popularization of Soviet publications merits support. Proposals of our embassies in some countries to decline such support are clearly in contradiction with our interests.

Some conclusions

Overcoming the crisis process in the countries of Eastern Europe presupposes outright de-Stalinization. This should encompass both their internal life as well as their relations with the Soviet Union. The model of economic and political development imposed on these countries after 1948 has clearly exhausted its capabilities. The search for more auspicious ways and means of development is leading to the rethinking of the socialist ideal, including the revival of those assumptions which had formed in communist and workers’ parties of East European countries in 1945-1948 (mixed economy, parliamentary democracy, etc.). This means a return to a natural historical social progress that stems from national specifics of each country, instead of [one] deformed by external pressure. To a certain degree one can speak about the end of the postwar era, a partial overcoming [predoleniy] of the Yalta legacy and the split of the world into two hostile camps, [and] about the gradual formation of a more varied and simultaneously more united Europe.

From the viewpoint of the world socialist perspective any attempt to stop this evolution by force could have the gravest consequences: the inevitable sliding back of Eastern European countries to the rank of poorly-developed countries (the so-called “fourth world”), the undercutting of the socialist idea in all its versions, including providing neo-conservatism in the West with new cards to attack social achievements of the workers. Besides, Eastern Europe will inevitably get “flashpoints” and par dictatorial [paradiktatorskiye] regimes which would continuously draw off the material resources of the Soviet Union and would practically exclude the prospect of renewal of socialist society in our country. However, the peaceful (without serious upheavals) evolution of East European states would improve to a great extent the situation in the world and broaden international relations. Chances would thereby grow for an accelerated development in Eastern Europe, the use of certain socialist elements that can be found in practice in highly-developed capitalist countries and, as a whole, the prospect of the formation of humanistic and democratic post-capitalist societies in accordance with the socialist ideals would be preserved.

[Source: Donation of Professor Jacques Levesque; copy on file at the National Security Archive. Translated by Vladislav Zubok and Gary Goldberg.]
Soviet Union
Communist Party
Central Committee

THE STRATEGY OF RELATIONS WITH EUROPEAN SOCIALIST COUNTRIES

1. Our relations with socialist countries, including the allies of the Warsaw Treaty Organization, entered a difficult critical stage. The transition to the principle of equality and mutual responsibility, which began in April 1985 and was affirmed during the Working Meeting in Moscow in 1986, gave us an opportunity to remove many layers and eliminate perceptions of our conservatism. Perestroika, the development of democratization, [and] glasnost, confirmed the role of the Soviet Union as the leader in the process of socialist renewal. More and more, we are influencing our friends by our own example, by political means.

However, having broken with the previous type of relations, we have not yet established a new type. And the problem is not only that the process of restructuring the interactions between the socialist countries on the basis of “balance of interests,” which we have proclaimed, is objectively difficult, but, subjectively, it creates an impression in the eyes of our friends that we are abandoning them, retreating from the priority character of relations with socialist countries. The problem is that the transition to the “balance of interests” is seriously aggravated by the prolonged crisis of the model of socialism which developed its main features in the Soviet Union in Stalin’s time, and was then transferred to the countries that were liberated by us, or with our decisive participation. Their political system still suffers from a lack of legitimacy to this day, and the stability-oriented socio-economic system is incapable of giving an adequate response to the challenge of the scientific and technological revolution.

The relaxation of tensions, the diminishing of the threat of war, to which the socialist countries contributed in a decisive way, caused deep changes in their national security priorities. The economic factor, the ability of a country to join and to assimilate into the world economy, moved to the top of their priorities, for not a single country can overcome the growing gap individually, but socialist economic integration is clearly in a stalemate, so that if the countries stay with it, they would risk being left out of world development for the foreseeable future. This constitutes the main national interest of the majority of the socialist countries right now, and it should be primarily taken into account in our relations with them.

2. The difficult and transitional character of the present period is that the ruling parties cannot rule in the old way any more, and the new “rules of the game”—of reconciling the group interests that are pouring out, of finding a social consensus—have not been worked out yet. And to the extent that this process is postponed and prolonged, the parties could find themselves in more and more difficult situation.

Against the background of the general tendencies that are observable in all socialist countries, there are specific features of individual countries, [a fact] which requires a differentiated response from us.

In Poland and Hungary events are developing in the direction of pluralism, toward a creation of coalition, parliamentary forms of government. In these circumstances, the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party (HSWP) and the Polish United Workers’ Party (PUWP) can count on preserving their positions only in a framework of political alliances. A lot will depend on whether they are able to attract a part of the opposition to constructive cooperation. Taking into account the fact that a considerable part of the population of Poland is tired of crises, the probability of an evolutionary development here is higher. In Hungary, at the same time, notwithstanding their seemingly better living standards, the situation might unfold in most unexpected ways.

The European socialist countries found themselves in a powerful magnetic field of the economic growth and social well-being of the Western European states. Against this background, on the one hand, their own achievements grew dim, and on the other hand, the real problems and difficulties that exist in the West are practically imperceptible. The constant comparing and contrasting of the two worlds, of their ways of life, production, intellectual cultures, entered our daily life thanks to the mass media, and there is no way around it. And we are speaking about the countries in which they still remember the times when they were close or on the same level of development with the Western European countries. The influence of this magnetic field will probably grow even stronger with the beginning of functioning of the European Common Market [in 1992].

As a consequence, in a number of socialist countries, the process of rejection of the existing political institutions and the ideological values by the societies is already underway now. Nonconformism is spreading more and more widely among the youth, and it is moving from a passive, kitchen level toward a civil and political one.

In Czechoslovakia the tension has been rising considerably recently. Here the “1968 syndrome” is still
present, which interferes with the party’s ability to define its position toward perestroika, especially in the sphere of democratization and glasnost.

A significant part of the leadership leans toward employing administrative measures in the struggle against opposition sentiments. In general, there is a tendency to begin changes in the economy and to postpone the reform in the sphere of democratization and glasnost to a later stage.

The stabilizing factor is that so far they managed to preserve a relatively high standard of living in the country, although they achieve it with more and more effort now.

In Bulgaria, there is, in essence, a simulation of perestroika, which is to a large extent a consequence of Todor Zhivkov’s personal ambitions. The loud declarations about a comprehensive reconsideration of Marxist-Leninist theory, and about the creation of a principally new model of socialism lead in practice to endless reorganizations, shuffling of personnel, and to the further tightening of the screws. All this discredits the Party, socialism, and casts a shadow on our perestroika. Nonetheless, T. Zhivkov still controls the situation rather well by employing methods of political manipulation, and by relying on a well-developed administrative apparatus, even though discontent is growing in the Party and in the country.

In the GDR a particularly complex situation is developing against the background of seeming well-being. Even though the GDR can be distinguished from other socialist countries by the better state of the economy and standard of living, the economic situation of the country is deteriorating. There is the debt pressure and the growing dependence on the FRG. The party leadership, to a large extent under the influence of personal ambitions, is striving to avoid the problems of renewal. In giving critical assessments of the conservatism of the GDR leadership, one has to keep in mind that it has some objective basis. The GDR was founded not on a national, but on an ideological, on a class basis, and therefore a rapid transition to democratization, glasnost, [and] openness might be accompanied by special problems in this country.

In Romania, there is still the oppressive atmosphere of the personality cult of Ceausescu’s authoritarian rule. Striving to isolate the country from our influence, he is now trying to dress in the robes of a “fighter for the purity of socialism,” and indirectly puts forth arguments against us. Some eruptions of discontent are possible in the country, but it is unlikely that they will become widespread at the present time. The situation will, most likely, change only with Ceausescu’s departure, which could be accompanied by quite painful developments.

Yugoslavia entered a phase of political crisis in the context of very deep economic problems and national contradictions; this could lead to a substantial weakening of the positions of the UJY [League of Yugoslav Communists], and even to a fracture of the federation.

3. Several possible scenarios for further development of socialist countries are distinguishable now. One of them is a smooth movement of society toward democratization and a new form of socialism under the leadership of the ruling parties. Under this [scenario], some concessions regarding the issue of authority, significant growth of self-government, [strengthening of] the role of representative organs in political life, bringing the constructive opposition into running society, and even possibly its [the Party] turning into one of the forces contesting for power, cannot be excluded. This road toward a parliamentary, or a presidential socialist republic in some countries (Poland, Hungary, Czechoslovakia) would be preferable to us. If the initiative for democratic changes originates with the ruling party, the chances of preserving internal stability and obligations to allies are very high.

Another scenario—is a way of leaps and bounds, which would be a direct continuation of the preceding development, when the ruling party offers a new portion of political concessions after the next mini-crisis. This scenario lets us avoid the worst—a political eruption—but it moves the Party away, to the curbside of political life, and strengthens the pessimism and the scepticism of socialism, stimulates the demands of the opposition, and gradually prepares society for leaving the framework of socialism. The transition of a country to a traditional mixed economy and free play of political forces would not, in all cases, lead it to abandon its obligations to the allies, but in such a case the foreign policy orientation of that country would become a subject of intense political struggle.

Finally, a third way is also possible—preservation of the existing power relations in society along with suppression of the social and political activity of the masses. Under this scenario, it would be characteristic to undertake an openly conservative course, limited reforms, mostly in the management of the economy, and active non-acceptance of Soviet perestroika. In the future, such a course does not exclude a spontaneous resolution of the crisis situation via a social explosion with unpredictable consequences for the country’s internal and foreign policy. The main catalyst of such a crisis could be an increase in the dissatisfaction of the population as a result of economic deterioration and worsening living standards.

4. In this critical, transitional period, our relations with socialist countries continue to remain our priority. But not in the sense which we implied before, when the Soviet Union and its allies were, in essence, in international isolation, and so the relations with each other considerably outweighed our ties with the rest of the world. Since then, the new political thinking, the energetic efforts undertaken by the USSR and its allies in recent years have rapidly changed the international situation. It is natural that the relative weight of our relations with the socialist countries in our foreign policy became different. However, that does not change the fundamental fact that the degree of our interdependence with the socialist countries remains higher than that with the rest of the world, and that the internal stability and the influence of socialism in world affairs
depend on that. From a geopolitical point of view, the importance of European socialist countries for the Soviet Union was determined by the fact that from the very beginning they played a unique role of a security belt, which created a strategic umbrella [prikrivitse] for the center of socialism. Today, notwithstanding all the changes in the international situation, this role of Eastern Europe, and especially of the GDR, Poland, and Czechoslovakia, remains unchanged to a certain extent.

It is a complicated question—what could and should be the forms of our influence on the socialist countries under the new conditions?

Authoritarian methods [and] direct pressure have clearly outlived themselves. In the political sphere, even in the case of a sharp deterioration of the situation in one of the countries—and we cannot exclude such a possibility today—it is very unlikely that we would be able to employ the methods of 1956 and 1968, both as a matter of principle, but also because of unacceptable consequences. Use of force would be admissible only in one case—if there were a direct and clear armed interference of external forces in the internal developments of a socialist country. Therefore, essentially, our only methods of leverage could be our political and economic ties.

5. The state of economic relations is assuming growing political importance. Their role is evident for the majority of socialist countries. And for us they have a great importance as well also. We should decisively discard the stereotype of those countries as our parasites [nakhlebniki]. In contradistinction to routine perceptions, the economic effects of our trade with European COMECON countries is rather favorable for us. It can be seen from the following examples.

Share of goods imported from the COMECON countries in the overall volume of goods consumed in the USSR:

Metal rolling machinery—40-50%; food industry equipment—40%, textile industry equipment—50%, chemical industry equipment—35%; lumber and wood-working equipment—about 30%; printing industry equipment—more than 40%; meat, meat products, vegetables and other produce—up to 10%; non-food consumer products—10-15%.

According to our calculations, we get up to 4 rubles of profit for each ruble of the value of the oil sold in the COMECON countries (the effectiveness of oil exports to these countries in 1987 was 493%). Apart from that, by buying food products and consumer goods in those countries, we have a substantial budgetary profit when we sell them in the USSR at our retail prices. Thus in 1987, for each ruble of expense for the import of meat and meat products we had the following profit from domestic sales—96 kopecks, cotton textiles—1.76 rubles, coats and dresses—2.24 rubles, leather shoes—2 rubles, personal care items—2.92 rubles, china—2.81 rubles, furniture—89 kopecks, and so on.

The conditions for grain purchases, in particular, in the countries of COMECON (Hungary, Bulgaria) are more favorable for us than on the world market. For example, we need to sell approximately 1.45-1.5 tons of oil to buy a ton of wheat on the world market for convertible currency; to buy it in the COMECON countries mentioned above, we would need to sell approximately one ton of oil.

At the same time, the old forms of economic cooperation have been to a large extent exhausted. The volume of trade is decreasing. The USSR is already unable to satisfy the demand of the COMECON countries for increases of deliveries of fuel and raw materials; and on a number of vitally important resources—oil, for example—we are actually planning to decrease the deliveries in the coming five-year period. We are also unable to provide these countries with modern technology. As a result of drop in prices for energy resources (mostly oil), by the end of the next five-year period, the Soviet Union could end up with a negative trade balance with European COMECON countries of more than 7 billion rubles.

The issue of a transition to integration has already been raised. It is especially acute for our COMECON partners. Without actively joining the processes of international economic integration they are simply incapable of ensuring a radical renewal of their economies. It appears that the strategic goals established for this sphere earlier—the policy of creating a COMECON common market and appropriate instruments (convertibility of currencies, wholesale trade, and others) continue to be fully relevant. However, their realization has been unsatisfactory. A multitude of joint decisions notwithstanding, industrial cooperation is clearly stagnant. The comprehensive program of scientific and technological cooperation of the COMECON countries, which raised such hopes, has been practically wrecked.

Following the Working Summit in 1986 the joint work of COMECON countries picked up somewhat. Direct ties between enterprises were developed and joint enterprises were established. However, the new forms of interaction have not had any significant impact on the volume and structure of mutual interchange (direct ties represent less than 1% of trade).

The temptation to reorient the economies of the socialist countries toward the West grows stronger. Export of products of the best quality production to the West has become the norm. Often COMECON countries compete with each other on the capital markets.

Experience shows that it is impossible to solve the problem of economic integration with the help of general, even the best programs. It is necessary to accumulate relevant material, organizational, legal, and other types of prerequisites in all the countries. Success here will depend, first of all, on cardinal changes in the Soviet economy, in its structure, in [its] administrative mechanism, and in expansion of its export potential, which would take at least several years.

What could we do in the existing situation? First of
all, we should not allow our prestige as a reliable economic partner to weaken. Each breach of contract—and such cases are becoming more frequent—puts the socialist countries in a difficult, sometimes even hopeless situation. Accumulation of similar facts in the economic sphere unavoidably leads to unfavorable political consequences for us. We should overcome this illness, as far as reconsidering the proposals of our ministries on such a complicated issue as the volume of our oil deliveries for the next five-year period. This should be done in the spirit of our former agreements.

Coordination of efforts for the conversion of the military economy could become one of the new channels of economic influence on the socialist countries, especially because the military-industrial complex of the socialist countries is integrated to a higher degree than their civilian economies. One more opportunity would be to develop a common concept of alleviating foreign debt, which is extremely large in a number of socialist countries.

Lastly, when we intensify our economic ties with the West, it is important to actively try to bring our socialist partners into those contacts, in order to overcome the impression, which some of them have, that we are lessening our attention to the fraternal countries. We probably should hold specific discussions with them to talk about a possibility of their joining in the realization of projects that are carried out with the help of Western credits, trying in the final account to work out a coordinated strategy of integrating the socialist commonwealth into global economic relations.

6. A number of new tasks have emerged in the sphere of political cooperation. Just several years ago we would have considered many of the developments that are underway now in the socialist countries as absolutely unacceptable for us. Today we need a deeper, more flexible, and differentiated approach to what is useful for us, to what is admissible and what is unacceptable. At the same time, it is important that we realistically assess our opportunities, carefully weighing where we can realistically have an influence, and where our interference could only aggravate the situation.

The measure of socialism in the transformations that are underway now in the socialist countries is a difficult question. Some of them are allowing not only the extensive development of market relations, but also forms of private property, and widespread inflow of foreign capital. And still, it appears that we should not exaggerate the danger of one of the countries simply switching to the capitalist way of development. The roots developed by socialism are very deep. Such a transition would mean a fast breakup of the entire economy [and] its structures, development of crises, [and] rapid deterioration of living standards for the majority of the population. And it is very unlikely that the West would be inclined to take on its balance sheet countries whose economy was marked by crisis elements and large foreign debts.

It is characteristic that the ideas that are presented from time to time about the “Marshallization” [i.e., a new “Marshall Plan”—ed.] of certain socialist countries (in particular, Hungary and Poland, for example in the form of a conversion of their debt into foreign capital investment) so far have not enjoyed any noticeable support in the West—due to the size of the expense and the unpredictability of economic and political consequences. Although we should not completely discard this possibility in the [future], we should be more concerned about the possibility of an economic collapse or anarchical explosions in the context of social tensions and hopelessness. This concerns the countries where the regimes continue to stay in power by further tightening the screws (Romania, North Korea).

We need to give special comprehensive consideration to the processes of formation of the structures of political pluralism, of the coalition and parliamentary type, [and] legalization of the opposition that are unfolding in a number of countries. Of course, this is an uncharted [and] risky road, which requires that the parties possess both the strength of principles and tactical flexibility; [they need] the ability to lead the process, and not to leave it up to the opposition forces.

The lessons of several crises have shown that the main danger posed by an opposition is not the fact of its existence in itself, but that it could unite all kinds of forces and movements in the society which are dissatisfied by the existing situation in a negative, destructive platform. Therefore, pulling apart of the opposition into the official structure, entrusting it with responsibility for constructive solutions to the problems that have accumulated, could play a stabilizing role.

In the existing difficult circumstances the processes of our perestroika have a special influence on internal processes in the socialist countries. In some sense, it has also created a new situation. Whereas before, any mass expressions of dissatisfaction with the existing situation which flared up from time to time in the socialist countries assumed an anti-Soviet character almost automatically, now there is no such harsh feature. A serious blow has been dealt to the idea of the impossibility of reforming unidimensional socialism that finds its basis in the experience and example of the Soviet Union.

Perestroika has brought us objectively closer to the countries which are trying to reform their economic and political systems (China, Yugoslavia, Poland, Hungary), but at the same time has created certain problems in relations with some of our traditionally close allies, whose leadership continues to rely on the command administrative methods.

In this situation we have to face the question of how to build our relations with parties and countries, whose leadership exhibits a restrained attitude toward our perestroika (the GDR, Romania, Cuba, North Korea). Here, clearly, we need restraint and tolerance, we need to understand the positions of such parties as the [SED] [and] the Communist Party of Cuba, which, due to their specific, and sometimes even front-like circumstances of
development, experience particular problems in accepting and implementing the processes of economic restructuring and the democratization of society.

7. The general development of world politics and the increased differentiation of the national interests of socialist countries require that we make corrections to the approach to coordinate our joint steps in the international arena.

Most importantly, the process of deconfrontation in the world, the decreasing weight of the military-strategic and the increasing weight of political factors of security, objectively increases the role of our friends. And it is not only because the reductions of conventional weapons in Europe moved to the forefront of the all-European process in its various dimensions, taking into account the new quality that was conferred on it by the Vienna meeting. Without the active and positive participation of our allies, progress in these directions is simply impossible. Therefore, we can speak about not just mutual information, about informing sometimes “at the last minute,” but about preliminary coordination of our actions.

However, the problem is much larger. Essentially, the period when the reduction of military threat was achieved primarily within the framework of Soviet-American relations is not that far from its logical conclusion. The internationalization of major international issues is growing. And if that is so, then friends’ advice [and] consultations with them should involve not only concrete topics under consideration where their interests are directly affected, but also the entire complex of the issues of world economy and politics. Only in this case can they have a real, not just superficial feeling of belonging to the development and implementation of a common socialist foreign policy. At the same time, our initiatives would assume a more weighty, and, considering the experience of our friends, in some ways a more substantive character.

However, there is also another side to this. The pluralism of interests of different socialist countries is more and more noticeable. Reduction of military budgets in some of them is acquiring a rate that is ahead of our own, whereas in others it creates anxiety for the future of their own military industry [which is] rather developed and integrated with us. In a similar fashion, the humanization of international relations [and their] confirmation of human rights is perceived by the leadership of some governments as a threat to socialism; for others it serves as an additional impulse to enter the road to “openness” in their own countries.

The difference of interests sometimes leads to outbreaks of nationalist feelings that aggravate relations between the countries (Romania-Hungary). It could be anticipated that internal socio-economic and political difficulties would strengthen the desire of the leadership of certain countries to strengthen their authority and play on sensitive nationalistic strings.

Taking into account all these different interests, it is not at all necessary to try to achieve consensus for the sake of consensus during our discussions and consultations with our friends. We should not allow a situation where one of the countries would tie our hands based on their national ambitions. Each country should have a right to preserve its freedom of action, of course, along with explaining its position to the other allies and substantiating it. It is not in our interest either to transfer any kind of aggravated nationalist tensions between our friends to a multilateral basis, especially if such a “dispute” involves us directly. Of course, it is a different matter if we are faced with opposition to our steps by many, or even a majority, of the socialist countries—in such a case it would be a signal for us to have another look if that step was the right one.

8. Despite the fact that we have repeatedly stressed that we had discarded our command administrative approach to socialist countries, the syndrome of such an approach persists in the thinking of our friends. At the same time, the conservative part of the leadership would like, in essence, for the Soviet Union to continue its role as some kind of “protector” of socialist countries. But a significant portion of the public, on the other hand, expresses its anxiety concerning the existing situation in which they see vestiges of such paternalism. This finds its expression in different attitudes toward the presence of the contingents of our troops in socialist countries, and it is linked with the influence on the internal processes, not with external threats to their security. There is continuing anxiety about how the Soviet Union would react in the situation of a political crisis in one of the countries, in which the ruling party’s control of the situation would be threatened. There is dissatisfaction with the still persistent inequality in the military mechanism of the Warsaw Pact, the leadership of which practically represents a Soviet military headquarters with the purely formal presence of representatives of other countries.

Here lies a significant reservoir of our possible steps for removing the above-mentioned “irritants”, including ensuring real participation of our friends in the military mechanism of control of the Warsaw Pact, eliminating the negative internal political aspect of the presence of our troops, possibly through “internationalization.” It would be advisable to direct our efforts to achieve a situation where in some countries, where it is necessary, they would have, instead of Soviet troops, joint formations of troops of the Warsaw Pact countries which agree to it.

It is most necessary to work out a balanced approach to the problem of the possibility of our interference in the event of a political crisis in one of the countries. It presupposes our affirmation of the principle of freedom of choice as a universal basis of the world order. But at the same time it should leave a certain vagueness as far as our concrete actions are concerned under various possible turns of events so that we do not stimulate the anti-socialist forces to try to “test” the fundamentals of socialism in a given country.
Finally, it is necessary to take into account the growing attention of our friends to the still remaining “white spots” in our relations; this interest will most probably become even more pronounced this year [1989] in connection with the approach of the 50th anniversary of the beginning of World War II and the signing of the Soviet-German pact. It would be expedient to work on our interpretation of the nature and the origins of World War II in advance, employing the newly-defined approaches to the assessment of our policy in the 1930-40s, and to discuss it with our friends.

9. In the present circumstance we could formulate the following “minimum program” for our relations with socialist countries in the transitional period:

First of all, we should have a balanced and unprejudiced analysis of the development of socialist countries, of their relations, and we should prepare scenarios of our reaction to possible complications or sharp turns in their policies ahead of time, at the same time decisively rejecting the old stereotypes, and avoiding willful improvisations which did us great harm in the past. We should step up our joint study of and efforts to find ways out of the existing crisis situation, of a new vision of socialism and modern capitalism, and of the possibilities and the limits of their interaction, mutual influence, and mutual assimilation.

Second, we should keep in mind that the significance of our contacts with the party and state leadership of the socialist countries is preserved and even increases in significance, especially because in the existing situation our friends could develop a “complex of abandonment,” a suspicion that the priority of relations with friends proclaimed by us does not have real meaning. Inter-party contacts, if they are accompanied by an open analysis of problems, discussions, and exchange of information about intentions, would allow us to directly feel the pulse of the fraternal parties, to give them moral support.

Third, in explaining the essence of perestroika policy, we should carefully try to avoid any artificial transfer of our experience to the context of other countries, which could be perceived by them as a relapse to command administrative methods, restriction of their independence, and could eventually lead to undesirable circumstances.

Fourth, by strictly adhering to our obligations, we should preserve the existing ties that link the socialist countries to the USSR and try to ensure that the inevitable and for the common interests to a certain extent beneficial process of integrating the socialist economies with the West develops in a balanced, coordinated way, and is not accompanied by unacceptable economic and political costs, and would strengthen integration processes among socialist countries.

Fifth, taking into account the key role of the armed forces in the case of a possible deterioration of the situation, it is important to maintain genuine partnership between the armies of the socialist countries both on a bilateral basis and in the framework of the Warsaw Pact by eliminating all elements of inequality.

Sixth. We should continue the policy of decreasing our military presence in the socialist countries, including the future possibility of a complete withdrawal of our troops from Hungary and Czechoslovakia. We should consider the scenario of “internationalization” of the remaining troops, of the creation of joint formations.

Seventh. It is certainly in our interest that the changes that are ready to happen in the socialist countries, with all the possible variations, develop as much as possible inherently without unnecessary shocks and crises, within the framework of socialist solutions. But we have to account for a possibility of a different turn of events. In such a situation, it is important that the ideological differences on the issues of the renewal of socialism, and finding ways out of the crisis situations that have manifested themselves in the socialist world, do not assume the character of conflict and do not have a negative influence on the relations between our states, and do not lead to antagonism toward the Soviet Union.

This presupposes making a distinction between the interests of an essential preservation of ruling communist parties at the helm of power and the interests of preserving allied relations with those countries.

Eighth. By making use of the favorable opportunities created by perestroika which overturned the stereotypes of “Moscow conservatism,” we should actively seek channels for contacts with all the forces in the socialist countries which compete for participation in acquiring power. Contacts with churches are becoming more important because the church’s influence is obviously on the rise in the socialist countries.

In general, at this stage it is particularly important to reject the old stereotypes in our approaches, which have outlived themselves. If a country disagrees with us, and sometimes even seriously—this still does not mean that it is turning to the West; if the role of the Party in one of the countries is questioned—this still does not determine that it would definitely distance itself from us. The dialectics of

**CONGRATULATIONS!**

Frequent contributor
Mark Kramer’s article on “Ideology and the Cold War” in the October 1999 issue of the REVIEW OF INTERNATIONAL STUDIES was awarded a prize by the British International Studies Association as the “best article published in 1999.”
the real processes, as our experience has shown, is much more complex. Yugoslavia and China “distanced” themselves from us some time ago, but they have hardly turned into capitalist states. In Poland, the Party can realistically become just one, and maybe not even the main [one] of the power structures; however, the geopolitical situation of the country is such that even in the opposition there is an understanding of the necessity of preserving some form of alliance with our country.

All this presupposes studying and forecasting specific scenarios of the development of the situation in individual countries, including the most extreme ones, making decisions as to what those scenarios could mean for our relations—and implementing them with practical actions on this basis.

[Source: Archive of the Gorbachev Foundation, Moscow; on file at the National Security Archive, donated by Professor Jacques Levesque. Translated by Svetlana Savranskaya and Gary Goldberg.]

DOCUMENT No. 3
“The Political Processes in the European Socialist Countries and the Proposals for Our Practical Steps Considering the Situation Which Has Arisen in Them,”
24 February 1989

[MEMORANDUM OF THE SOVIET MINISTRY OF FOREIGN AFFAIRS]

The socialist community is experiencing the most difficult period in its development in the entire postwar period. An extremely complex situation has arisen in Eastern Europe. We are talking about the fate of socialism in a number of countries of this region, the future of the Warsaw Pact, [and] the fundamental interests of the Soviet Union.

The serious difficulties which the European socialist countries have encountered are chiefly connected with a crisis of the administrative command model of socialism. This model has entered into obvious contradiction with the requirements of the development of society, has become a brake on the path of socio-economic and scientific-technical progress, and has created a real threat of a growing gap [otsaivaniye] between the socialist world and the West.

Cardinal political and economic changes have become an objective necessity in all the European socialist countries. However, the awareness of this necessity, the notions of the character and rates of change, [and] the approaches to the theory and practice of socialist construction at the present stage are far from [being] the same.

In some countries—Hungary, Poland, and Yugoslavia—the leadership is carrying out political and economic reforms extremely decisively, in others—Romania, the German Democratic Republic, Czechoslovakia, and Bulgaria—the leadership actually remains a follower of the administrative command system. Without question, the course of perestroika, in the Soviet Union is exercising and will exercise a decisive influence on the character of the processes in socialist countries. Our perestroika can either become a catalyst of the ongoing processes of renewal or, in case of slippage, [can] strengthen doubts in socialism as an effective social and political system.

The surmounting of a negative legacy and the renewal of socialism are occurring with difficulty and conflict. The ruling parties of a majority of countries have delayed carrying out reforms and several of them have lost confidence in the public and now are losing control over the course of events. This chiefly concerns Poland and Hungary.

The population associates existing problems and failures mainly with oversights and obvious distortions [deformatsii] in the policy of the ruling parties on which all the responsibility for the resulting crisis situation lies. All this has led to a fall of their authority among the population, including the working class. The situation in several ruling parties is aggravated by factional struggle and a split in the leadership.

In these conditions opposition forces have sharply stepped up their activity: “Solidarity” in Poland, “Democratic Forum” and other groups in Hungary, the “Chartists” in Czechoslovakia, etc. Social Democratic, Christian Democratic, and nationalist parties are forming. Opposition forces enjoy support in [a] broad [social] strata, including the working class. The opposition is striving to weaken the influence of the ruling parties in all spheres of social and political life and acquire access to power. The question of power in such countries such as Poland and Hungary is coming to the surface all the more.

The ruling parties have been forced into concessions and compromises to preserve the socialist system and their influence in society, resorting to a policy of national accord, and starting on the path of recognizing political and labor union pluralism. This is most characteristic of the Polish United Workers’ Party and the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party. Political reality has put before them the need for cooperation with the opposition [and] drawing [the opposition] into participation in the functioning of government and public institutions. There is no little share of risk in the implementation of the measures by [our] friends.

A tendency toward political pluralism in the European socialist countries is being displayed everywhere and, judging from everything, will become more and more dominant. This will lead to a multi-party system (not obligatory on a coalition basis) [and] the “free play” of political forces. Having received access to parliamentary
and government bodies, the opposition can completely or partially drive the ruling communist and workers’ parties from power. All this is a real prospect, even today, for several European socialist countries. Considering that forces hostile to socialism have stepped up their activity, this process could have serious political consequences.

In countries where authoritarian methods of leadership are being retained (Romania, the German Democratic Republic, Czechoslovakia, Bulgaria) the ruling parties are experiencing growing difficulties in resolving social economic, political, and ideological problems. Hidden dissatisfaction with their policy is intensifying [and it] could be displayed at any moment, but here and there it is already being displayed in the creation of alternative associations, in demonstrations, and strikes. In response, the authorities are intensifying their repressive measures [and] using harsher methods of regulating public political life. Such a practice provokes even more dissatisfaction in society, and a sharper negative reaction abroad. It comes into contradiction with the general tendency in the world community toward democratization and with the principles and provisions of the final documents of the all-European Conference [CSCE] and the Vienna meeting.

It ought to be supposed that [there is a] process of transition in these countries to democratization [and] a genuine renewal of socialism, but this is in the final account unavoidable, will occur more painfully, and be accompanied by deep political and social convulsions.

Perestroika has brought real changes to the character of our relations with the socialist countries. In practice we have switched to the principles of equal rights and mutual responsibility in cooperation [and] to a considerable degree have removed the stratification [nasloyeniye] of the past. Nevertheless, many problems remain undecided, especially in the sphere of economic cooperation, the development of a modern concept of socialism, [and] the development of relations between people. Moreover, new frictions have arisen in several areas. We have been confronted with facts when the leadership of Romania, the German Democratic Republic, [and] Czechoslovakia are trying to block the spread of the ideas of perestroika in their countries, resorting, in particular, to prohibitive measures. Sometimes unconsidered publications in our mass media serve as an excuse for this. This introduces a certain tension in our bilateral relations.

The problem of “white spots” has acquired a special bitterness in the history of our bilateral relations with a number of socialist countries. Among them are the questions connected with the Soviet-German Pact of 1939, the “Katyn Affair,” the events of 1956 in Hungary, the 1968 crisis in Czechoslovakia, etc. The delay in the work of evaluating these events from positions of new thinking is causing irritation in certain circles of the socialist countries, and in certain strata of the population [this] gives rise to mistrust in our policy of glasnost. Aggravated national territorial problems have brought serious discord into the relationships among the socialist countries in recent years. This is the case in regard to Hungary and Romania, Romania and the USSR, Yugoslavia and Bulgaria, Poland and the German Democratic Republic, etc.

As a whole, a growth of nationalism in all East European countries, and a strengthening of centrifugal tendencies in their policies has been observed.

The situation of affairs in the Warsaw Pact is developing in complex ways. Our policy for genuinely equal relations within the alliance, the development of the initiative of each member state, [and] the approval of the practice of co-creation in the development and advancement of large foreign policy initiatives has doubtless had some positive effect.

The further development of collective, democratic principles in the activity of the alliance is being hindered by the obstructionist position of the Romanian leadership, which has obviously taken a course of dismantling the existing organs of political and military cooperation within the Warsaw Pact framework. The allies are all the more prominently [rel’yefneye] displaying an attempt to get more from the Warsaw Pact, mainly from the USSR (a guarantee of security, political information), than they contribute to it, [and] to display independence to the detriment of common interests [and] mutual responsibility. They are dissatisfied with the remaining inequality in the military mechanism of the Warsaw Pact leadership, which is practically a Soviet military headquarters with an especially formal presence in it of other countries. Some allied countries (Hungary and Czechoslovakia) are openly finding burdensome the Soviet troops on their territory and display an interest in the quickest possible reduction of their strength.

At the same time, it seems improbable that in the foreseeable future any of the allied countries will raise the question of leaving the Warsaw Pact. We have to deal with the attempt of individual countries, especially Romania and Hungary, to give their participation in the Warsaw Pact a formal character, [and to] avoid coordinated actions which could limit their freedom of maneuver in international affairs.

The US and their allies in NATO are right now placing reliance on an evolutionary path to change the social structure in the European socialist countries [and] a peaceful transition from socialism to bourgeois regimes, using a differentiated approach to each of them. Proceeding from this goal [justanovka], judging from everything, the Western powers do not want confrontations with us on account of Eastern Europe. In the case of a worsening crisis situation in individual countries they [the Western powers] will most likely display restraint and not intervene in their [Eastern European countries] internal affairs, especially militarily, counting on their patience being rewarded with time.

Recently, both in the West and in the socialist countries, predictions have all the more been spread about a transformation of the existing regimes in Eastern Europe into “post-capitalist societies” and their “Finlandization.”

The extremely serious domestic political situation in a
number of European socialist countries, [and] the deeply thought-out, long-range policy of the Western states regarding our allies and the socialist community as a whole require from us the greatest attention to the processes occurring in the fraternal countries, to the problems of our cooperation with them, [and] to the prospects for the development of world socialism. In doing so, [we] ought to keep in mind that recently [our] friends could have received the impression that, in conditions of an intense dialogue between the USSR and the US [and] the growth of our attention to global and regional international problems, [our] relations with socialist countries have become secondary for us.

1. In the conditions which have arisen the growth in practice of our attention to relations with the socialist countries [and] an approach to them as a genuinely high-priority main thrust of Soviet foreign policy have special significance.

The most important problem at this stage is not to permit the erosion of socialism in Eastern Europe [and to] keep all the countries of this region on the socialist path of development.

2. In as much as at the present time our influence on the development of the European socialist countries with the aid of economic and scientific technical levers is limited, [we] need to strengthen the emphasis on work with friends in the political and ideological sphere [and] substantially increase comradely attention to the leaders of the fraternal countries. In the present situation even the simple exchange of opinions and experience with the leadership of friends has a significance of no small importance in resolving the problems confronting us. Meetings at the level of general secretaries and CC secretaries, heads of government, ministers, [and] leaders of public organizations are a matter of primary importance. It is necessary to simplify the procedure of these meetings, to give them a more business-like, working character.

The time has come to hold a conference of leaders of fraternal parties in a narrow circle with the object of discussing the urgent problems of socialist construction and increasing the effectiveness of cooperation within the framework of the socialist community.

3. Work to prepare new treaties on friendship, cooperation, and mutual aid between the USSR and a number of allied states in connection with the expiration of current [treaties] would acquire great significance for the further development of relations with the European socialist countries in the spirit of equality, partnership, trust, [and] mutual responsibility. [The treaties] should reflect the new principles of relations between socialist countries [and] the available experience in rebuilding their cooperation, excluding conditions not appropriate for the present character of the mutual relations of socialist countries.

4. [We should] proceed from [the] fact that the use of forceful methods on our part in relations with socialist countries and especially the use of military force is completely excluded, even in the most extreme situation (except cases of external aggression against our allies). Military intervention not only would not prevent, but would worsen the social and political crisis, cause mass outbreaks of protest even as far as armed resistance and lead in the final account to the opposite effect, the reinforcement of anti-Sovietism. It would seriously undermine the authority of the Soviet Union in the foreign policy field, worsen our relations with leading Western powers and even with other countries, [and] would lead to the isolation of the Soviet Union in the international arena.

At the same time, considering the present complex situation in the European socialist countries, we ought to keep our limited military presence in Eastern Europe as a stabilizing factor and maintain uncertainty as regards the possible role of our troops in a critical domestic political situation.

5. In connection with the ambiguous perception of Soviet perestroika by the leadership of the European socialist countries, our attitude toward those of them who have a restrained attitude toward the reforms in the USSR (the German Democratic Republic, Romania, [and] partially Czechoslovakia [and] Bulgaria) should be distinguished by self-restraint and calm.

Considering that the creation of new models of socialism is an objective process, in our relations with fraternal countries [we] ought to avoid any kind of attitude of exhortation [nazidatel’nost’] regarding various models, attempts at hanging labels, and more broadly share experience in the area of the theory and practice of socialism. The main thing should be mutual understanding with friends so that reforms be carried out on a socialist basis.

[If] the situation worsens in one or another socialist country, we ought to refrain if possible from giving public support to repressive actions of authorities which contradict international norms in the field of human rights.

6. Inasmuch as in a number of socialist countries there could be created state structures based on a coalition system of power with the participation and significant influence of the opposition, it is advisable now to make it [our] business to establish contacts with reemerging political parties, organizations, and associations, including trade unions acting in a constitutional framework.

7. Closing the remaining so-called “white spots” in the history of our relations with several of these countries would help in increasing trust in the USSR and other socialist countries. This especially concerns Poland, Hungary, and Czechoslovakia.

[We] ought to accelerate the study of our position on such acute questions as the “Katyn Affair”, the events of 1956 in Hungary, [and] the 1968 crisis in Czechoslovakia in the light of new political thinking.

In this connection it is required that a political decision be made to open access to the appropriate archival materials.

8. In contrast to the majority of countries of the world
community, substantial restrictions continue to be maintained in the socialist community in the area of contacts between people [and] private trips of citizens. In the political area this does not serve our interests [and] has an adverse effect on the development of trade and economic, scientific, cultural, athletic, and other ties. At the present time, the question of the maximum removal of restrictions on trips of citizens of socialist countries to the USSR and of Soviet citizens to these countries and the creation of corresponding facilities for this has become unavoidable.

9. An important goal should be the preservation of the military-political alliance of European socialist states—the Warsaw Pact.

In accordance with the proposals advanced by us to improve the mechanism of cooperation within the framework of the Warsaw Pact, it is necessary to follow a line of maximum politicization of the activity of the alliance, democratization of the forms of its operation, an increase of the contribution and interest of each of the member states. This would be aided by an atmosphere of a genuine comradely, free, and unstructured exchange of opinions at meetings of the PCC [Political Consultative Committee], KMID [Committee of Ministers of Foreign Affairs], and KMO [Committee of Ministers of Defense] [in doing so, it is not obligatory [that] they come to a consensus at any price on all questions—each state has the right to preserve its freedom of action, explaining and justifying its position to the other allies); obligatory rotation [of officials] in all bodies and structures of the Warsaw Pact; and the simultaneous increase in the effectiveness of its mechanism—the creation of a permanent political working body, giving the General Secretary of the PCC the role of coordinator within the framework of the alliance. [We] ought to simplify the procedure for preparing and holding conferences and meetings of Warsaw Pact bodies [and] try to ensure continuous working contact of the allied states.

10. All the more pressing has become the problem of establishing a close coordination of the actions of allied socialist states with respect to the East European policy of the US and its partners in NATO and working out coordinated strategy and tactics in this direction.

5-yesh/GG 24.2.89

[Source: Donation of Professor Jacques Levesque; copy on file at the National Security Archive. Translated by Vladislav Zubok and Gary Goldberg.]
an economic character have begun.

After an absence of many years instances of work interruption have been noted in Hungary. Trade unions are insisting on legal approval of the right to strike and an easier procedure for declaring them. A corresponding bill has been presented to the People’s Assembly.

8 In Yugoslavia the average wage has fallen to the level of the end of the ’50s and the beginning of the ’60s. In Poland the standard of living has been thrown back to the level of 1973. In the last year, absolute consumption in Hungary fell for the first time.

9 An analogous effect can temporarily produce a unique silent agreement with the public if the authorities are capable of guaranteeing them a sufficiently high level of consumption (Hungary after 1956 or Czechoslovakia after 1968).

10 The forecast is based on the decision of the CC of the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party [HSWP] to transition to a multi-party system and that restoration of unity in the leadership of the Party is practically excluded.

11 On the anniversary of the February events and the day of the death of T. Masaryk this crackdown will probably take place again.

12 At the moment [he] accepted the post of General Secretary when V. Bilak resigned.

13 Inasmuch as internal impulses for such a shift with the present composition of the leadership of the CPCz are very weak, it probably is conceivable only as a result of our skillful and careful influence.

14 In the political dictionary this term mostly signifies the return of our neighboring states to the bosom of capitalist development while preserving special, friendly relations with the Soviet Union which would guarantee the security of its borders. Such an understanding of the notion “Finlandization” overlooks two significant aspects in the relations between the USSR and Finland. First, they are built on neutrality of our northern neighbor who does not join any military bloc; second, the Finnish communist party by definition cannot come to power and carry out a revolutionary coup, which guarantees the stability of the [Finnish] social-political structure. Since the countries of Eastern Europe will hardly raise the issue of leaving the Warsaw Pact in the near future and the ruling parties, given even their rapid weakening, will retain for a while some social base, the term of “Finlandization” can be used here only with very significant reservations.
The Political Transition in Hungary, 1989-90

By Csaba Békés and Melinda Kalmár

Marking the tenth anniversary of the political transition in Hungary, historians and political scientists launched several large scale projects to locate, assess, and publish documents pertaining to the historical events of 1989-1990. In June 1999, three principal Hungarian scholarly enterprises, the Institute for the History of the 1956 Hungarian Revolution, the Hungarian Program on Openness in Eastern Europe and the Former Soviet Union, and the newly founded Cold War History Research Center in Budapest—together with the National Security Archive and CWIHP—organized an international conference in Budapest on the transition from Communism.

The Hungarian partners in this multi-national effort focused on three important sources: first, on the records of the former ruling Communist Party, the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party (HSWP). Critical to the endeavor was the preparation of transcripts of the tape recordings of key HSWP meetings, since written minutes of the Politburo meetings were kept only up to 1982. Transcripts were completed for all of 1989 (and some of 1988), and more than 5,000 pages of this extraordinarily significant historical material is being gradually declassified and opened for research. A second crucial task was the collection of the minutes and memoranda of the meetings of Hungarian leaders with CPSU General Secretary Mikhail Gorbachev and other Soviet officials, as well as the records of their conversations with other Soviet bloc and Western officials.

The third, similarly massive project involved the editing and publication of the minutes of the Opposition Roundtable and the National Roundtable that accompanied the transition from one-party rule to democratic pluralism in 1989. The series, consisting of eight volumes, contains the negotiations among the emerging opposition parties as they co-ordinated their policies toward the HSWP, as well as all the minutes of the tripartite talks held between June and September 1989. The talks, in fact, acted as a national constituent assembly, working out the procedure and the legal framework of the political transition, eventually resulting in free multi-party elections in March 1990. Thorough investigation of these new materials—as well as those becoming available in Russia, the United States and other East-Central European countries—will be necessary to understand and assess more fully the transition process in Hungary. The selection of documents published below exemplifies the richness of the new materials and allows a glimpse at the complexity of the events of 1989/90.

DOCUMENT No. 1

Minutes of the Meeting of the HSWP CC Political Committee, 31 January 1989

[On 23 June 1988, the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party Central Committee established a committee to analyze Hungary’s political, economic and social development during the preceding thirty years. The panel, headed by Imre Pozsgay, a politburo member and minister of state, included party officials and social scientists. After several months of examining pertinent archival documents, the Historical Subcommittee (one of four working groups) completed and discussed its final report at its meeting on 27 January 1989. Most sensationally, the report described what occurred in 1956 in Hungary as not a “counterrevolution” (as Moscow and the regime it installed in Budapest headed by János Kádár had long insisted) but a people’s uprising. This very point was announced by Imre Pozsgay in an interview on both the morning news program and the next day, on the most popular political journal of Hungarian Radio, “168 hours,” without any prior consultation with the political leadership. The issue triggered a serious crisis in the Party and eventually served as a very important catalyst in the transition process. The following excerpt reflects the first reaction of the Politburo members.]

(EXCERPT)

Imre Pozsgay: With regard to the specific issue, the subcommittee, headed by Iván T. Berend, had a debate Friday morning, on the basis of a 102-page report.

I had no chance to read the document before the debate because it has just been given to me. Nevertheless, let me point out only one aspect of the debate, namely that six members of the Central Committee were present, and the leaders of two Party institutions. There was no argument about the incriminating assessment; on the contrary, the conclusion was drawn that a minimal public consensus—I merely interpret this, as I have no right to borrow others’ words—so, a minimal public consensus does not harm the identity of the Party, nor does it shatter the personal identity of those who tied their lives, career and behavior specifically to this struggle. Nonetheless, it can lead to social reconciliation and national consensus on certain bitter and still all too distressing issues, such as the whole situation since 1948-49, and especially its peak—or nadir, as others believe—the crisis and tragedy of 1956. The committee unanimously agreed on this issue. And finally
we also agreed that this document, even before it is discussed by the Central Committee, has to be publicized, so that scholarly opinion, supported by wide masses of the Party, can be used to create a political direction. These were the fundamentals and basic motives of the committee. In a way it is an answer to the numerous questions, in fact asked from many sides, as to why the Central Committee did not discuss the issue first. According to the earlier procedure, this would indeed have been the way of handling such questions. However, I am convinced that this procedure is the very reason why the Party has been hoisted on its own petard, when it came to discussing similar issues.

As regards further connections and problems that the issue raises: Certainly, or rather undoubtedly, the ensuing political effect—even if it has the minimal consensus I have just referred to—is expected to become a bone of contention within the Party, something that divides people and induces political polemics, although it will not hurt even those who have won the Honor for the Socialist Fatherland for their sacrifices. The committee has been aware of this fact from the very beginning, knowing that we cannot get around this debate, that it has to happen, so in a way the cup of sorrows must be drank. (...)

Mihály Jassó: The vast majority is dumbfounded, and not because they have heard the results of the scholarly research from the Historical Subcommittee, but because they feel that a pillar of the institutionalized political system is about to be uprooted. Party members feel that our political system is somehow based on 1956. And now they have the impression that this foundation is being pulled out from under them. They think that this slice of the past—1956—has to be assessed with subtle differentiation. But now this assessment shows no sign of differentiation either. Figuratively speaking, they used to make a fine cabinet with an axe, and now they are trying to do the same. [sic] I don’t intend to be too poetic but I’m coming from the office where I got phone calls and letters today, asking what we are going to call the monument on Köztársaság Square? Who sacrificed their lives there? Defenders of the people’s power? Resistance fighters of the people’s uprising, or their opponents? It is all confused. What shall we call the Mezo Imre Street? And so on. Because perhaps it was a people’s uprising that started the whole thing but it led to something else. Given that, we need at least a subtle, differentiated assessment of the whole period. The present one is not differentiated at all. This is another extreme assessment that sets people far apart. If we start a debate on the issue, which is now, of course, unavoidable, I think it will only result in separating some of the party membership. It is a crude simplification but if we segregate party members into two groups on the basis of this, there would be “pro-uprising” and “pro-counter-revolution” members. Obviously I refer to the underlying political content. Perhaps we cannot avoid the debate, but I am not sure that it has to be induced so
We find counter-revolutionary ideas with Imre Nagy? Eds speak out. Imre Nagy was not a counter-revolutionary, he that it is so, one should speak out forthrightly. And I do matter of honesty, if someone thinks it over and believes speak. In that debate, well, Imre Nagy was right. It is a Rákosi was a dime and Imre Nagy was a dozen, so to that it was wrong to think that between 1953 and 1956 now realize that the mistakes were more serious. We realize we become smarter, and now we see what went on. We around Imre Nagy had such a vital role in the events … At was a mistake. It is not true that the revisionist group criticism of Imre Nagy and his circle, and the significance materialization of a historical mistake. [...] Consequently, I have to point out that it would be a serious mistake—especially for the future of the Party—to tie our policy to the 1956 bandwagon.

We have to conclude, having read the document—I have read the document and the material of the Committee debate as well—that Pozsgay’s statement and the exposé of the Committee show a unanimous approach. They are in accord. Which does not justify how the statement was publicized. I am still of the opinion that it was disadvantageous, hasty and inaccurate. I hold to my opinion, even though there is no fundamental controversy between the standpoint of the Committee and that of Pozsgay.

As to whether it was a “people’s uprising” or “counter-revolution,” my opinion is that a definition without controversy is impossible on this issue. Personally, I think that it was a people’s uprising; our declaration in December 1956 acknowledged it in the first paragraph, labeling it as the rightful discontent of the people. I do maintain, though, that hostile enemies gradually joined in, and they could have turned the wheel of history backwards, so the danger of counter-revolution was imminent. As to our opinion on 1956, I argue against the far-fetched criticism of Imre Nagy and his circle, and the significance of revisionism. … I declare with communist honesty, it was a mistake. It is not true that the revisionist group around Imre Nagy had such a vital role in the events … At that time, I myself accepted this interpretation. However, we become smarter, and now we see what went on. We now realize that the mistakes were more serious. We realize that it was wrong to think that between 1953 and 1956 Rákosi was a dime and Imre Nagy was a dozen, so to speak. In that debate, well, Imre Nagy was right. It is a matter of honesty, if someone thinks it over and believes that it is so, one should speak out forthrightly. And I do speak out. Imre Nagy was not a counter-revolutionary, he was not. If a Party ever, with their own… [unreadable—Ed.] One just has to read his speeches. Where the hell do we find counter-revolutionary ideas with Imre Nagy? Nowhere, absolutely nowhere! And these are matters of honor. Rather, he was a sectarian. If he was still among us now unchanged, he would be more of a Stalinist. His role in the 1956 events remains debatable, it cannot be clarified. The Soviets were mucking around, which we swept under the carpet. Even today we cannot see the truth. I already know, however, that the Soviets had a lion’s share in the decision. János Kádár and the Politburo of the time took full responsibility, for which I respect them. However, they are far from being the only ones to blame. Their responsibility is without question, because it cannot be accepted either that a decision was made in Moscow, or that it was executed here. Unfortunately, though, I have to emphasize again that we won’t be able to come to terms with the question of 1956. Legally Imre Nagy was culpable, because he breached the law. It is not too moral, at a time when everybody is breaching the law—I was breaching it, and so was János Kádár—the lawbreakers themselves accuse and convict the weaker one on the basis of the sectarian law. These are not righteous things. All the same, those who did not live in that situation are unable to imagine how it was—and this is the dramatic aspect. I think, if we leave it as the focus of political debates, it would result in the serious weakening and a crisis of values of the communist movement. Consequently, we have to put history right; it can be corrected. Roughly according to the opinion of the committee, it can be corrected, but let me emphasize that the word “counter-revolution” should not be replaced with a single term, and it has to be decided who makes the correction. I think it is now time for us to try and come to some kind of political consensus. We cannot let the undulations of political life shatter the tenuously forming unity and co-operation of the Party and its leadership, so that other players take over while we eventually fall apart. I also mean that Pozsgay should not become the victim of this affair either. Yet Pozsgay should show more discipline and more mutual responsibility as well.

All in all, we should not let ourselves confront each other to an extreme. What do I think the possible action to take is? I believe that the Central Committee should be summoned and presented the material of the committee. The Pozsgay affair should not be presented on its own; it would be an impossible trial that wouldn’t lead to anything. I think that the documents of the subcommittee have to be submitted for debate, and only then could it be discussed whether what he did was wise or not, and what action has to be taken in order to settle the debate. At the same time, principle issues of daily politics should be presented to the Central Committee, such as what should be done now in the question of the single-party system and the multi-party system. Things have passed over our heads. I cannot see another option other than that we accept the multiparty system. But we need to debate all this. And if we decide against the multi-party system, then that will be our decision, and everybody decides according to his conscience whether he takes the political responsibility for his decision. I do admit sincerely, I would take...
responsibility for both, even if I do not agree with the decision. It can be done intelligently. Retreat, however, is the worst thing one can do, it can only lead to our defeat. We have to do it sooner or later, anyway. (…) All in all, I say that we take seriously the compilation of the committee, and consider their report worthy of being presented to the Central Committee. We suggest to the Central Committee that we publicize the documents of the committee. We’ll see if the Central Committee will accept the suggestion. (…) In fact, the most serious and sensitive issue of our policy is quite palpable here, namely how we relate to the Kádár era, to the Kádár regime. In my opinion, it would be a mistake for reformers to entirely do away with the Kádár regime. On the other hand, it would be a mistake to canonize the policy of the Kádár regime and battle to the last man standing in defense of what we have created since 1956. Some in the Party have a leaning towards the latter view, while others are ready to prove and expose the mistakes. Neither of these should be embraced. We have to try to solve the problem rationally. If relevant circles, or the dominant circle of the Central Committee put the issue on the agenda, a consensus is possible. We should start working on activity programs, preparing for the multiparty system. We need these projects for creating a stabilization program that addresses today’s conditions, as well as more specific government programs. (…) [Source: Magyar Országos Levéltár (MOL) [Hungarian National Archives, Budapest], M-KS- 288-5/1050 o.e. Translated by Csaba Farkas.]

DOCUMENT No. 2
Record of Conversation between President M. S. Gorbachev and Miklós Németh12, Member of the HSWP CC Politburo, Chairman of the Council of Ministers of the People’s Republic of Hungary, Moscow, 3 March 1989

[The meeting between M.S. Gorbachev and Miklós Németh, one of the leading reformers and technocrats in the Hungarian leadership, was the first top-level personal consultation between the two countries’ leaders following the crucial decisions of the HSWP CC on 10-11 February 1989 to re-evaluate the events of 1956 as a people’s uprising and announce the introduction of the multiparty system in the country. The following part of the discussion reflects the determination and the hope of both leaders that the much needed transformation of the political structure and the economy could and should be realized within the framework of a reformed socialist system.]

(EXCERPT)

M. S. Gorbachev congratulates Németh on the occasion of his appointment as Prime Minister, and asks him how long he has been in office.

M. Németh: For almost a hundred days. I am often asked whether I am thinking about reviewing and sizing up what I have done so far. I usually answer that I have no time for that. Even if I make an assessment, it is for the Central Committee or the parliament. One has to be critical of one’s own activities.

M. S. Gorbachev: True enough. In the single-party system self-criticism, is supposed to be an important issue. Possibly the most significant condition is how successfully the leading role of the Party is achieved. On the other hand, our mistakes and shortcomings are all rooted in the lack of criticism. Naturally, I am not only talking about the management, the top layer of party leaders, but I mean it on a larger scale—the whole of the Party. During the Stalin regime, from 1934 to his death, there were only two party congresses.

M. Németh: In the days when Lenin was at the helm, there were endless debates and a clear political line was formed all the same.

M. S. Gorbachev: Yes, because there were entirely different conditions both in the Party and in the country. Now we are opening the way towards socialist pluralism. The multiplicity of opinions is not a tragedy for the society; on the contrary, it is a real advantage. Of course, there are some who want to exhibit democracy for their own selfish objectives, but it can be dealt with, it is merely a question of struggle. [Boris] Yeltsin has now a peculiar position in the Central Committee. His is a typically leftist, rather obnoxious position, which can nevertheless find a favorable reception among the public. We have to put up with several problems that directly concern people’s lives, and those who cry out loud enough about these can reap a dividend. The majority of people cannot be blamed for this, as they are hoping that a man like him will one day be able to do something for them. Besides, it is important that they learn on their own the difference between a demagogue and a serious politician. There is nothing flattering I can say about a member of the Central Committee who gambles at the expectations, while he knows very well that the party program is aiming at the quickest possible way of satisfying these expectations.

M. Németh: It happens quite often with us. There are always a few members of parliament who rise to speak from such a demagogic position.

M. S. Gorbachev: The main thing is to be honest and truthful in the Central Committee, in the parliament, and among the people as well, and to have a clear conscience. Otherwise the personality will break down, and downfall is unavoidable.
M. Németh: What we consider the most important task for the time being is creating a majority within the Central Committee that can be joined around a unified program.

M. S. Gorbachev: This, of course does not rule out the possibility of the existence of some kind of left-wing or right-wing views.

M. Németh: Yes, the only important thing is that the center be strong.

M. S. Gorbachev: We are for a majority that relies on democratic development. We would like to revitalize the role of the councils, agitate the activity of MPs, and assure complete publicity. Without these, the real power of the workers does not exist. See what we had before in the past: masses of the people were alienated from property, politics, and culture. Yet the principal goal of socialism is overcoming alienation and putting man in the focus of attention.

M. Németh: I see no difference between pluralism in a single-party system and in a multi-party system. You are absolutely right: if there is freedom of thought and a unified program according to which people behave, everything goes on as it should. In May 1988 we laid the foundations for such a practice in the course of the Party Conference. Nonetheless, there were certain illusions.

M. S. Gorbachev: Experience showed us that nothing could be achieved at the first trial. We have to get back to the accepted agreements and decisions, polish them, make them more precise, and then move on.

M. Németh: Yes, the conditions are changing. Theoretically what you said in Kiev is important for us. Every socialist country is developing in its idiosyncratic way, and their leaders are above all accountable to their own people. Whether it be one party or more—life will show which solution is more effective. Within our conditions, state and party have become the same. This affected the development of the country in a most unfavorable way. We should not eradicate everything with one stroke, because what we achieved is worth noting.

M. S. Gorbachev: I believe that Pozsgay’s statements are quite extremist in this respect. The events of 1956 indeed started with the dissatisfaction of the people. Later, however, the events escalated into a counterrevolution and bloodshed. This cannot be overlooked.

M. Németh: Most important of all, these questions should not cause division in the society. Some say that we need to look at history in the same way, because otherwise there will be no unity in society at all. In reality, however, unity in interpreting the past does not exist. The main thing is that we have unity with regard to the present situation and in the policy to follow.

M. S. Gorbachev: Indeed, every generation is responsible for the present, first and foremost.

M. Németh: I am convinced that the organic interrelation and conformity of the economy and politics in fundamental issues is indispensable. A principal question is that of pace. We Hungarians started economic reform long ago, while leaving the political institutions intact. Since last May, we have witnessed a rapid development and transformation of the political system. A new election system, the reorganization of parliament, and other measures followed one another in such a rapid succession, the wheels of the machine are turning with such dizzying speed that it could pose a potential danger to society if this process interrupted economic development.

Nobody actually doubts that a democratic constitutional state is unavoidable for a successful people’s economy to function. Having only that, though, without a productive economy, then political transformations will happen in a void, l’art pour l’art. Pozsgay says that there is nothing wrong with politics superseding the economy. We, on the contrary, think that harmonization of the two is needed. We support and develop economic institutions, in parallel with changes in the political sphere. We will act with responsibility.

M. S. Gorbachev: You have touched upon an important issue. The process of renewal is gradually spreading over the entire socialist bloc, and adds to the political culture and historical experiences of all these countries according to the local conditions. The most important for all of them, however, is turning towards the people and revitalizing the socialist system. While listening to you, our own situation came to my mind. Of course, it is difficult to achieve total synchronicity between politics and the economy, but at least we have to try. You might remember what Lenin used to say: “We Bolsheviks have conquered Russia, so now we have to learn how to govern it.” They rushed ahead in politics, which was in itself normal at the time. But you are right: if we fail to utilize the political drives and motivations to create a healthy economy, the people will unavoidably become discontented.

(...)
DOCUMENT No. 3
Memorandum of Conversation between
M.S. Gorbachev and
HSWP General Secretary Károly Grósz,
Moscow, 23-24 March 1989

[On 22 March 1989, the parties and organizations of the emerging non-communist Hungarian opposition established a consultative forum, called the “Opposition Roundtable.” Up to this point, the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party had used the tactic of dealing separately with “alternative” organizations. Now the danger of having to negotiate with a unified opposition became increasingly likely. The Party’s leadership also worried about an impending economic crisis possibly resulting in the destabilization of the political scene. These concerns were infused in Károly Grósz’s presentation on the internal political situation.

Gorbachev’s “dialectic” approach to the issue of how to evaluate 1956 is remarkable: while stressing that this must be decided by the Hungarian leadership alone by examining the facts, he declared that a recent thorough investigation of the past by the Soviet leadership had undoubtedly proven that what had happened in Czechoslovakia in 1968 was a counter-revolution. Similarly ambiguous were the warnings of the Soviet leader concerning the tolerable scope of the political transition in Hungary. He emphasized that “the limit […] is the safekeeping of socialism and assurance of stability,” however, he also clearly declared that “today we have to preclude the possibility of repeated foreign intervention into the internal affairs of socialist countries.”

The timing of the conversation is also noteworthy from Gorbachev’s perspective; it occurred on the eve of the legislative elections in the Soviet Union—the freest since the 1917 Revolution. The 26 March vote would elevate reformers (such as Yeltsin) and nationalists (especially in the Baltics) to a strong position to challenge the communist order, and Gorbachev may already have felt pressured by the impending balloting.]

(EXCERPT)

HUNGARIAN SOCIALIST WORKERS’ PARTY CENTRAL COMMITTEE
TOP SECRET
Made in 2 copies
Inf/1371/1989
REPORT

for members of the Political Committee
[29 March 1989]

(...) Comrade Grósz informed the negotiators about the Hungarian situation. He said that the events in Hungary have accelerated lately. Their direction is according to our intentions, while their pace is somewhat disconcerting. Comrade Grósz emphasized that we wish to retain political power and find a solution to our problems by political means, avoiding armed conflict.

We have a good chance for reaching our goals. People are afraid of a possible armed conflict. Workers, peasants and professionals want to work and live in peace and security, safeguarding their property. (...)

Another major concern is the history of the last thirty years. We have to face our past, hard and painful as it is, as the acting participants are still alive. On the other hand, by drawing the necessary conclusions, we might dishearten certain layers of our policy’s active supporters from the Party. Lack of self-confidence is palpable enough in the Party anyway. (...)

Comrade Gorbachev agreed that the Western world does not want instability in Eastern Europe, including Hungary as well, because in the present situation it would be adverse to its interests. Nonetheless, it is quite apparent that they [the Western countries] intend to facilitate the realization and strengthening of a development that suits their own political ideas.

Comrade Gorbachev emphasized: “The estimation of the 1956 events is entirely up to you.” You have to stand on a firm ground; you have to examine what really happened then and there. The Soviet leadership has recently analyzed the 1968 events in Czechoslovakia, and they continue to maintain that what happened there was a counter-revolution, with all the idiosyncratic traits of such an event. There were different periods within the Czechoslovak events, but the Dubček regime was unable to prevent openly counter-revolutionary forces from gaining ground through them. (...)

Comrade Gorbachev emphasized that we clearly have to draw boundaries, thinking about others and ourselves at the same time. Democracy is much needed, and interests have to be harmonized. The limit, however, is the safekeeping of socialism and assurance of stability.

Comrade Grósz emphasized that when referring to 1956, we adhere to the original evaluation that the Party endorsed in December 1956. The process is described in three consecutive words: student protest, [people’s] uprising, and counter-revolution.

Comrade Gorbachev agreed with the above. He emphasized that today we have to preclude the possibility of repeated foreign intervention into the internal affairs of socialist countries. (...)

[Source: MOL M-KS-288-11/4458 ö.e.. Translated by Csaba Farkas.]
DOCUMENT No. 4
Agreement about the Commencement of Substantial Political Negotiations between the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party, the Members of the Opposition Roundtable and the Organizations of the Third Side, 10 June 1989

[Between March and June the crucial question of the transition was whether the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party [HSWP] was willing to accept eventually the fact that it would have to negotiate with a unified opposition represented by the Opposition Roundtable [ORT]. Although the HSWP leadership tried to do everything it could to prevent this, by the beginning of June it gave up its previous position. However, the opposition parties had to make a serious concession too, since it was a precondition of the HSWP in agreeing to start official negotiations on the political transition with the ORT that the talks should be tripartite. The “third side” included mass organizations and civil associations, all of which were supporters of the HSWP and/or represented left-wing political ideas.

The agreement published below was signed at the first plenary meeting of the National Roundtable talks. The document, which put on record the legal framework and the conditions of the subsequent tripartite negotiations which lasted until 18 September. At the next meeting, on 21 June, two intermediate-level committees were established for political and for social-economic issues, each having six working subcommittees in which the bulk of the legal work leading to the establishment of parlamentary democracy in Hungary was carried out.]

AGREEMENT
About the Commencement of Substantial Political Negotiations between the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party, the Members of the Opposition Roundtable and the Organizations of the Third Side, 10 June 1989

I.

The necessity to help the nation out of a serious political and economic crisis, and the democratic transformation of the conditions of power appropriate the dialogue between all the political circles that feel responsible for the future. Handling the crisis and creating a multiparty system is only possible with the agreement of the democratic forces. It presupposes that mutual objectives and aims are taken into account, that all participants are willing to make an agreement, and it necessitates trust and self-restraint.

The fate of the nation can be improved by respecting the requirements of the constitution and firmly rejecting violence. It is in our mutual interest that social conflicts are solved according to the generally agreed norms of European political culture: with public consent. The transition from a single-party system to representational democracy and constitutional government can only be realized by free elections. Well-functioning representative bodies and a firm, consistent government that is trusted by the people are needed to stop the worsening social and economic crisis. The peaceful political transition and the relief of aggravated economic and social tension can only be realized by mutual agreement. An array of historical examples warn us that common problems can only be solved with consensus. All civil organizations and movements have to take part side by side in the hard and contradictory process of transition.

On the basis of these facts and conditions, organizations of the Opposition Roundtable, the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party, the Left Wing Alternative Union; the Patriotic People’s Front; the Hungarian Democratic Youth Association; the Association of Hungarian Resistance Fighters and Anti-Fascists; the National Council of Hungarian Women; the joint delegation of the Ferenc Münnich Society; and the National Council of Trade Unions express their wish to commence substantial political negotiations. The equal negotiators accept the following governing principles for the talks:

— the basis of power is the sovereignty of the people; none of the political forces can monopolize it and declare themselves the sole repository of the people’s will, and none can aspire to unconstitutionally curtail political rights;
— the will of the public has to be expressed without preceding limitations, in the course of free elections, the result of which is binding for everyone, and from which no political organization that complies with the requirements of the constitution can be excluded;
— handling the crisis, ensuring a democratic transition and resolving political conflicts is only possible in a peaceful way, avoiding violence; none of the civil organizations can have direct control over military forces;
— an important condition of the successful and constructive political negotiations is that the nation and [the parties’] interests are considered and respected; a further condition is mutual and anticipatory confidence;
— only mutually acceptable conditions can be the basis of co-operation and agreement;
— when determining the participants of negotiations and their legal standing, exclusion of a political nature is unacceptable, although the functioning of the negotiation process must be considered;
— the objective of negotiations is the formation of political agreements that can be accompanied by the necessary government measures and bills, together
with the deadline for their realization; the negotiations themselves, however, do not directly exercise functions of constitutional law;
—during the course of negotiations the parties refrain from all unilateral steps that would obliterate the goal of negotiations; legislation cannot precede political agreement;
—all negotiating partners will have the political agreements accepted in their own organizations, and represent them in public as well, while assisting the enforcement of the agreements by every possible political means.

II.

Three parties take part in the political conciliation talks, with the intent of reaching political agreements.

a) The Opposition Roundtable (Endre Bajcsy-Zsilinszky Friendship Society; Alliance of Young Democrats; Independent Smallholders’ and Farmers’ Civic Party; Christian Democratic People’s Party; Hungarian Democratic Forum; Hungarian People’s Party; Hungarian Social Democratic Party; Alliance of Free Democrats; and the Democratic League of Independent Trade Unions as observer);
b) Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party;
c) The following civil organizations and movements: Left Wing Alternative Union; the Patriotic People’s Front; Hungarian Democratic Youth Association; the Association of Hungarian Resistance Fighters and Anti-Fascists; the National Council of Hungarian Women; the Ferenc Münnich Society and the National Council of Trade Unions.

All three negotiating partners are endowed with equal rights in forming a consensus. A speaker represents each of the three parties, who [will] express the opinions of the negotiating parties. Civil associations and movements listed under point c) above, whose participation in substantial negotiations was agreed by the Opposition Roundtable as a compromise during preparatory talks, do express that they support the intention of both the Hungarian Social Workers’ Party and the Opposition Roundtable to conduct a constructive dialogue and reach an agreement. They intend to take an active part in the negotiation process.

The Opposition Roundtable determines the number and composition of their delegates. Civil associations and movements listed under point c) above decide among themselves about the method of reconciliation and the method of joint representation of their disputable issues.

1. Representatives of the participating organizations are endowed with a written mandate, which contains their right to make agreements. They present their mandate to the president of the plenary session.

2. The fourth side of the negotiating table can be reserved for observers. Observers have the right to submit their proposed remarks in writing to the president of the meeting, who informs the negotiating parties about the observation.

3. The negotiating parties put on the agenda of conciliatory talks the following issues:
   - defining the rules and principles of realizing a democratic political transition;
   - strategic tasks for overcoming the impending economic and social crisis.

Final definition of individual issues, based on specific interests, is the task of substantial negotiations.

1. The statutes and working order of the political conciliatory talks are as follows:

a) Substantial negotiations are conducted in plenary sessions and in committees. The opening plenary session is scheduled on 13 June 1989 (Tuesday) in the Hunters’ Hall of Parliament. The Speaker of the House presides over the whole meeting. Representatives of all three negotiating parties are given equal time to speak. In the course of the opening plenary session, negotiating partners issue a declaration of intent. Then they form working committees.

b) Agreements are prepared by working committees, according to specific issues on the agenda. Statutes of the plenary session logically refer to committee sessions as well. Working committees can form subcommittees—with the participation of experts. Preparing bills for legislation must involve governmental bodies as well. In the course of political conciliatory talks, some propositions may be opened to public debate. Final documents are ratified by the plenary session. Propositions of the working committees can only be submitted to the plenary session when heads of delegations have signed them. The approved documents are signed by the heads of the delegations who then take care of their publication. Every session is recorded in the minutes, which have to be publicized in case the negotiations are interrupted.

c) Coming to an agreement is our mutual interest, based on the principle of consensus. Should discord persist in a particular detail, consensus can be reached nevertheless, provided that the dissenting negotiating partner admits that it does not concern the general principle of the agreement.

d) Plenary sessions are open to the press. Working committees, however, will operate behind closed doors. It has to be assured that [the public] receives
regular and substantial information about the negotiation process. From time to time, negotiating parties will issue a joint communiqué to the Hungarian Telegraphic Agency. Separate statements can only be issued if negotiations break off or a common declaration cannot be agreed on. Nevertheless, this does not concern the right of the parties to express their opinions about the content of certain issues on the agenda.

e) The parties think it necessary that expenses of the negotiations are covered by the state budget. Handling of documents, photocopying, postage, the costs of organizing meetings, and the wages of possible experts are included in the expenses.

Representing the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party: György Fejti
Secretary of the Central Committee

Representing the Opposition Roundtable:

Dr. Zsolt Zétényi
Endre Bajcsy-Zsilinszky Friendship Society

Dr. László Kövér
Alliance of Young Democrats

Péter Hardi
Independent Smallholders’ and Farmers’ Civic Party

György Szakolczai
Christian Democratic Party

Dr. László Sólyom
Hungarian Democratic Forum

Csaba Varga
Hungarian People’s Party

Tibor Baranyai
Hungarian Social Democratic Party

Dr. Péter Tölgyessy
Alliance of Free Democrats

Imre Kerényi
Democratic League of Independent Trade Unions, as observer

Representing the Left Wing Alternative Union; the Patriotic People’s Front; the Hungarian Democratic Youth Association; the Association of Hungarian Resistance Fighters and Anti-Fascists; the National Council of Hungarian Women; the joint delegation of the Ferenc Münnich Society and the National Council of Trade Unions:

Csaba Kemény

Left Wing Alternative Union
Dr. István Kukorelli
People’s Patriotic Front

Ferenc Gyurcsány
Hungarian Democratic Youth Association

Imre Kerekes
Association of Hungarian Resistance Fighters and Anti-Fascists

Mrs. Soós Dr. Mária Dobos
National Council of Hungarian Women

Ferenc Berényi
Ferenc Münnich Society

Mrs. Kósa & Dr. Magda Kovács
National Council of Trade Unions


DOCUMENT No. 5
Minutes of the Meeting of the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party [HSWP] CC Political Executive Committee,17
24 July 1989

[The end of July brought a definite hardening in the position of the HSWP at the National Roundtable talks. This was obvious in the Communists unexpected refusal to sign an agreement on party law, although it had already been accepted by the experts.

The opposition attributed the harder line to a change in personnel at the top of the HSWP delegation, when Imre Pozsgay’s position was taken over by the less flexible György Fejti.18 At the 27 July meeting of the National Roundtable, Fejti made it clear that the HSWP was not willing to give a full account of all of its property, emphasizing that the greater part of it had been acquired legitimately and therefore this issue should not be discussed at the tripartite talks. The HSWP’s uncompromising stand on reaching agreement on the depoliticization of the armed services, and concerning the withdrawal of party organizations from work places, finally led to the suspension of the tripartite negotiations. The talks were not resumed until 24 August, when the HSWP delegation was headed again by Pozsgay. Fejti’s speech at the 24 July meeting of the HSWP Political...]

[...remaining text...]

[...]
Executive Committee, published below, provides insight into the making of this new, less flexible and more intransigent policy towards the opposition.]

(EXCERPT)

**György Fejti**: We are in a complicated situation now, but still, we have to make up our minds. In many questions, especially when it comes to specific details, we have made quite some progress. However, in a series of fundamental and cardinal questions the antagonism seems irreconcilable; apparently the date of the general elections is one of these controversial issues. So, with a flexible negotiating strategy, namely that we give in to certain demands but stand our ground firmly in other issues, we cannot resolve the prevailing antagonism for the time being. Yet time is pushing us. Technically, we have some three or four weeks left to work out the legal conditions of being. But still, we have to make up our minds. In many questions, especially when it comes to specific details, we cannot carry on the negotiations under such pressure without knowing how important this issue is for our own Party.

**Rezö Nyers**: Comrade Fejti, it is very important for us. Under one condition, that is if they pass these fundamental laws in September, then the November elections are 100 percent to our advantage. If they do not vote for the bill in September, then nothing is good enough for us. Absolutely nothing. This is the decisive factor. So, I am totally and immediately for the November elections, if these three issues are accepted. Or at least two of the three. Three would be most expedient, though.

**György Fejti**: You mean if they accept it? It is still a bone of contention. There are and will be several disputable issues.

It is definite that the documents can only be submitted in September with much controversy. This is part of the negotiation strategy. We shouldered responsibility for negotiating these bills. However, the HSWP cannot take responsibility for striking a deal with those powers. We will not be able to come to terms; it is the Parliament’s task to ask for a decision, making known and objectively presenting the opposing views. In the present state of negotiations it is an illusion that in these questions—whether it be the party law or election law—a total agreement and final consensus can be reached. An illusion. Possibly we should reduce the number of points that induce confrontation—and there are a lot, at the moment. Just to mention one example: so far, when it came to the party law, the opposition has put in the minutes at every single meeting that the HSWP is not willing to give consent to proposing the bill to parliament if either the assessment or the redistribution of their total property is on the agenda. I think it is absolutely impossible that such a position would be acceptable for us right before the elections. I can’t tell when they might take a U-turn on this issue. They will only relinquish if there is a final deadline, by which the negotiations should be completed, otherwise we can stand up, wash our hands and say that the agreement has fallen through but we are not the ones to blame. So that’s why entirely clear statements are needed, saying that there is a set schedule and deadline for negotiations; the delegates of the HSWP are unable to do this.

[Source: MOL M-KS-288-5/1072 ö.e. Translated by Csaba Farkas.]
DOCUMENT No. 6
Memorandum of Conversation between President Mikhail Gorbachev, President Rezső Nyers, and General Secretary of the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party (HSWP), Károly Grósz, Moscow, 24-25 July 1989

[This Hungarian-Soviet summit was the last such meeting preceding the important events of the fall of 1989: the free exit of the East Germans via Hungary to the West in September; the dissolution of the HSWP; the declaration of the Hungarian Republic, and the plans for free elections. While both sides were still intent on stressing that what was occurring in Hungary was aimed at working out a framework of democratic socialism, it is clear from the memorandum that both sides already had serious doubts about the possible outcome of the process. The treatment of the issue of Soviet troop withdrawal deserves special attention. During the March visit of Károly Grósz to Moscow it had been the Soviets’ condition that such an agreement should be kept secret. Now Gorbachev easily agreed to make such a deal public, obviously hoping that such a concession would strengthen the eroding position of the HSWP.]

(EXCERPT)

Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party
TOP SECRET!
Central Committee
Inf/1451/1989
REPORT
to the Political Executive Committee


I.

Comrade Nyers described the situation of Hungary and the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party. He said that the party is preparing for a working congress. 20 Decisions have not yet been made on every issue but is quite definite that internal issues of the Party will be on the agenda. The set task of the congress is to achieve the unity of the Party. Comrade Nyers pointed out that the Party is already getting spirited, [and] new platforms are being formed. The basic concept of the congress is democratic socialism, self-government, parliamentary democracy, and economic democracy. Comrade Nyers emphasized that property reform was considered the primary element of reform. We wish to democratize public property, indeed making it available for the public. We are considering a new system that utilizes the available capital more efficiently. We are planning to increase the ratio of private capital in the economy, and the introduction of foreign capital.

Comrade Nyers mentioned the experiences of parliamentary by-elections. 21 He emphasized that one should not jump to immediate conclusions from the results. We consider the elections neither a success nor a complete failure. The present state of paralysis within the Party, however, has become apparent. He referred to the fact that in one constituency the opposition united their forces in the campaign against the HSWP, but this is not expected to be a general trend when it comes to the general elections. Comrade Nyers stressed that there are three factors that can defeat the Party. First: the past, if we let ourselves be smeared with it. Secondly: the disintegration of the Party. The third factor that can defeat us is the paralysis of the Party rank-and-file.

Talking about Hungary, Comrade Gorbachev said that the Hungarian events were being followed with much interest in the Soviet Union. The Soviet Communist Party leadership refers to our policy with understanding. In the course of the negotiations, they understood our intention to find our way on the road to democratic socialism. At the same time, Comrade Gorbachev posed several questions with regard to the situation in Hungary and the policy of the HSWP. Among other things, he inquired about our orientation in foreign policy, the role of private property and foreign capital, the experiences with by-elections, the goals of the Party Congress, and the unity of the Party. Comrade Gorbachev put special emphasis on the fact that the Soviet leaders interpreted the mass sympathy towards the HSWP evident at the 14 July 1989 funeral of János Kádár 22 as an important political resource to rely on.

(...)  

IV.

In the course of the visit, several issues concerning the bilateral relationship were discussed. Negotiators mutually agreed that we should widen the scope of relations between the HSWP and the CPSU, and increase the exchange of experiences. In this way the recently aggravated laxity that has been hindering the co-operation of Soviet and Hungarian party organizations can be effectively eradicated. Hungarian negotiators suggested that the CPSU and other Soviet social organizations develop collaborative relationships with
Hungarian democratic organizations and newly-forming parties as well.  

The negotiations proved that it is our mutual intention to maintain the friendship of the Hungarian and Soviet nations, to create a new basis for reinforcing the friendship movement, winning over the best professionals and the youth for the friendship between the two nations.

In the course of negotiations, Hungarian and Soviet leaders examined the most urgent issues regarding the stationing of Soviet troops in Hungary. Comrade Nyers reminded the negotiators that at their March meeting in Moscow, comrades Grósz and Gorbachev had agreed in principle that troops would continue to be withdrawn. At that time the Soviet negotiators had asked that this agreement should not be publicized. This time comrade Nyers suggested that the March agreement should be confirmed, the question of withdrawing Soviet troops further considered and publicized in one way or another. Speaking for the Soviet leadership, comrade Gorbachev agreed with the idea. His suggestion was that, when dealing with the issue, one should start from what the Soviet press release says about the subject: “In the course of negotiations, the issue of Soviet troops stationed in Hungary came up, and the parties decided that steps will be made to reduce further the number of Soviet troops in accordance with the European disarmament process and with the progress of the Vienna talks.” Comrades Nyers and Grósz agreed with the suggestion.

In the course of negotiations we reaffirmed our mutual political intent to seek out opportunities for establishing a new basis for Hungarian-Soviet economic cooperation. Comrade Nyers indicated that the Hungarian government was presently working on a new fiscal system, and it was possible that the proposals would be submitted [as early as] this autumn.

The HSWP leader emphasized that the situation of the Hungarian minority in the Sub-Carpathian region was improving, which was of great importance for us in terms of both domestic and foreign affairs. Comrade Gorbachev indicated that they [the Soviet government] were determined to head in this direction.

Another subject raised in the discussion were the many Hungarian soldiers who died in action on the Soviet front or in POW camps in World War II. Hungarian public opinion was exerting pressure for the memory of these victims to be preserved in due fashion. Comrade Gorbachev emphasized that the Soviet Union was ready to cooperate in this field as well. [He] said that it was virtually impossible to find mass graves on battlefields now. However, they [the Soviets] were ready to specify those cemeteries where Hungarian prisoners of war were buried. They would preserve the tombs; memorial monuments could be installed, and Hungarian citizens could visit these sites. The same practice was working well with the Federal Republic of Germany.

(18 August 1989)

[Source: MOL, M-KS 288 - 11/4461. ó.e. Translated by Csaba Farkas.]

DOCuMENT No. 7
Record of Conversation between Representatives of the Opposition Roundtable and Boris Stukalin, Soviet Ambassador in Budapest, 18 August 1989

[At their meeting on 27 July, the representatives of the Opposition Roundtable (ORT) decided—at the initiative of József Antall—to widen the scope of the ORT’s negotiating partners and initiate meetings with the chairmen and the secretaries of the parliamentary committees, Deputy Prime Minister Péter Meggyési and Soviet Ambassador in Budapest, Boris Stukalin.]

Fidesz Press, the organ of the Young Democrats, gave the following account of the meeting and of Viktor Orbán’s presentation (the AYD leader who had given a speech at Imre Nagy’s reburial in June and who in 1998 would become Hungary’s prime minister) calling for the withdrawal of Soviet troops from Hungary: “Since 1956 we have known that the Soviet ambassador in Budapest plays a key role in Moscow’s assessment of the situation in Hungary, yet at the meeting no really important issues were discussed, it was rather of exploratory character. The different organizations presented their position tactfully, giving broad outlines only, taking the liberty to deal with foreign policy only cautiously. The atmosphere became hot, however, when one of the Fidesz representatives took the floor: the Soviet side ‘eyed the game,’ the famous political opponent for several minutes. Nevertheless, they listened with poker face to Orbán who stated that he was pessimistic concerning the National Roundtable talks because the HSWP had renewed itself only in words, remaining uncompromising on concrete issue (workers militia, Party organs at working places, the property of the Party).”

(Excerpt: Speech by Viktor Orbán, Representative of the Alliance of Young Democrats [AYD])

(. . .)

Viktor Orbán: Allow me to add just a few remarks to the question of what we think about the possibility of the negotiations eventually ending with success. We believe that the very opportunity of meeting you here today precipitates the prospect of making a successful agreement with the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party. Our organization, inasmuch as it is primarily comprised of
young people, considers it a particular privilege to have the chance of meeting representatives of Soviet diplomatic bodies. We intend to utilize this opportunity, which has never been granted to us before, to, hand over a memorandum next week that informs representatives of the Soviet Union about the political ideas of the Alliance of Young Democrats.

Certainly you are familiar with the fact that the issue of revealing the so-called historical white spots is just as important in Hungary as it is in the Soviet Union. Questions and views concerning our past and relations with the Soviet Union, or rather their sudden change, concerns our generation most of all. This is due to the fact that not long ago we were taught exactly the opposite of what even the Soviet Union has lately — and repeatedly — expressed in this respect.

Perhaps this experience explains the skepticism of our generation when it comes to the possible outcome of the negotiations, as compared to the attitude of the previous speakers. Consequently, our generation — that is we, who represent our organization at the Roundtable in the negotiations with the [Hungarian Socialist Workers'] Party — we are of the opinion that one should only look at the facts when assessing the intentions of the Party and the political prospects. That is why we observe with considerable apprehension that the Party… the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party has made hardly any progress on the most important concrete issues.

Let me mention a few examples. Naturally, similarly to the previous speakers, I speak with the hope that this opinion will change over time. I must note, however, that the Party, among other things, has not yet made any concessions on the issue of ending party organizations at workplaces. Neither has the HSWP conceded on the question of abolishing the workers’ militia that all representatives at the Roundtable consider unconstitutional. No progress was made to guarantee that the political monopoly of the Party in the army and the police force is eliminated once and for all, so that politics and state service are separated within the armed forces. The Opposition Roundtable made specific suggestions on the issue, which have all been rejected so far. I appeal to you: what else could people of my generation and members of my organization think other than that the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party aims at preserving these armed corps and armed forces, the last resort of power in Eastern Europe, intact and unaffected by the opposition. We, Young Democrats, are much worried about this intent. For according to our political assessment, the main issue is not the elections here; we are quite optimistic about the elections. We consider the recent by-elections as a public opinion poll of some sort, on the basis of which we expect an overwhelming victory by the opposition. The question for us Young Democrats, though, is rather what will happen afterwards? What will happen if the HSWP, which, in our estimation and according to the analysis of the recent results, will lose the general elections, still retains authority over all the armed forces, and is the only one to have political bodies at workplaces.

Consequently, we believe that the question of stability, the stability of the transition, and the solution of that issue is in the hands of the HSWP. Should the Party act according to their purportedly democratic conviction on the questions I have raised, the period of transition after the elections will not suffer from instability whatsoever. The ultimate cause of our pessimism is that the HSWP has shown no sign during the last month of heading in that direction.

Thank you.

Boris Stukalin: May I ask you about something that you mentioned in your speech: the memorandum that you wish to present to us next week? What is it about, what are the main issues that it is concerned with?

Viktor Orbán: We think that the Alliance of Young Democrats has often been branded by the Hungarian press as an anti-Soviet organization. We had the opportunity to express our opinion on the issue, and we repeatedly stated that we do not consider ourselves anti-Soviet but that we have principled views. We have never encouraged aggression towards the Soviet Union, never incited people to any kind of rebellion against the Soviet people, [and] never invited anyone to infringe on the rights of the Soviet state. We think that this opportunity — sitting at the negotiating table with a representative of the Soviet diplomatic corps — gives us the chance of informing you in an articulate written memorandum about our principled opinions on all these issues — which basically determine the general and foreign policy of the Alliance of Young Democrats. In the memorandum we wish to state our standing and suggestions in terms of what changes we think necessary in Hungarian foreign policy.

Let me point out, though, that this is strictly our opinion, bearing in mind that the Opposition Roundtable never intended to form an unanimous consensus in issues of foreign policy, therefore the organizations around this table represent a considerably wide range of [ideas about] foreign policy. Some of them hold opinions that are closer to yours, while others have views that diverge much further — ours is probably among the latter. Nonetheless, we strongly hope that these issues will be clarified in the memorandum.


1 Several excerpts of the HSWP Politburo meetings in 1989 were made available for the participants of the international conference held in Budapest on 10-12 June 1999, see: Csaba Békés, Malcolm Bryne, Melinda Kalmár, Zoltán Ripp, Miklós Vörös, eds., Political Transition in Hungary 1989-1990; the documents were collected and compiled by Magdolna Baráth, Csaba Békés, Melinda Kalmár, Gusztiáv Kecsksé, Zoltán Ripp, Béla Révész, Éva Standeisky, Miklós Vörös, Budapest, 1999 (The manuscript is to be published by Central European University Press in Budapest.)


7 Mihály Jassó, 1988-1989 member of the HSWP CC, 1989 member of the HSWP Politburo, from 1989 head of the Budapest branch of HSWP.


10 Mátyás Rákosi, from 1945 to 1956 leader of the Hungarian Communist Party and the Hungarian Workers’ Party. Dismissed in July 1956, he spent the rest of his life in exile in the Soviet Union.

11 János Kádár, from 4 November 1956 to May, 1988, First Secretary of the HSWP.

Socialist Party. Resigned from this post in December, 1988-1991 Member of Parliament for the HSWP, then HSP. From 1991 to 2000 Vice President of the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development.

13 See document 1.


15 In fact at the time there was no serious concern among society about a possible armed conflict in Hungary. This reference reflects rather the worry of the party leadership concerning the unpredictable attitude of the armed services, including the workers’ militia, towards the unexpectedly fast and radical political changes.


17 On 23-24 June 1989 the HSWP CC established a 21-member Political Executive Committee replacing the former Political Committee.


19 The HSWP considered early elections advantageous assuming that the opposition parties would lack sufficient time to publicise their programs. However, elections were eventually held in March 1990.

20 The HSWP’s 14th Congress was held on 6-10 October 1989. During the Congress, the party dissolved itself and on 7 October a new party, the Hungarian Socialist Party, was formed.

21 On 22 July 1989, parliamentary by-elections were held in four constituencies, but the first round brought a final result in only one of them, where the opposition parties formed a coalition and won. The second round of the elections was held on 5 August when candidates of the Hungarian Democratic Forum acquired two of the seats while in one constituency the election was void.

22 The aging János Kádár, of the HSWP after its conference in May 1988 Honorary Party President, died on 6 July; his funeral was held on 14 July 1989 with the participation of several tens of thousand people.

23 It is more than interesting that just a few days after the return of the two HSWP leaders from Moscow, on 27 July representative József Antall, Hungarian Democratic Forum, made a proposal at the Opposition Roundtable meeting to invite the Soviet Ambassador in Budapest and inform him about the opposition’s ideas. This move confirms the likelihood that secret communications existed between the HSWP and some opposition representatives as it was commonly believed (but never proved) at the time. See document 7.

24 See document 3.

25 Editor’s Note: According to the Soviet-Czechoslovak agreement of 29 June 1945, Sub-Carpathian Ruthenia and thirteen communities from Slovakia became part of the Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic. A large Hungarian minority lived in this region, in particular in the territories contiguous with Hungary.

26 Editor’s Note: Prisoner of War.

27 Viktor Orbán, graduate of Eötvös Loránd University in Budapest (1987), founder of István Bibó Special College and the journal Századvég [Fin de siecle], in March 1988 one of the founders and spokesman of Fidesz (Alliance of Young Democrats), representative of his party at the negotiations of the Opposition Roundtable, since 1993 President of Fidesz (after April 1995 called the Fidesz-Hungarian Civic Party), after 1992 one of the vice presidents of the Liberal International, since July 1998 Prime Minister of the Hungarian Republic.

28 József Antall, historian, in 1956 participant in the re-organisation of the Independent Smallholders’ Party, one of the founding fathers of the Christian Youth Association. Temporarily arrested and later dismissed from his job because of his revolutionary activity, 1984 - 1990 director general in Semmelweis Museum of Medical History, among the founding fathers of Hungarian Democratic Forum (HDF), in 1989 member of the Central Committee, then member of the presidium, since October 1989 president of the HDF, participant at the Opposition Roundtable and at the National Roundtable negotiations, from 23 May 1990 to his death Prime Minister of the Hungarian Republic.

29 See note 23.

30 Viktor Orbán became generally known in Hungary and abroad by his speech delivered at the reburial ceremony of Imre Nagy and his associates on Heroes Square in Budapest on 16 June 1989. While all the other speakers were cautiously seeking to avoid raising controversial issues, Orbán sharply called upon the Soviet Union to withdraw its troops from Hungary.


32 On the basis of the available documentary evidence this promise seems to have been an improvisation of Viktor Orbán since no such memorandum was presented to the Soviet Embassy subsequently.
HUNGARIAN SECRET POLICE MEMORANDUM,
“ENSURING THE SECURITY OF PREPARATIONS FOR THE BURIAL OF IMRE NAGY AND HIS ASSOCIATES [ON 16 JUNE 1989],”
MAY 1989

(Excerpt)

[Editor’s Note: In an essay entitled “The New National Alliance,” published in Hitel Dénes Csengey in mid-January 1989, the reassessment of the 1956 Hungarian Revolution and its suppression by Soviet troops—“finding a worthy place for it in the memory of the nations”—is described as “one of the fundamental issues and standards of the Hungarian democratic transition.” Indeed, the historical place of the 1956 Revolution—and its leader, the reform communist prime minister Imre Nagy—permeated the national discourse during 1988-89 in Hungary. Political attitudes and actions of regime and opposition crystallized around the issue re-evaluating this pivotal event in Hungary’s postwar history.

One crucial moment in this process occurred with the government-approved reburial of Imre Nagy and his associates who had been arrested and executed in the wake of the Revolution’s bloody suppression. Demands for a reburial of Nagy had surfaced increasingly since the 30th anniversary of the leader’s execution on 16 June 1988, when the regime prevented public commemorations with tear gas, batons and arrests. Instead, a symbolic gravestone was inaugurated on the Pére Lachaise Cemetery in Paris for Imre Nagy, Gesa Losonczy, Pál Maléter, Miklós Gimes, József Szilágyi and others executed after the 1956 Revolution. Six months later the regime gave permission for the exhumation and reburial of the remains of Nagy and his associates; the exhumation began in March. Fretting that the funeral would turn into an “extremist” political event, the regime took widespread security precautions, as detailed in the following document. The 16 June 1989 funeral ceremonies on Heroes’ Square and Rákoskeresztúr New Public Cemetery in Budapest, in the course of which hundreds of thousands of people paid tribute to Imre Nagy and his associates, passed peacefully. During the internationally televised event, Victor Orbán, co-founder of the oppositional Federation of Young Democrats (FIDESz) demanded in the name of the young people of Hungary the withdrawal of Soviet troops. Observing the reburial from across the city, the Hungarian Socialist Workers’ Party Politburo only resolved that a firm response should be given to the perceived anti-Soviet and anti-Communist statements made at the funeral.

The following excerpt from the state security’s operation plan for the Nagy reburial, discovered by Hungarian researcher Janos Kenedi (Institute for the History of the 1956 Revolution, Budapest), reveals the regime’s widespread security measures in an effort to stay in control of this event which, symbolically, marked the beginning of its demise.

MINISTRY OF THE INTERIOR
Directorate III/III

Approved: Dr Istvan Horvath
Police Maj. Gen.
Minister of the Interior

Agreed: Ferenc Pallagi
Deputy Minister

Subject: Ensuring the security of preparations for the burial of Imre Nagy and his associates

Operative Plan of Action

On the basis of the permission [given by] the Government of the Hungarian People’s Republic and the decision of [Nagy’s] relatives, the burial of Imre Nagy and his four associates will take place on 16 June, 1989, in the New Central Cemetery in Budapest.

The family members as well as The Committee for Historical Justice wish to ensure the character of the event
as an act of respect, but recognize at the same time that a political aspect will inevitably arise, they will make efforts to keep it— as much as possible— within limits.

As opposed to them, certain extremist social groups—mainly SzDSz [Alliance of Free Democrats], FIDESz [League of Young Democrats] and the Republican Circle are attempting to turn the ceremony into a political demonstration. (…)

The main direction of the activity of the state security service must be to support with all force and means at its disposal the character of the event as one of respect, commemoration and rehabilitation, while preventing, halting, limiting, detouring and influencing in a positive direction all extremist attempts which may be expected from both sides.

Accordingly, it should make special efforts:

- To obtain, analyze and evaluate the ideas of Hungarian émigré groups and the various internal alternative groups regarding the funeral. To provide up-to-date information to the political leadership, and to work out proposals for political and government action.
- To work out and carry out combinations and active measures abroad and at home, orienting [action] toward the tribute-paying line of thought, placing rehabilitation and the paying of final respects [at] the fore. Pushing back and deflecting every initiative to the contrary.
- To initiate operations of misinformation emphasizing that the events may be taken advantage of by extremist groups to stage provocations, which could lead to a halting of the process of democratization and to restoration.
- To initiate measures in the foreign affairs arena, through our network of contacts, mainly toward the US State Department and the US Embassy in Budapest, calling attention to the fact that any action of extremist adventurism may disrupt increasingly broadening and strengthening Hungarian-American relations, and would negatively affect our initiatives toward a pluralistic social order.
- In matters involving games,1 to convey information to the hostile special services suggesting that a course of events contrary to the intentions of the authorities may lead to a strengthening of the forces urging restoration [i.e., an abandonment of the current relative liberalism].
- To control the activity of politicians, businessmen, press correspondents and camera crews arriving from abroad.
- To investigate and reveal analyses and assessments by officials of foreign representations operating in Hungary concerning the funeral as well as to find out about any eventual effort to influence the events.
- Deliberately use the Hungarian mass media—Hungarian Television, Hungarian Radio, the government and independent press—to spread the suggestion that it will be a proof of the maturity of the nation if the events of 16 June proceed in an orderly manner.
- To spread, through our system of contacts, information influencing the political mood in the desired direction, emphasizing that the current leadership is making positive moves and initiatives, which [is the] reason [why] it would be highly undesirable if extremist forces provoked restoration [of the former order] by their actions on 16 June or 23 October. […]

In order to co-ordinate state security efforts, an operative committee has been set up consisting of appointed leaders [from] Directorate III/I, III/II and III/III [from] the Interior Ministry which will have regular weekly meetings—at 4:00 PM every Monday—until the funeral. Memoranda will be made of these meetings, which will be submitted to the leadership of the Ministry.

For the operative control of the funeral of Imre Nagy on 16 June 1989, the following related measures are being planned:

IM (Interior Ministry) Directorate III/I:

In the field of intelligence gathering it will mobilize the operative forces at its disposal abroad, and will make efforts to provide continuous information on:
the plans and activities of Hungarians living in the West regarding the events, and their general attitude and mood;

it will pay special attention to the discovery and acquisition of information regarding the preparations, plans and activities at home of the Hungarian groups and émigré political personalities travelling to Hungary for the event; (…)

It will analyze and provide up-to-date reports on views and opinions observed in church, especially Vatican circles. It will take steps to win the support of church circles with the purpose of moderating domestic tendencies.

In the area of the employment of contacts (agents, social, official) it will aid, by consistent positive influence:

• the loyalty of external émigré public opinion and that of the incoming groups, emphasizing the tribute-paying and mourning character of the events and playing down their demonstrative elements.

• Through cover organizations and diplomatic channels, it will influence the political and official circles of the receiving countries in a positive manner, in line with our interests.

IM Directorate III/II

• To inform, through official and informal channels, the government organs of the NATO countries—especially the USA and Federal Republic of Germany—that certain extremist forces want to exploit the funeral to disrupt and prevent the paying of respect, and for adventurism political action, endangering thereby the increasingly vigorous process of democratization.

• To influence diplomats, journalists, trade and business specialists of the capitalist countries accredited to Hungary through “friendly conversations” in [such] a direction that, using their own means, they should make efforts to prevent the exploitation of the funeral for the purposes of political demonstration.

• Persuading the émigré politicians—especially Bela Kiraly and Sandor Kopacsi—to declare themselves in support of the memorial character of the funeral through the press and TV. (…)

Use of the channel of operative games:

• Contact code name [henceforth cn.] “Hedgehogcactus”, employed in Game cn. “Tarot”, will send—in a coded letter—the following information to the CIA center: “Certain extremist groups are planning to exploit the funeral of Imre Nagy for anti-government disruption. In such a case, the authorities are expected to act harshly. The IM has been put on special alert.”

• Contact agent (henceforth C.A.) cn. “Muddygrass”, employed in Game cn. “Tarot”, [who] will verbally inform the officer of the BND [the West German Federal Intelligence Service] about the information regarding preparations for the funeral of Imre Nagy. Will talk about the plans of the extremist groups intending to disrupt the funeral and the expected reaction of the authorities. Emphasizes that he believes a conflict would have a negative impact on the process of democratic evolution.

Via the network

• C.A. cn. “Red Thorn” will remind US diplomat cn. “Stone Rose” in a personal conversation that he saw [US] Ambassador [Mark] Palmer on TV among the marchers at the 15 March celebration. Personally he is very pleased with the wholehearted sympathy of the Americans for the Hungarian cause and that they support the democratization process by their participation, but at the same time he is worried about the funeral of Imre Nagy. He has information from university circles that some extremist groups, in violation of the memorial character of the funeral, intend to provoke a political demonstration. He believes that such a step might seriously endanger the process of democratization. It might provoke a violent action from the authorities.

The notions defined in the basic concept will be passed on:

• Via Agent cn. “Agave”, a person in close contact with the Austrian Embassy in Budapest, to the Austrian government.
• Via Occasional Operative Contact cn. “Candleflower” to the “friendly” contact between the US and British diplomats.
• Via S.A. cn. “Stonecrop” to British Press Attaché Stoneman. […]
• Via S.A. cn. “Coralberry” to the press attaché of the French Embassy in Budapest and to French Intelligence.
• S.A. cn. “Cactus” will arrange that a camera crew of Hungarian Television interview Bela Kiraly (USA) and Sandor Kopacsi (Canada) on the preparations for Imre Nagy’s funeral. The report should emphasize the memorial character of the funeral and both persons should be made to condemn any attempt to take advantage of the funeral for political purposes.

IM Directorate III/III

Department 1:
• (…) follows continuously the attempts of the organizers of the funeral and the organizers of the planned demonstrations to build contacts with the Church, takes the steps necessary to halt, prevent, and to influence these.

Department 2:
• (…) follows by technical and network means the development of the position of FIDESz.
• Through S.As, cn. “Balsam” and “Flamingo Flower”, it will strengthen the anti-demonstration position.
• Via S.A. cn. “May”, it will leak the divisions within FIDESz regarding the issue to the press.
• It will keep the presidents of DEMISz [Hungarian Democratic Youth Organization] and MISzOT [National Alliance of Hungarian Youth Organizations] continuously informed on the developments (…).

Department 3:
• (…) obtains information (…) on the ideas of the TIB [Committee for Historical Justice] and the relatives.
• Wishes to influence, using its operative positions, the activities of the TIB and some alternative groups so that no political demonstration take place after the funeral.
• Among those operating in various alternative groups S.As cn. “Knotweed,” “Passion Flower”, “Rhododendron”, “Agave”, and “Sword-Flag” will be instructed to exert an influence on their environment, as a result of which they will abandon the idea of initiating, or participating in, a political demonstration.
• A special action plan is to be made for the employment of the services of S.A. cn. “Crown Imperial” inside the TIB (…)
• S.A. cn. “Inca Lilly” will be employed on the basis of a special action plan in order to discover and influence the plans of Imre Mecs in connection with the above, (…)

Department 4:
• S.A. cn. “Calla” will follow the co-ordination meetings of SzDSz in connection with the demonstration. In selecting the scene for the mass rally, he will argue in favor of holding it in the cemetery. If other sites are suggested, he will vote in favor of the less important ones. (…)
• S.A. cn. “Friesia” will obtain information from Sandor Szilagyi at the meetings of the Shelter Committee about the conferences, the planned sites and the manner of organization. At the sessions of the board of the Bajcsy-Zsilinszky Society he will find out about the plans concerning participation of the organization.
• S.A. cn. “Lady’s Mantle” as a leader of the (…) district group of SzDSz, will represent the position of “the relatives” in the group, influence the members and Ferenc Koszeg in that direction. If he is invited, he will accept to become an organizer (…)
• S.A. cn. “Bellflower” will explore the plans and ideas of the MDF [Hungarian Democratic Forum] and its participation in the mass rally.
• (…)

Departments III/III-4 and 6 will, in close co-operation, discover the travel and participation plans of Gyorgy Krasso and Zoltan Zsille.

Department 5:
• In the period preceding the funeral: It will collect information through network persons, official and social
contacts for the Hungarian National News Agency (MTI) and print media on the preparation and planned moves of the various alternative organizations with special regard to information received by the National Press Service from the (OS).\(^3\)

- With the help of S.A. cn. “Sage” and S.A. “Torch”, it will collect information on the intentions of the leadership and members of the Openness Club. They will be instructed to initiate an appeal for calm on behalf of the Club regarding the funeral.
- With the help of S.A. cn. “Autumn Crocus” and S.A. “Bride’s Eye”\(\ldots\), it will plant articles appealing for peace and calm in the newspapers Reform and Unio.
- Through S.A. cn. “Bride’s Eye”, it will initiate the publication of articles suggesting national reconciliation and keeping calm in the daily Magyar Nemzet.
- Through the Foreign Relations Department of Hungarian Radio, it will obtain information on the foreign radio correspondents registering [to cover the event], and, in close cooperation with Department II/II-12, will check them [out].
- Will Instruct Secret Officer (henceforward S.O.) I-87 to provide as much information as is available to him on the progress of activities within Hungarian Television (program planning, live broadcasts, etc.) involving the funeral.
- Will instruct S.A. cn. “Artichoke” to provide information, as far as possible, on broadcasts planned by MR PAF [Hungarian Radio, Editors of Political Broadcasts] involving the events \(\ldots\)

I request approval for the execution of the measures contained in the Plan of Action.

Budapest, May “\ldots” 1989


\(^1\) The term had a two fold meaning: 1) indirect influencing through 2 or 3 persons; 2) intelligence or counter-intelligence operation, the imparting of misinformation to an institution, e.g. through a letter or report.
\(^2\) The names of agents and games are fictitious, in accordance with the data protection law in force in Hungary—note of The Hungarian Quarterly editors.
\(^3\) Ferec Koszeg: One of the editors of the dissident magazine Beszelo, a leading SzDSz politician—THQ.
\(^4\) Gyorgy Krasso, Zoltan Zsille: prominent dissidents who returned from exile in 1989—THQ.
\(^5\) OS: National Press Service a private initiative news agency founded in 1989 to break the monopoly of MTI, the National News Agency
Poland 1986-1989:  
From “Cooptation” to “Negotiated Revolution”

By Paweł Machewicz

The documents published below are among those gathered by historians from the Institute of Political Studies of the Polish Academy of Sciences for the international conference “Poland 1986-1989. The End of the System,” held at Miedzeszyń near Warsaw on 21-23 October 1999 and co-organized with the National Security Archive at George Washington University and the Cold War International History Project. 1 They come from several archives: those of the Polish Senate (Archiwum Biura Informacji i Dokumentacji Senackiej), where a great portion of the “Solidarity” documents from 1988-1989 were deposited; the Hoover Institution on War, Revolution, and Peace at Stanford University, where several leaders of the Polish Communist Party (PUWP) deposited their papers; and private collections of former Solidarity activists Andrzej Paczkowski, Andrzej Stelmachowski, and Stanisław Stomma. With the exception of Document No. 8,2 these documents have never been published. The “Solidarity” documents, dealing with the preparation of key decisions by the opposition which led to the removal of communists from power, are unique. To date, no comparable Polish materials have been published in English.3

The selection below covers some of the most important issues and events from 1986 to 1989 relating to the end of communist rule in Poland. The first document is a September 1986 letter from Lech Wałęsa (chairman of the “Solidarity” trade union movement, banned by authorities after the imposition of martial law in December 1981) to the Council of State, following the government’s announcement of an amnesty for political prisoners. In his letter, Wałęsa offers to open a dialogue with the authorities. Documents 2 and 3 chronicle the talks between the authorities and circles close to both the Episcopate and Lech Wałęsa concerning the participation of independent forces in the Consultative Council created by the Chairman of the Council of State, Gen. Wojciech Jaruzelski. The creation of that consultative body with very limited powers (in December 1986) was the first half-measure by the authorities to broaden the scope of social dialogue within the political system created by the martial law declaration. In the end, none of the mainstream opposition representatives (centered around Wałęsa) cooperated with the Council which assured its failure. Paczkowski argues convincingly that the authorities’ strategy during that period was one of “cooptation,” i.e. of attempting to include opposition representatives in façade institutions (instead of opening any real or substantive negotiations) which would (had they succeeded) have legitimized the Jaruzelski regime.

The next document (No. 4) presages change in that strategy, due to the catastrophic economic situation and the authorities’ growing awareness of the political deadlock in which they found themselves. A report prepared by three experts (government spokesman Jerzy Urban; CC Secretary Stanisław Ciosek; and high-level Interior Ministry official Gen. Władysław Pożoga) for the party and government leadership helps explain why in 1988 the regime decided to seek a new understanding with the opposition. Document No. 5 presents the authorities’ offer to cooperate with the opposition in the first half of 1988 (after the first wave of workers’ strikes in April and May) when they still believed that it might be possible to make the opposition share responsibility (“a pro-reform coalition” or an “anti-crisis pact”) without restructuring the system or restoring any form of legality to “Solidarity.”

The subsequent documents (nos. 6-12) illustrate the positions and beliefs held by the opposition circles around Wałęsa during the many long months of negotiations, which eventually led to the establishment of the “Roundtable” on 6 February 1989. Documents 13 and 14 present arguments of the Working Group of the “Solidarity” National Council from the period of its legal existence in the years 1980-1981 charging Wałęsa and his advisers with using undemocratic practices and usurping the right to speak on behalf of the whole Union. The Working Group also contests some elements of the negotiation strategy with the authorities. These differences of opinion within the “Solidarity” camp foreshadowed the subsequent internal conflicts after the “Roundtable” deliberations ended, particularly after the formation of Tadeusz Mazowiecki’s government that summer.

Document No. 15 is an internal PUWP summary of an April 1989 meeting between Jaruzelski and Gorbachev in Moscow at which the Polish leader reported to his Soviet counterpart on the results of the “Roundtable.” The last four documents illustrate debates within the “Solidarity” camp on the most important issues during the critical months between the elections (4 June 1989) and the formation of the “Solidarity government:” the parliamentary elections (No. 16), the presidency of Jaruzelski (No. 17), and finally the formation of the government (Nos. 18 and 19). It is worth noting that as late as 1 August 1989 (less than two weeks before Mazowiecki’s designation as prime minister of the coalition government), most leading “Solidarity” politicians considered participation in the government, much less taking over the premiership, as premature and even highly risky. Mazowiecki himself warned that such a step would provoke a very negative reaction from those groups that constituted the backbone of communist power. (“There are the remaining centers of
power and they will let themselves be known. We are not yet at a stage where parliamentary relations decide.”) He also reminded members of the opposition that “from the opposition—Solidarity side there is no program and within three months this would become dramatically clear.”

In recent history there are very few examples of such great and startling events that occur with such rapidity as to outpace the expectations and prognostications of even the most sagacious actors and observers. However, what in the summer of 1989 had appeared to be the beginning of a long-term set of negotiations with the communists who were still in control of the main instruments of power, had, by the early fall, transformed into the speedy dissolution of the communist system in Poland, and subsequently throughout all of Central and Eastern Europe.

DOCUMET No. 1
Letter of Lech Wałęsa to the Council of State,
2 October 1986

Acting on the basis of a mandate given to me in democratic elections at the First Congress of delegates of the NSZZ [National Commission of the Independent Sovereign Trade Union] “Solidarity” in 1981, as chairman of that Union, led by an opinion expressed by the leaders of national and regional authorities:

—taking into consideration an unusually important decision of the PRL [Polish People’s Republic] authorities relating to the release of political prisoners, including a group of NSZZ “Solidarity” activists, which creates a new socio-political situation, allowing for an honest dialogue of all important social forces in Poland;

—motivated by my concern about further economic development of our country and having in mind the concentration of all Poles around the task of economic reform as a task of particular importance, in the absence of which we are faced with economic regression and backwardness, particularly in relation to the developed countries;

—drawing conclusions from the attitude of millions of working people, who over the last four years didn’t find a place for themselves in the present trade unions, remained faithful to the ideals of “Solidarity” and wished to get involved together with them in active work for the good of the Motherland within the framework of a socio-

trade union organization, which they could recognize as their own;

I am calling on the Council of State to take measures, which—consistent with binding legislation—would enable the realization of the principle of union pluralism, finally putting an end to the martial law legislation which constrains the development of trade unionism.

At the same time—for the sake of social peace and the need to concentrate all social forces on [the task of] getting out of the crisis—I declare readiness to respect the constitutional order, as well as the law of 8 October 1982 on trade unions. True, the provisions of this law are far from our expectations, but they nevertheless create possibilities of working and respecting the principles of the freedom of trade unions and union pluralism, and only temporary regulations are blocking the realization of those principles. It is high time to put an end to those temporary regulations and to lead to the normalization of social relations in the area of trade unionism. This is [within] the competence of the Council of State.

I trust that the Council of State will wish to take advantage of that competence and use—perhaps this unique chance—to strengthen social peace and activation of all social forces for the good of our country.

[signed] Lech Wałęsa

Submitted to the Council of State on 2 October 1986.

[Source: Institute of Political Studies (Polish Academy of Sciences), Warsaw. Translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.]

DOCUMET No. 2
Note on Proposals for Meetings between Chairman of the Council of State and Representatives of Opinion Making Social Groups, October 1986

A note on a proposal for meetings of Chairman of the Council of State with individuals representing opinion-making social circles who do not have contacts with the highest state authorities.

I. The amnesty act has created a new situation in
Poland and created possibilities for a broader social dialogue. It is very much needed due to the many unsolved problems and the deteriorating social and economic situation—despite some normalization. Among these problems one should include the following: 1) a sense of lack of prospects and any chances for the future for many people, particularly the youth; 2) the lack of credibility of the authorities, frequently connected with deep aversion to them; 3) [problems] stemming from economic and technical development, or even some regress vis-a-vis the developed countries.

Getting out of the crisis and moving [into] recovery, and particularly undertaking efforts to reform and achieve economic equilibrium, requires, in the first place, changes in peoples’ attitudes. Such changes will not be achieved in a sufficiently broad scale without:

a) conviction, in the sense of effort and sacrifice,
b) an understanding of the government’s policies,
c) approval of such policies.

So far, signs of any such changes are lacking, and in this respect the situation is getting worse.

II. Taking the initiative [to arrange] meetings with Chairman of the Council of State could be an important factor on the road toward a broadly defined understanding and renewal, if it is conceived:

1) as one factor harmonized with other measures contributing to renewal, understanding, and social cooperation, and particularly a change of [the political] climate and human attitudes. Consideration of this initiative apart from the specific social situation and other measures is doomed to failure;
2) as a factor in the increasing rationalization of political and economic decisions. However, one needs to note that: a) in observing the work of the state organs one doesn’t detect any particular interest in a dialogue with different social groups, and b) experiences of the Consultative Economic Council or the Socio-Economic Council at the Sejm [Polish Parliament] have not been encouraging so far;
3) as a factor in strengthening the government’s position through some kind of legitimacy, as these meetings can and should be recognized as a form of support and cooperation from social circles. It will have an effect both inside and outside, but it will be durable only when these meetings will not be a façade and of temporary character;
4) as a factor of dialogue and mediation, particularly in difficult situations.

III. For the dialogue conducted at these meetings to bring about the desired results, it has to: 1) meet decisively the postulates of the Polish Episcopate and broad social circles relating to the freedom of association. The question of trade union pluralism7 is meeting with particular opposition [by the government]. In the long run, however, one cannot imagine social development without the implementation of this postulate. Right now broad social circles do not have legal opportunities for social activity and expression—a [lack] of which will unavoidably lead to tensions and conflicts. Thus, opening broader opportunities to form socio-cultural associations is becoming indispensable. Catholics will attempt to form professional, agricultural, intellectual, youth or women’s associations, acting on the basis of Catholic social teachings, charitable associations and institutions, as well as those preventing social pathology;
2) adopt the principle of philosophical neutrality in the school and educational system and accept the principle of philosophical pluralism in scientific and cultural circles;
3) invite to those meetings not only publicly known people, but, above all, people who are representative of their [social] groups. In this way opinions and considerations of those circles could be directly presented and defended. This postulate should not contradict the conditions of factual dialogue and limits on the number of participants;
4) assure the truly independent character of invited participants, among whom, besides people connected with the Catholic Church, should be properly chosen representatives of other independent circles.

IV. Proceeding to the organization of the above meetings and the possible formation of a consultative body, the following questions should be resolved:

1) What is the real motive for organizing these meetings and forming a consultative body?  
2) What are going to be the tasks and powers of that body? 
3) Should this body be created by Gen. Jaruzelski as Chairman of the Council of State, or by the Council of State [as a whole]?
4) What will be the composition (what social circles and proportions), the manner of appointment, and the size of this body?
5) In what way will the society be informed about the work of this body and the opinions of its members? 
6) Will it be possible to adopt the principle that people who are not representing official political structures and the state organs also be invited? 
7) Is there a possibility to hold proper consultations with Lech Wałęsa on the participation of people from the “Solidarity” circles?
8) Would the state authorities, before the final decision on meetings and setting up the consultative body, publicly take a positive position on the proposal
to expand activities for social associations?
9) Is it possible to calm philosophical conflicts in schools in connection with the study of religions and atheization, as well as with philosophical diversification of teachers in the school system?

[Source: Stanisław Stomma Papers. Translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.]

DOCUMENT No. 3
Memorandum of Conversation,
18 October 1986

Promemoria


The conversation started at about 9 a.m. and lasted three and a half hours. K. Barcikowski referred to questions which he had received from the Episcopate. He expressed their mutual lack of trust. The proposal [for the Council] is new and startling. It would be the only means to get involved in difficult decisions. Participation in [the proposed Council] is a matter of citizenship, a duty. Its composition [is] well balanced: 30-40 people [would be involved] for certain (but there are proposals to expand that list and to invite other people on an ad hoc basis). Of the Catholics from the circles close to the Episcopate, 8-10 people [would be active]. Besides representatives of the [ruling] party and other parties,16 non-party people, including those not connected with the authorities (but not extremists, who are re-activating the “S[olidarity]” structures) [would also actively participate].

The proposed Consultative Council is meant to increase trust and develop recommendations, which the Chairman of the Council of State (Gen. Jaruzelski) would pass on to the proper state organs as important proposals. Its effectiveness will depend on the authority [that it can command]. There will be a place for the opinions of its members, and the circles to which they belong. The Consultative Council has to work out some consensus.

The Consultative Council would be set up by the Chairman of the Council of State personally and not by the Council of State as such, which has too narrow a range of responsibilities and competence.

A possible range of activities of the Council [is] building: 1) social understanding, 2) functioning of the State, 3) conditions for economic progress, 4) scientific-technical progress, 5) development of socialist democracy, 6) current and prospective social policy, 7) environmental protection, 8) improvement of the moral condition of society; as well as other important matters.

The creation of approximately ten similar “citizens’ convents”17 for larger agglomerations or several voivodships [districts] and also the appointment of a Citizens’ Rights Ombudsman is expected.18

K. Barcikowski, referring to a note he received at the beginning of the meeting from A. Wielowieyski, said that there is some skepticism toward these proposed bodies, but that he was sure that a “façade counts too.” Criticism towards consultative bodies is incorrect, anyway, as they are actively operating.

Taking a position on particular points of the “Note”
— he called into question an assertion that union pluralism is indispensable for the longer term;
— he expressed surprise that Catholics would aim at forming associations and said that the authorities might take a position on this matter, but only if all the interested parties would first take a position toward the proposed Council (ref. to question 8);
— in schools one can see an aversion shown by Catholics (question 9);
— [he said that] the demand that the Council be representa
tive creates the impression that it was to be made according to a “prescription;”
— [he noted that] the question of informing public opinion about the workings of the Council requires further thought; certainly discretion will be needed (question 5);
— [he questioned if] the participation in the Council, of people connected with the authorities (e.g. with the Party) mean that only people opposed to the authorities should be in the Council? (to question 6—it would be an issue to raise);
— [he said that] consultations with Wałęsa are not being foreseen without [Wałęsa] fulfilling conditions which the government’s spokesman talked [about] (on TV), i.e. cutting himself off from other “S” leaders;

He thought the note was one-sided.
Subsequently a mutual clarification of positions took place.

**A. Wielowieyski** stated that the configuration of social forces is very unfavorable to efforts to overcome the crisis due to the fact that the majority of society is passive, has no confidence and is skeptical towards the authorities. The greatest need is to create a self-identity—that is how he explained the need for pluralism and having the proper representation of other social groups—identity indispensable for improving the climate and for the defense of the needs of those groups.

**A. Święcicki** talked about gradual realization of the principle of pluralism. He pointed to: 1) a need to create an educational environment, 2) pressure for secularization in schools (study of religions and verification of teachers) is stimulating a fighting attitude among the clergy, and 3) representation of particular segments of society in the Consultative Council should match the prestige and significance of people proposed (there are indications that people who are invited are not representative of those social segments.)

He emphasized several times that Catholic associations were better educationally, since they were more independent than the parishes, but they could be formed only as local organizations.

**J. Turowicz** pointed out that “normalization” is perceived negatively by society and seen as a means of reinforcing the totalitarian system. The need to reform the system was broadly felt. He did not think that Catholics should be in majority in the Council, but he questioned the way the extremists were being defined (e.g. Mazowiecki19 or Geremek20 are counted as part of that group, but these are, after all, reasonable and moderate people).

As far as the names of people for the Council from the government side [are concerned], these could not be compromised names. He repeated arguments about a possible ineffectiveness and ostentatiousness of the Council, and also about the need for school neutrality.

Towards the end of the discussion he emphasized that social pluralism is a fact, and that the institutions in which society could broadly participate could not be licensed exclusively. He also raised the possibility of a role not only for Catholic associations, but for the others too (e. g. he mentioned D and P).21

**A. Wielowieyski**, referring to K. Barcikowski’s words about social organizations, mentioned, among other things, a particular feeling of helplessness on the part of peasants towards the political and economic apparatus governing the countryside (agricultural and mechanical associations),22 associations in which even heads of the communities are helpless.

**K. Barcikowski** referring to the above-mentioned matter said (without denying the fact) [that] this would not be easy to fix soon.

— took an unwilling position toward the creation of associations; said the parishes are acting legally, with the authorities’ consent, while there had been talk at the Joint Commission about associations,23 long ago; says that the more the Church gets, the more it wants (there was unwillingness, but not a decisive refusal);

— he evaluated Wałęsa critically;

— he did not exclude altogether union pluralism in the future though it was inadmissible [now];

— it was difficult to commit to cooperation with people, who were declaring [their] hostility;

— defended pro-governmental social organizations (they were “alive”[active, not moribund]);

— expressed regret that in 1956 religion was not left in schools; since the Church had created its own network of religious teaching, and the “state secular school” was just a response to that network and it had to defend itself against the Church;

— you were making a mistake, you wanted to sell us an “angel” (some kind of an ideal society, which doesn’t exist), your promises will eventually shrink, the Church doesn’t have influence on attitudes toward work; however, towards the end of the discussion, to an argument that the Church nevertheless has had influence on moderation and non-violence within society, he did not oppose it, but said that, after all, both sides have been temperate;

— he emphasized that, after all, all proposals from this talk would have to be approved by the party;

— we appreciated you very much, but we can dispense with your advise, we announced amnesty for political reasons, but we would not have done it if it would have complicated the situation in the country;

— the amnesty had moved the intelligentsia circles tremendously, but for the workers it did not mean much;

— you were maximalists; I did not see a rapprochement; my opinion was authoritative. I did not exclude further talks, but our proposals were not going to change much, we would not come up with concessions because we did not have to. Both sides had been involved, and if it did not work, the country will have to pay for it;
—haste is not in our interest.

Stanisław Ciosek

—recalled the negative results of pluralism in 1980/1981 and rejected it, arguing that the whole world has a totalitarian system;

—the curve of social expectations was declining, and no revolts or tragedies were going to happen now;

—he said he knew the report “5 Years After August [1980],”²⁴ prepared by “Solidarity’s” advisers, but we knew it even better, and that was why we wanted to do something together with you to prevent [Poland from] becoming a colony of a stronger state.

K. Secomski spoke briefly and didn’t bring up anything of importance.

Done by:

Andrzej Wielowieyski

[Source: Stanisław Stomma Papers. Translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.]

(document)

DOCUMENT No. 4

Warsaw, 28 August 1987

A synthesis of the domestic situation of the country and the West’s activity

The moods in social segments against the background of the economic situation

—Generally, anxiety is rising due to the prolonged economic crisis. The opinion is spreading that the economy instead of improving is getting worse. As a result, an ever greater dissonance arises between the so-called official optimism of the authorities (“after all, it’s better [now]”) and the feeling of society.

—Criticism directed at the authorities is rising because of the “slow, inept and inconsistent” introduction of economic reform.

—Social dissatisfaction is growing because of the rising costs of living. The opinion is spreading that the government has only one “prescription,” i.e. price increases. Against this background the mood of dissatisfaction is strongest among the workers.

—[The] belief is growing that the reform has not reached the workplaces, [there is] a lack of any improvement in management and organization of work.

—Confirmations of the above moods are [the following factors:]

a) in the period January-July 1987, there were 234 collective forms of protest, i.e. more than in the same period last year;

b) a total of 3,353 people participated in work stoppages, while only 1,729 people participated in such stoppages last year;

c) the role of workplace union organizations in inspiring conflicts that threaten work stoppages is rising.

—Disappointment and frustration is deepening within the intelligentsia, which placed great hope in the reform for overcoming technical and “civilizational” backwardness, and thus in their own social “promotion” and improvement in their standard of living.

—Characteristic of these circles, [which] otherwise stand far removed from the opposition, is the opinion that the “government is strong when it comes to keeping itself in power, but weak and helpless in fighting the wrongs which lead to economic anarchy and the demoralization of society.”

—Consecutive liberalization measures, such as consent to create several associations, publication of the journal Res Publica²⁵, re-issuing of Lad,²⁶ or Czyrek’s meeting in the Warsaw KIK,²⁷ have little resonance within society and render little help in improving the “reputation” of the government. One can put forth the thesis that their reception is larger in narrow circles of the so-called moderate opposition and in some circles in the West than in the broader public opinion at home.

—Reaction to the Social Consultative Council, which at the beginning was very positive, is deteriorating. The opinion that the Council has not lived up to expectations, and that it is a “couch” [Kanapowe, meaning: composed of a few individuals who can fit on one couch] device, is gaining [ground]. It is pointed out that only about a dozen
members in the Council are active, while the majority is silent or has nothing to say. Even a report submitted in the Council by Prof. Szczepański on resolving the crisis didn’t produce any significant response (except in some circles of the so-called moderate opposition and among some Western correspondents).

—These unfavorable trends are not being compensated for by active Polish foreign policy and its undeniable successes in overcoming barriers of isolation and restoration of Poland to its proper place in the world [after the sanctions imposed by the West following the December 1981 martial law crackdown]. These successes are being noticed and even present an element of surprise in the West, where the “originality” or “national character” of the so-called Jaruzelski Plan is being stressed. The development of political relations with the West is also observed carefully by the internal enemy, causing it irritation and apprehension that the opposition might be left on its own. But for the “average” citizen, foreign policy is something remote, without an effect on the domestic situation of the country and the standard of living of the society, and, what is worse—an impression is created that the authorities are concentrating their efforts on building an “external” image, neglecting the basic questions of citizens’ daily lives.

Generalizing, one can say that:

1) confidence in the authorities and readiness to cooperate in the reconstruction of the country is declining at a very fast rate, which is caused mainly by the ineffectiveness of actions taken in the economic sphere. Liberalization measures undertaken so far are not able to stem this process;

2) Against this background, one can also clearly note the declining prestige of the First Secretary of the CC PUWP;

3) A state of discontent is growing ([among] workers and intelligentsia groups, and partly in the villages) and it is gradually, but systematically accumulating.

The situation in the camp of the political adversary.

—A seeming decline of activities “on the outside:” fewer leaflets, new initiatives or provocative appeals. Also, the planned ceremonies of the “August Anniversary”28 are less impressive and aggressive in content and form than in previous years;

—The adversary admits that in terms of organization it is at a standstill, and in its political and propaganda interaction it made mistakes and found itself on the defensive vis-à-vis the government (see our campaign around US financial support for “Solidarity”);

—However, a number of symptoms indicate that as far as the adversary is concerned, it is the “calm before the storm.” For the adversary says that:

   a) each action by the authorities in the economic sphere will be favorable to the opposition (failing to implement it or the incomplete realization of economic reform will cause stagnation or regression, and as a result rising social dissatisfaction, but a similar result can be brought about by full implementation of reform, as it will result in a temporary decline in purchasing power, layoffs, etc.);

   b) government policies are approaching bankruptcy, and it must come to the next crisis;

   c) the government has already entered into the next curve and is losing control over the development of events;

   d) the government is becoming more and more susceptible to social pressure;

—Based on these premises, the adversary has come to the conclusion that it does not have to bother much—it is enough to sustain a mood of justified anger and wait and join, at the right moment, the eruption of dissatisfaction, as in 1980;

—the adversary has already undertaken specific preparations in this direction:

   a) energetic steps are being taken to increase and institutionalize financial grants from the West. These steps, for the time being, have succeeded in the US Congress granting “Solidarity” US$1 million;

   b) under consideration is the reorganization of top leadership bodies, their transformation into a sort of Staff “capable of taking operational decisions and coordinating actions;”

   c) communication systems between the underground and diversion centers and “Solidarity” structures in the West and among particular regions are being perfected;

   d) a network of alarm communication is being set up in case of a general strike;

   e) under consideration is the strengthening of the infrastructure and training for the illegal structures in the regions;

   f) printing facilities are maintained in full readiness (fully loaded with equipment, the underground is
unable to “absorb” the machines transferred from the West);

—a peculiar kind of “detonator” may turn out to be terrorist actions planned by the extremists, preparations for which are advancing;29

—obviously, all areas of activity of the adversary so far are still valid, thus:

a) criticism of the system and the authorities for economic ineptitude, falling behind the Soviet “perestroika,” for halfway liberalization measures—most often through interviews of opposition leaders to the Western media and in contacts with representatives of foreign governments and embassies;

b) disruptive activities in relations with the West, through repeated demands that the essential condition for changing the Western attitude toward Poland on questions of trade and credit should be the restoration of trade union pluralism and ensuring legal activities for the opposition;

c) strengthening the so-called second circulation publishing;

d) attempts at rebuilding illegal structures at workplaces.

Activities of the Western special services and centers of diversion

—Activities of the intelligence services are directed mostly at reconnaissance:

a) the state of the economy, the decisiveness of government in implementing reforms, differences of positions in this regard within the top leadership and mid-level Aktyin [party activists], as well as the implementation of reforms (from the “top” to the workplace);

b) possibilities of eruptions on a larger scale.

—Assuming such a course of developments, the “spectacle” with American donations for “Solidarity” was arranged on purpose. The point was, among others, to show “who is the master here” and as a result to subordinate even more strongly the illegal structures in the country to the power centers in the West, and in fact to the special services in the US.

—This operation turned out to be a success: the underground (with few exceptions) agrees to be a US instrument. The adversary is so sure of its power in the underground that it steadily extends [the underground’s] range of tasks:

a) an ever wider realization of demands in the area of economic intelligence;

b) identification of the Security Services functionaries (names and addresses) and preparations for provocation against our apparatus (this scheme is known from previous crises);

c) inspiring terrorist actions.

—At the same time the process of upgrading the opposition leaders as “trustworthy and legally elected representatives of the society” is continuing (e.g. many recent invitations for Wałęsa to foreign events, contacts by Western officials with the leadership of the opposition). The purpose of these measures is quite clearly the recreation of the opposition leadership elite from the years 1980-1981 in case a similar situation arises.

—Activities coordinated within NATO by the US, aimed at strengthening the position of the Church (contacts with Glemp and other representatives of the hierarchy, new inspirations involving the Church in the matters of foundations), are also continuing.

—Activities aimed at strengthening the American presence in Poland on a larger scale are being intensified:

a) independent of official visits, there are more and more visits of politicians and experts, which the Americans themselves define as study travels (what in practice is tantamount to the realization of intelligence demands);

b) the Americans are strengthening their influence among politically active, opinion-shaping circles, which is confirmed by, inter alia, their current fellowship programs. They are most clearly taking an interest in young people, [who are] outstanding in their field, as their aim is to generate a new pro-American leadership elite.

—Similar activities are directed at the centers of ideological diversion.

Changes in evaluations of the economic situation in Poland formulated in the West

—Already in the first months of this year, Western intelligence and governmental experts’ evaluations presented rather positive opinions about a “spirit of change” in Poland and on theoretical assumptions of the reform. Opinions were expressed that if the authorities “introduce proper structures, mechanisms and institutions
enabling effective introduction of the second stage of economic reform,” then Poland “will have a chance for economic development”;

—In Western estimates from this period, one can see that at least some forces in the West have identified their interests with the reform course in Poland. Hence, [there have been] all sorts of “encouragement,” and sometimes pressure, to speed up, deepen, [and] expand the reform process (both in the economy and in the superstructure);

—However, in mid-1987 one can observe increasing criticism in the evaluations and prognoses for the Polish economy made by the Western intelligence services and government experts. These assessments are sometimes extended to the whole domestic situation. For example:

a) intelligence specialists and congressional experts in the US [state]:

- The results of the reform so far are disappointing. So far there is nothing which would indicate that in the near future the authorities will be able to stabilize the economic situation. One should even assume a growing socio-political destabilization.

- Straightening out the mess is dragging on, and as a result Poland may fall into an even more turbulent state than before.

- The inactivity of the authorities may have an exponential effect in the form of increased confrontation and isolation.

- If the government does not take immediate and decisive measures, it may lose an opportunity to escape this labyrinth of difficulties.

b) NATO experts:

- The economic situation is very complex and the opposition’s activity is resulting in a situation for the authorities that is no less dangerous than it was in 1980.

c) A new element is that experts from neutral countries are formulating similarly drastic assessments. For example, the Swedes [note]:

- The reform policy is losing speed, and paralysis in the government’s activities is increasingly visible.

- The danger of an economic and societal crash is approaching.

- Poland is becoming a keg of gunpowder.

- Such evaluations may result in a fundamental change in the position of the West [with their] slowing down political normalization and gradual reconstruction of economic relations with Poland. One proof of this may be [in the] deliberations among the diplomats of NATO countries in Warsaw:

a) Is it worth it to support reform efforts in Poland since the reform cause is losing, and maybe it has already been lost[?]

b) Is it worth it to still invest in the present team[?]

c) It is not by accident that the embassies of NATO countries are currently conducting investigations [into] organizing people, who “lost hope in the possibility of the PUWP improving the situation” and [into] a possible organizing by those people into a new party (association), which “would support [the] PUWP on the basic line, but would use different methods.”

[Source: Andrzej Paczkowski Papers. Translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.]

DOCUMENT No. 5
Speech by Józef Czyrek, 11 May 1988

A speech by Mr. Józef Czyrek at a founding meeting of the Polish Club of International Relations, held on 11 May 1988

1. Together with our host, Professor Aleksander Gięysztor, we have envisioned the founding of a Polish Club of International Relations. The talks conducted on this matter and today’s meeting confirm a positive response to this initiative. I am convinced that outstanding representatives of different circles and orientations will join in the activities of the Club, which we want to base on the recognition of pluralism and understanding.

2. We have stated in a joint letter with Prof. Gięysztor that Poland’s position among the nations of the world demands broad social support, dialogue and public evaluation. This would be the major objective of the Polish Club of International Relations. I want to repeat: social support, dialogue and public evaluation. This is the
3. This assumes a wide representation of points of view and opinions, lively and unrestrained discourse on all questions of Polish foreign policy, relations in Europe and the world, aiming at a consensus through dialogue. We assume that the Club will act on the basis of the Constitution of the Polish People’s Republic and will be led by the Polish raison d’état. However, within the framework of the Constitution and the principles of raison d’état there is a wide area for an exchange of views and the drawing of conclusions. I want to express conviction that in the Club’s activities we should strive toward the broadest understanding and consensus. After all, there is no doubt that we are led—above all differences of views—by the good of Poland, the good of our nation, of our motherland.

4. Proposals to create this kind of social body have been suggested by different circles for some time. We are now taking this initiative not without reason. We look at the creation of the Club and its activity as one of the important elements building national understanding. Poland needs it as much as [it needs] air. Recent developments not only do not undermine such a need, quite to the contrary—they fully emphasize its importance.

5. We are holding our meeting on a day of very important Sejm deliberations. They fully confirm the will for the implementation of the II [second] stage of economic reform, and very important resolutions are being taken, which are intended to speed up its introduction and increase its impact. The Sejm also confirms its unwavering will to continue and expand political reforms. I think personally that from the process of renewal we will come to a deep reconstruction, to a significant widening of the Polish model of socialism in economic, social and political life. Led by this desire is Chairman of the Council of State Wojciech Jaruzelski, and—contrary to various opinions—he has broad backing, both within the ruling coalition and various patriotic forces, as well as from within our party.

6. In various discussions, including those held within our party, the idea of building some kind of pro-reform coalition or anti-crisis pact is being put forward. There is no doubt that Poland needs this kind of coalition very badly. I am personally convinced that we should strive towards it, build it not for a distant future, but rather for the near one.

7. I am stressing this basic objective because we see, together with Professors Gieysztor and other co-authors of that initiative [discussed above in number 6], such activity as a basic task of the Club. Consensus on the questions of foreign policy, to which the Club should contribute, is as important as consensus on the questions of internal economic, social and political reforms. In fact there can be no deeper national understanding without a harmony of positions on key international questions for the country. It is important in all countries and in ours in particular.

Foreign policy is certainly the area, which is evoking, relatively, the smallest [number of] controversies. There is a broad understanding of the correctness of the alliance with the USSR and other socialist states as the basis for the territorial integrity and security of Poland. There is also broad support for the unambiguously peaceful purposes of our foreign policy, and particularly [for] active participation in building joint security in Europe and constructively shaping East-West relations, including the need for positive developments in relations with Western countries. We fully appreciate the significance of international law, including human rights, the weight of regional and global problems in the natural environment, the necessity of expanding cultural exchanges and the elimination of all barriers to economic cooperation.

There is no doubt that the purposes of Polish foreign policy are consistent with the national interests of Poland. However, there is also no doubt, that both within the area of objectives and of the ways of their realization, a broad social dialogue is needed. We would like the Club that we are about to set up to serve well such a dialogue, an elaboration—as I have already pointed out—of mutual understanding and consensus on these matters.

8. In our times the significance of the phenomenon which is being called public diplomacy, is growing. This form of diplomacy, engaging various social forces and affecting the shape of foreign opinion on one’s country, is one of the great platforms of international contacts. It’s even more important, the more representative and the more socially and morally authoritative the persons are participating in it. We are convinced that we can gather many such personalities in the proposed Club. And today’s meeting also confirms it.

Based on an idea of national understanding, we would like to see the proposed Club gather people of practically all patriotic orientations. We see it as place for people who, as a result of their present or past activity, have contributed significantly to the development of Polish relations with the abroad. We see in it people, who, from different philosophical or political outlooks, participate or want to participate in expanding contacts with abroad. People from very different circles, of divergent opinions, but ready to get involved in building national understanding.

9. It is our conviction [that] the Club, in addition to its other purposes, should also serve in shaping political culture. It should act on its principles and at the same time make a significant contribution in the deepening of society. We think that this understanding will gain support, because one cannot build a national understanding without political culture.
Together with Prof. Gieysztor and other co-authors of the initiative we are deeply convinced that the Club should have a social character. Thus, we do not want to tie it to any state institution, nor to any existing social organization. We see it as an autonomous social body set up on the basis of the law on associations and self-governing principles of activity. We think that this formula is the best one and will gain support of both the personalities gathered here, as well as many other persons to whom we have appealed for participation. The draft statute of the Club is based on such principles, with a significant contribution by Prof. Manfred Lachs, for which I thank him wholeheartedly. This draft will be submitted here for discussion. We also want to submit for discussion a draft list of people, to whom we have turned for participation in the Club’s activities.

In the end I want to thank wholeheartedly Prof. Aleksander Gieysztor for his co-participation in this initiative and for hosting today’s meeting. I hope that the beautiful Castle of which Prof. Gieysztor is so admirably in charge, will be the Club’s headquarters.

Source: Andrzej Stelmachowski Papers; translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.

DOCUMENTS No. 6
Report on a Working Conference
[of Opposition Leaders],
1 September 1988

A report from a working conference

At a meeting held on 1 September 1988, chaired by Prof. Andrzej Stelmachowski, there was a discussion on preparations to a possible “Roundtable.” Participants in the discussion were: B. Geremek, P. Czartoryski, M. Król, H. Wujec, A. Michnik, J. Kuroń, S. Grabska, K. Śliwiński, T. Gruszeczki, R. Bugaj, J. Moskwa, A. Wielowieyski, K. Wójcicki, H. Bortnowska, Z. Grzelak.

Differences of opinion among the participants concerned mostly the degree of to which emphasis should be placed on the [legal] registration of “Solidarity” as opposed to the preparation of broader topics of possible future talks. Attention was drawn to the danger of too wide a range of topics, which might water down the cause of “Solidarity.” In this connection it has been agreed that it is necessary to prepare a detailed schedule of negotiations, in which the question of “Solidarity” would be awarded the first place.

Another matter discussed was the status of social participants in the “Roundtable” discussions. It has been acknowledged that it has to be precisely defined.

In the course of the meeting M. Król submitted a report on his talk with Minister Kiszczak, and P. Czartoryski described the situation in Silesia.

As a result of the discussion it has been agreed:

1. The point of departure for the preparations for the talks is a document submitted by L. Wałęsa on 25 August 1988, in which three major areas for talks have been formulated: unions, pluralism of associations, and economic and political reforms;

2. The date for the meeting of the so-called Group of 60 was set for 9 October 1988 in Gdańsk (still to be agreed with L. Wałęsa);

3. The formation of topical groups, which were to prepare papers for the Gdańsk meeting, as well as for future talks conducted by L. Wałęsa. The following groups have been set up:

   - a group for trade union matters (Kuroń, Merkel, Malanowski, Wujec, Rosner, Milczanowski);

   - a group for economic questions (Wielowieyski, Gruszeczki, Bugaj—with an invitation to G. Janowski for agricultural matters);

   - a group for pluralism of associations (Geremek, Szaniawski, Paszyński, Bratkowski and possibly M. Król—future systemic questions).

   It has been agreed that further topical groups should be established, which would cooperate with a group of “Solidarity” advisors. Among other things, the question of youth and generational differences should be brought up.

   The question of contacts, the press and other media was entrusted to J. Moskwa, and the preparation of papers for discussion in Gdańsk—to K. Wójcicki.

Source: Andrzej Stelmachowski Papers. Translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.
DOCUMENT No. 7
Memorandum by Lech Wałęsa,
“On Starting the Roundtable Talks,”
4 September 1988

On starting the [Roundtable] talks

Right now we can begin to discuss the topics for negotiations, which I presented in my statement of 26 August. I think that in the beginning of next week talks should be concerned with two questions:

1) implementation of the promise made by the authorities that there would be no repression toward striking workers, and that those [repressive measures] have been applied, will be annulled,

2) union pluralism and within its framework the legalization of NSZZ “Solidarity”, consistent with the postulate of the striking crews.

I think that the first stage of implementing the principle of the “Roundtable” as a process should be a factual discussion of the above topics and preliminary decisions. The composition of the meeting should initially be trilateral as was our meeting on 31 August. I am going to present personal proposals separately.

A positive consideration of the above mentioned questions will allow for a broader debate on economic and political reforms in our country.

Gdańsk, 4 September 1988

[signed]

[Source: Andrzej Stelmachowski Papers. Translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.]

DOCUMENT No. 8
Report from Andrzej Stelmachowski to Lech Wałęsa,
6 September 1988

Mr. Chairman
Lech Wałęsa
Gdańsk

A report

Yesterday, i.e. on 5 September, I met with Secretary J. Czyrek. The conversation lasted from 5:15 p.m. to 7:15 p.m., and then for another 10 minutes [we talked] in connection with the need for intervention on behalf of workers dismissed from their jobs or called up for military service as a penalty [for participation in strikes].

At the beginning [of the meeting] I handed him your note of 4 September, and the second one from “Solidarity RI” relating to agriculture [in] which I have agreed with them on my trip to Częstochowa for a harvest festival. To begin with, the Secretary was delighted that we are proposing to start the “Roundtable” in [a] reasonable, not too accelerated time limit. He also said that he had been expecting a second Kiszczak-Wałęsa meeting to discuss the agenda, a list of participants and an agenda, while it would appear from your note that such meeting is not planned. I responded to this that, of course, a Kiszczak-Wałęsa meeting is always possible if we both agree on what needs to be done.

In that case the secretary has revealed his vision of the “Roundtable.” He sees it as follows:

1) An exchange of views on the proposed changes in: a) the socio-political system, b) the economic system;

2) Work procedure and methods of coming to conclusions. He sees the sequence of work [as follows:] 1/ Discussion of the democratization process, leading to the creation of a joint election platform and reaching an understanding on restructuring the most important state structures: the Sejm, the government, the chief of state (i.e., a “presidential system”);

2/ Discussion of pluralism of associations (so that its implementation could be achieved by the year’s end);

3/ Discussion of a trade union model. He emphasized, however: “we stand on the position of the trade union law.”

He added: We won’t quarrel about the sequence of the points.

As can be seen from the above, the sequence of his points is exactly the reverse of ours. Therefore, I put up a [a bit of an objection], explaining that “political and legal empowering is the necessary premise of further phases, as
it is difficult to undertake obligations towards anyone without having a legal existence.”

To this the secretary “put his cards on the table” stating that in deciding on the legalization of “Solidarity” the authorities would like to know how the “S” sees its place in the political system. They would like to see “S” as a constructive factor, and not one undermining the system. They do not demand that “S” should get actively involved in the system as it exists today, but they would like to see its co-participation and co-responsibility in the reformed system.

I expressed fear that unleashing a wide-ranging debate on reforming the political system will water down the whole question.

After a longer exchange of views he recognized that besides “a large table,” “smaller tables,” including a “union” one, could also be established. He insisted, however, that reform questions should at least be considered together with the union matters.

In view of my fears that the “large table” debates may be less specific, he has revealed still another proposal. Thus, they would like to set up temporarily a body like a “Council for National Understanding,” which would be entrusted with preparing the reform of the Sejm, government, etc. He asked if “S” would enter into such a council. I in turn inquired how such a council would be chosen: by nomination or by delegation by particular organizations. He responded that it would be through delegation (in this respect it would greatly differ from the Consultative Council) and resolutions would be taken through an “understanding” and not by a “vote.” Such a council would have about 50 persons.

I responded I could not decide this for the “S” authorities, but that I personally thought such participation might be possible, obviously already from the position of a legalized organization.

Then we moved on to the composition of the “Table” and the possibility of a “union table.” I said that for the time being we don’t have any proposals regarding the “Table,” while at the “union table” there would be 7-8 people, including about 5 worker activists and about 2-3 people from a team of “advisors” (I did not mention names). He responded by saying that on their side also there would have to be workers and that people from the OPZZ cannot be excluded. He also asked if the strikers would be included in the “S” delegation. I responded that yes, that, for Lech, people who are “dynamic” are right now would be included in the “S” delegation. I responded that OPZZ cannot be excluded. He also asked if the strikers there would have to be workers and that people from the “Table,” while at the “union table” there would be 7-8 people, including about 5 worker activists and about 2-3 people from a team of “advisors” (I did not mention names). He responded by saying that on their side also there would have to be workers and that people from the OPZZ cannot be excluded. He also asked if the strikers would be included in the “S” delegation. I responded that yes, that, for Lech, people who are “dynamic” are right now more important than those who already belong to “Solidarity’s ZBOWiD.” I appealed to him not to interfere, as far as possible, into the composition of the other side; we are ready to accept people even from the “party’s concrete” (at which he smiled and said this would be an exaggeration, as he would like to lead [the talks] to a positive conclusion).

As far as the “Large Table” is concerned, he mentioned several names such as Kozakiewicz.

Kostrzewski (President of Polish Academy of Sciences), Stomma, Przeclawska, Marcin Król, etc. I acknowledged it.

As far as setting the date for starting the debates, it would be next week (according to your note). I merely said that I did not like the figure 13, thus it would be either 12th or 14th. He said he did not have aversion to the 13th, but since a meeting of the Politburo is scheduled on that day, that day would be out of question anyway.

So much for your information. To sum it up—we are faced with a dilemma as to whether to agree to parallel debates at both tables: the “big one” and several small ones, including the “union” one, or not. If so, then we should invite to the “large table” people from the “Group of 60,” invited for Sunday (besides the “unionists”).

There is also the question whether the Kiszczak-Lech debate should be renewed to complete these things, or whether I should do it with Czyrek.

Before leaving the CC building I made a phone call to Rev. Urszulik (I had an earlier appointment, but due to the late hour I wanted to cancel it). Then attorney Ambrozik, who was there, broke the news to me about a call-up of the military in Gdańsk and Stalowa Wola and about the layoffs of 28 people from the Northern Shipyard in Gdańsk. Therefore, I returned back to Secretary Czyrek and intervened. He promised to take up this matter.

Since Urszulik was urging me to come over (he sent a car), I drove to the Secretary of the Episcopate, where I met with Rev. Orszulik, Abp. Stroba and Bp. J. Dąbrowski. I reported to them on my conversation with Czyrek.

They were of the opinion to agree to both a “large” and “small” table.

While writing this note (at 9:50 a.m.) I got a call from Czyrek, who told me the following:

1) Call-ups to the military are not a new event, but implementation of earlier instructions dating back to the strike period. He pointed out that it has to do with “short” mobilization exercises, 5 days, 10 days, 14 days at most.
2) He promised to explore the question of layoffs in the Northern Shipyard in conversation with the first secretary in Gdańsk, who is expected to arrive today for a Politburo meeting.

I pressed [him] to eliminate as fast as possible the above mentioned measures, emphasizing the harmfulness of using the military for penal purposes (Minister Czyrek...
Secretary Czyrek said that Gen. Kiszczak would be inclined to begin the “Roundtable” on the coming Wednesday (14th) or Thursday (15th).

With warm wishes to all of you,

P.S.
Please set up a fast telephone communication with Lech (i.e. specific hours and telephone number).

[Source: Andrzej Stelmachowski Papers. Translated by Jan Chowaniec.]

DOCUMENT No. 9
Note by Lech Wałęsa Regarding Further Procedure of Talks, [not dated]

A note regarding further procedures of talks

The organization of the “Roundtable” talks has not been, as yet, precisely defined. Preliminary arrangements are needed very quickly. In particular, I am expecting a response to the following questions:
1) How large a team is going to participate in the general debates of the Roundtable?
2) What persons and representatives of what organizations have been invited or are going to be invited?
3) What is the preliminary estimate of the duration of the Roundtable (what is meant here is the time estimate of the “first session,” ending with decisions)?
4) How large are the working groups going to be?

From my part I am already proposing to define the agenda for the working groups, namely (in brackets I give the names of my plenipotentiaries for the particular teams)

1/ Union pluralism (T. Mazowiecki)
2/ Economic questions (A. Wielowieyski)
3/ Social pluralism (K. Szaniawski)
4/ Political reform (B. Geremek)
5/ Law and the judicial system (J. Olszewski)
6/ Agriculture and agricultural union (A. Stelmachowski)
7/ Mining questions (A. Pietrzyk)

Following these preliminary explanations it will be possible to set the date of the first meeting.

[signed by Lech Wałęsa]

[Source: Andrzej Stelmachowski Papers. Translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.]

DOCUMENT No. 10
Letter from Andrzej Stelmachowski to Lech Wałęsa, 1 October 1988

1 October 1988
Tel. 33-96-11
Mr. Lech Wałęsa
Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity”
in Gdańsk

Dear Chief:

On 20 September I held another talk with Secretary J. Czyrek. In the beginning, according to the instructions, I protested the arrest of the 17 students who make up the National Council of the Independent Student Union (NZS),79 expressing hope that the next meeting of this kind would not be disturbed, even more so because at stake here is a selection of delegates to the “Roundtable.” I also intervened on behalf of two members of the Striking Committee at Stalowa Wola, who still have not been re-admitted to their jobs, drawing his attention to the fact that the recommendation to re-admit about 200 miners to their jobs in Silesia also have not been implemented.

Secretary Czyrek promised to take care of these matters: he would go personally to Silesia to settle things and also for his part to prepare a “miners’ table.” At the same time he has raised far-reaching grievances towards Onyszkiewicz 80 because of his appearance before a U.S. Congressional Committee, that is before the body of a foreign state (it was indeed a great blunder).

As far as the “Roundtable” talks are concerned, we have agreed on the following:
1) The main “Roundtable” will number 50-70 people.
2) Individual teams will have about 20 people each, and their compositions may change as the need arises.
3) There will be 5 teams (union, systemic-political, economic, social pluralism and agriculture), and an additional sixth “table” will be operating in Katowice (on mining and matters related to that region81). Secretary Czyrek didn’t agree to set up a separate table for dealing
with law and order, but agreed to discuss these matters at
the systemic-political “table.”

4) On the governmental side, representatives of the
Party and allied parties will be invited but also large social
organizations, such as NOT, PTE, agricultural circles,
leaders of self-governmental and cooperative organiza-
tions, etc., but more on a personal rather than an institu-
tional basis.

5) It has been decided that “Solidarity’s” representa-
tion will be as large as the party-government representa-
tion, including the “allies;” however, there will be a third
category of “miscellaneous,” comprised of well-known
personalities who are not directly connected to either side.
Here Church representatives will be included.

6) As far as the duration of the “Roundtable” talks is
concerned, there is a proposal to start them on 17 October
and finish before 11 November. If everything goes well,
there would be a great ceremonious ending, combined
with the 70th anniversary of regained independence.

7) The “Roundtable” will make only the most
important decisions and will form a Council for National
Understanding, which would receive proper powers from
the Sejm and would prepare legislative drafts necessary
for the introduction of political reform, as well as essential
elements of economic reform.

In connection with this, we allowed ourselves to
conduct a number of consultations, as a result of which we
have prepared together with Bronisław, Tadeusz and
Henryk draft lists of participants with a kind request for
approval or correction.

The list of the “Roundtable” contains both a proposal
of people comprising the “S” delegation, as well as those
supported for a “bargain” with the government side. I
would also like to reserve the right of “exchanging” from
our side some people if the need arises.

I would also like to propose for the future the open-
ness of deliberations, so that the public can be properly
informed.

I am requesting your approval of the above arrange-
ments, and particularly the date of starting the talks and
the list of participants.

Shaking your hand,
[signed]

[Source: A. Stelmachowski Papers. Translated by Jan
Chowaniec for CWIHP.]
“Roundtable,” but was aimed at making sure that those groups would not undermine the idea of the “Roundtable” meeting and the position which “Solidarity” intends to take at it. It is also a fact that “Solidarity” representatives at that meeting were rather under attack.

Another charge that was raised was that [we are responsible for the] street disturbances in Gdańsk, which took place on Sunday, 16 October, when ZOMO made it impossible for a group of demonstrating youth to pass through from the Saint Brigid church to the NMP. Such events, which were also influenced by ZOMO’s attitude, testify not so much of “inspirations” from the “Solidarity” side, but rather of radicalization of the young generation.

Procedural difficulties and charges put forward by the authorities are—it seems—of a fallacious nature. The real obstacles are as follows:

1) The question of goals of the “Roundtable.” Mr. Czyrek has formulated them (in personal conversation with me) as an attempt to form a Council for National Understanding, which would deal with all controversial problems. In our opinion the “Roundtable” should adopt guiding resolutions on major questions and the proposed Council for National Understanding should deal with the implementation of those resolutions and technical matters, if need be.

2) The question of union pluralism. The prospects of settling this question are more than unclear. The press campaign, as I have indicated, has been aiming for some time at questioning union pluralism. The most important element here is a statement by General Jaruzelski himself, published in today’s press, in which three premises for the implementation of such pluralism are being defined. The most distressing one is economic, which the General has defined as: “[The] achievement of indispensable, fundamental economic equilibrium, so that some kind of spontaneous social pressures [licytacja rozszeć, claim bidding] would not endanger a highly complex reform process.” This means sticking to the theory that economic reform can be realized without social support (in any case a meaningful number of workers), and union pluralism is a sort of luxury, which should be realized later on.

3) The question of social pluralism. Last week Mr. Czyrek questioned the advisability of setting up a team for social pluralism (despite the fact that earlier such a team had been envisaged) explaining that some social organizations like the Polish Literary Union, Union of Artists, or the Journalists’ Union of the Polish People’s Republic do not want to sit at the same table with representatives of the previous regime’s creative unions. Admittedly, he later expressed willingness to reactivate the government-church negotiating group, which had been preparing a draft law on associations, with the possibility of some enlargement of its composition. However, an important question arises, which is whether the reserve shown [by some of the social organizations such as the Polish Literary Union, Union of Artists, and the Journalists’ Union of the Polish People’s Republic] will adversely affect the drafting of the pro-

4) The question of post-strike repression. Some time ago the Church representatives became guarantors of job restitution for all those who had been dismissed from work for their participation in the August strikes. At a meeting on 15 September, General Kiszczak very solemnly promised to withdraw all repression. That promise has brought about positive effects on the Seacoast (in Gdańsk and Szczenic), while in Silesia jobs have not been restored to 114 miners, and in Stalowa Wola to 2 people. A communiqué of the press bureau and the Episcopate on this question was confiscated by the censorship office last week and it has not appeared in the national mass media.

In this situation I would be extremely grateful to your Eminence for an explanation of the essential prospects for the realization of both “pluralisms” (trade union and social). The whole thing can be reduced to the question: “Are the reforms (economic and political) to be realized jointly with an empowered society, which also means with ‘Solidarity’—or without it?” If the prospects are not encouraging, I don’t see the purpose of further preparatory talks, which would only serve narrow purposes, instead of [those of] the society.

With expressions of a son’s devotion,

[signed by Andrzej Stelmachowski]

[Source: A. Stelmachowski Papers. Translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.]

****

**DOCUMENT No. 12**

**Letter from A. Stelmachowski to Lech Wałęsa,**

**20 January 1989**

20 January 1989

Mr. Lech Wałęsa
Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity”

Gdańsk

Dear Chief,

Since I have to stay in Warsaw on Saturday due to the ongoing state-church talks, I am taking this opportunity to convey to you (also for possible use at a KKW meeting) the following suggestions and conclusions:

1. I think that an important matter is to set up a not-

...
too-large team to work out draft statutes for “Solidarity,” which would adapt our Union to the law on trade unions. Particularly important is to work out a pattern for workplace organizations, operating with uniform statutes at workplace levels [that] would allow [one] to preserve the unity of the Union. Of course, the drafts should also include higher bodies, including the central one. I think that Lech Kaczyński should be chairman of such team as a professional and also living on the spot in Gdańsk.

2. I think it is high time to break away from the secrecy of the Union structure, particularly at workplace levels (except for publishing and financial matters). The Union should create open structures as much as possible.

3. I would also like to express my opinion on an unpopular and personally for you irritating matter. Namely, I think that in view of the chance of “Solidarity’s” legalization an attempt should be made to unite all “Solidarity members,” who still consider themselves members of the Union. Thus, I am in favor of the last year’s scheme of A. Celiński, i.e. to convene a “sejmik,” at which both members of the National Commission, remaining in the country, as well as members of structures created during the martial law period, and finally representatives of the newly-created structures (strike committees from 1988 and organizing committees, founding committees) should participate. Personally, I think that representatives of the newly-created structures should have at least half of the delegates.

4. I think that the CC resolution on union pluralism provides a basis to undertake the “Roundtable” talks, but based on our experience from last fall I would advise against a large body. I think a small leading group (a sort of presidium) should be selected, which should participate in the meetings of particular teams with changing composition, depending on the questions under discussion.

5. I am informing [you] that on 17 January there was a hearing in the Main Administrative Court on the “Social Foundation for Workers’ Solidarity,” of which you are a benefactor. The NSA has annulled the decision of the Ministry of Health and Public Welfare, in which the Ministry had demanded unfounded statutory changes. I hope that after that verdict the Ministry will not resist approval of the statute. In the next few days I will resume new efforts in this matter.

With warm greetings,
[signed by A.
Stelmachowski]

[Source: A. Stelmachowski Paper. Translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.]
sion and its Presidium, and still active leaders of the regional structures), who, not questioning either the need of reaching an understanding with or a statutory function for Lech Wałęsa, think that the Union is not someone’s private or group property, [but] that it had been created as a democratic and pluralistic organization, obeying its own voluntarily adopted rights—and it should stay as such.

The “Solidarity’s” delegation represents only one group, and even if it is now a group in control of the main spheres of the Union’s life, it is still only one group, and it is difficult to expect that other groups would feel bound by an agreement on which they will have (from the very beginning) no influence whatsoever.

An understanding which has a chance to be national, may be perceived in important public circles as being particularistic. If the PRL [People’s Republic of Poland] authorities were inclined toward a policy of confrontation, then controversies within the “Solidarity” would certainly be to their advantage. (However, experience is teaching us that in a confrontation the Union consolidates.) With regard to a course toward an understanding, matters look rather different. Will an additional secret agreement for the defense of a particularistic understanding be concluded, and will the parties to such agreement be co-sponsoring a policy of repression toward its opponents, whom they had not even heard earlier? For us it is hard to imagine, though such fears also exist.

Even more serious is another apprehension—a fear that incomplete representation at the “Table” and hence a limited focus on the [actual] situation will mean that particular arrangements (or even parts of them) will be so far below social aspirations that with a verbal acceptance they will, in fact, be rejected by the society.

Please, excuse this frankness. It is dictated by the sense of responsibility and concern about the future of our Fatherland. We trust we shall be properly understood. This is already the last moment when these and other dangers (not articulated here) can be prevented through supplementing the “Table.” But it needs to be done before the final decisions are taken. Perhaps an expansion and diversification of the delegation’s composition will cause greater difficulties in negotiations, perhaps even part of the common record will be questioned—but it is probably better that controversies take place at the Table before concluding the agreement than outside of the Table after its conclusion.

We are submitting to you the readiness of the Working Group of the National Commission of NSZZ “Solidarity” to send our delegation to the negotiations.

With the authorization of the Working Group of National Commission

Andrzej Słowiński

[signed]

[Source: A. Stelmachowski Papers, Translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.]

DOCUMENTo No. 14

Papers of the Working Group of the National Commission of NSZZ “Solidarity,”

25 February 1989

Jerzy Kropiwnicki
ul. Jasna 2 m. 9
91-350 Łódź

Professor
Andrzej Stelmachowski

Dear Professor,

I would like to kindly ask you to act as an intermediary in passing the enclosed documents to Lech Wałęsa. I am compelled to turn to you as I want to be sure that they will reach him and will be treated seriously. Experiences of sending [documents] by other methods are not encouraging.

I would also like you to know their content. I apologize for this unusual request.

With best regards,

J. Kropiwnicki

[signed]

[Attachment No. 1]

Working Group Lodz, 25 February 1989
of the National Commission
of NSZZ “Solidarność”

A Statement on the “re-legalization”
and [versus] “legalization” of the NSZZ “Solidarity”

1. The Working Group of the National Commission of the NSZZ “Solidarity” states with satisfaction, that during the past few months a far-reaching rapprochement between the advisory bodies to Lech Wałęsa, which have a dominating influence on the policy of Chairman of the National Committee and aspire to a leadership role of “Solidarity” by the National Commission on the one hand, and the Working Group of the Commission on the other, has taken place.

In the fall of 1987 and still in spring 1988 (before the outbreak of the April-May strikes), leading representatives of that political orientation, Jacek Kuron (see, e.g. “The landscape after a battle”)107 and Andrzej Celiński (see an interview for “Newsweek” of 23 November 1987) have
clearly stated that they consider the history of “Solidarity” as a trade union over.

The strikes of 1988 have proved that the Working Group of the National Commission was right to maintain consistently, from the beginning (i.e. from 1985) the position that “Solidarity” is first of all and has to remain a trade union.

In the fall of 1988, Lech Wałęsa’s advisers and the National Executive Commission (KKW) adopted a position close to that of the Working Group (GR KK).

In December of that year, a significant political event—the preliminary institutionalization of the socio-political movement in the form of the Citizens’ Committee as a separate institution—took place. The creation of the Citizens’ Committee, which all leading representatives of the same political orientation as Lech Wałęsa and the KKW joined as members, will undoubtedly facilitate the realization of their political ambitions on a more suitable platform for this purpose than the trade union one. At the same time, it offers a chance to restore the pluralistic character of the NSZZ “Solidarity.”

Still controversial is the question of [the] relationship [of Solidarity] to the law of 8 October 1982, which Lech Wałęsa’s advisers adopted as a basis for negotiations with the authorities of the People’s Republic of Poland.

The subsequent rapprochement to the GR KK took place when the negotiators on behalf of Lech Wałęsa and KKW adopted the position that:

1. The Union has to be registered as a whole (and with its original name), and as one set up separately in each workplace.
2. It has to have a territorial, and not a branch structure.

It remains controversial as to whether it is to be registered as a new Union, or restored as a legal entity existing continuously since 1980.

It appears, based on the pronouncements of Mr. Tadeusz Mazowiecki to the mass media, that the “social-solidarity side” at the “Roundtable” had assumed that it ought to be registered as a new union (so-called legalization).

The Working Group of the National Commission is of the opinion that the indispensable condition of both a lasting understanding (or a lasting compromise) with the PRL authorities and the restoration of unity in “Solidarity” is [based on] the restoration of registration to the existing union (its “re-legalization”).

2. The Working Group of the National Commission is of the opinion that “forming the Union anew” will come in conflict with social aspirations, and may even lead to a breakdown of the Union.

a) Many Union activists and members have experienced all sorts of repression—prison, arrest, physical violence (some lost their life), dismissal from a job, unemployment, monetary penalties, constraints in their professional career, all for their struggle in defense of the existing Union. For them it is inadmissible to [consider] giving away at the table all that they [had] defended and suffered for, and without even asking for their opinion.

b) For many, the adoption of the law of 8 October 1982 as a basis for restoring normal Union activity would mean some sort of legitimization of martial law. It is different to avoid this question “for the benefit of the cause” than to prejudge it (even indirectly) in a way inconsistent with convictions of a great majority of society.

c) A “renewed formation” of the Union closes the possibility of revindication of the property taken over by the PRL authorities. Many people think that the Union may give up on its claims, but those rights have to be recognized.

d) Founding the Union as a “new one” will make it difficult or simply impossible to rehabilitate the members who were sentenced or to restore to work those who were dismissed for their defense of “Solidarity.” Many of them are ready to give up on seeking someone else’s guilt, but not from recognition of their own innocence.

3. “Legalization,” that is a renewed formation of the Union (even on the basis of the previous Statute of 1981) would mean recognition that the NSZZ “Solidarity” was really disbanded on 8 October 1982. This “dissolution” has been recognized neither by the Union, nor by the MOD nor by trade unions in the democratic countries. The World Federation of Labor and the International Confederation of Free Trade Unions, guided by the principles of international law, have carried out the affiliation of the NSZZ “Solidarity” as an existing trade union (though deprived of domestic registration). In this way they have confirmed a universal norm that the union exists based on the will of its members, and not by the grace of the authorities.

Giving up the demand for restoring registration of the union existing continuously since 1980, the NSZZ “Solidarity” would probably be the first trade union in the world, associated in those bodies, which had recognized the right of state authorities to dissolve trade unions. It would be a dangerous precedent both in political and moral meaning. Dissolution of the NSZZ “Solidarity” could be done only by a National Conference of the existing Union, elected according to its Statute and Electoral Law of 1981—and not a “solidarity-social party,” the National Executive Committee (KKW), or even a founding conference of a new Union.

Let’s keep in mind that organizations that had been suspended or dissolved inconsistently with their own statutes (the last example: the Labor Party—SP, “dissolved” long ago by its own Head Council and “united” with the Democratic Party—SD), are being reclaimed today.

4. The Working Group of the National Commission appeals:

- to the “solidarity-social side” not to take decisions at
the Roundtable, which are reserved for the statutory authorities of the NSZZ “Solidarity.”

- to the leaders and sympathizers of the Union not to give away at the table what thousands of Union activists and members did not give up during the martial law period and multiple repressions,

- and in particular to Lech Wałęsa, Zbigniew Bujak, Władysław Frasyniuk and Antoni Tokarczuk—as chairman of the KK and members of [the] KK Pre-sidium—not to be unfaithful to their oath of loyalty to the Statute of the NSZZ “Solidarity.”

- to Lech Wałęsa, to remember that he has entrusted our Union to the protection of Our Lady of Częstochowa,

- to all others to be aware of their responsibility towards the society, the nation, God and history.

5. The Working Group is of the opinion that for the sake of our nation an understanding with the PRL authorities is indispensable; it will be real if it is based on respect for the inalienable and unalterable employee, citizen and human rights.

6. The Working Group is of the opinion that for the benefit of our nation, unity of the NSZZ “Solidarity” is indispensable. Its basis can only be respect for its Statute and union rights, a Statute [embodying the], democratic and pluralistic character of our Union.

[signed]
J. Kropiwnicki

[Attachment No. 2]

Working Group Lodz, 25 February 1989
of the National Commission
of NSZZ “Solidarność”

A Position on Workers’ Self-Government

1. The Working Group of the National Commission is warning the “solidarity-social” side against treating workers’ self-government as an objective, the only appropriate form of managing the so-called all-social or state property. The concept of replacing the state bureaucracy with workers’ self-government remains, within the socialist thought, as a postulate of “real socialization of the means of production.” For non-socialist political orientations this concept may be unacceptable.

2. Building the economic system based on workers’ self-government, the essence of which boils down to bestowing the right of management of productions assets to an imprecisely defined owner, toward whom the management, not being owners in any other sense than symbolic, should feel responsible, would be an experiment on an unheard of scale, a solution without any useful patterns and experiments whatsoever.

3. A self-governamental solution can be, at most, some form of temporary instrument in the elimination of the nomenklatura from the economy.

4. Target solutions ought to be sought in those areas where there is maximal connection between work and ownership. The first step ought to be the abolition of hitherto indivisible state property. The second one [ought to be] dissemination of property—that is bestowing the rights of property to particular work places, their conversion into joint-stock companies and enfranchisement of the nation through employees’ shareholding. The sphere of state management in industry should be limited to an absolute minimum. In the area of energy and communications, the scope of public ownership should be defined on the basis of the experiences of the developed countries of Western Europe. Commerce should be gradually privatized (both retail and wholesale).

5. Experience teaches that all forms of collective property, in which individual participation is not secured by the alleged owners, are being treated as “nobody’s property” and in the best case [scenarios] are becoming some form of bureaucratic property (in the case of communist countries—the nomenklatura’s property).

For conformity,
[signed]
J. Kropiwnicki

[Source: A. Stelmachowski Papers. Translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.]

DOCUMENT No. 15
Report on a Working Visit of Wojciech Jaruzelski to Moscow, 9 May 1989

For a Politburo meeting

Sent out to Politburo members, associate members and CC secretaries

9 May 1989
9.V.1989 L.dz. KS/619/89 to point “3”

Report on a Working Visit of Wojciech Jaruzelski in Moscow

Confidential

On 28 April 1989, the First Secretary of the CC PUWP, Chairman of the Council of State of the Polish People’s Republic, Wojciech Jaruzelski, paid a working visit to Moscow at the invitation of the First Secretary of the CC CPSU, Chairman of the Supreme Soviet, Mikhail Gorbachev.

In the course of the talk, lasting over three and a half
hours, both leaders devoted their utmost attention to the problems of the transformation being conducted broadly in both countries.

Wojciech Jaruzelski gave information on the measures undertaken by the PUWP in the realization of socialist renewal in Poland, including the significance of the X Plenum of the Central Committee, [and] on the preparations to the National Conference of Delegates to the X Party Congress. He also informed [Gorbachev] about the significance and results of the “Roundtable,” which have opened up prospects for an understanding of different social and political forces in Poland. He explained difficult problems of the country and the means to their solution. He emphasized the significance of the further development of Polish-Soviet relations in all areas.

Mikhail Gorbachev stated that despite a variety of forms and methods of renewal of the socialist system used by the fraternal parties, this process has a common guiding principle—democratization, aspirations to create conditions for real participation of working people in running the economy and in solving political questions.

He also stated that perestroika in the USSR has reached such a stage, and transformations in all spheres of life have reached such depth, that the Party is expected to double its effort in the realization of these unusually difficult tasks. As was said at the last CC CPSU Plenum, the Soviet people have spoken once again in the recently-held elections [26 March 1989] for perestroika and have demanded its steadfast, consistent introduction.

Mikhail Gorbachev also stated that the Soviet economy is coping with complicated problems related to the shift to new methods of economic activity, monetary regulations, [and] shortages in inventories of goods.

Despite these difficulties, they did not give a thought—Mikhail Gorbachev emphasized—to hampering changes. That is why it is so important to ensure the widest possible democracy and at the same time discipline, openness and responsibility, pluralism of outlooks and consistency in activity, solving of urgent current problems and activity designed for the future.

Wojciech Jaruzelski and Mikhail Gorbachev expressed satisfaction about the development of relations between the two parties and states. They stressed mutual interest in the promotion of economic contacts, the need to work out a complex model based on sound economic considerations, and the principle of economic accounting of enterprises with a view to creating a joint socialist market.

Both leaders praised very highly the realization of tasks defined in the Polish-Soviet declaration on cooperation in the field of ideology, and also in the joint Polish-Soviet statement and stipulations adopted during last year’s visit of Mikhail Gorbachev in Poland.

As a result of these stipulations, among others, an agreement on an exchange of youth between Poland and the Soviet Union has been prepared, and the work of a joint group of scholars, researching the so-called “white spots” in the history of Polish-Soviet relations, is being continued.

It has been acknowledged that in the near future a joint document will be published in the Polish and Soviet press, prepared by scholars, dealing with the period preceding the outbreak and beginnings of World War II. Research on other problems is coming to an end. It has been stated that these efforts should be sped up, so that the bilateral commission of scholars and other respective organizations can present their assessments and conclusions regarding all the “white spots,” and particularly with regard to Katyń.

In the course of the conversation the questions of international policy were brought up and views were exchanged on other areas of world policy.

At the end of the talk Mikhail Gorbachev emphasized the invariable faithfulness of the CPSU and the Soviet people to Soviet-Polish friendship and also sent to Wojciech Jaruzelski, the communists and all people of Poland best wishes for success in solving the tasks of socialist renewal.

[Source: Hoover Institution Archive. Translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP]
neighboring regions, in which our candidates will be fighting for mandates in the second round. Thus, Poznań will be helping Piła (delegating two people from its staff, printing 20 thousand posters and leaflets). Piła will also be helped by Włochawek and Szczecin. Piotrków, Kielce and Lublin came up with an initiative to help Radom.

Some voivodships had already successfully supported candidates from outside of the Citizens’ Committee in the first round. In others, decisions regarding possible support for the coalition’s candidates varied: some of them have already decided for which candidate they will vote, others are hesitating, afraid of being suspected of collaboration, in some cases one cannot find any suitable candidate. H. Wujec stated that the Committee leaves it up to the regions to support particular candidates, provided that it is done from the bottom and cautiously, without concluding contracts, supporting people who guarantee reliability.

2. The question of a national list.\textsuperscript{123}

The participants raised the issue that in their regions there had been numerous voices of anxiety and resentment due to “delegating” to the government side the decision regarding the re-election of candidates from the national list. Concern by our side about the fate of that list was premature, clumsy, it was stated point-blank that it had been a political mistake.

Explanations have been submitted by B. Geremek, A. Wielowieyski and Jacek Kuroń. It looks as if the situation which has arisen—the necessity to keep the contract on the distribution of mandates that was concluded at the Roundtable—from the legal point of view had no clean solution. In the meantime the huge electoral success has resulted in other, more radical demands [being made] by society as well as growing impatience due to a gradual realization of the democratic process.

3. The future of the Citizens’ Committees

The participants drew attention to the fact that during the elections a huge amount of human capital had been created, which numbered in the hundreds of thousands, organized spontaneously and from the bottom up, verified in action. What is more, these masses of activists have organized themselves on their own in the areas that had been void in this respect earlier—in small towns and communities.

This capital must not be wasted. It has been noted that [these people] are potential activists for the regional self-governing bodies, in the future members of the Sejm senatorial teams, now in the process of organization, keeping communication offices of deputies and senators [in contact with] the voters.

Regional delegates expressed anxiety over potential strains between the Citizens’ Committees and regional Solidarity bodies. Voices were heard that creation of the committees had weakened Solidarity, depriving it of some of its leaders. In the union movement mostly workers are gathered, while the intelligentsia has crossed over to the citizens’ committees (a voice from Katowice). On the other hand the citizens’ movement is enriching Solidarity ideologically and expands its tasks. Citizens’ Committees form a platform for cooperation of different groupings: Clubs of Catholic Intelligentsia, \textit{Dziekania}, workers’ “S,” and “S” of individual peasants, youth movements. It has been noted that this constitutes their strength, creating an integrated platform for the opposition, at the same time, their variety would be an obstacle to a possible transformation of that movement into an association or a party.

An overwhelming majority of the participants was in favor of keeping the Citizens’ Committees. In this connection attention was drawn to the necessity of working out a legal framework for their existence, their organizational structure after the elections and, most importantly, their financial basis.

It has been decided not to take any hasty organizational decisions in the near future, instead, keeping a form of understanding of organizations, initiating talks with the authorities regarding an extension of activities of the Citizens’ Committees (officially they are to end their activity on 18 June 1989), and coming up immediately with various territorial initiatives of the National Councils.\textsuperscript{124} The shape of the Committees in the future need not be the same. [...]\textsuperscript{[Source: Archives of the Bureau of Senate Information and Documentation. Translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.]}

\begin{center}
\textbf{DOCUMENT No. 17}
\textbf{Minutes from a Meeting of the Presidium of the Citizens’ Parliamentary Club,\textsuperscript{125}}
\textbf{15 July 1989}
\end{center}

Present: B. Geremek, O. Krzyżanowska\textsuperscript{126}, Z. Kuratowska\textsuperscript{127}, J. Amroziak, A. Celiński, K. Kozłowski\textsuperscript{128}, J. Rokita\textsuperscript{129}, A. Stelmachowski, J. Ślisz\textsuperscript{130}, A. Balazs\textsuperscript{131}, E. Wende\textsuperscript{132}, J. Kuroń, G. Janowski.

The agenda:

1. A report by A. Stelmachowski on his visit with Gen. Jaruzelski
2. The Club’s meeting of 10 July
3. Preparations for a meeting with Gen. Jaruzelski\textsuperscript{133}
4. A Statute of the National Assembly and election of a president
5. Structure and composition of Commissions

A. Stelmachowski: On Thursday, Gen. Jaruzelski paid me a visit, and later on, Minister Czyrek. The talk with Jaruzelski lasted 1 hour and 45 minutes. We raised the
- The question of presidency: the thing is that despite his personal unwillingness, he feels obliged to run for it. He is referring to three elements:
  - A clear stand by the body of generals, the MON and the Council for National Defense.
  - Some outside reactions are unmistakable: statements at the [Warsaw Pact] Political Committee at Bucharest, and some wordings by President Bush.
  - The position of the majority of colleagues at the Plenum.

Due to these pressures he has been forced to revise his position. An obstacle—Solidarity is explicitly in favor of Kiszczak. It would be good if support for Kiszczak could be revised. To meet Solidarity half-way—he is proposing a different solution than a hearing in a Sejm debate—he will appear in different Clubs with Kiszczak. Since it is rather unusual, he will ask for the formula that he comes at the invitation of the OKP. And also that it should be without the presence of journalists.

- In Bucharest, Gorbachev asked Jaruzelski if it would not be proper for Wałęsa to come to Moscow. If we would oppose it, he would not pursue it further.
- He showed anxiety over the agricultural situation. He asked if the situation is so dire. Would a transition to the market economy improve this situation?

The meeting with Czyrek headed in a similar direction. He said that the question of the presidency is becoming more and more urgent, that one must keep in mind the possibility of provocations. In this context he informed me about the death of Rev. Zyłch. He asked about [...words missing] of the government. A great coalition is desirable. We exchanged views [... words missing] conclusions. Wałęsa is saying in public statements that he would like to go to Moscow. Gorbachev said in Paris [...words missing] arrival is fine, but he does not want to see him come under a formula of union invitation—could Wałęsa come as a social leader, a Noble Prize laureate. It would be a mixed invitation by the Parliament and the Peace Council.

A. Wielowieyski: Has Jacek Kuron given a report about his talk with Prof. Orzechowski? The two of us [Wielowieyski and Kuron] gave him a formal invitation for Jaruzelski. He argued they had agreed that voting in other Clubs is going to be open. ZSL will be voting for Jaruzelski, and so will SD. However, they can obtain only a slight majority, thus there is some anxiety.

J. Sliż: According to my information, 9 SL deputies will be voting for neither candidate.

A. Stelmachowski: Kozakiewicz is predicting that 25 SD deputies will be voting against.
E. Wende: Should the questions from the floor not be given on a slip of paper to the chairman?

Then, it would be possible to look at them and request withdrawal. There might be a question—how many AK [Armia Krajowa—Polish “Home Army” during World War II] members has he murdered?

J. Ślisz: Questions should be asked from the floor.

J. Kuroń: Questions from the floor are better. Even that question about AK members can be put, provided that the form of the question is proper. This should be said clearly.

G. Janowski: What do we want to achieve by a question on the Economic Council—he is open for anything anyway.

B. Geremek: In our conversations, the words were used that this is a takeover of the government. The thing is that he is a candidate who should be engaged.

G. Janowski: Questions from the floor should be with only a brief explanation, and not some sort of historical-political reports.

A. Stelmachowski: This is the reason why I think questions should be put on paper, otherwise they will talk and talk.

G. Janowski: He has time for us, it is not an every-day opportunity, let them talk.

A. Wielowieyski: That is nonsense, it is Jaruzelski who is to talk.

J.M. Rokita: If the questions are to be on paper, then the burden of selection and ordering will rest with the Presidium.

B. Geremek: Then there will be resentment, as each type of selection will stir up suspicions.

J. Ślisz: In the ZSL there were direct questions, then selection is automatic.

J.M. Rokita: When he gets questions from the floor, it gives him an opportunity to better present himself to the people asking questions.

G. Janowski: Do you want to facilitate him?

J.M. Rokita: Yes, I do this time!

J. Ziolkowski: On the agenda there are no questions about the nomenklatura. Such questions should necessarily be raised. An interaction is important—face to face. The culture of formulating questions is very important. In this circle there is great sensitivity for admonition. To depend on their responsibility!

A voice from the floor: That is too much!

B. Geremek: Should we limit [time] to 1 minute. It is enough—1 to 2 minutes.

J. Ziolkowski: We may appeal to ask factual questions.

O. Krzyżanowska: There will be a question on how he sees the role of the Party.

E. Wende: In what form will Kiszczak be there?

J. Kuroń: Orzechowski said that there would be only one candidate—Jaruzelski.

Thus, can we ask him questions?

— [unidentified speaker:] Only if he would be a candidate.

J. Kuroń: It is not obvious that such a meeting is a man-to-man fight. [...] Here it is not so, as 260 are besetting a single one. We absolutely need to talk about culture.

B. Geremek: There are things about which the Presidium cannot talk. I think in the first part of the meeting there will be a discussion and this problem will emerge. It has been decided that questions will be asked directly. We are not saying how long the meeting is going to last, we do not set any time limit, unless the meeting starts dragging on.

The Statute of the National Assembly and Election of the President

B. Geremek: We assume that we have to have a discussion:

- on the form of voting;
- on the statute of the National Assembly.

The National Assembly will most likely meet on Wednesday.

A. Stelmachowski: Kozakiewicz says it will certainly be on Wednesday, but it will probably be necessary to call the National Assembly on Tuesday afternoon to discuss the statute. The question is whether the voting should be open or secret. The General was inclined to recognize a secret vote, but Czyrek vehemently opposed it.

B. Geremek: Discussion on the statute—how awful. Urban will exploit it, as there is a clear tendency toward deprecating parliamentary institutions. A statute of the National Assembly is going to be proposed by the Coalition, we will introduce amendments. Only a vote for or against. Then comes voting, either they accept or reject it.

J.M. Rokita: But there is going to be a polemic from the Coalition’s side.

B. Geremek: The Speaker of the Sejm doesn’t have the right to refuse to give the floor to someone. In our Club we will submit for a vote the proposed statute.

A. Celiński: The Extraordinary Commission hasn’t come to an understanding, it decided there would be a discussion on this problem; a debate or so, open—not open. It’s about to meet tomorrow and will present positions to the Clubs.

A. Stelmachowski: We give up on the debate.

O. Krzyżanowska: That question was to be taken up at the Seniors’ Convent on Monday.

Z. Kuratowska: Let’s have a discussion on the statute on Tuesday morning.

A. Stelmachowski: Or tomorrow, time permitting.

B. Geremek: Let’s vote on it tomorrow:

- secret or open
- debate or no debate.

K. Kozłowski: There must be a discussion in the Club on where a secret vote leads us, and where the open one does.

J. Kuroń: Nobody will agree to a debate. If there is a debate, we will denigrate him [the President].
Are we anxious to have the President denigrated?

E. Wende: The question of behaving on the floor. Are we supposed to save Jaruzelski’s presidency?

K. Koźłowski: I would go even further, for an open vote, without debate, without leaving and without demonstration—we are serious people.

A. Wielowieyski: Should I present the numbers? They may be short 15 to 21 votes—they are “in a flap,” they are stretched to the limit. Everyone who doesn’t do anything is giving Jaruzelski half a vote. 149

J. Kuroń: We have to be aware of what the President’s case means—the peasants won’t get markets [for their goods], physicians won’t get a raise, the government stays on, we are entering into a terrible mess. Consequences of demonstrating our morality are falling upon the society.

B. Geremek: Not electing a PUWP member would settle the question of physicians. The election can be repeated. General Jaruzelski wants to be elected in the first round and probably this will happen. If it doesn’t happen, it’s not a drama. All will reflect [on the situation], and it will be repeated.

A. Balazs: The Club has decided it will not vote for Gen Jaruzelski. If Jaruzelski convinces us at that meeting, will we be voting for him?

J. Kuroń: Everybody votes as he likes, consistent with the will of the electorate. That’s what has been decided.

O. Krzyżanowska: The behavior of the SD and ZSL is new. We thought that they would elect him. But right now our position begins to be decisive.

J.M. Rokita: There may be a statutory crisis if there is only one candidate, as the statute says that the candidate who gets the least [number of votes]—drops out. There has to be either a recess in the debates, or new candidates need to be submitted.

J. Kuroń: That discussion will start in the National Assembly.

J. Slisz: He won’t pass the first time, he won’t pass the second time. One needs to be prepared for a new situation.

E. Wende: Can we change that provision?

B. Geremek: First we need to introduce statutory changes to avoid changing them in the process.

G. Janowski: We have to submit our own candidate.

J. Kuroń: Then we would enter into a war with them.

G. Janowski: People have placed great confidence in us. At pre-election meetings they were telling me “aspanking from a parent’s hand isn’t painful.” We are handing everything over to bureaucrats’ hands. We say: we are not ready. Why not?—there is Geremek, Trzeciakowski 150 ... Let’s keep in mind that in the third voting we will have to submit our candidate.

J. Kuroń: I argued in the Club in favor of taking over the government. A set-up in which [we] have the presidency but not the government would be fatal. It would mean taking responsibility for their government. For me a prerequisite of a functioning government, which sooner or later we will get, is their having the presidency. Our president is not going to have such prerogatives, he will be a figurehead. Besides, it’s a total, confrontational change.

A. Celiński: We need to close this discussion. This is not the place for it.

A. Wielowieyski: We are not going to say anything more during this discussion.

J. Slisz: And what if a candidate drops out in the third voting?

A. Wielowieyski: Then the coalition will put forward someone new. I don’t imagine that someone from our side would agree to run.

J. M. Rokita: We may talk with members at the Club on what to do in case of such a crisis.

E. Wende: The presidential crisis may be much more serious than was the case with the national electoral list. We have to be aware of it. In my heart I am with Mr. Gabriel’s voters, but we have to make decisions thinking occasionally for them.

G. Janowski: People think better than we do.

A. Wielowieyski: We have decided that we have to inform Club members rather clearly of what may happen and how they should behave. 151

B. Geremek: Lech Wałęsa is pondering if he should meet with Jaruzelski. He wants to come for the National Assembly, but in what role? He should be in Warsaw, but probably not in the Sejm.

A. Stelmachowski: He may play his role tomorrow, but not on Wednesday.

B. Geremek: The Sejm session will probably take place on the 20th. The question of retiring the government—will there be a debate on this? Bugaj has submitted a motion for a report—will there be a discussion then?

O. Krzyżanowska: If the government is resigning there is no reason for a debate. There will be a discussion at the Senior Convent if that decision is subjected to a vote.

B. Geremek: When a new prime minister presents his cabinet there will be an occasion to evaluate the resigning government. In other words, we are against the report and against the debate.

The Structure and Composition of the [Sejm] Commissions.

J. Ambroziak: He is reporting on their proposals, which are at variance with ours.

1. Creation of a Commission on Trade and Services.

2. Taking forestry away from the Environmental Protection [Commission] and placing it in the Commission for Agriculture.

3. Economic policy, including budget and finance.

4. Combining social policy, health and physical culture.

5. Creating a separate Commission for Economic Cooperation with Abroad (we wanted to have it in the industry).

They didn’t want minorities—they may submit it for a general debate.
A. Wielowieyski: What has been gained is progress. We need to fight for the separation of health and social policy, give up on minorities (as it will become anyway a question of German minorities—the Silesians). Housing construction has been omitted, it should be added to the Commission on Industry.

B. Geremek: There is no reason to return back to that discussion, we will defend [our position] at the plenary session. On matters of divergences there will be brief statements of our deputies. […]

[Source: Archives of the Bureau of Senate Information and Documentation. Translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.]

DOCUMEN T No. 18
Minutes of the Meeting of the Presidium of the Citizens’ Parliamentary Club, 1 August 1989, 8 p.m.


B. Geremek: I will remind you of the things that have taken place within the last few days and hours. I had a meeting with Gen. Kiszczak at 2 p.m. It turns out that, at a critical point, the President’s motion is suspended. Kiszczak is not willing either, but he thinks it’s his duty. He asked about the position of our Club. The Club decided to vote against [him] or to abstain. Wałęsa took the position: “I supported Gen. Kiszczak for president of the Polish People’s Republic, I refuse to support him for prime minister.” He asked me to inform the OKP about it.

Kiszczak had a very difficult meeting with the PUWP Club yesterday, when it was deciding about the discipline [in party line bloc] voting. Today only 120 members showed up, which means that 50 have deserted [the PUWP Club].

From the other Clubs the figures are changing. At one point, half of the ZSL and half of SD were against. Today it’s even worse—the whole ZSL is against [him], and from the SD only 4 persons [are in favor of him]. He lacks 80-70 [sic] people to ensure his [Kiszczak’s] election.

Meetings of all three Clubs are going on, debating separately. The leaders have arrived, debates are stormy.

ZSL has come up with a proposal to form a government with the OKP. They think that the opposition should form the government. Bentkowski argues that the ZSL is decidedly against the candidacy of Kiszczak. He has contacts with the PUWP—there is a group of young PUWP parliamentary delegates who would like to meet jointly with [me], B. Geremek. If I meet with them, it would be an attempt to interfere with the coalition. They have to ask for it themselves.

Today it is to be decided whether General Jaruzelski will withdraw the letter proposing Kiszczak [for Prime Minister].

Bentkowski says [ZSL] cannot form a government with the PUWP. They are ready to do it with us. [ZSL] is asking if we would leave the three main ministries with the PUWP if we were to form a government. This is an indispensable guarantee of a peaceful transfer of power.

When PUWP proposed a coalition with them, ZSL was offered 4 ministries and a vice premier. They were not expecting this from the opposition. They put forward their proposal not for the sake of bargaining, but because there is no other way out of the crisis in the country. If we would recognize this, they [ZSL] would be satisfied with 2 ministries. At 6 p.m. there was a meeting with Orzechowski. Based on that conversation, the situation is at a critical point, the President’s motion is suspended.

On the other hand Bentkowski was still presenting doubts as to whether to enter into coalition with the PUWP. I admitted he was right—we know what cooperation with the PUWP did to the ZSL. They didn’t perceive it as arrogance. To be sure, after that conversation Jacek Kuroń critically summed it up for me: we will take power if PUWP makes better conditions in the country for us.

We have to take into consideration quite unexpected solutions. Our whole Club is opposed, and yet they have to have a majority.

If Kiszczak won’t get through, then [perhaps] another candidate—Sekuł. Club meetings are stormy, sharp with mutual accusations. Party leaders are convincing their Clubs to [decide in favor of] the coalition with PUWP.

We may very well dream that this is a parliamentary democracy and that the majority decides. But the dream may be cut off and reality will let us know where we are. We have to see the situation clearly.

J. Kuroń: Is it true that the Senate has issued some sort of statement relating to the annulment of the President’s election?

A. Stelmachowski: Such motion has come in from Senator Leszek Piotrowski—I sent it out to the proper commission.

A. Wielowieyski: What is the motive of those 41 PUWP [members] who have not come to the meeting with Kiszczak?

J. Ślisz: I spoke with Bąk—a peasant, for them a membership card is not important, they want Bronislaw [Geremek]. As far as Bentkowski is concerned, they would like to have Olesiak in the government. Approximately 40 deputies are not going to vote for Kiszczak.
A. Balazs: Bentkowski said that Sekula’s candidacy also won’t get through.

J. Ślisz: From a talk with Świtka — we would have support of SD deputies.

J. Ambroziak: As of 8 p.m. the information is as follows:

- PUWP—12 deputies are against Kiszczak
- ZSL—60 deputies are against Kiszczak
- SD—the whole is in favor of Kiszczak for Prime Minister.
- Pax, UChS—in favor of Kiszczak for Prime Minister.

A. Michnik: Will the Club be in favor of not being involved in it?

J. Ślisz: The ZSL was asking if we would be ready to propose a prime minister. We need to think about this.

A. Balazs - If we put forward our candidate for prime minister, the whole ZSL will be for him.

A. Stelmachowski: To sum it up, the situation is as follows:

- some consensus is emerging to vote against Kiszczak.
- are we to vote negatively against each PUWP candidate?
- do we see the possibility of forming our own government with small concessions?

T. Mazowiecki: My position is known to all of you. When I was invited to the Council, I went, putting aside any other considerations. Since the moment I have learned about Kiszczak’s candidacy, I have been trying to form an opinion on this matter.

- I think that the Club’s decision to vote against Kiszczak is not good. I do not share the position of our Chairman, who is sending out this news by telex. SIS communicated this news yesterday evening.

- My political assessment is the following: if such a strong man is being proposed, then the power is being shifted towards the line of the parliament-government. It’s going to be a strong government, a situation will emerge, which will stabilize the process which has already begun. There is no need for the Club to vote against, it may abstain. I am afraid that the situation with the national list may repeat itself — first we are booming radicals, but then we withdraw. If we are not reaching for power ourselves, we should permit the other side to do it.

- As far as the ZSL proposal is concerned, one ought to remember that the ZSL doesn’t have access to the proper centers of power. I would not bet on this combination. There are other centers of power, which will let themselves be known. We are not at a stage, at which parliamentary relations decide.

I am opposed to Adam’s concept also for the reason that on the opposition-Solidarity side there is no program and within three months that would become dramatically clear.

I think that the most proper position on the question of prime minister is a neutral one. But if we were faced with a situation of the state crisis, then some talks about a great coalition might be possible, but not us in coalition with the ZSL.

I think that the moment is very serious. The public would not tolerate a situation in which first they see advances, and then withdrawals.

A. Celiński: [...] I exclude the possibility of a great coalition.

The nearest option is something that took place in Spain—a government stands somewhere aside, it gains support from the ZSL, part of the Party, our Club can be convinced.

J. M. Rokita: I get the impression that a Kiszczak government, after all, would not be strong in a situation where it wouldn’t have support of a strong majority in the Sejm.

It would be a government in which we would constantly have to be hypocrites. In the long run it would be a trap for us.

Coalition with the ZSL is absurd. It would mean a clash of opinions from the beginning—that reforms are being introduced with a strong power center, the PUWP. Technically such coalition cannot be realized in defiance of the power centers.

In case there is a government of a purely communist coalition, the reforms will be coming from them, they will be throwing them upon us, but they will not strike at the system, as markets would do. They will be lumping together various ideas and we would think there is no other alternative. It will be a consolidation of the system.

It is necessary that we have at least part of the political initiatives. Something that is called a great coalition is a matter of time. It will come, it may be delayed, or accelerated. So, we should not be confusing people.

E. Wende: (to Mazowiecki) Do you take into consideration a situation in which the President will not recommend Kiszczak but Geremek?

T. Mazowiecki: It is possible, but we don’t have such a situation. At this moment there are back-corner talks with the ZSL.

There are two ways out:

- A better one—a Kiszczak government, the strongest one from the other side. A big offensive, execution of legal reforms, great stability.

The second one—a great coalition with the PUWP.

A. Balazs: It’s a pity that such a discussion was not held prior to the presidential election. The situation that arose was the fault of both the Presidium and the Club. It would be very unfortunate if it were to repeat itself.

We have no chance for a coalition government, it would be short-lived and tragic for us because of the economic situation and the fact that we don’t have the people.

But the opposition certainly has a candidate for prime minister, as people from other parties see it. There are also people on the other side whom we might be able to put
forward, e.g. Kwaśniewski.  

A. Wielowieyski: Two arguments can be added against the coalition: 
- We should not be wasting our social capital by entering into a small coalition. I see no gain from it. 
- The Big Brother has other methods of conducting politics. Depriving the PUWP of power would be a blow to Gorbachev. The result—a mortal poisoning of our life, impossibility of realizing anything. 

It is apparent that we will have to support one government or the other. We must get them to understand that another candidate would get our support. Though Kiszczak is not bad. 

[Break] 

J. Ziółkowski: We are observing a great acceleration of the political process. *Pacta sunt servanda*—this has been our principle. The fact that Jaruzelski is president is good, it is a stabilizing factor. There is a great weakness of power, a rebellion with the Party itself. There is a dissonation within the coalition, the ZSL is bending over backward, in the SD [the situation] must be likewise—as it is improbable to have complete silence after those noisy declarations about a crown in the eagle, etc. There are two possibilities: 
- a great coalition-us and the PUWP, 
- a small coalition-us, the ZSL and other smaller groups. 

One of the elements of the situation is tremendous social impatience. Adam [Michnik] has had a sense of this impatience—[they say] so much is in your hands, and you don’t react. 

The new configuration means a strong triumvirate,  unusually tight. A strong Kiszczak, about whom there was talk here, is too strong. […] 

We have to approach Kiszczak negatively. […] This is a configuration in which we have a minimal possibility of maneuver. 

What can we do? Coalition with the ZSL is dangerous, as we cannot steer this process. A small coalition is on their good grace or the lack of it. In the end there are not too many of those contestants. 

Only a great coalition is acceptable—a Government of National Salvation. 

J. Kuron: That triangle is not a solution under any circumstance. Abstaining from voting—impossible, in any case we would lose the steering wheel, the Club would kick us out through the window. 

The first variant: the strikes take off, which will start costing money. Anarchy will follow. Someone will have to bring stability. When a fire bursts, Jaruzelski will call on us to form a government. 

With each day our situation is becoming increasingly difficult. Empty shelves are being played out against us, as it was in 1981. And our statements are in the Sejm. 

If they [PUWP] are battered in the ZSL, SD—then in which groups do they find support? In the SD they are still trying to steer, but are saying that this cannot go on. 

Stabilization is an illusion. If we remain passive, we will lose—then we will have to take it over in a worse situation and with less social confidence [then even currently exists]. As long as we don’t make a decision—we are not going to have a program. 

Could it be a government of a great coalition? Initially it was supposed to be such a government: for us two, three ministries. What “Solidarity” has to give social confidence, less likely [perhaps the] possibility of obtaining a moratorium on debts. 

The government should be ours, i.e. formed by us. We should vote against all of Kiszczak’s candidates. 

H. Wujec: a PUWP government means a continuing crisis, waiting for a change. Now those price increases, people see it clearly. We are delaying solutions. 

The only chance is a broadly based Government of National Salvation. It would have to represent a new line, new spirit, have a different social perception. Can we do it? We have to search already for programs, people. We have to keep in mind that everything moves quickly. 

J. Ślisz: We need to form a government that is a great coalition—in which we should be the dominant force. How do we let the other side know that they should propose letting us have the position of prime minister? The coming 24 hours have to decide. 

J. Stelmachowski: I agree with the diagnoses, but I don’t agree with the conclusions. The strategy is to wait until an auspicious moment. If the economic diagnosis is bad, it would be a folly to take over the government until such time as the “Solidarity” is the only way out. If we are expecting a deterioration [of the situation], we should not assume responsibility for it. They are not so weak and it’s not the parliament that decides. We need to be against Kiszczak; a strong PUWP government is not in our interest. It would be ill-perceived abroad—two generals in top positions. It was rightly pointed out as a jamming phenomenon. We should be voting against, but I would not vote against any candidate put forward by the General. 

A. Michnik: I have been listening with some surprise to what the Senate Marshal was telling us. It’s something from the area of games, we don’t have time for it. I am afraid that in a little while we will have to leave that parliament, called off by people from the queues. 

From my point of view, neither Kiszczak nor anyone else will change anything. This configuration is sentenced to death. Do you know what will be left of the PUWP—only trash will be left. There is a 60 percent probability that our talk is an academic discussion, but if Kiszczak doesn’t get through—I propose Mazowiecki, Stelmachowski and others. We have such an international constellation, a historical moment, when we can catch something. We should not use an argument that there is no program—as no one in the world has that recipe, e.g. what should Russia or Yugoslavia do? 

We are doomed for one [program]—a sharp, sudden
entrance into the market. To say this a year ago would have been a lot, we need to keep this in mind when we say that something is impossible.

There is no one who would defend a coalition with the ZSL. It’s falling apart. We are not attacking frontally, rather we propose something, e.g. Kwaśniowski for vice premier, someone who will pull over the reformist elements.

O. Krzyżanowska: Tomorrow we need to vote almost ostentatiously. Our government will be in a much worse situation, as the Union is inclined to press demands and we will be calling for belt-tightening. If we don’t preserve the ethos of the Union and the opposition—the future election will be lost. Our hands are tied by the Union. Perhaps it will be our prime minister, but not our government.

K. Kozłowski: The situation is difficult, we should speak up strongly against Kiszczak and Sekuła. Maybe in the end they will come up with something that will be acceptable and we will abstain from the vote. Perhaps in a few weeks they may desperately seize upon some combination, which will be acceptable. If they cannot come up with anything, then a government of National Salvation will appear to be a solution. If this happens, we will not join into a coalition but we salvage Poland: we then must have prime minister and demand tolerable names. A crisis situation, a Geremek or Lech government. The first thing that our new prime minister would have to do is to talk with the MON. History teaches that invasions, martial laws are threatening when the power structure is falling apart. We are close to this. I don’t know which general, but one of them will do it.

Tomorrow vote against [Kiszczak for prime minister], press ahead, see what can come out of it. Do not reject the option of a tolerable government, [if it is] partly a non-party one. Otherwise, press for hard terms into the government.

E. Wende: If this government fails the country, will there be an economic chance to get out of it? We must clearly say—no, it won’t be better. So, will our prime minister have better or worse chances of rescuing the country?

Z. Kuratowska: We have to vote against. Sekuła doesn’t have a chance. We cannot wait any longer. What kind of professionals are they? It’s very hard to find them. Are we supposed to leave the country? The ovation at Powązki was a kind of an opinion poll!167 They were telling Brzezinski167—we are ready to wait out this situation if you [the US government] are going to decide.

J. Sliż: In the corridor there are gentlemen from the ZSL and PUWP, they want to come here and talk.

(A brief consultation and the conclusion that this should not be discussed at the meeting. B. Geremek and A. Michnik are going for talks). [Recess]

B. Geremek: According to the latest news the situation is as follows:

PUWP—12 against [Kiszczak] (despite party discipline and threats)

ZSL—21 against
SD —?

It looks as though the solution is still that Kiszczak will form the government.

In justifying our position we will argue that we are against the continuation of the present rule. We are not in a position to extend credit to the teams which have been in power so far. We are accepting a diagnosis that under the present international situation our taking over the government is impossible. But potentially we are ready to do it.

A government of a great coalition came out of Jaruzelski’s mouth: “you are coming into our government.” If we are taking over, we form the government, we see in it a place for representatives of different social forces. It is a government formed by the opposition. It is an anti-nomenklatura government. That is how our position can be presented.

We reject a government [of] General Kiszczak plus Solidarity. If there is a chance to form a Government of National Salvation, which would have a chance of gaining public trust. If such a possibility doesn’t exist, then we will perform a controlling function to see that aspirations expressed in the election are met.

T. Mazowiecki: I don’t see a difference between the conceptions of government; from the general point of view each of them is a coalition government.

B. Geremek: It is a government formed by the “S” on the basis of a coalition. We are leaving the undemocratic system and the main problem is the structure of power.

A. Stelmachowski: It is the model that Hitler gave to Hindenburg—he just wanted the ministry of internal affairs and the chancellery.

T. Mazowiecki: This is a government proposed by us, but it still is a great coalition government.

B. Geremek: Lech Wałęsa has two possibilities:
- he will form that government
- or someone else will.

If we would get to the next stage (a 1 percent probability), if the president would talk with us, that is how I would present the proposal of Wałęsa’s government.

A. Balazs: We need to allow the possibility that they will form a government and wait for their overthrow. Within three months they will be completely finished in terms of propaganda. They are in the ultimate situation. This is a very difficult situation for us, too. We need to find some alternative solution.

B. Geremek: I told Kiszczak that his candidacy is not good, that someone else would be better. He has recognized this argument.168

B. Geremek: The motion on an Extraordinary Commission has not passed. It has the backing of half of the ZSL, half of SD and a little in the PUWP, it has a chance of passage.

The following team will be needed: 1. R. Bugaj
2. J. Osiatyński169
M. Rokita: Najder177 is thanking [us], asking to take care of his dispossesion of Polish citizenship.
A. Ballazs: a 10 day vacation break is needed, right now it’s a harvest time.

[Source: Archives of the Bureau of Senate Information and Documentation. Translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.]

DOCUMENT No. 19
Minutes of a Meeting of the Presidium of the Citizens’ Parliamentary Club, 16 August 1989, 11:30 p.m.


B. Geremek: Today I received an invitation to have a conversation with Gen. Jaruzelski. I responded that first I wanted to meet with Chairman Wałęsa, whom I had not seen for a few days. There have been important meetings recently: a meeting of Primate Glemp with [Soviet] Ambassador Vladimir Borovikov and the second meeting of Glemp with Jaruzelski.

The time-table for the next few days [is:] today or tomorrow the Sejm is to vote on a resolution on the [1968] intervention in Czechoslovakia. It’s a controversial matter. Tomorrow L. Wałęsa is meeting: at 9 a.m. with Malinowski at 10 a.m. with Józwiak174 at 12 with Jaruzelski.

K. Kozłowski: The PUWP wants to do everything to eliminate Lech Wałęsa. There will be a compromise candidate—Kwaśniewski.

B. Geremek: Is it possible that they will appoint Wałęsa?

E. Wende: Orzechowski has very clear plans regarding two ministries.
A. Stelmachowski: With bargaining there will be more!
L. Wałęsa: Generally we are reporting that a new coalition has been set up. It will select the most suitable candidate for prime minister. For the time being we don’t say who that will be.

E. Wende: He is referring to information from the PUWP circles, we should not exaggerate, there are warnings.

J. Kaczyński: The question of two ministries has been stated clearly in talks. With the preservation of the president’s prerogatives, this needs to be stated once again. The compromise has to be reached on their side.
A. Stelmachowski: The government here in Poland has never had the position of a true government, the disposition centers have always been somewhere aside (Pilsudski175—the Chief Inspectorate). We need to return back to the main political decisions reached at Magdalenka.

L. Wałęsa: We have learned that there is always someone above the authorities and above the law.
A. Michnik: How do you perceive the position of the PUWP?
L. Wałęsa: We need to create a new coalition, which will stand up to the PUWP. How to form a government to secure both freedom and be tolerant.
B. Geremek: The main thing is that the PUWP doesn’t form the government.
L. Wałęsa: ...... and doesn’t impose it!
A. Balazs: I have a suggestion that the “S” RI should not be treated by PUWP like ZSL is.
B. Geremek: Do you foresee a meeting with our Club after your meetings tomorrow?
L. Wałęsa: It’s not me who wants to be prime minister. I have my three candidates.176 If this proposition doesn’t break down, I will be asking you to form the government.

B. Geremek: Does anyone have any comments?
A. Michnik: I think that if you listen to their argument, it means that you are going into their paws. Królewski177 and Malinowski were stubbornly sticking to this coalition, which means they were doing it with Jaruzelski’s approval. We need to form a government with the masters, not with the lackeys.
T. Mazowiecki: This would lead to a series of talks of the type of a new Magdalenka with the masters, talks with the actual disposers of power, i.e. with the military and the police.

A. Michnik: You are not going to make a real government with the ZSL and the SD. The PUWP can be broken down.
B. Geremek: The present phase—with the assistance of the ZSL and SD—is an attempt to break down PUWP’s monopoly.178

[Source: Archives of the Bureau of Senate Information and Documentation; translated by Jan Chowaniec for CWIHP.]

Dr. Paweł Machcewicz is a former CWIHP fellow and now research director of the Institute of National Remem-
brance in Warsaw. He is author of the prize-winning 1956: Polski rok (1993) and a co-organizer of the confer-
ence “Poland, 1986-1989: The End of the System,” held
in Miedzeszyn-Warsaw, 21-23 October 1999.

3 The conference was modeled after an earlier confer-
ence held at Jachranka, concerning to “Solidarity” and the
martial law period (“Poland 1980-1982. Internal crisis,
International Dimensions,” Jachranka, 8-10 November
1997), which was organized by the Institute of Political
Studies in conjunction with the same American partners.
The conference format was also similar (critical oral
history), which, in our opinion, fully stood the test at
Jachranka, bringing forth new facts and new positions. It
was a joint debate of scholars—historians, political
scientists, sociologists—with politicians, participants and
actors in those events, people taking important political
decisions or close to the decision making centers. As at
Jachranka, debates took place both on the internal pro-
cesses in Poland, and on external influences (on the one
hand those of Moscow and other countries of the Soviet
c bloc, on the other, Washington and Western Europe), and
the significance of Polish developments of setting in
motion democratic changes in Central and Eastern Europe.
The conference covered the period from the amnesty of
September 1986, giving an opening for the opposition to
public activity, to the formation of the Mazowiecki
government in September 1989, closing an essential part
of a “negotiated take-over of power,” or a “negotiated
revolution,” as it has been called. Conference participants
included many of the most important actors, such as Gen.
Wojciech Jaruzelski, leader of the Communist Party and
from July 1989 president of Poland, and Tadeusz
Mazowiecki, who headed the first non-communist
government in the Soviet bloc.

3 See Tomasz Tabako, The Strajk 88 (Wwa: Niezal.

4 By the terms of an 11 September 1986 decision by
Minister of Internal Affairs Czesław Kiszczak, all political
prisoners were freed.

5 A law passed by the Sejm on 8 October 1982
dissolved the NSZZ “Solidarity.”

6 The note was expressing the position of the Episco-
pate and was handed over to CC PUWP Secretary
Kazimierz Barcikowski in October 1986.

7 A watchword of trade union pluralism practically
meant the legalization of the independent self-governing
trade union (NSZZ) “Solidarity”, which had been active
underground following the 8 October 1982 law dissolving
the Union.

8 It refers to the Consultative Council appointed by
the Chairman of the Council of State, set up on 6 Decem-
ber 1986.

9 Archbishop Bronisław Dąbrowski, archbishop of
Warsaw, in 1969-1993 secretary general of the Episcopate
of Poland, from 1970-1989 delegate of the Conference of
the Episcopate of Poland on relations with the government
of Poland; chief negotiator of the church side in confiden-
tial talks with the PUWP (more detailed information on
many people mentioned in the documents can be found in
“Kto był kim in the years 1986-1989” [Who was who in
1986-1989], a paper prepared by Inka Słodkowska and
published in the briefing book for the conference “Poland

Besides the consecutive volume published by the London
“Aneks” (Państwo - Kościół 1980-1989 [The State-Church
1980-1989], London-Warszawa, 1993), these are mostly
items prepared by Peter Raina (“Rozmowy z władzami
PRL, Arcybiskup Dąbrowski w służbie kościoła i narodu”
[Talks with the authorities of the Polish People’s Republic,
Archbishop Dąbrowski in the service of the church and the
people], vol. II: 1982-1989, (Warszawa: K.S. Polska,
1985); (”Droga do ‘Okrągłego Stolu’: Zakulisowe rozmowy przygotowawcze” [The Road to the Roundtable.
Preparatory talks behind the scene], Warszawa 1989).
One should also mention the most important items dealing
with “the end of communism” in Poland. First of all, the
work of Jan Skórzynski Ugoda i rewolucja. Władza i
opozycja 1985-1989 [Conciliation and Revolution. The
Authority and the Opposition 1985-1989] (Warszawa:
Presspublica, 1995). “The Roundtable” and the process of
the takeover of power by the opposition is also discussed
by Antoni Dudek in the first part of his book “Pierwsze
lata III Rzeczypospolitej” [The First Years of the III Polish
Republic] (Warszawa: Presspublica, 1997). A very
interesting analysis of transformation from communism to
democracy is presented by Andrzej Paczkowski in his
paper “Polska 1986-1989: od kooptacji do negocjacji”
[Poland 1986-1989: from cooptation to negotiations]
(published in 1997 by the Institute of Political Studies as a
working paper, and then in the book “Od sfałszowanego
zwycięstwa do prawdziwej klęski” [From a fraudulent
victory to the real defeat] (Kraków: Wydawn. Literackie,
1999).
Andrzej Święcicki, president of the Warsaw Club of Catholic Intelligentsia (KIK), forced by Club members to resign this function following his acceptance of Gen. Jaruzelski’s invitation to participate on the Consultative Council.

Jerzy Turowicz, chief editor of “Tygodnik Powszechny” since 1945, member of the Citizens’ Committee (KO) appointed by the Chairman of the NSZZ “Solidarity,” “Roundtable” participant.

Andrzej Wielowieyski, secretary of the Warsaw KIK, advisor to the Episcopate of Poland, from 1983 advisor to Lech Wałęsa; member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity,” “Roundtable” participant and from June 1989 senator and vice marshal of the Senate.

Kazimierz Barcikowski, PUWP Politburo member, deputy chairman of the Council of State, from 1980 chairman of the Joint Commission of Government and Episcopate.

Kazimierz Secomski, economist, member of the Council of State, member of the Consultative Council appointed by the Chairman of the Council of State.


It refers to the PUWP’s so-called “allied parties.”

Never brought into existence.

A Spokesman for Citizens’ Rights was appointed in 1987. He/she was to be an institution to which people could appeal in cases of conflicts with the state authorities. Prof. Ewa Łętowska became the first Spokeswoman.

Tadeusz Mazowiecki, chief editor of the Catholic monthly Więź, and in 1981 of the weekly magazine Solidarność, one of Wałęsa’s closest advisors; “Roundtable” participant (co-chairman of a team for trade union pluralism, from August 1989 prime minister).

Bronisław Geremek, a historian, one of Wałęsa’s closest advisors, from 1988 an informal leader of the NSZZ “Solidarity” Citizens’ Committee; “Roundtable” participant (co-chairman of a team on political reforms, from June 1989 deputy to the Sejm, chairman of the Citizens’ Parliamentary Club (OKP), formed by “Solidarity” deputies and senators).

Konservatorium “Doświadczenie i Przyszłość” [Experience and the Future], a discussion forum created by intellectual circles maintaining contacts with both the opposition and government.

Agricultural circles and “Samopomoc Chłopska” [Peasants’ Self-support]—peasants’ co-operatives controlled by the government.

A Joint Commission of Government and Episcopate—a forum for negotiating and finding solutions on disputed questions between the authorities and the Church.

“Raport—Polska 5 lat po Sierpniu” [Poland - 5 years after August] - an assessment of the political and social situation in Poland, announced in 1985 by a group of people concentrated around Wałęsa, published in “the second circulation” (this was the term used for illegal publications, printed and circulated by the opposition circles).

Res Publica - a monthly published in the “second circulation.” In June 1987, the authorities in an unprecedented move, gave permission to its legal publication.

Lad [An Order] - a weekly published by a group of Catholics (Polish Catholic-Social Union) cooperating with the authorities.

Józef Czyrek, a CC PUWP Politburo member and secretary, co-chairman of the National Council of PRON; in 1987-1988 initiated and conducted talks with the opposition Catholic intellectual and Church representatives; the meeting mentioned in the document was held on 11 July 1987.

Refers to the anniversary of the 31 August 1980 signing of an understanding between the authorities and the Inter-factory Striking Committee in Gdańsk, which opened the way for the birth of NSZZ “Solidarity.”

There were no “terrorist” actions; also nothing is known of any preparation to this kind of actions.

Cardinal Józef Glemp, from 1981 archbishop metropolitan of Gniezno and Warsaw, Primate of Poland, chairman of the Episcopate of Poland.

A “new” workers’ party was not created until the end of the PUWP rule. In the second half of the 1980s, in pro-reform circles on the margins of PUWP, ideas were put forth to bring into being a second Marxist party, which would compete with the PUWP, thus introducing democratic dynamics into the communist system without undermining its fundamentals.

Aleksander Gieysztor, a distinguished historian-medievalist, director of the Royal Castle in Warsaw, in 1988-1989 participated in a number of meetings between government representatives and opposition circles.

The Polish Club of International Relations did not play any important role in subsequent events, but its creation—and particularly the speech by J. Czyrek—was one of the stages in seeking an understanding between government and opposition circles.

Andrzej Stelmachowski, an advisor to the Episcopate and Wałęsa, from 1987 president of the Warsaw KIK, member of the Citizens’ Committee appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity”, in the years 1987-1989, as a plenipotentiary of L. Wałęsa, conducted confidential talks with the authorities, which led to the “Roundtable;” from 1989 a senator and marshall of the Senate.

Paweł Czartoryski, a member of the Warsaw KIK leadership, member of the Citizens’ Committee appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity,” “Roundtable” participant.

Marcin Król, editor-in-chief of the monthly magazine Res Publica, member of the KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity.”

Henryk Wujec, an active member of the Warsaw KIK, from 1980 an activist of NSZZ “Solidarity”,
1988 secretary of the KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity,” “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 a deputy to the Sejm, secretary of the National Committee for Reconciliation (OKP).


39 Jacek Kuroń, in the 1970s a leading KOR activist, from 1980 an advisor to NSZZ “Solidarity”, member of the KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity”, “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 deputy to the Sejm.

40 Stanisława Grabbska, vice-president of the Warsaw KIK, member of the KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity”, “Roundtable” member.

41 Krzysztof Śliwiński, member of the Warsaw KIK leadership, member of the KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity.”

42 Tomasz Gruszecki, an economist, from 1980 an advisor to NSZZ “Solidarity.”

43 Ryszard Bugaj, an economist, in the 1970s cooperated with KOR, from 1980 an advisor to NSZZ “Solidarity”, member of the KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity”, “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 deputy to the Sejm.

44 Jacek Moskwa, a journalist, (supporting) secretary of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity.”

45 Kazimierz Wójcicki, a journalist, secretary (assistant) of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity.”

46 Halina Bortnowska, editorial member of Tygodnik Powszechny, member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity.”

47 Janusz Grzelak, a psychologist, from 1980 activist of NSZZ “Solidarity”, participant of the “Roundtable.”

48 Czesław Kiszczak, CC PUWP Politburo member, minister of internal affairs, chief initiator of the “Roundtable”, in August 1989 nominated for Prime Minister, however unsuccessful in formulating the government due to “Solidarity’s” refusal to participate.


50 A group of Lech Wałęsa’s advisors, who in December 1988 formed a Citizens’ Committee of Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity” (political representation of the “Solidarity” camp just on the eve of “Roundtable” deliberations).

51 Jacek Merkel, “Solidarity” activist from Gdańsk, member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity” “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 a deputy to the Sejm.

52 Andrzej Malanowski, a lawyer, scholar at the University of Warsaw, activist of the Polish Socialist Party (an opposition group activist from 1987).

53 Andrzej Rosner, a historian, chief of the “second-circulation” publication “Krag” [Circle].

54 Andrzej Mileczanowski, a lawyer, “Solidarity” activist from Szczecin, member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity,” “Roundtable” participant.

55 Gabriel Janowski, an activist of the “Solidarity” of Individual Peasants (RI), member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity,” “Roundtable” participant.

56 Klemens Szaniawski, philosophy professor, chairman of the Committee for an Understanding of Creative and Scholarly Associations, member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity.”

57 Aleksander Paszyński, journalist, businessman, member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity”, “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 a senator, Minister of Construction and Space Economy in the Mazowiecki government.

58 Stefan Bratkowski, a journalist, in the years 1980-1981 leader of a grass-roots reformist movement within the PUWP, president of the Polish Journalists’ Association, member of KO of the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity.”


60 Niezależne Stowarzyszenie Związków Zawodowych, the Independent Association of Trade Unions.

61 It means representatives of the authorities, “Solidarity” and the Church.

62 On 31 August 1988 a meeting occurred in Warsaw, with Cz. Kiszczak, S. Ciosek, L. Wałęsa and archbishop J. Dąbrowski participating.

63 Illegible signature of Lech Wałęsa.

64 See preceding document.

65 The trade union statute 8 October 1982, which outlawed “Solidarity.”

66 Ogólnopolskie Porozumienie Związków Zawodowych [The All-Polish Association of Trade Unions]—closely connected with the authorities.


68 The Party’s hardline conservatives.

69 Mikołaj Kozakiewicz, member of ZSL, member of the National Council of PRON, “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 deputy to the Sejm, Sejm’s Speaker.

70 Jan Karol Kostrzewski, a physician, professor of the Medical Academy, president of the Polish Academy of Sciences.

71 Stanisław Stomba, a lawyer, since 1945 an editorial member of Tygodnik Powszechny, in 1956-57 one of the organizers of the Clubs of Catholic Intelligentsia, in 1957-1976 a deputy to the Sejm within the Catholic group of ZNAK, 1981-1985 chairman of the Social Council by the Primate of Poland (an advisory body to the Primate),
1984-1989 president of the Club of Political Thought “Dziekania” (a moderate right discussion forum), member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity”, from June 1989 a senator.

72 Anna Przechowalska, professor of pedagogics, member of the National Council of PRON, “Roundtable” participant.

73 A group of Wałęsa’s advisors.

74 Rev. Bishop Alojzy Orszulik, in the years 1958-1993 director of the Episcopate’s Press Office, 1989-1994 assistant secretary of the Episcopate, member-secretary of the Joint Commission of Government and Episcopate; during the martial law period a liaison between Wałęsa and the Episcopate, in the years 1988-1989 a participant on behalf of the Church in confidential talks with the PUWP which led to the “Roundtable.”

75 Jacek Ambrozjak, legal advisor in the Secretariat of the Episcopate of Poland, “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 deputy to the Sejm, minister-chief of the Prime Minister’s Office (Council of Ministers) in the Mazowiecki government.

76 Rev. Archbishop Jerzy Stroba, archbishop-metropolitan of Poznań, member of the Main Council of the Episcopate of Poland, member of the Joint Commission of Government and Episcopate.

77 Jan Olszewski, from 1980 an advisor to NSZZ “Solidarity” and the Episcopate of Poland, defense counsel in court trials of “Solidarity” activists, member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity.”

78 Alojzy Pietrzyk, an activist of NSZZ “Solidarity” from Upper Silesia, one of the strike leaders from 1988.

79 An Independent Association of Students, founded in 1981, outlawed under the martial law.

80 Janusz Onyszkiewicz, a “Solidarity” activist from 1981, member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity”, “Roundtable” participants, from June 1989 deputy to the Sejm.

81 That “Table” in Katowice was never set up.

82 Naczelnna Organizacja Techniczna [Chief Technical Organization].

83 Polskie Towarzystwo Ekonomiczne [Polish Economic Society].

84 Bronisław Geremek, Tadeusz Mazowiecki, Henryk Wujec

85 Mieczysław Rakowski, CC Politburo member, from June to December 1988 CC PUWP secretary, from September 1988 to August 1989 Prime Minister, from July 1989 CC PUWP first secretary.

86 Jan Józef Szczepański, a writer, in the years 1980-1983 president of the Polish Literary Union, member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity”, “Roundtable” participant.

87 Andrzej Szczepkowski, an actor, member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity”, from June 1989 a senator.

88 Zbigniew Romaszewski, KOR member, from 1980 an activist of NSZZ “Solidarity”, member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity”, “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 a senator.

89 Jan Józef Lipski, KOR member, from 1980 an activist of NSZZ “Solidarity”, member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity”, from June 1989 a senator.

90 Komisja Krajowa (KK) - the executive body of NSZZ “Solidarity”, set up in October 1987.

91 Lech Kaczyński, a lawyer, co-worker of KOR, from 1980 an activist of NSZZ “Solidarity”, member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity”, “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 a senator.

92 A radical group (led by Kornel Morawiecki), which in the second half of the 1980s departed from the main “Solidarity” movement.

93 Motorized Battalions of Citizens’ Militia—a special formation used for breaking up demonstrations.

94 The church of Our Lady in the old section of Gdańsk [NMP= Najświętszej Marii Panny, Virgin Mary].

95 The Council for National Understanding eventually was not created. Instead, a Conciliatory Commission with narrower powers was set up, which was to take care that decisions of the “Roundtable” were implemented.


97 The CC PUWP Xth plenary meeting adopted a resolution in January 1989, allowing for union pluralism, thus opening up the road for legalization of “Solidarity.”

98 Komisja Krajowa (KK) - the top executive body of NSZZ “Solidarity” set up at the first National Congress of Delegates in December 1981.

99 The Working Group of the National Commission (GR KK) of NSZZ “Solidarity” - an opposition group against Lech Wałęsa and his group of “Solidarity” leaders and activists from the years 1980-1981. It charged Wałęsa with undemocratic practices in steering the Union, monopolizing negotiations with the authorities and of being too soft towards the latter.

100 Władysław Findesin, a physics professor, chairman of the Social Council by the Primate of Poland, member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity”, “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 a senator.

101 An understanding signed between representatives

Andrej Słowik, in the years 1980-1981 chairman of the Board of the Regional NSZZ “Solidarity” in Łódź, in the martial law period an activist of the underground “Solidarity”, from 1987 member of the Working Group of the National Council of NSZZ “Solidarity.”


An article by Jacek Kuroni “The Landscape after a Battle” was published in the underground Tygodnik Mazowsze of 2 September 1987.

Krajowa Komisja Wykonawcza

It had been agreed even before the opening of the “Roundtable” that the NSZZ “Solidarity” would be legalized on the basis of the existing law on trade unions (thus, there was no talk about “relegalization” as proposed in the formula of GR KK). It was a concession by the Lech Wałęsa camp, who had also gained an important concession from the authorities: NSZZ “Solidarity” was to be registered at once as a national organization, and not through registrations of subsequent factory units as desired by the PUWP negotiators.

Międzynarodowa Organizacja Pracy [International Labor Organization].

Zbigniew Bujak, from 1980 an activist of NSZZ “Solidarity in Warsaw”, in 1980-1981 chairman of the “Mazowsze” region, one of the leaders of the underground “Solidarity,” member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity,” “Roundtable” participant.

Władysław Frasyniuk, from 1980 an activist of NSZZ “Solidarity” in Wrocław, in 1981 chairman of the Lower Silesia region, one of the leaders of the underground “Solidarity”, member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity,” “Roundtable” participants, from June 1989 on a senator.

Komisja Krajowa, Cracow Committee.

“White spots”—controversial questions in Polish-Soviet relations, passed over in silenced or forged by the official propaganda and historiography.

For the USSR, WWII did not “start” until 22 June 1941.

In April 1987 the Polish and Soviet governments created a Joint Commission of Historians, which was to investigate “white spots” in their relations.

The place where the NKVD in 1940 murdered several thousand Polish officers, who had been taken prisoners of war in September 1939.

On 7 April 1989 the KKW decided to entrust the management of the election campaign to the Sejm and Senate to the KO of the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity.” Under its aegis, citizens’ committees popped up all over the country, whose main task was to manage the election campaign for “Solidarity” candidates.

Jarosław Śleszyński, manager of the cultural section of the Warsaw KIK, “Roundtable” participants.

The first round of elections took place on 4 June 1989, the second on 18 June 1989.

In the first round “Solidarity” candidates gained 160 of the 161 possible seats in the Sejm (within the 35% of seats allocated to candidates outside of the PUWP and its “allied parties”). In the election to the Senate “Solidarity” candidates gained 92 seats out of the 100 possible (as opposed to the lower chamber of parliament, elections to the Senate were held according to fully democratic procedures). In the second round “Solidarity” gained the last missing seat in the Sejm (thus, gaining 161 seats for 161 possible), as well as the next 7 seats in the Senate (in total 99 of 100 possible).

On the national (central) list the authorities placed 35 leading PUWP activists and “allied party” candidates. Only two of them gained more than 50% of votes, which in view of the electoral law meant that 33 seats would not be filled. That would obviously undermine a precise parity of mandates, agreed upon at the “Roundtable”, depriving the PUWP and its allies a secure majority in the Sejm. In this situation the KO of the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity” agreed to modify the electoral law to shift the 33 mandates from the national list to the regional ones. In the second round the candidates of the PUWP and the “allied parties” could fight for them. The agreement for changing the electoral law between the I and II round of elections was considered by many observers as inconsistent with the law. It also provoked voices of protest within the “Solidarity” camp.

The territorial authorities.


Olga Krzyżanowska, a physician, from 1980 an activist of NSZZ “Solidarity,” from June 1989 a deputy to the Sejm.

Zofia Kuratowska, a physician, from 1980 an activist of NSZZ “Solidarity,” “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 a senator.

Krysztof Kozłowski, deputy editor of Tygodnik Powszechny, advisor to NSZZ “Solidarity,” member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity,” “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 a senator.

Jan Maria Rokita, a activist of NSZZ “Solidarity,” “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 a senator.
member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity” RI, “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 a deputy to the Sejm, a minister without portfolio in the Mazowiecki government.

132 Edward Wende, a lawyer, defense attorney in political trials, member of KO appointed by the Chairman of NSZZ “Solidarity,” from June 1989 a senator.

133 Wojciech Jaruzelski met with the Citizens’ Parliamentary Club on 17 July 1989.

134 Ministerstwo Obrony Narodowej [Ministry of National Defense].

135 Rada Obrony Narodowej [National Defense Council], a body composed of top generals.

136 The Advisory Political Committee of the Warsaw Pact met on 7-8 July. It stated that Gen. Wojciech Jaruzelski should take the position of president of Poland.

137 President George Bush paid an official visit to Poland on 9-11 July 1989. He gave support to the candidacy of Wojciech Jaruzelski for the position of president.

138 At the beginning of July 1989, Lech Wałęsa declared his support for the candidacy of Kiszczak for president several times.

139 Ogólnokrajowy Komitet Porozumiewawczy.

140 Rev. Sylwester Zych, linked with the “Solidarity” circles had been murdered by “unknown” criminals. The suspicion fell on those of the party “baton” and Security Services, who wanted to torpedo an understanding between the authorities and the opposition.

FIRST DECLASSIFICATION OF EISENHOWER’S INSTRUCTIONS PREDELEGATING NUCLEAR WEAPONS USE

In April 2001, President Dwight D. Eisenhower’s top secret instructions that delegated nuclear-launch authority to military commanders and the Secretary of Defense under specific emergency conditions, were declassified for the first time. The US Interagency Security Classification Appeals Panel (ISCAP) declassified this document and several related ones in response to an appeal by National Security Archive senior analyst William Burr, director of the Archive’s nuclear documentation project. President Eisenhower began making decisions for advance authorization of nuclear weapons use (“predelegation”) in the mid-1950s when he approved instructions for the use of nuclear weapons for the air defense of U.S. territory. Soon he came to support broader instructions that would allow specified commanders to react quickly to other kinds of attacks. By early 1959, two years after he had issued an authorization requesting instructions, Eisenhower approved, subject to later revision, “Instructions for the Expenditure of Nuclear Weapons in Accordance with the President Authorization Dated May 22, 1957.” This and other documents show that authorized commanders—including US Commander-in-Chief, Europe; Commander-in-Chief, Atlantic; and Commander-in-Chief, Strategic Air Command—could “expend” nuclear weapons “when the urgency of time and circumstances clearly does not permit a specific decision by the president.” According to the documents, top commanders could not use nuclear weapons in response to “minor” incidents but only when Soviet or Chinese forces launched air or surface attacks against “major” US forces in international waters or foreign territories “with the evident intention of rendering them militarily ineffective.” In the event of a nuclear attack on the United States, the instructions authorized the Secretary of Defense or top commanders to order retaliatory action if they were unable to communicate with the president or his successors. Eisenhower apparently had confidence that his commanders would not break discipline but he closely monitored the drafting of the instructions so they would not be misinterpreted as “giving license” for nuclear weapons use. National Security Archive staff first requested the “Instructions” in 1993 under the mandatory review provisions of Executive Order 12356, although other requesters had begun pursuing them in 1989. Declassification took over ten years because the “Instructions” were among the deepest US military policy secrets of the Cold War. The documents have are published online at http://www.gwu.edu/~nsarchiv/NSAEBB/NSAEBB45.
on the formation of the “Solidarity”-ZSL-SD coalition.

From SD was a signatory of a statement of 17 August 1989

Rakowski government, “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 a senator.

Ministers, PUWP “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 vice premier in the Mazowiecki government, chairman of the Economic Committee.

The OKP ultimately did not adopt a motion on voting discipline in the presidential election, leaving the decision up to its members. On 19 July Gen. Jaruzelski won the election by the majority of one vote. 7 OKP members deliberately turned in invalid votes, thus enabling Jaruzelski’s election.

Władysław Baka, an economist, Politburo member, deputy chairman of the Council of State.

Roman Malinowski, president of the Main Committee of ZSL, together with L. Wałęsa and J. Jóźwiak from SD was a signatory of a statement of 17 August 1989 on the formation of the “Solidarity”-ZSL-SD coalition. Aleksander Bentkowski, a defense attorney, ZSL activist, Justice Minister in the Mazowiecki government.

Ireneusz Sekula, from October 1988 to August 1989 vice premier in the Mazowiecki government, chairman of the Economic Committee of the Council of Ministers, PUWP “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 a Sejm deputy.

Leszek Piotrowski, a defense attorney, advisor to NSZZ “Solidarity” in Upper Silesia, “Roundtable” participant, from June 1989 a senator. Józef Bań, a peasant, from June 1989 a Sejm deputy (no party affiliation).

Kazimierz Olesiak, member of ZSL leadership, from October 1988 to August 1989 vice premier in the M. Rakowski government, “Roundtable” participant.

Jan Eugeniusz Świtka, an SD activist, from June 1989 a Sejm deputy. PAX—a “satellite” Catholic group toward the PUWP.

Unia Chrześcijańsko-Społeczna [A Christian-Social Union]—a Catholic “satellite” group toward PUWP.
Bay of Pigs: 40 Years After
Historic Conference Sheds New Documents and Oral History

On 22-24 March 2001, an international conference, “Bay of Pigs: 40 Years After,” brought together former officials from the Kennedy Administration, the CIA, and Brigade 2506 members, and their counterparts in the Cuban military and government of Fidel Castro, to discuss one of the most infamous episodes in the Cold War—the April 1961 invasion at the Bay of Pigs.

National Security Archive Senior Analyst Peter Kornbluh, director of the Archive’s Cuba Documentation project who organized the US delegation for the conference, called the meeting “an historical, and historic, event,” organized to produce “new documents, details, and interpretations” of events before, during and after the 3-day battle at the Bay of Pigs. The meeting was planned “in the spirit of historical exploration,” according to Thomas Blanton, executive director of the National Security Archive. Given the continuing tension in U.S.-Cuban relations, he noted, “it is imperative to learn the lessons of this conflict so as not to repeat the past, and this kind of serious scholarly discussion—with actors, witnesses, experts and declassified evidence—gets us beyond rancor to dialogue.”

The Cuban delegation was led by Cuban president Fidel Castro, who was accompanied by a number of current and former military commanders, political advisers and scholars.

The US delegation included Arthur Schlesinger Jr. and Richard Goodwin, two former advisors to President John F. Kennedy; two retired CIA covert operatives, Robert Reynolds, chief of the Miami station in 1960-61, and Samuel Halpern, the executive officer on Operation Mongoose; and five members of the 2506 Brigade, including two former presidents of the Brigade’s Veterans Association, Alfredo Duran and Robert Carballo; and a small group of historians. The meeting was organized by the Universidad de La Habana, Centro de Estudios sobre Estados Unidos, Instituto de Historia de Cuba, Centro de Investigaciones Historicas de la Seguridad del Estado; Centro de Estudios sobre America, and co-sponsored by The National Security Archive at George Washington University, a longstanding CWIHP partner. On the occasion of the conference, the Cuban government released some 480 pages of declassified Cuban documents relating to the invasion, including Cuban intelligence reports on US preparations and Fidel Castro’s directives during the battle, records that, according to Kornbluh, “shed substantial light on Cuba’s ability to repel the invasion.” One of the Cuban documents, for example, a January 1961 report on the CIA’s clandestine training camps in Central America and Florida, shows that Cuban intelligence analysts estimated there were as many as 6,000 CIA “mercenaries” training at a camp in Guatemala, overestimating by far the agency’s 1,400-man invasion force. National Security Archive and CWIHP plan to translate and publish the documents. For further information on the conference, contact Peter Kornbluh (National Security Archive, 202-994-7000) or the CWIHP. Additional information is also available on the Archive’s website http://www.gwu.edu/~nsarchiv/bayofpigs or on the CWIHP website (http://cwihp.si.edu).
The Fall of the Wall: The Unintended Self-Dissolution of East Germany’s Ruling Regime

By Hans-Hermann Hertle

East Germany’s sudden collapse like a house of cards in fall 1989 caught both the political and academic worlds by surprise. The decisive moment of the collapse was undoubtedly the fall of the Berlin Wall during the night of 9 November 1989. After the initial political upheavals in Poland and Hungary, it served as the turning point for the revolutions in Central and Eastern Europe and accelerated the deterioration of the Soviet empire. Indeed, the Soviet Union collapsed within two years. Along with the demolition of the “Iron Curtain” in May and the opening of the border between Hungary and Austria for GDR citizens in September 1989, the fall of the Berlin Wall stands as a symbol of the end of the Cold War, the end of the division of Germany and of the continent of Europe.

Political events of this magnitude have always been the preferred stuff of which legends and myths are made of. The fall of the Berlin Wall quickly developed into “one of the biggest paternity disputes ever” among the political actors of that time, and it is not surprising that the course of and background to the events during the night of 9 November 1989 still continue to produce legends.

Was the fall of the Berlin Wall the result of a decision or intentional action by the SED leadership, as leading Politburo members claimed shortly after the fact? Was it really, as some academics argue, “a last desperate move to restabilize the country,” “a last desperate effort to ride the tiger, control the anger and the ebullience, that had challenged the government”? Or was it, as disappointed supporters of the GDR civil rights movement suspected, the last revenge of the SED, designed to rob the civil rights movement of its revolution? Did Mikhail Gorbachev or Eduard Shevardnadze order the SED leadership to open the Berlin Wall, or was Moscow completely surprised by the events in Berlin? Were the Germans granted unity by a historical mistake, “a spectacular blunder,” or “a mixture of common sense and bungling”? Did four officers from the Ministry for State Security (MfS, or Stasi) and the Interior Ministry, the authors of the new travel regulation presented at the fateful November 9 press conference, trick the entire SED leadership? And if the MfS was involved, could the fall of the Wall have been the Stasi’s “opus magnum,” as supporters of conspiracy theories want us to believe? The fall of the Wall—a final conspiracy of the Stasi against the SED state?

Sociology and political science did not predict the collapse of the GDR, other Eastern bloc regimes, or even of the Soviet Union itself. Since 1990, post-mortem analysis of the communist system has taken place, but this is problematic methodologically. The Sovietologist Bohdan Harasymiw said, “Now that it has happened (...) the collapse of communism is being everywhere foreseen in retrospect to have been inevitable.” He labeled this thinking “whatever happened, had to have happened,” or, more ironically, “the marvelous advantage which historians have over political scientists.” Resistance scholar Peter Steinbach commented that historians occasionally forget very quickly “that they are only able to offer insightful interpretations of the changes because they know how unpredictable circumstances have resolved themselves.”

In the case of 9 November 1989, reconstruction of the details graphically demonstrates that history is an open process. In addition, it also leads to the paradoxical realization that the details of central historical events can only be understood when they are placed in their historical context, thereby losing their sense of predetermination.

The mistaken conclusion of what Reinhard Bendix calls “retrospective determinism”—to view events “as if everything had to come about as it ultimately did come about”—as well as the opposing view, which seeks to grasp historical change as a random accumulation of “historical accidents,” can only be avoided by connecting structural history (Strukturgeschichte) and the history of events (Ereignisgeschichte), as will be attempted to a certain extent in the following essay. This paper focuses on the conditions and modalities of specific decision-making situations in 1989, through the reconstruction of the intended and actual course of events. It also examines the contingencies which helped to bring about the fall of the Wall, removing one of the most important underpinnings of the SED state. The analysis will primarily concentrate on the central decision-making bodies of the party and state apparatus, their perceptions of the problems, and their actions.

The paper is based on the documentary evidence from the relevant East German archives, specifically the SED Archive, as well as the archives for the Council of Ministers, the MfS, and Ministry of the Interior. The archival sources are supplemented by approximately 200 interviews with the “main actors” from both German states, the Soviet Union, the United States, Great Britain, and France, who were involved in the political and military decision-making process.

It is generally accepted that developments and changes in the politics and economics of East Germany can only be analyzed within the framework of the political and economic relations “triangle” linking the Soviet Union, the Federal Republic, and the GDR. In addition, relations between the superpowers, i.e. the international context, cannot be ignored.

The internal and external conditions that contributed to the rapid collapse of the GDR after the fall of the Wall...
developed during the ostensibly stable Honecker Era (1971-1989), gradually corroding the pillars upon which the political system was based. The Soviet empire had been in decline for at least a decade, the GDR economy was on the brink of ruin, the “leading role” of the party was exhausted, theSED leadership had become senile, the party cadre was worn down by years of crisis management, the ideology had become a hollow shell, and the security police were politically disoriented. Structural factors of the crisis restricted the range of possible decisions and options for action available to theSED leadership in the fall of 1989, but did not predetermine the actual course of events. The two most important factors were the exhaustion of the Soviet global strategy and the economic decline of the GDR.

The existence of the GDR as a state was, above all, legitimated by an outside force. The state’s existence was based on the military, economic, and political guarantee provided by the Soviet Union as well as the USSR’s imperial claim and will to power. The signs that the Soviet global strategy had run its course had increased since the early-1980s, and the superpower was increasingly unable to provide the necessary means of support for its empire.23

Mikhail Gorbachev himself made it perfectly clear that the economic problems in his country had forced him to introduce political reforms after he took power in the Soviet Union in 1985, and affected its relationship with the satellite countries.24 The Soviet Communist Party (CPSU) General Secretary first distanced himself from the Brezhnev Doctrine in November 1986 at a meeting of the party leaders of the COMECON [Council for Mutual Economic Assistance] member countries. He proclaimed “the independence of each party, its right to make sovereign decisions about the problems of development in its country, its responsibility to its own people” as unalterable principles of the relations among the socialist states.25 It was not his intention at that time to dissolve the alliance; rather, the new principles of independence and autonomy of the national parties, equal standing in relations (with the USSR), and voluntary cooperation were designed to place the socialist community on a more solid basis. Gorbachev was still convinced in 1989, according to his closest foreign policy advisor, that “he would be able to reduce the confrontation [with the West] and retain competing socio-political systems.”26

After 1986, it became increasingly clear that, due to the economic crisis, the Soviet leadership was forced to agree to Western demands at the East-West talks in Vienna. The United States and its alliance members made progress in disarmament negotiations, expansion of trade and economic aid contingent upon Soviet compromises on human rights. To the disgust of theSED leadership, Gorbachev and Foreign Minister Eduard Shevardnadze demonstrated their desire to create “peaceful and positive conditions abroad for domestic political reforms” in the Soviet Union without consulting with their allies.27 Furthermore, in the opinion of theSED leadership, these far-reaching compromises on human rights issues would come at the expense of the Soviets’ allies.

Conversely, SED General Secretary Erich Honecker’s state visit to the Federal Republic of Germany (FRG) in September 1987, something the CPSU had blocked for years, fueled the Soviet leadership’s fears of a German-German rapprochement and detente behind their backs. Finally, sources inside theSED Politburo fully informed Moscow about the GDR’s desolate economic situation and its financial dependency on the West, especially the Federal Republic.28 The German-German summit accelerated a change in Soviet policy toward Germany (Deutschlandpolitik) and served as an important turning point in the relations among Moscow-East Berlin-Bonn. The SED-West German relationship began to flourish. The German-German relationship on the other hand, stagnated.29

The wide-ranging declaration of intent in the German-German “Joint Communique” of September 1987, particularly the creation of a mixed commission for further development of economic relations, proved to be a farce within a few months.30 Rather than increasing, German-German trade decreased in 1987 and 1988. One last aspect that still flourished was theSED’s policy of using human beings as bargaining chips. In May 1988, the Federal Republic increased its lump sum payment from DM 525 million to DM 860 million for the 1990-1999 period in return for the GDR’s easing of travel restrictions for East Germans visiting the West. In all other respects, however, Bonn restricted its relations with East Berlin to the minimum that was diplomatically necessary and, above all, non-binding.

In the course of 1988, Moscow and East Berlin each grew increasingly uneasy about the other’s intentions. At the conclusion of theConference on Security and Cooperation in Europe (CSCE) follow-up meeting in Vienna in January 1989, the signatory states pledged to observe the right of every individual “to travel from any country, including his own, and the unrestricted (right) to return to his country.” The GDR had signed similar international agreements many times before without ever putting them into effect domestically. But in Vienna, initially under steady pressure from the Soviets, it agreed to guarantee this right by law and to allow observation of its implementation.31 Soviet foreign policy forced domestic political obligations on East Berlin that, if implemented, would threaten at least the stability, if not the existence, of the GDR by softening its rigid isolation from the outside world.

The main source of domestic instability for theSED regime was the desolate state of the economy. In 1971, together with the CPSU, the SED had changed its economic strategy to the so-called “policy of main tasks,” which was memorably formulated in 1975 as the “unity of economic and social policy.”32 TheSED leadership’s promise of welfare-state measures—such as a housing-construction
program, increases in salaries and pensions, an improved supply of consumer goods, as well as numerous social policy initiatives—was not based on sound economics, but on opportunistic political and legitimacy-oriented considerations. The latter stemmed from the inner condition of the regime, which it always considered to be precarious, as well as from the experience of the Prague Spring in 1968 and the workers’ unrest in Poland in 1970. The “unity of economic and social policy” sought to “compensate for the lack of legitimacy by providing consumer goods and social security.”

It quickly became apparent that this “real socialist” welfare program could not be supported by the GDR’s economy, not least because of the changing international economic conditions. The (social-)political stabilization measures subverted the economy’s productive capacity. Increasing the consumption quota burdened the economy’s vitality and occurred at the expense of economic revitalization: the investment quota was lowered, the production capacity reduced, infrastructure decayed, buildings deteriorated, ecological exploitation occurred to an unprecedented degree. The changing terms of trade within the Soviet bloc to the advantage of the raw material supplier (the Soviet Union), and the deficit caused by the COMECON exchange of goods were compensated for by investment and consumer goods imports from the West, financed by credit. The debt spiral set in motion by such policies had been an object of concern and discussion at the highest levels of the SED since 1975, but the policy had not been changed despite the increasing severity of the crisis.

Transfer payments from the Federal Republic, especially the billion-mark loans in 1983 and 1984, had helped to cover the decreasing economic support from the Soviet Union (reduction in the delivery of crude oil beginning in 1982, or delivery for Western currency) and other shortages, and maintain the GDR’s credit ratings in international financial markets. These payments, however, could not help the GDR master the heightening foreign and domestic economic crises that began in the mid-1980s. The German-German sense of a common bond sharpened, strengthened by “humanitarian gestures” like expanding travel opportunities for GDR citizens. This in turn resulted in further instability.

The proclaimed “unity of economic and social policy” changed the nature of the legitimacy of the party. The universalistic, humanistic utopia of the communist society as an association of free and equal individuals was reduced, via the technocratic promises of reform of the New Economic System, to a profane socialism based on consumption as the daily task. The idea of socialism merged with the fulfillment of welfare-state goals, with the result that the revocation or even the failure of the latter would have to be considered the end of socialism itself. The unity of economic and social policy, as then Central Committee Secretary for Security Issues Egon Krenz told a small group of Politburo members in May 1989, “has to be carried forward, because this is after all socialism in the GDR.” Consequently, the innovative development of alternatives was precluded at any level of government. Years of crisis management wore out the economic cadre and led to deep distress within the party bureaucracy in the second half of the 1980s.

All domestic and foreign political symptoms of the crisis intensified in the first half of 1989. On 16 May 1989, Gerhard Schürer, the head of the GDR State Planning Commission, told a small circle of SED leaders that the GDR’s debt to the West was increasing by 500 million Valutamarks (VM) a month, and that, if things continued along these lines, the GDR would be insolvent by 1991. The spending reductions that had already been introduced had to be complemented “by a number of economic measures related to consumption.” But fearing political repercussions, the Politburo did not dare lower the population’s standard of living just five months before the 40th anniversary of the GDR.

At the Bucharest summit of the Warsaw Pact in July 1989, the Soviet Union officially revoked the “Brezhnev Doctrine” of limited sovereignty for the alliance’s members. Their future relations were to be developed, as the concluding document put it, “on the basis of equality, independence and the right of each country to arrive at its own political position, strategy, and tactics without interference from an outside party.” The Soviet guarantee of existence for the communist governments was thereby placed in question—Moscow’s allies could no longer count on military support in the event of internal unrest. After the communist parties in Poland and Hungary started down the path of democratic reforms designed to construct multi-party democracies, the SED was confronted with the necessity of legitimizing its rule to its “people” on its own.

After learning from media reports that the barbed wire along the Hungarian-Austrian border was being removed in early May 1989, growing numbers of GDR citizens, above all youth, began to travel to Hungary in the beginning of the summer vacation period in the hope of fleeing across the Hungarian-Austrian border to the Federal Republic. East Germans seeking to leave the GDR occupied the West German embassies in Prague and Budapest, as well as the FRG’s permanent representation in East Berlin.

Effective 12 June 1989, Hungary agreed to abide by the Geneva Convention on Refugees. Three months later the Hungarian government decided to give priority to its international agreements and treaties over solidarity with the GDR. Following a secret agreement with Bonn, they opened the border to Austria for GDR citizens on 10 September. In return, the Federal Republic gave Hungary credit in the amount of DM 500 million and promised to make up the losses that Hungary might suffer from retaliatory measures by the GDR. Tens of thousands of East Germans traveled to the Federal Republic via Austria in the days and weeks that followed. The GDR experienced its largest wave of departures since the construction of the
Berlin Wall in 1961.

This mass exodus demonstrated the weakness of the SED leadership on this issue and undermined the regime’s authority in an unprecedented manner. The exodus was a necessary precondition for the founding of new opposition groups, and ultimately, the mass demonstrations. The dual movement of mass exodus and mass protest started the process of collapse in the GDR.

The SED leadership’s options were increasingly reduced to the alternatives of either introducing—with uncertain results—political reforms, or constructing a “second Wall” between the GDR and its socialist neighbors Czechoslovakia and Poland and putting down the demonstrations by force.41 Closing the border to the CSSR on 3 October 1989 to those without visas, the use of violence against demonstrators before and after the state celebrations for the fortieth anniversary of the GDR on 7 October, and the preparations for forcibly preventing the Monday demonstration in Leipzig on 9 October pointed to the leadership’s preference for the second alternative. But in the end, too many people took to the streets, and the heavily armed forces of the state capitulated to the 70,000 peaceful demonstrators.42 After 9 October, the strategy of employing violence moved from the forefront to the background, although the possibility of announcing a state of martial law remained an unspoken option among members of the Politburo. Hence, the non-violent resolution of the crisis was not a matter of course in the aftermath of 9 October.

The essential structures of the system itself exacerbated the crisis once cracks had occurred. The party-state was guided, oriented and controlled from above, not integrated from below. The Party’s mass organizations reached deep into society and functioned as information-gathering and early-warning systems for the party leadership, but did not possess their own decision-making capacity, let alone a capacity for addressing conflict or solving disputes. The state-controlled economy transformed every economic challenge into a challenge to the state, just as the union between Party and State transformed every criticism into a criticism of the Party. The centralized and personalized decision-making structure directed criticism via the local and district representatives to the top of the system: the Politburo and the Central Committee. The protests by the population, as well as the mood of party members, put the Party and State leadership for the first time in the history of the GDR under such enormous pressure that it had to respond directly through far-reaching personnel changes. The palace revolution against Erich Honecker on 17 October and the dismissal of Günter Mittag and Joachim Herrmann as SED Central Committee Secretaries of Economics and Agitation and Propaganda, respectively, was followed by the 7 November resignation of the Council of Ministers and the 8 November resignation of the entire Politburo.

The resignations not only compounded the Party’s loss of authority in the eyes of the population, but also increased the instability of the centralized leadership structure, since the nomenclature system was based on ties of personal loyalty and carefully developed cooptation rules. Gaining stability and coherence among the leadership would have taken much more time (as the relatively calculated and limited replacement of Honecker’s predecessor Walter Ulbricht in 1971 had shown) than the leadership had to regain control under the circumstances.

Although Honecker had succeeded in restabilizing the power of the Party when he took power in 1971, his fall in autumn 1989 had the opposite effect. The change at the top of the party at a time when it had lost control of the masses only accelerated the decay of power. SED members lost their faith in the ability of the party leadership to control the situation; the loss of authority by the SED leadership over the party members was yet another factor in the crisis, adding to the problems that resulted from its loss of authority over the population.

It was not only short-term foreign and domestic political pressures that led to restraints on the unconditional use of police and military force; economic realities in particular argued against the compatibility of a hard-line approach and the demands of long-term stabilization.

By the end of October 1989, the GDR’s debt had increased to the point that the country’s leading economists considered drastic changes in the economic and social policy necessary, accompanied by a reduction in the standard of living by 25 to 30 percent. However, out of fear of a further loss of power, they considered such an austerity policy impossible. Violent repression of the protests would have ruined the SED’s last resort, suggested by the economists in the Politburo on 31 October 1989. They argued that in order to guarantee the solvency of the state, it was absolutely necessary “to negotiate with the FRG government about financial assistance in the measure of two to three billion VM beyond the current limits.”43 While that would increase the debt, it would win time and avoid a possible diktat by the International Monetary Fund. In order to make West Germany’s conservative-liberal government more amenable to an increase in the GDR’s line of credit, the FRG should be told, albeit expressly ruling out any idea of reunification and the creation of a confederation, “that through this and other programs of economic and scientific-technical cooperation between the FRG and the GDR, conditions could be created even in this century which would make the border between the two German states, as it exists now, superfluous.”44

If it had been the original intention of Schürer and his co-authors to open discussion of a possible confederation in light of the threatening bankruptcy, their effort was carefully disguised. Out of consideration for those Politburo members whose primary orientation was toward the Soviet Union, Krenz had pushed Schürer to exclude...
any reference to reunification or confederation from the draft, to avoid a discussion of these issues. In the version adopted by the Politburo, the passage in the draft that “put the currently existing form of the border” on the table was eliminated.\textsuperscript{44} The editing alone could not eliminate the fact that the leading economists had suggested using the Wall as a bargaining chip with the FRG government for new loans, as a final resort to guarantee the GDR’s political and economic survival.

Justifying his draft in the Politburo, planning chief Gerhard Schönher explicitly emphasized his idea of trading the Wall for money: “On the last page, we go as far as to address high politics—the form of the state border. We want to make it clear how far considerations should reach. These suggestions should bring to your attention that we could now extract economic advantages from the FRG for such ideas.” He continued, warning that “if the demands are made first from the streets or even from the factories, it would once again eliminate the possibility of us taking the initiative.”\textsuperscript{46}

Schönher’s fears have to be seen against the background of the growing protest movement against the SED which, by the end of October, had swept the entire country, including small and middle-sized cities. The MfS had registered a total of 140,000 participants in 24 demonstrations in the week of 16-22 October; the following week, 540,000 people participated in 145 demonstrations, and from 30 October to 4 November, some 1,400,000 people marched in 210 demonstrations. Their main demands were freedom to travel. In addition, the number of applications to leave the GDR increased by 1,000 per week, reaching a total of 188,180 by 29 October.\textsuperscript{47}

The issue of travel and permanent exit connected the GDR’s foreign, domestic, and economic problems at the beginning of November. When he took over power on 18 October 1989, SED General Secretary Egon Krenz had promised expanded travel opportunities; a new law was to take effect in December. But the Ministry for State Security dragged its feet on the issue, since it feared that hundreds of thousands would leave the GDR. The State Planning Commission raised the objection that no funds were available to provide those traveling with foreign currency.\textsuperscript{90}

One day after the Politburo discussion of the debt crisis, on 1 November, Egon Krenz reported in Moscow on the desolate situation in the GDR to USSR General Secretary Mikhail Gorbachev.\textsuperscript{48} But Gorbachev made it clear to Krenz that he could not count on economic help from Moscow, due to the Soviet Union’s own economic crisis. Gorbachev’s advice was essentially that the government had to tell its already dissatisfied populace, which was leaving by the tens of thousands, in as positive a manner as possible that it had been living beyond its means and had to adjust its expectations to a more modest level. If Krenz did not want to accept this logic, with its uncalculable results for the political stability of the GDR, then his only remaining option was to follow the economists’ recommendation and discretely attempt to expand German-German cooperation as quickly as possible.

Hence Alexander Schalck-Golodkowski, who had been responsible for secret negotiations with the FRG for years, was sent to Bonn on 6 November with the assignment of negotiating informally with CDU Interior Minister Wolfgang Schäuble and Minister of the Chancellory Rudolf Seiters a comprehensive expansion of German-German relations. The central issue in the negotiations was the GDR’s hope for loans totaling DM 12.13 billion. The most pressing request Schalck made was that the FRG government participate, in the short-term run, in the financing of the tourist traffic expected with the adoption of the travel law. The aid requested amounted to DM 3.8 billion, based on estimates of DM 300 for some 12.5 million tourists per year.\textsuperscript{49}

The FRG government displayed a willingness to discuss the issues, but made increased economic cooperation contingent upon political conditions. Seiters told Schalck in confidence on 7 November that if the SED relinquished its monopoly of power, allowed independent parties, and guaranteed free elections,\textsuperscript{50} Chancellor Helmut Kohl was prepared, as he announced the next day during a Bundestag debate on the state of the nation, “to speak about a completely new dimension of our economic assistance.”\textsuperscript{51} Due to the Chancellor’s forthcoming state visit to Poland, the SED’s negotiation channels in Bonn were blocked until 14 November.

Thus the SED leadership was ahead of its people in its secret orientation toward the Federal Republic. The chants of “we are one people” and “Germany, united fatherland” would not dominate the demonstrations until the second half of November. The Party’s goal was admittedly the opposite of that of protesters: the SED leadership intended to stabilize its rule with Bonn’s help, while the demonstrators sought to eliminate the SED state and bring about German unity under democratic conditions.

On 6 November, the SED leadership published the promised draft travel law. Fearing a “hemorrhaging of the GDR,” the party and ministerial bureaucracy limited the total travel time to thirty days a year. The draft also provided for denial clauses that were not clearly defined, and therefore left plenty of room for arbitrary decisions by the authorities. The announcement that those traveling would only be given DM 15 once a year in exchange for GDR marks 15 demonstrated the GDR’s chronic shortage of Western currency and proved to be the straw that broke the camel’s back. Instead of reducing the political pressure, the draft legislation spurred even more criticism during the large demonstrations taking place that same day in a number of cities. At first, the demonstrators chanted sarcastically “Around the world in thirty days—without money,” and then demanded “Visa free to Shanghai,” “We don’t need laws, the Wall must go,” and, ultimately, “The SED has to go!”
As early as 1 November, the threat of strikes in southern districts had forced the SED to remove the ban on travel to the CSSR. The Prague embassy of the Federal Republic immediately filled with a new crowd of GDR citizens eager to depart for West Germany. Under pressure from the CSSR, the SED leadership decided to allow its citizens to travel to the FRG via the CSSR as of 4 November. With this move, the Wall was cracked open not only via the detour through Hungary, but also through its direct neighbor, the CSSR. Within the first few days, fifty thousand GDR citizens used this path to leave the country. The CSSR objected strenuously to the mass migration through its country, and gave the SED the ultimatum to solve its own problems!

A majority of the Politburo on the morning of 7 November still considered immediate implementation of the entire travel law inappropriate, given, for one thing, the ongoing negotiations with the FRG about financial assistance. As a result, the ministerial bureaucracy was given the task of drafting a bill for the early promulgation of that part of the travel law dealing with permanent exit. Foreign Minister Oskar Fischer reported these limited plans to the Soviet ambassador, Vyacheslav Kochemasov, on the same day, and asked for Soviet approval. Meanwhile, the four ministerial bureaucrats (officers from the MfS and the Interior Ministry) charged with redrafting the bill felt that their assignment had not been thoroughly thought through. After all, doing what they had been charged to do, these officials argued, would privilege those who were seeking permanent exit as opposed to those who were only interested in short visits and who wanted to return to the GDR. Thus it would have forced everybody to apply for permanent exit. Acting out of loyalty to the government and a desire to uphold the state, the officers revised the draft to fit what they perceived as the needs of the situation, expanding the regulation of shorter visits to the West. These changes, however, went beyond the plans that had been presented to the Soviet Union for approval just two days earlier.

At no time did the officers intend to grant complete freedom to travel as further clauses in the draft made clear. Private trips had to be applied for, as had been the case before, and only those who possessed a passport for travel could get a visa. Only four million GDR citizens had passports; all others, it was calculated, would have to apply for a passport first and then would have to wait at least another four weeks for a visa. These regulations thus effectively blocked the immediate departure of the majority of GDR citizens. The officers decided to place a media ban on the release of the information until 4 a.m. on 10 November, hoping that a release of the information by the GDR media at this early hour would not attract as much public attention. The local offices of the Interior Ministry and MfS and the border patrols were to be instructed about the new regulations and had until that morning to prepare for the mass exodus.

The officers’ draft, including the prepared press release, was presented to the Security Department of the Central Committee and the ministries participating—the MfS, the Interior Ministry and the Foreign Ministry—for approval around mid-day. In the course of the Central Committee meeting (which had begun the day before), or to be more exact, during a “smoking break,” several members of the Politburo approved the draft. The draft was then submitted to the Council of Ministers in a “fast track procedure” (Umlaufverfahren), which was designed to guarantee a quick decision—by 6:00 p.m.

One copy of the draft went to Egon Krenz. Around 4:00 p.m., he read the proposed regulation to 216 Central Committee members and added, “No matter what we do in this situation, we’ll be making the wrong move.” The Central Committee showed approval for the measure nonetheless. At this point, the travel regulation was nothing more than a “proposal,” as Krenz emphasized, or a draft. The Council of Ministers had not yet made a formal decision. Krenz, however, spontaneously told the government spokesman to release the news “immediately,” thereby canceling the gag order in passing.

This decision could have been corrected since government spokesman Wolfgang Meyer had been informed about the blackout and its background. But Krenz’s next decision could not be reversed. He handed the draft and the press release to Politburo member Günter Schabowski, who was serving as party spokesman on that day, and told him to release the information during an international press conference scheduled for 6 p.m. that evening. This interference by the Party in the government’s procedures led to the collapse of all of the MfS and the Interior Ministry careful preparations for the new travel regulations.

Without checking, Schabowski added the draft for the Council of Ministers to his papers. He had not been present when the Politburo confirmed the draft travel regulation that afternoon, nor had he been present when Krenz read the travel draft to the Central Committee. He therefore was not familiar at all with the text. Around 7 p.m., during the press conference, carried live by GDR television, Schabowski announced the new travel regulations. It was possible to apply for permanent exit and private travel to the West “without presenting [the heretofore necessary] requirements,” and GDR officials would issue approval certificates “on short notice.”

Journalists asked when the regulations would go into effect. Schabowski appeared a bit lost, since “this issue had never been discussed with me before,” as he later said. He scratched his head and glanced at the announcement again, his eyes not catching the final sentence that stated that the press release should be made public no earlier than 10 November. Rather, he noticed the words “immediately,” and “without delay” at the beginning of the document. Thus, he responded concisely: “Immediately, without delay!”

Tom Brokaw, anchorman for the American television
Brokaw: “Mr. Schabowski, do I understand correctly? Citizens of the GDR can leave through any checkpoint that they choose for personal reasons. They no longer have to go through a third country?”

Schabowski: “They are not further forced to leave GDR by transit through another country.”

Brokaw: “It is possible for them to go through the Wall at some point?”

Schabowski: “It is possible for them to go through the border.”

Brokaw: “Freedom to travel?”

Schabowski: “Yes. Of course. It is not [a] question of tourism. It is a permission to leave GDR.”

In spite of the information gleaned from consulting his “notes” again, Schabowski’s confusion could not have been greater. On one hand, he confirmed that the new regulations meant the freedom to travel; on the other hand, he emphasized in the next sentence that it was not a matter of tourism, but the ability to leave the GDR, meaning permanent exit. “When I sat down with him for an interview, he was still learning about the policy,” Brokaw noted before airing the interview.

A short time after his exclusive interview, Brokaw stood in front of the Berlin Wall at the Brandenburg Gate. NBC had opened a direct line to New York the day before, and Brokaw reported live to America from the historic stage that was, at that point, nearly empty. “Tom Brokaw at the Berlin Wall. This is a historic night. The East German government has just declared that East German citizens will be able to cross the Wall from tomorrow morning forward—without restrictions.”

Brokaw had boiled down Schabowski’s convoluted answers to the shortest possible—and correct—statement. He had grasped correctly when the new regulation would come into effect (“as of tomorrow morning”), and left open the question whether the right to cross the border included the right to return to the GDR.

The German public was not as correctly informed as the American one. Schabowski’s announcement was the lead story in both the East and West German nightly news broadcasts that aired after the press conference, between 7 p.m. and 8:15 p.m. Western press services—including West German television—interpreted the contradiction-laden statements from Schabowski to mean an immediate “opening of the border.” The Associated Press headline from 7:05 p.m. read “GDR opens borders,” and the German Press Agency released the “sensational information” at 7:41 p.m. that “the GDR border is open.” The climax of these instances of reporting leading events was the late news from the West German public station First German Television (ADR). Anchorman Hanns Joachim Friedrichs announced that “the gates in the Berlin Wall stand wide open,” while a live shot immediately following the announcement showed the still-closed border, a picture that was quickly declared an exception. The media suggested to an audience of millions in East and West a reality which had yet to come about. The distribution of this false image of reality contributed significantly to transforming the announced events into reality. It was the television reports in particular that mobilized ever greater numbers of Berliners to go to the border crossings.

Without any information on the new policy or orders from the military leadership, the GDR border patrols stationed at the Berlin border crossings faced growing crowds that wanted to test the alleged immediate freedom to travel. Initial inquiries by the border patrols to their superiors did not yield any results, since during the evening only deputies, or deputies of deputies, were available. They, in turn, could not reach their superiors because the meeting of the Central Committee had been extended to 8:45 p.m. without notice. The highest echelons of the party and the government were therefore unaware of the press conference, the media reaction it had engendered, and the gathering storm on the border crossings.

The crowds were the heaviest at the Bornholmer Strasse crossing, located in Berlin’s densely populated Prenzlauer Berg district. At first, the border guards reacted by telling the gathering crowds to wait until tomorrow. To relieve some of the pressure, they allowed certain individuals to exit, but they placed an “invalid” stamp in their identification cards. Without knowing it, the first East Berliners who crossed Bornholmer Bridge into West Berlin had been deprived of their citizenship by this maneuver to “let off steam.”

When the Central Committee meeting finally ended and the higher levels of the party hierarchy were available to formally make decisions, they were shocked by the news. But they had already missed the time for corrective action. The room for maneuvers that would not destroy the plans for the coming days had been reduced to a minimum. The dynamic of the events, constantly accelerated by the live reports of the Western media, overtook the decision-making process. In contrast, the exchange of information between the SED leadership, the MfS, Interior and Defense ministries moved like a merry-go-round; the decisions that were ultimately made were based on information that no longer was up-to-date.

The maneuver “to let off steam,” rather than reducing the pressure at the border crossings, had raised it to the
boiling point instead. Passport controllers and border soldiers at the Bornholmer Strasse crossing, fearing for their lives, made the decision on their own to cease all controls at 11:30 p.m. “We’re opening the floodgates now!” announced the chief officer of passport control, and the barriers were raised. The border guards gave way to the pressure from the crowds until midnight at most of the border crossings in the inner city, allowing East Berliners to cross without papers. The same thing happened until 1:00 a.m. at the border control points around Berlin and on other parts of the German-German border. Thousands of Berliners crossed the fortifications and the Wall at the Brandenburg Gate, and then strolled for several hours around Pariser Platz. Dances of joy erupted along the Wall; the symbol of the division of Germany had fallen.

The governing apparatus in East Berlin, Bonn, and in the capital cities of the Four Powers were caught by surprise. In a matter of hours, the East Germans had overpowered the armed forces of the GDR and outmaneuvered the cleverest border regime system in the world. US President George Bush managed to utter in a first reaction that he was “very pleased,” but appeared pensive and reserved. British Prime Minister Margaret Thatcher spoke of a “victory for freedom,” but was very concerned about a possible destabilization of Gorbachev’s position and the prospects for German reunification. French President François Mitterrand described the fall of the Wall as a “joyous event” and “progress for freedom in Europe.” Internally, however, he reacted with horror. Gorbachev could never accept this development, he believed; the Germans were risking a world war without realizing it. Chancellor Helmut Kohl learned of the events in Berlin during his state visit to Poland. Cut off from his most important information channels, the chancellor felt “like [he was] on another planet” in Warsaw. He interrupted his visit the next day and returned to Bonn via Berlin. The politicians in the Western capitals looked to Moscow with anticipation: How would the Soviet Union react?

While the fall of the Wall occurred during prime time television in the United States, because of the time difference, Moscow was at a disadvantage. It was two hours later there than in Berlin. When the border crossings were “flooded” and East Germans were dancing on the Wall, the Soviet leadership was sound asleep. Mikhail Gorbachev reported that “I learned what had happened during the night of 9 November on the morning of 10 November from a report from the ambassador. I asked him what the GDR leadership had done, and he started to explain the situation and told me about Schabowski’s press conference. He informed me that they had opened all border crossings along the Wall. I told him that they had taken the proper action, and asked that he inform them of that.”

The CPSU Politburo met a few hours later. As then Foreign Minister, Eduard Shevardnadze, remembered: “Before the meeting, a phone conversation took place between Mikhail Gorbachev and myself. We had made contact as usual, whenever we had to discuss such important issues […] We spoke about different options, and we only rejected one possibility from the beginning, that of the use of force […] The events were the result of a mass movement that could not be held back by any government.” While the question of whether to recreate the former status quo was not debated by the high-level politicians, such discussions occurred in the military. But, Shevardnadze said, “the Soviet Army was very disciplined and would not have done anything without a specific order. If we had used force to close the Wall, we would have started a spiral of violence that would have started World War III.” Gorbachev, according to Shevardnadze, therefore strongly recommended to the East German leadership that “they not shed blood under any circumstances.”

Since military intervention was not to be part of the equation, the Soviets’ political room for maneuver in reaction to the fall of the Wall was also very limited. Gorbachev’s conclusion was “that politics must now be guided by the people’s will.” The conclusion he drew from the situation was “We had to adapt policies to the situation at hand.” Adapting policies to the situation at hand first required an analysis and definition of the situation. To criticize the obvious incompetence of the SED leadership at this point, or to expose Krenz as a “fool” or a “dead man on vacation” in this situation, as Central Committee staffer Nikolai Portugalov later did, would only weaken the GDR further and increase the Soviet Union’s problems. Therefore, according to Portugalov, Gorbachev gave orders to back Krenz. Foreign Minister Shevardnadze explained to the press that the Soviet Union viewed the “events in the GDR entirely as an affair of the new leadership and its people, and wished them much success.” He praised the “border and travel regulations” as a “correct, clever, and wise decision.”

In the late afternoon and evening, Gorbachev sent verbal messages to Chancellor Kohl as well as François Mitterrand, Margaret Thatcher, and George Bush. The message to Kohl, passed from the Soviet ambassador in Bonn, Yuli Kvisinski, to Horst Teltscnik, the advisor to the chancellor, reached the chancellor during a rally in West Berlin. Gorbachev asked the chancellor “in the spirit of openness and realism” to take “the necessary and pressing measures to assure that a complication and destabilization of the situation is not permitted.”

With reference to what he considered the “correct and far-reaching decision of the new GDR leadership,” Gorbachev immediately informed Bush, Mitterrand and Thatcher about his message to Kohl. He expressed his concern about a possible “destabilization of the situation not only in the center of Europe but also beyond” if the “postwar realities, meaning the existence of two German states” were called into question. Gorbachev added that the Soviet ambassador in East Berlin had been told to make
contact with the representatives of the three Western Powers in West Berlin in order to work together to assure that “the events do not take an undesirable path.”

Even during the rally in Berlin, Teltschik and Kohl puzzled over whether Gorbachev’s message was “a request based on concern” about renewed spontaneous breakthroughs in the Wall or rather “a veiled threat.” Upon his return to the chancellery in Bonn, Teltschik received a call from Brent Scowcroft around midnight. The National Security Advisor to the US President informed him about the verbal message from Gorbachev to Bush. For Teltschik, the interesting part of the message was Scowcroft’s confidential notification “that Gorbachev had ordered the SED leadership to guarantee a ‘peaceful transition’ in the GDR.” This news solved the puzzle for the chancellor and his advisor: “There would not be a repetition of 17 June [1953]. Gorbachev’s message, which he also passed on to George Bush, was the request to work together to assure that politics did not allow events to spin out of control.”

The restrained reaction of President Bush and Secretary of State James Baker sent the clear message to Moscow that US foreign policy welcomed the changes in East and Central Europe, but was not hoping for instability or to gain advantage at Soviet expense.

After conversations with Thatcher, Bush, Krenz, and Mitterrand, Kohl called the Soviet party chief midday on 11 November. He assured Gorbachev that he “rejected any form of radicalization and [...] did not wish to see any destabilization of the situation in the GDR.” Gorbachev forcefully asked the chancellor to give the reforms in the GDR time to develop. “Under no circumstances,” according to Gorbachev, “should the developments be forced in an unforeseen direction, turned toward chaos [...] And I hope, that you will use your authority, your political clout, and your influence to keep others in line, as the time and its demands require.” Kohl and Teltschik both breathed a sigh of relief after this call. Teltschik wrote in his journal: “No threat, no warning, just the request to be circumspect. Now I am absolutely sure that there will not be a violent status quo ante.”

The early hopes of the SED leaders to regain control of the Wall and restore order the next day or the day after were not fulfilled. The crowds in Berlin and at the German-East and Central Europe, but was not hoping for instability or to gain advantage at Soviet expense.

After conversations with Thatcher, Bush, Krenz, and Mitterrand, Kohl called the Soviet party chief midday on 11 November. He assured Gorbachev that he “rejected any form of radicalization and [...] did not wish to see any destabilization of the situation in the GDR.” Gorbachev forcefully asked the chancellor to give the reforms in the GDR time to develop. “Under no circumstances,” according to Gorbachev, “should the developments be forced in an unforeseen direction, turned toward chaos [...] And I hope, that you will use your authority, your political clout, and your influence to keep others in line, as the time and its demands require.” Kohl and Teltschik both breathed a sigh of relief after this call. Teltschik wrote in his journal: “No threat, no warning, just the request to be circumspect. Now I am absolutely sure that there will not be a violent return to the status quo ante.”

The interpretations publicized by the Western media (“GDR opens border”), incorrect assumptions (“The border is open”), and “false” images of reality (“The gates of the Wall stand wide open!”) ultimately caused the action that allowed the assumed event and the “false” image of reality to become fact. Those television viewers who actually had only wanted to be a part of the event and therefore had hurried to the border crossings and the Brandenburg Gate actually brought about the event they thought had already happened. A fiction spread by the media took hold of the masses and thereby became reality.

The prerequisite for that occurrence was admittedly that “real existing” reality, meaning the political and military leadership of the GDR, border soldiers, passport controllers, and the people’s police did not stand in the way of these actions. The most important condition for the peaceful outcome of the storming of the Wall was, again, that the Soviet leadership under Gorbachev—after the democratic upheavals in Poland and Hungary—kept the 350,000 Soviet soldiers in the GDR in their barracks and accepted the fall of the Wall without military intervention. It is certain that they did not anticipate that the “pearl of the Soviet empire” would be lost in less than a year.

The fall of the Wall, however, created a completely new situation. With the end of the forced detention provided by the Wall, the SED government lost control of “its” citizens over night. The lack of legitimacy became obvious and led to the dissolution of the SED state. Hans Modrow, newly elected chairman of the Council of Ministers, was deprived of his most important negotiating tool with the FRG government for the billion-mark loans needed to stabilize the GDR’s economy—the people had destroyed the last real collateral in the GDR by breaking through the Wall. The people nullified Modrow’s idea of at least allowing free elections and relinquishing the party’s leadership claim in the GDR constitution in return for emergency loans from the FRG government. The mass demonstrations against the
government continued during the second half of November and forced these concessions even before the negotiations with Bonn could be completed.

Even before the fall of the Wall, the choruses of “Germany—united fatherland” were heard at demonstrations, but they were submerged in the volume of slogans. After 9 November, the choruses changed quickly: instead of “We are the people,” demonstrators chanted “We are one people.” Banners with “Germany—united fatherland,” as well as black-red-golden flags without the GDR emblem, were soon the prevalent image of demonstrations throughout the country. Leaders of citizens’ movements, authors, artists, and intellectuals, who had until then considered themselves the spokespersons and protectors of the demonstrators, distanced themselves from these new slogans. Their attempts to play on anxieties about a sell-out of “our material and moral values” and to propagate the GDR’s independence from the FRG as a “socialist alternative” to the Federal Republic, however, failed, and ended with a marginalization of the civil rights movement’s avant garde.

Movement into the FRG again rose dramatically: more than 120,000 people left the GDR from 10 November to the end of 1989; in all of 1989, 343,854 left; in January 1990, 73,729 left; in February, 63,893 left, and in March, the total was 46,241. Under the continued pressure of the demonstrations and increasingly from the SED membership, the central party structures disintegrated—the Politburo, Central Committee Secretariat, and the Central Committee dissolved themselves. The Party’s ability to direct the mass organizations also collapsed, as did the cadre nomenclature system. Without the guiding central point of the Party, the state government structures crumbled.

After the fall of the Wall and the end of the SED, which later reconstituted itself as the Party of Democratic Socialism (PDS), the Soviet Union was the last guarantee for the GDR’s existence as a state. At first, the Soviet leadership energetically opposed all tendencies toward unification by both German states. But the USSR’s internal problems—increasing nationality conflicts, severe economic and supply crises, threatening insolvency to the West, and the signs of deterioration of the Warsaw Pact—and the unstoppable deterioration of the SED’s power accelerated the recognition in January 1990 that the GDR could no longer be saved. Gorbachev agreed to unification in principle with Modrow, Baker, and, on 10 February, finally, with Kohl. The first free parliamentary elections on 18 March 1990, from which the CDU-lead “Alliance for Germany” emerged as the strongest force with 48.1% of the vote, finally presented an unambiguous statement by the East Germans in support of a rapid path to a currency, economic, and social union and to German unity.

The self-dissolution of the SED state after the collapse of the ruling system marked the German special path (Sonderweg) to the end of communist one-party rule in

Central and Eastern Europe. The reference to the German nation-state, however, was “not a new expression of a nationalistic consciousness,” as Rainer Lepsius has correctly pointed out. Rather, the nation-state was “the existing frame of reference,” which had retained its normative claim to validity throughout the years of the division of Germany.

DOCUMENT No. 1
Memorandum of Conversation Between Egon Krenz, Secretary General of the Socialist Unity Party (SED), and Mikhail S. Gorbachev, Secretary General of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union (CPSU), 1 November 1989

Top Secret
To all members and candidates of the Politburo
[1 December 1989]
signed Egon Krenz

Berlin, 1 November 1989

After the extremely friendly welcome, Comrade Egon Krenz pointed out that he had read in Pravda about the slogans by the CC CPSU on the occasion of the 72nd anniversary of the October Revolution. He had been touched in particular by the slogan “Greetings to October, greetings to the socialist countries”.

Comrade Mikhail Gorbachev expressed his pleasure about the fact that Comrade Krenz had come to Moscow even before the October [Revolution] festivities. This symbolized that both parties and countries were striving to implement the ideals of the October Revolution.

He sincerely welcomed Comrade Krenz to Moscow on behalf of all comrades of the Politburo of the CC CPSU and of the leadership of the Soviet Union as well as in his own name. Despite an extremely tight schedule, they had tried to make arrangements in order to free up this day for extensive conversations with Comrade Krenz. He [Gorbachev] was hoping in particular for vivid information on developments in the GDR. Although information about them had come in, the report by Comrade Krenz would be of extraordinary importance for him. Even the most extensive information needed to be evaluated thoroughly, and who could do this more precisely than the comrades from the GDR?

Presently, the entire world was witnessing that the SED had embarked on a course of fast changes. But the events were moving very fast as well, and one should not
fall behind. This had been the long-standing experience of the Soviet Union. Comrade Gorbachev pointed out that he had already said in Berlin [on 7 October 1989] that one must not miss the time for changes. A dialogue with society was necessary. There was no other way for a leading party to act. On the other hand, it [the Party] had to take the time to analyze the situation thoroughly and work out its political orientation. On the other hand, life was developing with its own dynamism, and one had to prevent a knot of problems from being created that could not be sorted out.

Comrade Gorbachev recommended not to be deterred by the complicated problems. From his own experience he knew that comrades were at times depressed because even after several years of perestroika in the Soviet Union there were still such great problems to resolve. He then always told them that the Party itself had wanted perestroika. It had involved the mass of people in politics. If now some processes were not running as expected, if there were stormy and emotionally charged arguments, then one would have to cope with that, too, and not become afraid of one's own people.

He did not mean to say that perestroika had been fully achieved in the Soviet Union. The horse was saddled but the ride was not over. One could still be thrown off. On the other hand, much experience had already been gained, which had great significance. Now the phase of intensified work for the continuation of perestroika was beginning in the Soviet Union.

The people and the Party in the GDR were presently also facing profound changes. He wished Comrade Krenz success for this. The Soviet Union would, of course, stand at the side of the comrades in the GDR in this process. This had never been in question, not even as problems emerged which should actually have been discussed openly. There had never been any doubt for the Soviet Union and the GDR that the German Democratic Republic was its closest friend and ally. Second to the people of the GDR, the Soviet people were probably the one wishing the GDR the most success in its endeavor. In this vein he wished to welcome Comrade Krenz to his visit in Moscow.

Comrade Egon Krenz expressed his thanks for the welcome and communicated cordial greetings from the comrades of the Politburo of the CC SED. He appreciated that Comrade Gorbachev had so quickly found time for this talk. He also thanked him for his visit to Berlin on the occasion of the 40th anniversary of the establishment of the GDR, and in particular for his conversation with the entire Politburo of the CC SED, which had moved ahead many things. This applied above all to the remark that one cannot be late [in adapting to changes], otherwise one will be punished by life [daß man nicht zu spät kommen darf, sonst werde man vom Leben bestraft werden].

Comrade Gorbachev interjected that he had actually been speaking about himself.

Comrade Krenz explained that this remark by Comrade Gorbachev and his entire appearance had met great resonance within the Politburo. It had initiated the process of discussing the future policy of the Party.

The SED could state rightfully that it had made great strides since its last party convention. On the occasion of the 40th anniversary of the establishment of the GDR, one could draw the balance that a lot of good and lasting things had been done for the people. One could also build upon a good foundation.

The population, however, resented the Party for having the mass media in particular create a world of illusion that did not coincide with the practical experience of the people and their everyday life. That caused a break of confidence between Party and people. This was actually the worst thing that could happen to a party.

Some say that the cause for this is to be found in the fact that the party leadership misjudged the domestic political situation in the last three months. It proved to be speechless when so many people left the GDR. This was a tough accusation. In addition, besides political mistakes, important psychological mistakes were also made in this difficult situation: In the newspapers it was stated that we did not weep any tears after these people left. This deeply hurt the feelings of many mothers and fathers, relatives, friends and comrades of these people whose leaving caused them great pains.

Despite these facts the Politburo of the CC of the SED agreed that the political crisis in which the GDR currently found itself had not just begun this summer. Many problems had been accumulating for a long time.

Today one can say that the main reason [for this situation] was the mistaken approach of the XI SED Party Congress, which was not based on a realistic estimate of the situation. The solution of economic questions was derived from subjective opinions that failed to reflect the opinions prevalent in the Party and the population. Incorrect conclusions were drawn from important international developments—in the Soviet Union, in other socialist countries—as well as from the domestic developments in the GDR.

Comrade Krenz asked not to be misunderstood; if one had an ally and wanted to go through thick and thin with him, one could not just state this friendship in declarations and communiqués and one should not distance oneself when it came to the solution of concrete economic and other questions. But one had to stand together as friends and solve the emerging problems together.

He saw a great problem in the fact that young as well as older people had reservations about the development of socialism in the GDR since they suddenly felt that, on the basic questions of the evolution of socialism, the Soviet Union and the GDR were not seeing eye to eye any longer. This was the GDR’s problem; the barriers had been build on its part. The people today, however, were educated and smart. They perceived very well that while the right words were used, the deeds did not follow suit.

Comrade Gorbachev interjected that the people in the GDR also received information from the Soviet Union.
which they evaluated independently. They were also informed from the West and drew their conclusions.

Comrade Krenz stated that they in the GDR had unfortunately left many questions regarding perestroika in the Soviet Union to the judgment of the enemy and failed to have a dialogue with the people about it. This happened despite the fact that Comrade Gorbachev had advised Comrade Erich Honecker at one of their first meetings to deal with the opinions which had appeared in Soviet publications and with which he disagreed.

Comrade Krenz pointed out that the prohibition of [the Soviet magazine] Sputnik in the GDR had led to a situation in which the enemy could raise questions about the GDR citizens’s right of access to information. The comrades and citizens outside the Party who complained about it were not primarily concerned about the contents of Sputnik. The problem was that the GDR leadership on the one hand was watching as the population was receiving broadcasts from the Western TV stations every evening for many hours, but, on the other hand, prohibited the reading of a Soviet newspaper. This was an important turning-point in the political thinking of GDR citizens. After the 9th Plenum of the CC of the SED [on 18 October 1989], one of the first steps to be ordered therefore was the return of Sputnik onto the list of permitted newspapers.

Comrade Gorbachev interjected that the GDR still has the right to criticize statements by Soviet news media with which it disagreed. You could read the most diverse things in Soviet newspapers nowadays; hardly anything could shock him in this regard. As an example he mentioned that a newspaper from a Baltic republic had recently cited a well-known Soviet economist to the effect that a conspiracy was being prepared in Moscow.

Comrade Krenz agreed that when the newspapers at home raise critical questions, one could quickly enter into a dialogue. Today one could hear among the GDR citizens that the [GDR TV show] "Aktuelle Kamera" was now already more interesting than Western TV [shows].

Comrade Krenz emphasized that despite all the imperfections and problems in the GDR and in face of the fact that there was still no coherent concept for the future developments, one thing had been achieved after all: The problems of the GDR were now not being brought into the GDR from the West, but were discussed in our country [by ourselves].

This was very important, Comrade Gorbachev interjected.

Comrade Krenz explained that even though he knew that Comrade Gorbachev was well informed about the developments since he personally had had many extensive conversations with [Soviet] Ambassador [Vyacheslav] Kochemassov, he nevertheless wanted to say that the road to the 9th Plenum of the CC of the SED had been very complicated.

When Comrade Krenz returned from his trip to China, he decided to act. After consultation with Comrade Willi Stoph [Deputy Chairman of the Council of State] it was agreed that he would propose a declaration by the Politburo on the current problems of the situation in the GDR. The draft of this declaration was basically very watered-down, since it was initially intended just to overcome the situation of paralysis together with Comrade Erich Honecker. Therefore they were willing to agree to a number of compromises.

Comrade Krenz handed the draft resolution to Comrade Honecker who later called him and stated the following:

1. If Comrade Krenz introduced the resolution in the Politburo, he [Honecker] would consider this as a move against him personally. He himself had never undertaken anything against Comrades Wilhelm Pieck [former GDR president (1949-1960)] and Walter Ulbricht [former SED First Secretary (1953-1971)]. Comrade Krenz commented that this was not the truth but had been stated [by Honecker] in this way.

2. Comrade Honecker declared that if Comrade Krenz introduced the resolution in the Politburo, he would divide the leadership of the Party. Comrade Honecker would try to prevent this resolution from being adopted.

3. If Comrade Krenz introduced this resolution in the Politburo against the will of Comrade Honecker, Comrade Honecker, who chaired the session, stated this fact explicitly. After a long discussion all other members of the Politburo, with the exception of one comrade, spoke out in favor of the declaration. On the evening of the first day of this two-day Politburo session, the attempt was made to constitute a commission composed of Comrades Günter Mittag [SED CC Secretary for Economics] and Joachim Herrmann [SED CC Secretary for Propaganda], along with Comrade Krenz. The objective was to water down the resolution even more. At the demand of Comrade Krenz, Comrade Günter Schabowski was involved in the work of the commission. Both fought together for the adoption of the resolution, which was eventually achieved.

Comrade Gorbachev remarked in this regard that, politically, this was all clear to him. In human terms, however, he viewed this development as a great personal tragedy for Comrade Honecker. He had always had a good personal relationship with him, and there had been no problems in this area. He had, however, noticed with surprise certain changes in Comrade Honecker within the last years. Had he [Honecker] made some basic policy changes two or three years ago at his own initiative, such deficits and difficulties as they currently existed would have been neither necessary nor possible. Comrade Erich Honecker obviously considered himself No. 1 in socialism, if not in the world. He did not really perceive any more
what was actually going on.

Comrade Krenz explained that he had personally been very much affected by this development since he had been close to Comrade Erich Honecker throughout much of his life.

Comrade Gorbachev interjected that this had also caused a certain amount of speculation in the West. But they should not be afraid of this.

Comrade Krenz went on to say that the change of Comrade Honecker had occurred in 1985 when Comrade Gorbachev was elected as secretary general of the CC of the CPSU. Suddenly, Comrade Honecker saw himself confronted with a young dynamic leader who approached new questions in very unconventional ways. Until that time he had viewed himself in that role. Slowly he lost his sense of reality. The worst thing was that he relied less and less on the collective and more and more on Comrade Günter Mittag.

Comrade Gorbachev asked about the role of Comrade Joachim Herrmann.

Comrade Krenz explained that Comrade Herrmann had, for the most part, followed orders by Comrade Honecker without his own input. Comrade Mittag, by contrast, had manipulated Comrade Honecker, created mistrust toward other members of the Politburo, and influenced tactical as well as strategic decisions by Comrade Honecker in selfish ways.

Comrade Krenz reported that the Politburo had discussed an analysis of the economic situation yesterday. Prior to the meeting they had requested to get an untarnished picture of the real situation of the GDR economy. Such an analysis had never before been discussed in the Politburo.

Comrade Gorbachev pointed out that he had found himself in the same situation. He had also had no knowledge about the state budget when he became secretary general. As early as during the tenure of Comrade [Yuri] Andropov [CPSU General Secretary from 1982 to 1984], he had and Comrade [Nikolay] Ryzhkov [President of the Council of Ministers of the Soviet Union (1985 to 1990)] had been tasked to analyze the situation of the economy since it was felt that something was rotten there. But when they tried to find out the full truth they were ordered to back off. Today it was clear to him why this had happened. Basically a national budget no longer existed. They were still coping with the consequences today.

Comrade Krenz explained that they had begun the 9th Plenum on the premise that they would face up to the truth. But if he stated the truth about the state of the economy before the CC, this could cause a shock with bad consequences.

Comrade Gorbachev interjected that they had known about the real state of the GDR economy in the Soviet Union. They also were informed about the relations with the FRG and about the problems that were arising in that respect. The Soviet Union had always tried to fulfill its obligations towards the GDR. Apart from the fact that 2 million tons of oil [deliveries] had to be canceled due to great domestic problems, they had always understood that the GDR could not function without the help of Soviet Union. This support was the internationalist responsibility of the Soviet Union. They had wondered at the same time, however, why, given this situation, the GDR [leaders] was constantly lecturing about GDR successes. This was particularly hard to take since they knew about the real situation in the GDR. Comrade Gorbachev said that he once tried to talk to Comrade Honecker about the GDR debt. This had been curtly repudiated by him [Honecker] as such problems would not exist [in the GDR]. Comrade Honecker apparently thought he was the savior of his homeland. The entire development was a great personal tragedy for him.

Since he held such a high office, this [personal tragedy] turned into a political tragedy. Comrade Gorbachev emphasized he had tried to maintain a good personal relationship until the end. This had not been easy as he was aware of Comrade Honecker’s statements and real opinion. He had, however, tolerated this since other things were more important.

Comrade Krenz emphasized that one had to take into consideration that many comrades had been aware of the problems for a long time. They, however, remained silent to maintain the unity and cohesion of the Party. He had distinctly realized for the first time in the Politburo session on 31 October 1989, how much of an impediment the [otherwise] correct principle of unity and cohesion could become in certain situations when problems are not faced frankly and honestly.

Comrade Gorbachev expressed his conviction that if Comrade Honecker had not been so blind and had not relied exclusively on Comrade Mittag, but had also consulted with Comrade Krenz or Comrade Stoph, things might have developed differently. He had particularly felt badly for Comrade Stoph because he had effectively been very much humiliated by Comrade Honecker.

Comrade Gorbachev remarked that he had been struck particularly badly by the way Comrade [Hans] Modrow [SED leader in Saxony] had been treated.

Comrade Krenz related on this point that he had actually received an order as early as two years ago to depose Comrade Modrow. Back then the artists at two Dresden theaters had demanded to implement perestroika in the GDR, too. Comrade Honecker was on vacation during that time. He called Comrade Krenz on the phone and ordered him to go to Dresden. There he was to lead the discussion with the objective of deposing Comrade Modrow. Comrade Krenz went to Dresden and had a very frank talk with Comrade Modrow. They found a tactical solution to the effect that Comrade Modrow was to be criticized but not dismissed from his office.

Comrade Gorbachev said that Comrade Krenz had addressed a very deep and important issue, namely that a mere formal unity within the Party was to be avoided. Unity had to be created based on a variety of opinions [and] respect for the opinion of others. Problems always
Comrade Krenz explained that the GDR had to take on new loans in order to pay off old debts. Currently, they had to spend USD 4.5 billion on interest payments alone, which equaled 62 percent of the annual export profits in foreign currency.

Comrade Krenz emphasized that the high foreign debt was created above all because they had to take on loans at very high interests during the time of the Western financial blockade of the socialist countries. The situation grew particularly precarious due to simultaneously emerging new demands on the economy and new expectations by the population that could not be satisfied. The state of the balance of payments was currently not known in the GDR. If one would go on realistically and base the standard of living exclusively on the own production, one would have to lower it [the living standard] by 30 percent immediately. But this was not feasible politically.

Comrade Krenz gave the following advice on the issue based on his experience: Comrade Krenz and the SED leadership generally had to find a way to tell the population that it had lived beyond their means in the last few years. Comrade Krenz could not yet be held personally responsible for this. But it was increasingly necessary to tell the full truth. First one needed time for a comprehensive analysis. But later full information [of the population] was unavoidable, since otherwise Comrade Krenz would be blamed himself for the growing difficulties. Slowly the population had to already get used to this idea today. […]

[Comrade Krenz] stated that he also agreed with the remarks by Comrade Gorbachev on the relationship with the FRG. He asked [Gorbachev] to explain more clearly what role the USSR ascribed to the FRG and the GDR in the all-European house. This was of great significance for the development of relations between the GDR and the FRG. He went on to explain that there was an important difference between the GDR and other socialist countries. The GDR was, in a certain sense, the child of the Soviet Union, and one had to acknowledge one’s paternity with regard to one’s children.

Comrade Gorbachev agreed with this and made reference to a conversation between Comrade Yakovlev and [former US National Security Advisor to President Carter] Zbigniew Brzezinski. They had, among other things, discussed whether one could imagine a situation in which the reunification of Germany could become a reality. Brzezinski emphasized that to him this would be the collapse.

Comrade Gorbachev welcomed Comrade Krenz bringing up this question. The GDR, the Soviet Union, and the other socialist countries had thus far followed a correct course on this question. This [course] had led to the recognition of the existence of two German states, to the international recognition of the GDR, to its active role in the world, to the conclusion of the [1970] Moscow Treaty, and other treaties, and ultimately to the [1975] Helsinki Conference.

In recent talks with [British Prime Minister] Margaret
Thatcher, [French President] François Mitterrand, [Polish leader Gen. Wojciech] Jaruzelski and [Italian Prime Minister Giulio] Andreotti, it had become clear that all these politicians presumed the preservation of the postwar realities, including the existence of two German states. They all viewed the question of German unity as extremely explosive in the current situation. Nor did they want the Warsaw Pact and NATO to dissolve, and therefore they favored Poland’s and Hungary’s remaining in the Warsaw Pact. The balance of power in Europe was not to be disturbed since nobody knew what repercussions this would have.

Even the US had thus far taken a similar attitude. However, currently many discussions among the FRG’s allies were taking place. One sympathized in words with the FRG’s concerns about a divided Germany. There were some nuances in the USA in this regard which would still have to be analyzed.

Comrade Shakhnazarov interjected that those statements were probably all made for domestic consumption.

Comrade Gorbachev agreed and emphasized that in practice the US was continuing its old policy. To his mind, the best policy now was to continue the current line. [Former West German Chancellor] Willy Brandt was of the same opinion. He had declared that for him the disappearance of the GDR would be a spectacular defeat for Social Democracy since it considered the GDR as a great achievement of socialism. While he distanced himself from the communists, he nevertheless considered Social Democracy as a branch of the labor movement and continued to cling to the socialist idea. [Egon] Bahr [West German Social Democratic Party (SPD) leader] had expressed this openly [and] with much clarity.

For the socialist countries, Comrade Gorbachev emphasized, the best thing was to emphasize that the current situation was a result of history. Nobody could ignore, however, that manifold human contacts existed between the two German states. These [contacts] could not be prevented; one had to keep them under control and steer them in the right direction. For this reason it was necessary to make some changes in policy to gain the understanding of the populace. Comrade Gorbachev offered that they could consult with the Soviet comrades about this question.

It would be very damaging to reduce or even sever the relations between the GDR and the FRG. In this connection, he [Gorbachev] wanted to point out the following factors:

1. It was important to improve coordination of the relations in the triangle GDR—FRG—Soviet Union. He had also talked about this with Comrade Honecker. The Soviet Union knew from other sources how relations between the GDR and the FRG were developing. They even knew within three days what had been discussed in the National Security Council of the United States. On the other hand, the US was also well-informed about developments in the Soviet Union. Such after all was the situation. Therefore it was completely unnecessary to keep secrets from close allies.

Comrade Gorbachev pointed out that years ago there had been a joint office which coordinated the relations of the GDR and the Soviet Union with the FRG. At the time, it had been headed by Comrades Mittag and [Nikolai] Tikhonov [Chairman of the Council of Ministers, 1980-85]. It had silently ceased its activities, but it had to be revived.

Comrade Krenz mentioned that Comrade Honecker had been pleased that he could decide on trips to the FRG or China on his own. He very much favored finding ways at the working level through which common policies towards the FRG and West Berlin would be better coordinated. Comrade Gorbachev recommended discussing this question in the Politburo of the SED CC or in an even smaller circle.

2. It was also important to consider the relationships within this triangle very carefully. The Soviet Union was trying to bring the FRG as a partner into a closer relationship. Then the GDR would also be in a more favorable position within this triangle. Efforts in this direction were being made in the FRG. [The FRG] was ready to cooperate with the Soviet Union on a broad set of issues, but expected that the Soviet Union would lend support with regard to reunification. There was talk that the key to this lay in Moscow. The Americans stated this as well. This was a very convenient excuse for them. In their talks with the FRG, they spoke of their support for reunification, but always pointed to Moscow’s key role. Moscow was to be handed the “black Peter.” On the other hand, the US was not pleased by the rapprochement between Bonn and Moscow in the economic and political field. In practical terms, not much had happened thus far. And one should not rush anything in this area either because the FRG representatives needed time.

For the GDR it was important to maintain and continually develop its relationship with the FRG. One had to be careful to prevent the ideological enemy from gaining positions—which he could exploit. Thus the GDR would continue to receive raw materials from the Soviet Union, and at the same time cautiously develop its relationship with the FRG, avoiding a total embrace by the FRG.

3. It was important for the GDR to develop its relations with other nations besides the FRG. Here, too, they could work closely with the Soviet Union. Hungary and Poland were already very active in this field. They, after all, had no choice in this matter. It was often asked what the USSR would do in this situation. But it could do very little in economic terms. It was an absurdity to think that the Soviet Union could support 40 million Poles. The root of the problem lay with [former Polish leader Edward] Gierak who had taken on loans totaling US$ 48 billion. Meanwhile the Polish comrades had already paid back US$ 52 billion and still owed US$ 49 billion.

In 1987 Comrade [Hungarian leader János] Kádár was given an ultimatum by the [international] M[onetary]
Comrade Krenz pointed out that this was not our way. Comrade Gorbachev emphasized that such problems also existed in the GDR-FRG relationship. One was aware in the Soviet Union that GDR microelectronics were based to a large degree on Western components. Comrade Krenz remarked that [State Security Chief] Comrade [Erich] Mielke and his department were partly responsible for this. Moreover, Soviet components were also used. As a result, one had to collaborate more closely today. But it had to be a balanced collaboration with clearly set priorities.

Summing up, Comrade Gorbachev remarked that one had to continue the current policy, which had brought about success. The GDR and its people could be proud of that.

There was no reason to speculate how the German Question would eventually be resolved. The current realities had to be taken into consideration. This was most important.

If the tendency of rapprochement in Europe would continue for several decades, if the processes of integration would develop regardless of social systems, but in recognition of independent developments of politics and culture, development, and traditions, and if the exchange of intellectual and material goods evolved further, then the issue might present itself in a different light sometime. But today this was not a problem of actual policy. The established line had to be continued in the current political situation. Comrade Gorbachev asked Comrade Krenz to communicate this to the comrades in the Politburo. There was an understanding about this between the Soviet Union and its former partners from the era of the Anti-Hitler Coalition.

Comrade Krenz pointed out that this policy had to be secured in ideological terms. Comrade Honecker posed the well known five-demands of Gera in the early 1980s. On the one hand, the GDR had concluded numerous mutually beneficial treaties with the FRG since then; the FRG, on the other hand, had not shown any movement on any of these five demands. This had led to certain mistaken assumptions within the GDR. Since many prominent GDR representatives traveled to the FRG, average citizens were also demanding this right. There was a lot of talk about universal human values, but that had created a general German problem. Therefore the issue of de-ideologizing the FRG-GDR relationship was a very difficult question. The issue posed itself differently in relationships between other countries. De-ideologizing relations would mean abandoning the defense of socialism. Questions like the wall or the border regime with the GDR would arise anew. The GDR found itself in the difficult situation of having to defend these somehow anachronistic, but nevertheless necessary things.

Comrade Gorbachev expressed his opinion that this all had to be reconsidered. The time was ripe for this. If the GDR could not find a solution which allowed people to visit their relatives, then this would be a very dissatisfying state of affairs for GDR society. The GDR would be threatened by new ultimatums. It had to take the initiative in its own hands. The Soviet Union was ready to talk about such measures. The GDR would have a better feel for what had to be done. It was certainly necessary to take some concrete steps which, however, had to be linked constantly with certain obligations and actions by the other side. It was time to exert greater pressure on Chancellor Kohl, now that he had established contacts with Comrade Gorbachev and Comrade Krenz. In the FRG, the national question was heavily exploited in politics. There were people in the government parties who wanted to get rid of Kohl. He, however, had put his bets on the nationalist issue. There were even more extreme demands from the right wing. The CDU [Bundestag] delegate [Jürgen] Todenhöfer had issued a letter to the US and Soviet Union demanding the immediate reunification of Germany. There was wild speculation about this subject in the FRG.

Comrade Krenz explained the envisioned measures to be taken by the GDR with regard to this set of issues:

1. The GDR will try to prevent any use of firearms along the border. The border guards had been instructed accordingly. They would only fire if there was acute danger to the life and health of the border guards.
2. The draft of a new travel law had been adopted by the Politburo and had been sent to the Council of Ministers, which would put it up for public discussion. [The draft law] was to be adopted by the Volkskammer [GDR Parliament] before Christmas.
3. Unfortunately, the GDR was unable to provide travelers with sufficient foreign exchange. One could not continue to live over one’s means. The publication of the travel law would be accompanied by a commentary which would explain that the foreign exchange generated by the FRG citizens travelling to the GDR would not be sufficient to provide GDR travelers with foreign currency.

Comrade Gorbachev suggested that one option would be the gradual achievement of convertibility of the GDR mark. This would be an incentive for workers to work harder, to strive for higher productivity and quality, by means of which such goals would be obtained.

Comrade Krenz explained further steps by the SED leadership over the next few days and weeks. On 8 November 1989, the 10th Plenum of the CC would be convened. It was to find an answer to the question of the GDR’s future. If there was no serious answer to this question, the party leadership would continue to come under criticism by the CC.

Comrade Gorbachev repeated that the international reaction about the speech by Comrade Krenz before the Volkskammer in particular had been very positive.
Following his speech at the 9th Plenum of the SED CC, skepticism had been pervasive. The reaction had been very cautious. Now it was important to deepen the positive impression further.

Comrade Krenz pointed out that the instructions given to the Soviet ambassadors in various countries had contributed much in this regard.

Comrade Gorbachev informed [Krenz] that he had received positive responses from all the important statesmen to which he had turned.

Comrade Krenz reported that he had received congratulatory telegrams from them all, including Chancellor Kohl. He had had a brief phone conversation with the latter. Kohl pointed out his constant contact with Comrade Gorbachev and recommended that this would also be done with Comrade Krenz. Comrade Krenz responded that it was always better to speak with each other than to talk about each other. Kohl immediately brought up concrete proposals with regard to transit traffic, environmental issues, relations with West Berlin, etc [...]. Comrade Krenz agreed to explore all concrete questions with the Chancellor’s representative. Kohl above all wanted to speak about questions on which agreement was possible, not about those on which both sides disagreed. Comrade Krenz pointed out to Kohl explicitly that both the GDR and the FRG had their own interests. He [Kohl] had to expect that he [Krenz] would represent GDR interests more consistently than had heretofore been the case. Kohl had been very excited during the conversation. He frequently did not finish his sentences.

Comrade Gorbachev stated that Kohl was not an intellectual heavyweight, but rather a petit-bourgeois type. It was these classes that understood him best. But he was nevertheless a talented and stubborn politician. After all, even Reagan had been popular and had stayed in power relatively long. This also applied to Kohl.

Comrade Krenz predicted that the 10th Plenum of the SED CC would be a very stormy session. Many comrades were preparing for it and wanted to take the floor. The discussion had not been officially prepared. The times of deference toward the Politburo were over. The question was sharply raised as to the responsibility of the Politburo collective for the current situation. This also concerned his own personal responsibility. He hoped that they would find a smart answer to the question.

The Plenum was to adopt an action program. The reason was that the 7th and 8th Plenums of the CC had been overtaken by the events. The envisioned action program was to briefly outline the direction of future work. They would try to answer the question as to what constituted a better, more modern and attractive socialism, which socialist values had to be defended and which ones were questionable.

The Plenum would discuss radical economic reforms. The government would obtain the task to formulate the main directions. It was clear that the answer had to be found in socialism, not in the free market.

The second question concerned the broad development of socialist democracy. A series of new laws were in preparation. Elections posed a big problem. It had already been stated that we would use all experiences of previous elections and wanted to prepare a new election law. One would deal with constitutional issues, such as freedom of the press, glasnost, and freedom and dignity of the individual. The issues of the leading role of the Party under the new conditions had to be discussed. They had to further develop criticism and self-criticism in order to avoid subjectivism. The changes ranged as far as the proposal to set a term limit on the official tenure of the office of general secretary and other high officials.


Comrade Gorbachev had a very high opinion of Comrade Stoph. He had been in a difficult situation in recent years. He had maintained his dignity when he was forced into a corner by Comrade Mittag. He had consistently taken a very principled position in decisive situations. One must not throw all old comrades into one pot.

Comrade Krenz expressed his regret about the case of Comrade [Free German Union League (FDGB) Harry] Tisch. He was now forced to resign. The reason was that he had made a major political mistake during a TV broadcast. He had blamed responsibility for the current situation above all on the lower functionaries. According to him, the union officials had not fulfilled their duties because they had listened too much to the party secretaries in the factories. This had evoked great outrage among the union members. In the Politburo they agreed not to decide the matter here in order not to diminish the independence of the unions. For now the FDGB leadership had postponed its decision on this issue until 17 November. But even that was not accepted by many union members. There was even talk about the possibility of a split of the union if Comrade Tisch did not resign. Meanwhile Comrade Krenz had received a call to the effect that Comrade Tisch would resign immediately.

On the subject of the still on-going demonstrations, Comrade Krenz stated that the situation was not easy. The composition of the demonstrators was diverse. Some real enemies were working among them. A large part were dissatisfied [citizens] or fellow-travelers. The SED leadership was determined to resolve political problems by political means. The demonstrations would be legalized, and there would be no police action against them.
The situation, however, was developing according to its own dynamics. For the weekend, a large demonstration with possibly half a million participants was planned in Berlin. It had been initiated by artists and some of their associations.

Comrade Gorbachev provided the following information in this regard: Prior to his visit, he had received a letter from the GDR League of Culture through Raissa Maximovna Gorbachev in her function in the Soviet Culture Fond. [The letter] described the situation in the GDR and pointed out that the League of Culture would address an appeal to the GDR people if they had not received a response from the Party leadership by the time of the anniversary of the [GDR].

Comrade Krenz confirmed that if Erich Honecker had given a different kind of speech on the occasion of the anniversary [of the GDR], the situation might have taken a different course. With regard to the demonstration, the Politburo had decided to call on party members to participate. Comrade Schabowski would be among the 17 speakers in order to prevent the opposition from remaining among itself at this demonstration. They wanted to do everything to assure a peaceful event but had to take certain precautionary measures. One measure was to prevent the masses from attempting to break through the Wall. This would be bad because the police would have to be deployed and certain elements of martial law would have to be introduced. But such a development was not very likely, but one had to be prepared.

They expected the following slogans at the demonstration:

- Naming those responsible for the current situation
- Resignation of the senior Politburo members
- Changes in the composition of the government
- Travel opportunities
- Changes in the status of the union and the youth organization
- New electoral law
- Recognition of the opposition
- Abolishment of privileges
- Freedom of the press and thought
- Improvement of the living standard and continual production.

They were currently trying to avoid any criminalization of the demonstrators and to proceed very carefully. The question of recognizing the [opposition movement] “Neues Forum” had not yet been determined. So far they were unable to evaluate fully their political orientation. One had to avoid any developments similar to that of Solidarity in Poland.

Comrade Gorbachev shared Soviet experiences on these questions from the first phase of perestroika. Back then, many informal organizations and other movements were created. The leadership had watched them with skepticism. Good and bad [movements] were thrown into one pot. That way time was lost in certain republics. They failed to integrate these movements into the activities of the Party, which in turn created polarization. Some of these forces developed into an opposition against the policy of perestroika and represented separatist, nationalist and anti-socialist views.

One should not waste any time with regard to these questions. Anti-socialist and criminal elements were one thing. But one could not generally consider the people as the enemy. If it rose against [the political leadership], one had to consider what political changes had to be made so that it accorded with the interests of the people and socialism. One should not miss the [right] point in time so that such movements would get on the other side of the barricades. The Party should not shy away from such problems, it had to work with these forces. They were now doing this in the Soviet Union, but it was already very late. These organizations had brought about their own leaders and worked out their own principles.

Where anti-Sovietism was involved, communists had no business being there. But for the most part they [these opposition groups] were concerned workers who worried about numerous neglected questions.

Comrade Krenz confirmed that the SED would approach the problem in this manner. But this would be a long process.

With regard to the remarks by Comrade Gorbachev, Comrade Krenz asked to check if the exchange of experience with the CC departments of the CPSU on a number of questions, with regard to which the Soviet Union had already accumulated many years of experience, could be expanded. This related to the fields of party organizations, security questions, and others. Generally, the exchange of know-how between the departments of the Central Committee should be intensified again.

Comrade Gorbachev welcomed this suggestion. Comrade Krenz stated that the SED would again send cadres from training to Soviet party schools in the near future.

Comrade Krenz pointed out some currently unresolved problems in the field of economic cooperation. They included:

- an improved usage of the ferry connection Mukran-Klaipeda, which was of great significance for imports and exports;
- mutual improvements in living up to contractual obligations;
- examination of the possibility of a further increase in natural gas deliveries from the USSR, which the GDR would greatly appreciate;
- an agreement on further deliveries of the “Lada” automobile to the GDR, given that at the moment questions about the supply of consumer goods for the population, among others with cars, play a crucial role in the debate. This was a result of the enormous budget deficit. Liquidity among the
Comrade Gorbachev confirmed this in the case of the Soviet Union as well.

Comrade Krenz emphasized that, for the SED, the decisive issue was to restore the harmony [of hearts] with the CPSU and the USSR which was vital for us. The Soviet side had always been ready for this, but on our side there had been certain impediments. He wanted to declare on behalf of the Politburo of the CC of the SED that both parties should return to the method of frankly and honestly raising all questions of concern. The calls for “Gorbi, Gorbi” during the demonstrations in Berlin had shown that it was impossible to destroy the good relationship of the young people and the GDR entire population with the Soviet Union, even if the leadership had failed in this respect.

Comrade Gorbachev reported that the greatest difficulty for him in participating in the 40th anniversary of the GDR had been that he had been aware of the mood, and that he had felt very uncomfortable standing at Erich Honecker’s side.

Comrade Krenz interjected that he had even been accused of organizing this mood, especially among the young people. But it was simply a free expression of the attitude of the people.

Comrade Gorbachev emphasized that the visit of Comrade Krenz so shortly after his election was extraordinarily important for mutual agreement at the beginning of a new era. The point was to demonstrate jointly that they stood with each other, that the development in the Soviet Union was close to the one in the GDR, and vice versa. This was also important for the other socialist countries and for the entire world. In the FRG they were also interested in what Gorbachev and Krenz had agreed upon.

Comrade Gorbachev emphasized that he, in principle, shared all of the thoughts Comrade Krenz had expressed. They were dictated by the actual situation. For the SED it was now very important not to lose the initiative. The processes were developing very dynamically and could accelerate in pace. The party leadership had to react accordingly. It would be a great tragedy if the development would gain in spontaneity or lose its political orientation. This would create a situation, in which there was no other resort. Then it might be possible that mistaken slogans would dominate the situation and the situation could be exploited by other forces. Comrade Gorbachev pointed out that he had made his own experiences in this respect. Due to the hesitation by the [Soviet] leadership some problems had increased sharply: this concerned above all the economy. Comrade Krenz had emphasized correctly that the next plenum had to give an evaluation of the difficult situation. This evaluation had to be balanced but decisive. Comrade Gorbachev recalled in this context the January 1987 Plenum of the CC of the CPSU. There it was stated for the first time that the Party would take responsibility for the current situation. Simultaneously, a concrete program of perestroika was proposed. It was possible that the development in the GDR could take different stages. But for the reputation of the GDR it was extraordinarily important that he approached the problems with great responsibility and great respect for the truth. Otherwise nobody would believe him.

Comrade Krenz interjected that there already was criticism of the fact that comrade Honecker’s resignation had been explained in terms of bad health.

In Comrade Gorbachev’s opinion, here as well further explanations were necessary.

Comrade Gorbachev commented as correct to indicate at the plenum first outlines of the policy of the next era and adopt a respective action program. A detailed plan was not yet to be made public since this might make the secretary general seem hypocritical as he obviously was not taking the time to study and consider thoroughly proposals and recommendations from all sides. But the main directions of the action program were already becoming evident—more socialism, renewal, democratization. One would carry on what had been good and useful in the past. This, for example, concerned the social orientation of the GDR economy, which had always been its strong suit. This should not be abandoned. This was an asset of the GDR.

In the field of cadre policy, decisive changes were certainly imminent at the plenum. As an old communist, Comrade Mielke certainly wanted to set an example for others with his resignation. This made it possible for Comrade Krenz to separate cadre questions from the substantive question of perestroika. Certainly there was no question of a collective resignation of the Politburo or the cabinet but profound changes in the leadership were by no doubt necessary. The plenum had to take the first step. He recommended to elect a few intelligent and innovative figures from the CC to the Politburo and to adopt prominent representatives of culture and academia as members or candidates of the CC as well. This would increase the reputation of the bodies. With regard to Comrade Honecker, he could certainly still be defended within the plenum but it was questionable whether that was still feasible with regard to the people. The people had risen and today stated their opinion frankly. Therefore they had to respond not only to the Plenum of the CC but also to the people. In this respect as well it was necessary not to miss the signs of the times. Society would continue to pose the question of responsibility for the situation, and for this reason profound leadership changes were due, too.

Despite determined policy changes, a complete negation of the past was to be avoided. This would also be disrespectful of the people who had made the previous achievements of the GDR. One also had to find a form of dialectical negation whereby one kept the good that contributed to the strengthening of socialism and added as new what life produced.

Comrade Gorbachev emphasized that Comrade Krenz
had the reputation of being a man of courage. A secretary general could not avoid the problems either but had to face them; he had to act in consideration of the concrete situation and accurately assess changes in society. Coming up with new ideas and implementing them—all this was expected from a secretary general.

Comrade Gorbachev expressed his full agreement with Comrade Krenz on relations with the FRG. It was necessary to revitalize cooperation and coordination between the GDR and the Soviet Union. Each of them was well aware of the other’s relationships with the FRG. One therefore ought not to make a secret out of it but cooperate and take advantage of it. The FRG, too, had the necessary information and was very interested in cooperating. Comrade Krenz was right in thinking that the parties should increasingly be put in control of cooperation. He therefore welcomed the proposal to intensify again the exchange of experience between the departments of the Central Committees. The same applied to the CC secretaries.

The working-level and close contacts in this field were, however, most important. The joint work of the academies of social sciences ought to be strengthened as well. In this connection, Comrade Gorbachev inquired about the fate of Comrade [Otto] Reinhold. He had always been viewed as working especially closely with Comrade Honecker.

Comrade Krenz stated that Comrade Reinhold had also changed his mind [Wende vollzogen]. This had practically happened overnight. He was criticized for a remark he made in a TV discussion during which he apologized for previous statements that had been specifically ascribed to him.

Comrade Gorbachev remarked jokingly that Comrade Otto Reinhold had written about the 10 deviations from Marxism-Leninism by Comrade Gorbachev.

Comrade Krenz also informed about the fate of Comrade Hans Albrecht, the former first secretary of the district leadership in Suhl. He did not cope with his work any longer. In addition, there existed resentment in the CC about an unprecedented statement by him about the secretary general of the CPSU CC. He had remarked at the last CC Plenum that Comrade Gorbachev had not performed in a class-conscious manner during his last visit to the FRG. Comrade Albrecht would no longer be serving as first secretary of the district leadership already in the coming days.

Comrade Gorbachev explained that it was now necessary to revive creative Marxism, socialism in a Leninist way, the humanistic and democratic socialism in which man really felt that this was his society and not an elite society. This process was not easy to implement. Of this he had become aware during his visit to Cuba. There had been a tense atmosphere initially. He himself, however, had explained that perestroika resulted from the development of the Soviet Union, and was necessary for the solution of Soviet problems. The question of whether socialism in the Soviet Union would succeed or fail was of importance for the entire world, including Cuba. The Soviet Union on the other hand welcomed all measures, which the C[ommunist] P[arty of] Cuba thought necessary under its conditions. They trusted its responsibility and its competence. It was important, Comrade Gorbachev explained, that revolutionary perestroika could not be forced upon anybody. Even in the GDR the situation had to develop to this point, which now made the process very difficult and painful.

Comrade Gorbachev pointed out that he had always exercised the greatest restraint towards the comrades in the GDR. The objective had been to avoid any ill feeling in the relationship, even though they were well aware of the situation in the GDR. They had been patient because they understood that the Party and all of society had to mature first before making these changes.

Today the important thing in the socialist countries was that each of them had to think on its own. On the other hand there were certain criteria and main characteristics for socialism in all countries.

Comrade Gorbachev reported at the conclusion of his conversation on domestic problems in the Soviet Union. He related that he would continue that same day discussions with leading economists. Very controversial debates on the future development of the Soviet Union were currently taking place in all fields. Some demanded the re-introduction of private property of the means of production, and the employment of capitalistic methods; others demanded the admission of more political parties. There were arguments about whether the Soviet Union ought to continue as a federation or confederation. In the economic field in particular, these debates were increasingly of a principled [ideological] character.

There were already comrades who had a different idea about the economic development and attempted to force capitalistic prescriptions upon the CPSU out of disappointment over previous failures. The workers had realized this immediately and reacted with demands to strengthen the dictatorship of the proletariat. There were also calls for a return to the old administrative command system. This would, however, be a great tragedy for the Soviet Union.

The current arguments illustrated clearly that perestroika was a true revolution. Comrade Gorbachev expressed with great determination, however, that he would not let the confrontation develop to the point of civil war or bloodshed. The situation, however, was very tense, and they were dealing with a true political battle. Therefore it was necessary to prove that socialism was capable of constant development, of perfection, and full realization of its potential. It was a weakness of socialism that changes in the leadership could lead to severe shake-ups at any time. The reason for this was that the people were not involved in the decisions [and] that the democratic mechanisms were not fully working. They had to be put in full action. It was important to further consolidate society, to mobilize its creative forces, and to achieve clarity on the kind of socialist society they wanted to build. All concrete proposals and constructive ideas were welcome. A current
problem in the Soviet Union was the debate with those who seriously called for a return to private ownership of the means of production. For this purpose some had even come up with quotes from Marx and Lenin by which they attempted to prove that private property did not have to mean exploitation. To their minds, the main problem was the character of power by which private property could be put to use for or against the people.

Comrade Gorbachev pointed out that there could well exist forms of private property—in manufacture, in the countryside—as it, for example, was the case in the GDR. But this was not individual property. These minor forms were, however, not a major problem for a socialist society. There existed, however, forces in the Soviet Union that wanted to go much further. Comrade Gorbachev predicted that the GDR would also face such discussions, even more so since the capitalist example was so close geographically. In addition, the FRG was a very wealthy capitalist country the existence of which would be ever present in the political debates.

Comrade Krenz expressed that his decision to act had been made when he realized during the conversation between Comrade Gorbachev with the Politburo of the SED CC that Comrade Honecker did not comprehend the statements by Comrade Gorbachev, or did not want to understand them.

Comrade Gorbachev stated that he had had the impression during that conversation that he was throwing peas against a wall. He did not hold any grudge against Comrade Honecker but was only sad that he had not initiated this change of course himself two or three years ago. This period could have been the highpoint of his life. After all, the GDR had achieved very much under his leadership. All this had been achieved together with the Party and the people. Under no circumstances should this [fact] therefore be denied. That would be disrespectful of the people who then would have basically lived in vain. This development had to be viewed in dialectical terms. The progress of society, the prologue for the future, and the great potential had to be considered, as well as the factors that had recently slowed down the development of society.

Comrade Krenz agreed and expressed his thanks in cordial terms for the extensive and profound conversation.


DOCUMENT No. 2
Cover Note from Alexander Schalck to Egon Krenz,
6 November 1989

WITH ATTACHMENT,

“Notes on an Informal Conversation between Comrade Alexander Schalck and Minister of the Chancellery Rudolf Seiter and CDU Board Member Wolfgang Schäuble on 6 November 1989”

Dear Comrade Krenz!

I enclose the notes on the conversations with Federal Minister Seiter and CDU Board member Schäuble.

Seiter will, in the course of this evening have an opportunity, together with Schäuble, to inform the Chancellor [about the conversation]. If this should already result in useful items, he [Seiter] will inform me on 7 November 1989, by phone.

I ask for acknowledgement and determination of further steps.

On the basis of the authority currently given to me for the informal negotiations with the government of the FRG, I ask you cordially that you agree that I should not take part in any public discussions (including television) in order to prevent any informally discussed options from being leaked to the public by potential mishaps on my part. Should these negotiations reach a conclusion, I will, of course, be further available to the media, pending your permission.

With socialist greetings
[Schalck’s signature]

ATTACHMENT

Notes on an informal conversation between Comrade Alexander Schalck and Federal Minister and Chief of the Chancellery, Rudolf Seiter, and CDU Board member Wolfgang Schäuble, 6 November 1989

Continuing the informal conversation of 24 October 1989, I first repeated the GDR’s basic positions on further political and economic cooperation with the government of the FRG and the West Berlin Senate. I emphasized that the GDR was prepared, in implementing the obligations accepted in the CSCE process, to renew societal development. I also emphasized that the SED was prepared to cooperate constructively with the other democratic parties in a manner that served socialism and the interests of the GDR.
Within the framework of the decision to develop laws to guarantee the rule of law, the criminal code of the GDR will be amended to expand personal freedom, freedom of expression, and other issues to meet the new requirements.

To secure tourist and visitor traffic, the GDR is prepared to implement generous regulations for travel between the capital of the GDR and West Berlin via newly opened border crossings.

The implementation of these measures will create significant financial and material costs.

It is assumed that the FRG will cover these expenses to a great extent.

It was pointed out that the GDR is prepared to develop economic cooperation, including new forms like joint ventures and capital sharing in certain branches and sectors. It is assumed that the FRG government will take over the necessary loans in the cases of smaller and mid-sized businesses.

The GDR would be prepared to take out long-term loans up to ten billion VE, backed by collateral [objektgebunden] in the next two years that would be financed by the new [economic] capacity that will be created. It is assumed that repayment of the loans will begin after full production begins, and the loans are to be paid out over a period of at least ten years.

Further, the GDR sees the necessity of discussing additional lines of credit in hard currencies beginning in 1991 and totaling DM 2-3 billion to meet the demands connected with the new level of cooperation in a number of areas.

In light of the planned visit by Federal Minister Seiters to the GDR on 30 November 1989 and his official conversations with the General Secretary of the SED Central Committee and Chairman of the State Council of the GDR, Egon Krenz, as well as with Foreign Minister Oskar Fischer. Seiters was informed that the GDR is prepared to make binding commitments in a “protocol of understanding” about the extension of trade and economic relations, further negotiations on the issue of environmental protection, negotiations over the further development of postal and long-distance phone connections, and other plans.

Seiters was asked, in reference to the discussions of 24 October 1989, to give the FRG government’s position on the most pressing issue of the moment: the possibility that his government would take over part of the additional expenses the GDR would incur in connection with its planned expansion of tourist and visitor traffic within the framework of the new travel law.

Seiters thanked me for the presentation and stated that these decisions were of great importance to the government of the Federal Republic.

Seiters presented the following thoughts on my proposal that GDR citizens travelling abroad be given the possibility to exchange DM 300 once a year at an exchange rate of DM 1 = East Mark 4.4:

—With the precondition that the minimum exchange requirement be lifted, a travel fund could be established with foreign currency by the FRG (with 12.5 million travelers, the account would be worth approximately DM 3.8 billion). The FRG’s previous annual payment of DM 100 “greeting money” per person would be eliminated. The DM 400 million that the GDR has received in the minimum exchange would also be paid off through the travel fund.

—The amount exchanged by GDR citizens for travel currency (with 12.5 million travelers, approximately DM 16.7 billion yearly) will be earmarked for a fund that the FRG and GDR will control jointly. The FRG thinks these funds should be used for the construction of border crossings, environmental protection measures, or for other projects that are of interest to both sides, such as transportation or postal and long-distance services.

The FRG also assumes that the necessary number of border crossings between the capital of the GDR and West Berlin will be constructed and opened. Provisional measures will be part of the construction, which can then be expanded in stages.

These measures are to guarantee an orderly border-crossing procedure for the increased tourist, visitor and transit traffic.

The FRG’s position is that the contributions from the exchanged funds for travel will finance the construction.

The questions associated with the cost of train travel (between the FRG and the GDR/Berlin) can be addressed later.

Seiters stated openly that the domestic political passage and justification of the proposed positions by the GDR would necessarily have certain political consequences.

In this context, he mentioned the possibility for all [East German] citizens who had left the country legally or illegally to return to the GDR, so that all GDR citizens, with the exception of individual cases to be documented, could return to the GDR for visits.

He did not make a secret of the fact that a number of responsible politicians in the governing coalition had reservations after the “Saturday Meeting” in Berlin.

Seiters also made it clear that under no circumstances could he give a final answer immediately, and his comments were to be understood only as his own expression of the first contours of ideas.

Schäuble, clearly acting under careful instructions from the Chancellor, made it clear that a great deal depends on the speech by the General Secretary at the tenth meeting of the SED Central Committee. This speech had to make it clear that the turn toward renewal was credible, that the announced reforms were clear, and that trustworthy people not tainted by their positions in the previous administration would be responsible for their implementation.

Article 1 of the GDR Constitution, which establishes the leading role of the Marxist-Leninist Party, poses a fundamental problem in this context.

Schäuble strongly recommended that the SED, to allow a peaceful transition to a societal development born by all political, societal and religious organizations, make it clear
that it is prepared to change the GDR Constitution to correspond to the current state of societal development and the obligations it accepted under the CSCE treaty. This amendment of the Constitution should transform the leading role of the SED into a constructive, consensus-building cooperation among all democratic forces in the interests of socialism and the GDR.

Schäuble recommended that we give representatives of the Church an important role in the GDR.

In reference to the state border to West Berlin, constructed on 13 August 1961 to protect the GDR, Schäuble also proposed making this border more passable, in accordance with the CSCE process, through the construction of new border crossings.

Schäuble made it clear again that all economic and financial decisions by the FRG government assumed that the GDR would lower its subsidies decisively.

Schäuble also said that many politicians in the FRG did not understand the reticent stance on providing information about the events on 7-8 October 1989. In his opinion, the GDR would be well advised, and it would be in their interests, to name the security officer directly responsible and announce the measures taken.

[He mentioned that] there are occasionally attacks in the FRG that are being investigated.

If the GDR does not take action, the topic will be played up again by certain forces.

Further consideration by the FRG government was necessary for the other issues involved in developing further cooperation, particularly in the economic sector and on the question of extending further credits. The FRG was not yet in the position to make concrete suggestions for future binding agreements.

The reserved attitude of the FRG government was clear, and it wants to wait until the results of the tenth meeting [of the SED Central Committee] to resume negotiations.

In conclusion, Schäuble again strongly recommended that General Secretary Egon Krenz deal with the aforementioned issues in his speech. If that were not the case, Chancellor Kohl would not be in a position to justify financial assistance from FRG taxes [for the GDR] to the parliament.


DOCUMENT No. 3
Letter from Alexander Schalck to Egon Krenz, 7 November 1989

Dear Comrade Krenz!

After my conversation yesterday with Seiter and Schäuble, Federal Minister Seiter informed me today of the results. The Chancellor transmits the Chairman of the GDR State Council the following:

The course of yesterday’s demonstration in Leipzig and the spontaneous exits from the GDR to the FRG which have occurred in the last few hours have produced public demands in the FRG, and increasingly in certain circles of the SPD, for the Chairman of the GDR State Council to declare publicly that the GDR is prepared to guarantee that opposition groups will be permitted and affirm that free elections will be held within a period to be announced if the GDR wants to receive material and financial assistance from the FRG. This applies also to the financial arrangements regarding travel [by East Germans to the West].

It should be noted that this path is only possible if the SED relinquishes its claim to absolute power. [The Party] should be prepared to work on equal terms, and in consensus, with all societal forces, churches and religious communities to discuss a true renewal, with the goal of achieving democratic socialism, and with the understanding [that they are] to be prepared to carry out any resulting decisions.

Under these conditions, the Chancellor thinks a great deal can be achieved and every option can be explored.

Federal Minister Seiter is authorized to be available for further informal discussions.

I ask that you take note of this.

With socialist greetings,

[Alexander Schalck]


DOCUMENT No. 4
Minutes No. 49 of the Meeting of the SED Politburo, 7 November 1989

[EXCERPTS]

Information by Comrade O. Fischer on the situation regarding GDR citizens departing via the CSSR.
Report compiled by:
O. Fischer

1. Comrade O. Fischer will make a suggestion, in agreement with Comrades F. Dickel and E. Mielke, for the SED Central Committee which allows for this part of the travel law that deals with permanent exit to be put into effect immediately through an executive order [Durchführungsbestimmung].

2. Comrade O. Fischer will inform the USSR’s Ambassador to the GDR Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary, Comrade V[yacheslav I.] Kochemassov, and the Czechoslovaks about the proposal and the Politburo’s position. At the same time, consultations with the FRG are to be carried out.

3. The mass media should use their influence to help that GDR citizens do not leave their country. They should inform about people who have returned. Responsible: Comrade G. Schabowski.

4. Comrade G. Schabowski is assigned to discuss this problem with the representatives of the bloc parties [Christian Democrats, Liberal Democrats] in order to reach a joint position.

[Source: SAPMO-BA, DY 30/J IV 2/2/2358. Translated for CWIHP by Howard Sargeant.]

DOCUMENT No. 5
Memorandum of Conversation between
Comrade Oskar Fischer and the
Soviet Ambassador V[yacheslav] I. Kochemassov,
7 November 1989, at 11:45 a.m.¹⁰⁴

The conversation took place at the request of the Minister, Comrade Fischer.

I. Comrade Oskar Fischer stated that the Politburo had discussed the problem of exits by GDR citizens, and the connected problems in the ČSSR (blocking of the border crossings...). [It was the GDR’s duty] to relieve the Czechoslovak comrades. The GDR/FRG border would not be opened, because this would have uncontrollable effects. For the same reason, the border to the ČSSR could not be closed.

The following measures were planned:

1. The media campaign aimed at inducing GDR citizens to remain in their country will be intensified. It was being attempted to co-opt certain people (personalities) to join the campaign. At the same time, returnees from the FRG should also be effectively used in this campaign.

2. The campaign against the FRG’s “duty to take care of [the East Germans]” will also be intensified. In this effort the support of our allies is desirable. Our ambassadors in Western Europe have been instructed to work along the same lines.

3. The [implementation of the] part of the travel law that deals with permanent exit of GDR citizens will be put in effect in advance.

4. It is to be discussed with the ČSSR as to whether including its border crossings to Bavaria [Brambach–Vojlanov] as an exit route would bring relief. At the same time the ČSSR would be asked as to whether it could close the border with the GDR. That would mean, however, punishing well-intentioned GDR citizens. If the GDR were to close [its border], a power struggle would ensue.

5. The GDR will inform Bonn about what they can expect as far as GDR citizens traveling to the FRG are concerned. It will demand forcefully that the FRG oppose the entry of GDR citizens. We will take them at their word.

6. Comrade Schabowski will inform the bloc parties about these things today, and Comrade Jarowinsky will talk to the representatives of the churches.

7. Comrade Ziebart will be informed by the Minister immediately, since he has an appointment today in Prague at 1:15 p.m. with Comrade Lenart.

II. Comrade Gorbachev’s opinion as to the larger picture as well as to our plans for the travel law is very important to Comrade Krenz. The GDR would appreciate the support of the USSR.

Comrade Kochemassov thanked Comrade Fischer for the information. As an additional measure, he suggested including the former allies (USA, Britain, France) in order to prompt them to put pressure on the FRG.

Comrade Fischer agreed.

Comrade Kochemassov assured [Comrade Fischer] that the request would be forwarded to Moscow at once and promised a prompt response.

[Source: BA, Berlin, DC-20 4933. Translated for CWIHP by Howard Sargeant.]
Material for the meeting
For Circulation in the Council of Ministers
Berlin, 9 November 1989

It is requested that the attached draft resolution
Temporary Transition Rules for Travel and Permanent Exit
VVS b2-937/89 by the GDR Chairman of the Council of
Ministers be approved through circulation today, Thursday,
9 November 1989, by 6:00 p.m.

[Harry] Moebis 105

Material for the meeting
Secret
Council of Ministers Circular b2-937/89
[11/9/89]
[40th] copy 4 pages
V 1204/89

Title of the draft:
Temporary—Transition
Rules for Travel and
Permanent Exit from the GDR

Draft presented by:
Chairman of the Council of Ministers

signed: Willi Stoph
Berlin, 9 November 1989

Draft Resolution
The attached resolution on the temporary transition
rules for travel and permanent exit from the GDR is approved.

Draft Resolution
To change the situation with regard to the permanent
exit of GDR citizens to the FRG via the CSSR, it has been
determined that:

1. The decree from 30 November 1988 about travel abroad
of GDR citizens will no longer be applied until the new
travel law comes into force.
2. Starting immediately, the following temporary transition
regulations for travel abroad and permanent exits from
the GDR are in effect:
   a) Applications by private individuals for travel abroad
can now be made without the previously existing
requirements (of demonstrating a need to travel or proving
familial relationships). The travel authorizations will be
issued within a short period of time. Grounds for denial
will only be applied in particularly exceptional cases.
   b) The responsible departments of passport and registra-
tion control in the People’s Police district offices in the
GDR are instructed to issue visas for permanent exit
without delays and without presentation of the existing
requirements for permanent exit. It is still possible to
apply for permanent exit in the departments for internal
affairs [of the local district or city councils].
   c) Permanent exits are possible via all GDR border
crossings to the FRG and (West) Berlin.
   d) The temporary practice of issuing (travel) authorizations
through GDR consulates and permanent exit with only a
GDR personal identity card via third countries ceases.

3. The attached press release explaining the temporary
transition regulation will be issued on 10 November.

   Responsible: Government spokesman of the GDR
   Council of Ministers

Press release
Berlin (ADN) 106

As the Press Office of the Ministry of the Interior has
announced, the GDR Council of Ministers has decided that
the following temporary transition regulation for travel
abroad and permanent exit from the GDR will be effective
until a corresponding law is put into effect by the
Volkskammer:

1) Applications by private individuals for travel abroad can
now be made without the previously existing requirements
(of demonstrating a need to travel or proving familial
relationships). The travel authorizations will be issued
within a short period of time. Grounds for denial will only
be applied in particularly exceptional cases.
2) The responsible departments of passport and
registration control in the People’s Police district
offices in the GDR are instructed to issue visas for
permanent exit without delays and without presentation
of the existing requirements for permanent exit. It is still
possible to apply for permanent exit in the departments
for internal affairs [of the local district or city councils].
3) Permanent exits are possible via all GDR border
crossings to the FRG and (West) Berlin.
4) This decision revokes the temporary practice of issuing
(travel) authorizations through GDR consulates and
permanent exit with only a GDR personal identity card
via third countries ceases.

[Source: Bundesbeauftragter für die Unterlagen der
Staatssicherheit (BstU), Central Archive, MfS Working
Group Nieber 553, sheets 15-19. Translated for CWIHP by
Howard Sargeant.]
Krenz: Comrades! Before Günther speaks, I have to digress from the agenda once more. You are aware that there is a problem that wears on us all: the question of exit [from the GDR]. The Czechoslovak comrades are increasingly finding it a burden, as our Hungarian comrades did earlier. And, whatever we do in this situation, it will be a move in the wrong direction. If we close the border to the CSSR, then we are basically punishing the upstanding citizens of the GDR, who would not be able to travel, and in this way put pressure on us. Even that would not have led to our gaining control of the situation, since the Permanent Mission of the FRG has already informed us that they have finished with renovations. That means that when they open the building, we will face the same problem again.

And, Comrade Willi Stoph, as acting Chairman of the Council of Ministers, drafted a decree which I would like to present to you again.

As far as the announcement is concerned—(noise) it perhaps would make sense for the Press Office of the Council of Ministers to make the announcement rather than the Ministry of the Interior, although we will actually carry out the decree, since it is a decree from the Chairman of the Council of Ministers.

Krenz: I would suggest that the government spokesman make the announcement right away. (shouting) What? (noise)

Banaschak: Isn’t it dangerous to adopt such a passage, “temporary”? ... (shouts: louder!) If we adopt such a passage, one that contains “temporary” or “transition solution,” couldn’t that have the effect that people aren’t sure what will come next... (noise, shouts: They just said that! Further noise, shouts)

Krenz: Therefore, we will say that we will avoid “temporary” as well as “transition rule” and say: until the travel law comes into effect, this and that is decreed. Agreed, Comrades?

Dickel: Until the travel law comes into effect.

Krenz: So, until the travel law comes into effect, the following things are valid, OK?

Krenz: Agreed? (noise) Comrade Dickel, do you foresee any difficulties? It’s correct as it is, isn’t it? [noise, Chair rings bell]

Dickel: As far as the announcement is concerned—(shout: louder!) it perhaps would make sense for the Press Office of the Council of Ministers to make the announcement rather than the Ministry of the Interior, although we will actually carry out the decree, since it is a decree from the Chairman of the Council of Ministers.

Krenz: I would suggest that the government spokesman make the announcement right away. (shouting) What? (noise)

3. The attached press release explaining the temporary transition regulation will be issued on 10 November.
(Quietly, to his neighbor at the presidium table, with the microphone turned off): It is always good to do something like that. (Loudly, with microphone turned on): After Günter Jahn, Günter Sieber will take the floor.


DOCUMENT No. 8
Günter Schabowski’s Press Conference in the GDR International Press Center,
9 November 1989,
6:53-7:01 p.m. 111

Question: My name is Ricardo Ehrman, representing the Italian press agency ANSA. Mr. Schabowski, you spoke about mistakes. Don’t you believe that it was a big mistake to introduce this travel law several days ago?

Schabowski: No, I don’t believe so. (Um) We know about this tendency in the population, this need of the population, to travel or to leave the GDR. And (um) we have ideas about what we have to bring about, (such as) all the things I mentioned before, or sought to mention in my response to the question from the TASS correspondent, namely a complex renewal of the society (um) and thereby achieve that many of these elements... (um) that people do not feel compelled to solve their personal problems in this way.

Those are quite a number of steps, as I said, and (um) we can’t start them all at once. There are series of steps, and the chance, through expanding travel possibilities ... the chance, through legalizing exit and making it easier to leave, to free the people from a (um) let us say psychological pressure... Many of these steps took place without adequate consideration. We know that through conversations, through the need to return to the GDR, (um) through conversations with people who find themselves in an unbelievably complicated situation in the FRG because the FRG is having a great deal of trouble providing shelter for these refugees.

So, the absorptive capacity of the FRG is essentially exhausted. There are already more than, or less than provisional (um), that these people have to count on, if they are put up there. (um). Shelter is the minimum for constructing an existence. Finding work is decisive, essential...

Beil: (softly) ... integration...

Schabowski: ... yes, and the necessary integration into the society, which cannot happen when one is living in a tent or an emergency shelter, or is hanging around unemployed.

So, we want... through a number of changes, including the travel law, to [create] the chance, the sovereign decision of the citizens to travel wherever they want. (um) We are naturally (um) concerned that the possibilities of this travel regulation—it is still not in effect, it’s only a draft.

A decision was made today, as far as I know (looking toward Labs and Banaschak in hope of confirmation). A recommendation from the Politburo was taken up that we take a passage from the [draft of] travel regulation and put it into effect, that, (um)—as it is called, for better or worse—that regulates permanent exit, leaving the Republic. Since we find it (um) unacceptable that this movement is taking place (um) across the territory of an allied state, (um) which is not an easy burden for that country to bear. Therefore (um), we have decided today (um) to implement a regulation that allows every citizen of the German Democratic Republic (um) to (um) leave the GDR through any of the border crossings.

Question: (many voices) When does that go into effect?... Without a passport? Without a passport? (no, no)—When is that in effect?... (confusion, voices...) At what point does the regulation take effect?

Schabowski: What?

Question: At once? When...

Schabowski: (... scratches his head) You see, comrades, I was informed today (puts on his glasses as he speaks further), that such an announcement had been (um) distributed earlier today. You should actually have it already. So, (reading very quickly from the paper):

1) “Applications for travel abroad by private individuals can now be made without the previously existing requirements (of demonstrating a need to travel or proving familial relationships). The travel authorizations will be issued within a short time. Grounds for denial will only be applied in particular exceptional cases. The responsible departments of passport and registration control in the People’s Police district offices in the GDR are instructed to issue visas for permanent exit without delays and without presentation of the existing requirements for permanent exit.”

Question: With a passport?

Schabowski: (um)...(reads:) “Permanent exit is possible via all GDR border crossings to the FRG.112 These changes replace the temporary practice of issuing [travel] authorizations through GDR consulates and permanent exit with a GDR personal identity card via third countries.”

(Looks up) (um) I cannot answer the question about passports at this point. (Looks questioningly at Labs and Banaschak.) That is also a technical question. I don’t know, the passports have to ... so that everyone has a passport, they first have to be distributed. But we want to...

Banaschak: The substance of the announcement is decisive...

Schabowski: ... is the...

Question: When does it come into effect?
**Schabowski:** (Looks through his papers...) That comes into effect, according to my information, immediately, without delay (looking through his papers further).

**Labs:** (quietly) ...without delay.

**Beil:** (quietly) That has to be decided by the Council of Ministers.

**Question:** (...Many voices...) You only said the FRG, is the regulation also valid for West Berlin?

**Schabowski:** (reading aloud quickly) “As the Press Office of the Ministry ... the Council of Ministers decided that until the Volkskammer implements a corresponding law, this transition regulation will be in effect.”

**Question:** Does this also apply for West Berlin? You only mentioned the FRG.

**Schabowski:** (shrugs his shoulders, frowns, looks at his papers) So ... (pause), um hmmm (reads aloud): “Permanent exit can take place via all border crossings from the GDR to the FRG and West Berlin, respectively.”

**Question:** Another question also: does that mean that effective immediately, GDR citizens—Christoph Janowski, Voice of America—does that mean that effective immediately, all GDR citizens cannot emigrate via Czechoslovakia or Poland?

**Schabowski:** No, that is not addressed at all. We hope instead that the movement will (um) regulate itself in this manner, as we are trying to.

**Question:** (many voices, incomprehensible question)

**Schabowski:** I haven’t heard anything to the contrary.

**Question:** (many voices, incomprehensible)

**Schabowski:** I haven’t heard anything to the contrary.

**Question:** (many voices, incomprehensible)

**Schabowski:** I haven’t heard anything to the contrary. I’m expressing myself so carefully because I’m not up to date on this question, but just before I came over here I was given this information. (Several journalists hurry from the room.)

**Frage:** Mr. Schabowski, what is going to happen to the Berlin Wall now?

**Schabowski:** It has been brought to my attention that it is 7:00 p.m.. That has to be the last question. Thank you for your understanding.

(um...) What will happen to the Berlin Wall? Information has already been provided in connection with travel activities. (um) The issue of travel, (um) the ability to cross the Wall from our side, ... hasn’t been answered yet and exclusively the question in the sense..., so this, I’ll put it this way, fortified state border of the GDR.... (um) We have always said that there have to be several other factors (um) taken into consideration. And they deal with the complex of questions that Comrade Krenz, in his talk in the—addressed in view of the relations between the GDR and the FRG, in ditto light of the (um) necessity of continuing the process of assuring peace with new initiatives.

And (um) surely the debate about these questions (um) will be positively influenced if the FRG and NATO also agree to and implement disarmament measures in a similar manner to that of the GDR and other socialist countries. Thank you very much.

[Source: Author’s transcript of television broadcast. Translated for CWIHP by Howard Sargeant.]

---

**DOCUMENT No. 9**

**Verbal Message from Mikhail Gorbachev to Helmut Kohl,**

**10 November 1989**

As you, of course, know, the GDR leadership made the decision to allow the citizens of East Germany unrestricted travel to West Berlin and the FRG. It is understandable, that this decision was not an easy one for the new leadership of the GDR. At the same time, the decision underlines the fact that deep and fundamental changes are taking place in East Germany. The leadership is acting in a concerted and dynamic manner in the interests of its people, and they are opening a dialog with various groups and levels of society.

Statements from the FRG made against this political and psychological background, designed to stimulate a denial of the existence of two German states and encourage emotional reactions, can have no other goal than destabilizing the situation in the GDR and subverting the ongoing processes of democratization and the renewal of all areas of society.

We have received notice that a meeting will take place today in West Berlin, in which official representatives of the FRG and West Berlin will participate. A meeting is planned in the capital of the GDR at the same time.

With the current situation of de facto open borders and huge numbers of people moving in both directions, a chaotic situation could easily develop that might have unforeseen consequences.

In light of the time pressure and the seriousness of the situation, I thought it necessary to ask you, in the spirit of openness and realism, to take the extremely pressing steps necessary to prevent a complication and destabilization of the situation.

[Source: SAPMO–BA, DY 30/IV 2/2.039/319. Translated for CWIHP by Howard Sargeant.]
DOCUMENT No. 10
Verbal Message from Mikhail Gorbachev to François Mitterand, Margaret Thatcher and George Bush, 10 November 1989

In light of the rather extreme situation currently taking place in the GDR, its capital city, and in West Berlin, and in reference to what I consider the correct and forward-looking decision by the new East German leadership, I have just sent a verbal message to Chancellor Kohl. I consider it necessary to inform you of the contents of the message as well.

According to our information, a meeting is taking place today in West Berlin in which official representatives of the FRG and West Berlin will participate. A parallel meeting is planned in East Berlin. With the current situation of de facto open borders and huge numbers of people moving in both directions, a chaotic situation could easily develop that might have unforeseen consequences.

I have appealed to Chancellor Kohl to take the extremely pressing steps necessary to prevent a complication and destabilization of the situation.

Our ambassador in Berlin was instructed to contact the representatives of the governments of the three Allied powers in West Berlin. I hope that you will also contact your representatives so that the events do not take an undesirable turn.

In general, I would like to emphasize that deep and fundamental changes are currently taking place in East Germany. If statements are made in the FRG, however, that seek to generate emotional denials of the postwar realities, meaning the existence of two German states, the appearance of such political extremism cannot be viewed as anything other than attempts to destabilize the situation in the GDR and subvert the ongoing processes of democratization and the renewal of all areas of society. Looking forward, this would bring about not only the destabilization of the situation in Central Europe, but also in other parts of the world.

I would like to express my hope that you receive this news with understanding.

[Source: SAPMO-BA, DY 30/IV 2/2.039/319. Translated for CWIHP by Howard Sargeant.]

DOCUMENT No. 11
Information about the Content of a Telephone Conversation between Mikhail Gorbachev and Helmut Kohl, 11 November 1989

The conversation took place on 11 November on the Chancellor’s initiative.

The Chancellor said he wanted to respond to the verbal message from Mikhail Gorbachev, which he had received at the beginning of the meeting in West Berlin the previous day.

Helmut Kohl stated that the FRG welcomed the beginning of reforms in the GDR and hoped that they could be carried out in a calm atmosphere. He said: “I reject any radicalization and do not wish to see any destabilization of the situation in the GDR.”

The Chancellor admitted that the majority of East German citizens that had crossed the borders to the FRG in the last few days did not want to stay in West Germany forever. He also assured him [Gorbachev] that the leadership of the FRG did not seek this either. Kohl said a mass resettlement to the FRG would be an absurd development. “We want the Germans to build their futures in their current homes.” Kohl informed him [Gorbachev] that he was preparing for a meeting with Krenz at the end of November. In this context he mentioned that, given the current conditions in East Germany, the new GDR leadership should work dynamically to implement the reforms.

Mikhail Gorbachev emphasized that the current profound changes in the world would take different forms and occur within varying shape and intensities in different countries. It was necessary for all sides to maintain stability and to take a balanced approach.

[Gorbachev:] Overall, the basis for mutual understanding was improving. We were growing closer, which was very important.

As far as the GDR is concerned, the current leadership has a far-reaching program. All those questions, though, have to be worked through carefully, which required time.

I understand that all Europeans, and not only they, are following the events in the GDR. This is a very important point in world politics. But it is also a fact that the FRG and the Soviet Union, for historical reasons as well as due to the character of their current relationship, also have a greater interest in this development.

Naturally, every change is accompanied by a certain degree of instability. When I speak of maintaining stability, I mean that all sides should think through their actions very carefully.

I believe, Mr. Chancellor, that we are currently experiencing a historic change to different relationships and a different world. We should not allow careless actions to damage this change. Under no circumstances should the developments be forced in an unpredictable direction, which could lead to chaos. That would not be desirable under any circumstances.

Therefore I take very seriously what you told me during our conversation. I hope that you will use your authority, your political weight and your influence to keep others within the boundaries required to meet the demands of the time.

Kohl agreed with Gorbachev’s statements. According to
him, the FRG government had discussed this question in this spirit.

The Chancellor emphasized his interest in maintaining contact, including with regard to the situation in the GDR.

[Source: SAPMO-BA, DY 30/IV 2/2.039/319, pp. 12-19. Translated for CWIHP by Howard Sargeant]

Dr. Hans-Hermann Hertle is a research fellow with the Center for Contemporary History Research Potsdam and an expert consultant for the Bundestag Commission on Social and Political Change in the New Laender.


For the international aspects of German unification, see the seminal work by Philip Zelikow and Condoleezza Rice, Germany Unified and Europe Transformed (Cambridge/London: Harvard University Press, 1995); also see Werner Weidenfeld (with Peter Wagner und Elke Bruck), Außenpolitik für die deutsche Einheit: Die Entscheidungsjahre 1989/90 (Stuttgart: Deutsche Verlags-Anstalt, 1998); Karl Kaiser, Deutschlands Vereinigung (Bergisch-Gladbach: Bastei-Lübbe, 1991); and Konrad H. Jarausch, The Rush to German Unity (New York: Oxford Press, 1994).


Even Zbigniew Brzezinski, one of the few analysts who predicted the end of communism, considered the GDR a stable state. See Zbigniew Brzezinski, The Grand Failure. The Birth and Death of Communism in the 20th Century (New York: Macmillan, 1989).


For an example, see Claus Offe, “Wohlstand, Nation, Republik” in Hans Joas and Martin Kohli, eds., Der Zusammenbruch der DDR (Frankfurt/Main: Suhrkamp, 1993), p. 296.

In the following presentation, aspects of the relationship among the party’s leadership, its functionaries, and its members, the analysis of security policy, the development of ideology, the political behavior of the population in the years prior to 1989, and the genesis and policies of the reform and citizen movements will not be emphasized.

The documents of the government of the Federal Republic, in contrast to the readily available documents of the GDR, still fall under the usual restriction that they not

22 Mary E. Sarotte demonstrates the knowledge gained by taking the international context of apparently exclusive German-German relations into consideration in her exemplary study on the international context of the basic treaty negotiations (1969-1973) in Deutschland Archiv 6 (1997), pp. 901-911. For her complete study, see Mary E. Sarotte, The East German Ruling Regime and Ostpolitik in the Context of Superpower Détenue, 1969-1973, New Haven, 1999, dissertation ms.

23 For an analysis of the decline of the Soviet Union, see Hannes Adomeit, Imperial Overstretch: Germany in Soviet Policy from Stalin to Gorbachev (Baden-Baden: Nomos Verlagsgesellschaft, 1998).

24 See Mikhail Gorbachev, Erinnerungen (Munich: Goldmann, 1996).


32 The seventh SED Party Convention in 1971 proclaimed the “increasing of the people’s material and cultural standard of living on the basis of a high rate of development of socialist production, increasing the effectiveness of scientific-technical progress and increased work productivity as the main task."


---

**Excerpt from the Diary of Anatoly Chernyaev, 11 October 1989**

**Wednesday, 11 October 1989**

I have read the record of conversation of M.S. [Gorbachev] with Honecker in Berlin. I spoke with him [Gorbachev] about this. [Georgy] Shakhnazarov was present. M.S. [Gorbachev] called Honecker an “asshole” [mudak]. He, Gorbachev added, could have said to his [East German] lieutenants: I have undergone four operations, I am 78 years old, the stormy time requires too much strength, let me go, I have done my job. Then he might have kept his place in history.

Shakh[nazarov] and I voiced our doubts that even if he had done so he would have kept his place in history. 2–3 years ago it might have been possible. Today he has already been cursed by his people…The Politburo [of the SED] is in session for the second day in Berlin. [Honecker’s future successor Egon] Krenz has promised “to raise a question” about changes to our Ambassador [Vyacheslav Kochemassov] for transmittal to Gorbachev. Honecker warned him: [If you do it] you will become my enemy.

However, Krenz seems to have taken the step. What is about to happen?

(Source: Notes of Anatoly Chernyaev, Archive of the Gorbachev Foundation, f. 2, op. 2. Translated by Vladislav Zubok (The National Security Archive).)
p. 10.


35 See Sigrid Meuschel, Legitimation und Parteiherrschaft in der DDR (Frankfurt/Main: Suhrkamp, 1992).


37 The Valutamark (VM) was the currency the GDR used for foreign trade with the West. One VM corresponded to one (West German) DM.


44 Gerhard Schürer’s comments: “We had the idea of bringing the continued existence of the Wall into the discussion. That is the first official document from the former GDR that, to my knowledge, dared bring up the Wall for discussion. Up to this time, Honecker’s saying, ‘The Wall will stand another hundred years!’ was still the official line.”

It was clear to me that the GDR’s sovereignty could only be maintained in a restricted manner, since it was clear to me that if the FRG was going to give us 8-10 billion, the money would come with political demands attached. As economists, we could no longer have such an illusion because we knew that there was no other possible way out. The only way out was for us to gain access to capital for investments in new technology. If we were not able to do this, annexation was the only possible result.“ (Author’s conversation with Gerhard Schürer, 21 February 1992.)

45 Compare the final version of the Politbüro draft, SAPMO-BA, ZPA-SED, DY 30/J IV 2/2/2356, with the original draft in SAPMO-BA, ZPA-SED, DY 30/JIV 2/2A/3252.

46 Gerhard Schürer, Explanatory section of the draft “Analyse der ökonomischen Lage der DDR mit Schlußfolgerungen” (speech text), Berlin, 31 October 1989, p. 9.

47 If not stated otherwise, sources and notes for the following section can be found in Hans-Hermann Hertle, Der Fall der Mauer, pp. 143-44.

48 Memorandum of Conversation between Comrade Egon Krenz, General Secretary of the SED Central Committee and Chairman of the GDR Council of State, with Comrade Mikhail Gorbachev, General Secretary of the Central Committee of the Soviet Communist Party and Chairman of the USSR Supreme Soviet, 1 November 1989 in Moscow, Berlin, 1 November 1989, SAPMO-BA, DY 30/JIV 2/2.039/329 (Document No. 1).

49 Alexander Schalck’s notes on his informal conversation with Wolfgang Schäuble and Rudolf Seitzers is documented in Hans-Hermann Hertle, Der Fall der Mauer, p. 483-85. (Document No. 2).

50 Letter from Alexander Schalck to Egon Krenz, 7 November 1989 (Document No. 3).


52 In German, the chant rhymes, “Visa frei bis Shanghai.”

53 See Document No. 4.

54 See Document No. 5.

55 See Document No. 6.

56 Tenth meeting of the Central Committee of the SED, 9 November 1989 (transcript of a recording), documented in Hans-Hermann Hertle and Gerd-Rüdiger Stephan, eds., Das Ende der SED, p. 305 (Document No. 7).

57 See Document No. 8.

58 Tom Brokaw: “I would like to tell you that I knew that the Wall would come down. That was not the case. I did think that there would be a very interesting and important political story. So I went to Berlin simply to be in the midst of that story.” (Author’s interview with Tom Brokaw, 4 November 1998.)


60 Author’s interview with Michelle Neubert (NBC), 11 July 1995.

61 See the portrayal by Marc Kusnetz in Robert Goldberg and Gerald Jay Goldberg, Anchors: Brokaw, Jennings, Rather and the Evening News (Secaucus, NJ: Carol Publishing Group, 1990), p. 262, as well as Peter Ross Range, When Walls Come Tumbling Down: Covering The
I did not want at that critical moment for us to gloat, to stick my fingers in Mr. Gorbachev’s eyes, which would have been the worst thing you could possibly do. So, restraint was called for.” (Author’s interview with George Bush, 2 July 1998.) See “Remarks and a Question-and-Answer Session with Reporters on the Relaxation of East German Border Controls,” 9 November 1989, Public Papers of the Presidents of the United States, George Bush, 1989, Book II: July 1 to December 31, 1989 (GPO: Washington, 1990), pp. 1488-1490. See also George Bush and Brent Scowcroft, A World Transformed (New York: Knopf, 1998), pp. 148-151.

Margaret Thatcher, on BBC Radio 4, 10 November 1989, 2:00 p.m. For the British Prime Minister’s approach, also see Margaret Thatcher, The Downing Street Years (New York: Harper Collins, 1993), pp. 792-794, and Percy Cradock, In Pursuit of British Interests: Reflections on Foreign Policy under Margaret Thatcher and John Major, (London: John Murray, 1997), pp. 102-104.

Francois Mitterrand, France 1, 10 November 1989, 6:00 p.m.

We informed Gorbachev that his fears were groundless, that there was no upheaval, but that the people simply wanted to come together, that the mood remained upbeat and things were taking place peacefully. In this decisive hour, Mikhail Gorbachev believed me.” (Author’s interview with Helmut Kohl, 25 November 1998); Horst Teltschik, 329 Tage: Innenansichten der Einigung (Berlin: Siedler, 1991), p. 20.


Information about the contents of the phone conversation between Mikhail Gorbachev and Helmut Kohl on 11 November 1989, SAPMO-BArch, DY 30/IV 2/2.039/319, sheets 17-19 (Document No. 11). Also see Teltschik, 329 Tage, p. 27.


Information about the contents of the phone conversation between Mikhail Gorbachev and Helmut Kohl on 11 November 1989, SAPMO-BArch, DY 30/IV 2/2.039/319, sheets 17-19 (Document No. 11). Also see Teltschik, 329 Tage, p. 27.

The SED leadership received the written version of this message from the Soviet embassy in East Berlin with the date of 13 November 1989.

The document is, like documents 10 and 11, information sent from the Soviet embassy in East Berlin to the SED General Secretary. According to Horst Teltschik, the phone conversation took place around 12:00 p.m. See Horst Teltschik, 329 Tage, pp. 27-28.
1989: Bulgarian Transition to Pluralist Democracy

By Jordan Baev

Though induced by similar social and economic conditions, the political changes in Central and Eastern Europe in 1989 had different historical, psychological and functional characteristics in each country. Against the background, or rather the foreground, of the succession of reforms in Poland and Hungary, the dramatic changes in East Germany and Czechoslovakia, and the bloodstained epilogue of the Romanian dictatorship, the events taking place in Sofia that November passed by, barely noticed by the international community.

The process of the Bulgarian transition to pluralist democracy is still largely unknown in the West. There were three main internal political factors which brought about the change in the Bulgarian political system: first, behind-the-scene political ambitions and infighting within the ruling elite; second, the ethnic conflict in the eastern part of the country; and, finally, the increasingly open social discontent, expressed predominantly within intellectual circles. All three factors have foreign analogues but they differ in their peculiar Bulgarian origins. Just as in some other Eastern European countries, the first challenge to authority in Bulgaria came not from traditional opposition organizations, but from newly-formed ecological and human rights groups, inspired to some extent by the example of the “green” movements in the West. The independent trade union “Podkrepa” [Support] was created as a Bulgarian analogue of the Polish “Solidarity.” In Romania, an important cause of the internal conflict was the oppression of the Hungarian minority in Transylvania. Similarly, in Bulgaria the treatment of the Bulgarian Turks by the authorities after 1984 had turned into a peculiar “detonator.” In combination with the worsened economic situation, this issue played an important part in the heightening of social tensions. Moreover, the Soviet embassy in Sofia, following Mikhail Gorbachev’s unambiguous instructions, played an important role in changing who ruled in the Bulgarian capital.

The overthrow of Todor Zhivkov, the longest ruling communist leader in Eastern Europe, was the result of joint behind-the-scene efforts by communist party reformers and senior Soviet diplomats in Bulgaria. No authentic documents on the events preceding Zhivkov’s “resignation” on 10 November 1989 are thus far available. Various memoirs offer contradictory information and prejudiced attempts to mythologize or demonize key persons and events. During the last decade, I have had the opportunity to interview many of the participants crucial to Zhivkov’s ouster. Generally, they lacked clear and definite answers to the key issues. Among those interviewed were former Foreign Minister Petar Mladenov, Todor Zhivkov’s successor as political leader and head of state in November 1989; the late ex-prime ministers Stanko Todorov and Andrey Lukyanov; Dimiter Stanishev, former Secretary of the Central Committee [CC] of the Bulgarian Communist Party [BCP] in charge of international relations during the period 1977–1990; Gen. Dobri Dzhurov and Gen. Atanas Semjerjiev, the defense minister and chief of staff, respectively, each with the longest service of any in a Warsaw Pact country. Analysis of the decision-making process requires careful reading “between the lines” of the available information and a critical comparison of the existing fragmentary articles. The following documentary publication is a first selection of Bulgarian “political elite” documents from 1989.

A specific characteristic of Cold War Bulgaria was the lack of strong anti-communist opposition, not to mention the lack of influence on the part of traditional bourgeois parties in the political life of the country before November 1989. Individual acts by some intellectuals (many of whom either had a communist background, or were connected in some way with the ruling elite) as well as feeble efforts to create dissident groups (inspired mainly by the Czechoslovak and Polish examples), did not draw much public response until the mid-eighties. The strongest challenges Todor Zhivkov had ever faced had come many years earlier from reformist or Stalinist circles within his own party. Hence, one of Zhivkov’s favored measures since 1956 had been to reshuffle the hierarchy periodically, thus rendering potential rivals harmless and keeping the remaining members of the leadership in check.

In 1987-88 several “informal” ecological, human rights and reformist groups came into existence in Bulgaria—groups in which communist intellectuals took an active part as well. In most cases, however, these groups did not call for a change of the political system, but for its reform. The secret services were shocked when they discovered that among the leaders of these groups were BCP CC members. Following Zhivkov’s personal instructions, the authorities retaliated with repressive measures which, however, proved counterproductive. At the same time, Zhivkov conducted his regular reshuffling of his favorites and opponents. The appointment of Zhivkov’s son to one of the leading positions in the arena of Bulgarian culture aroused particularly strong resentment among many Bulgarians. It triggered protests even within the circle of Zhivkov’s closest associates, including Defense Minister Dzhurov.

Among those expelled from the Communist Party for participation in an “informal” group was Sonya Bakish, the wife of Stanko Todorov, the former prime minister and then chairman of the Bulgarian parliament. As a result Todorov submitted his letter of resignation from his position in July 1988. Although his resignation was not accepted, the episode for many was one of the first indications that the
anti-Zhivkov opposition had reached into the top echelon of power. The second half of 1988 was most likely the time when certain Politburo members began to consider seriously their chances of changing the status quo in the long run and toppling Todor Zhivkov. That became a reality a year later when the regime became internationally isolated (owing to the persecution of the Bulgarian Turks), when the country sank further into economic recession, and the growing controversies within the Eastern European system aggravated the situation in Bulgaria.

The key factor in the events of 10 November 1989 in Bulgaria, however, was the Kremlin’s position. Gorbachev’s increasingly cool attitude toward Zhivkov—outward expressions of “fraternal friendship” notwithstanding—was something of a public secret. Recently, a number of new facts regarding the energetic activities by the Soviet embassy in Sofia (mainly on the part of Ambassador Victor Sharapov and of Counselor Valentin Terechov) have become well known. Sharapov and Terechov’s purpose was to unite the efforts of some members of the party and state leadership to oust Zhivkov. Rather significant is the fact that even the KGB representative in Bulgaria, Gen. Vladilen Fyodorov, was kept in the dark about these efforts until the very last moment for fear of a “leak.” The evidence seems to suggest that the embassy’s efforts in Sofia were known only to Gorbachev’s closest associates, among whom numbered Alexander Yakovlev, a key figure in the policy arena. As far as the evidence indicates, the main role in the events was assigned to Moscow-born Andrey Lukanov whose grandfather had been held in Stalin’s prisons as a “rightist opportunist” and whose father had been Bulgarian foreign minister in late 1950s. While closely linked to influential circles in Moscow, Lukanov maintained at the same time good contacts with Western politicians and financial magnates, such as Robert Maxwell. Two things served as catalysts for the action against Zhivkov—Petar Mladenov’s 24 October 1989 letter to the BCP CC Politburo, and the replacement of Communist Party leader Erich Honecker in East Germany.

Participants in the events between 24 October and 9 November 1989 give conflicting accounts of their sequence. All of them, however, agree that the action to depose Zhivkov was carried out under central direction and conspiratorially to be able to succeed even under an enormously repressive system and to secure Moscow’s discreet logistic support. All of this made possible Todor Zhivkov’s acceptance of his ouster without any visible resistance at a Politburo session on the evening of 9 November. The acceptance of the resignation of the BCP CC Secretary General at the plenary session of the Central Committee on the following day was a mere formality. Zhivkov’s overthrow was engineered so smoothly that neither the US ambassador in Sofia, Sol Polansky, nor top Washington officials responsible for Eastern Europe, such as Robert Hutchings and Conodleezza Rice, knew anything in advance. Not until a month later did US Secretary of State James Baker inform his deputy Lawrence S.

The actions of the new party-government team in Bulgaria after 10 November 1989 intended to preserve the political system through reforms and by changes in its outward appearance. Much of the blame was laid on Todor Zhivkov personally plus a few of his closest associates. In order to secure the survival of the authors of the “coup” as leading political figures in the future political system, some of them used their political influence and contacts to move into decisive economic positions. That was the main reason for the “duel” between Andrey Lukanov and Ognyan Doynov, the other party leader, specialized in foreign trade, also known for his connections with financial and business circles in the West. In the course of the following months another “recipe,” recommended earlier by the authors of the Soviet Perestroika, was used—the sharing of the responsibilities of power with the newly established political opposition. Initially, during the spring of 1990, the Polish-Hungarian “round table” model was applied. Several months later the outbreak of a political crisis was overcome through the formula “your President–our Government.” A year later, a “coalition government” was also tried. The anticommunist opposition responded to the requests with the reply “all power forever” and with demands for the prohibition of the former Communist Party (renamed in the spring 1990 as the Socialist Party). The bipolar model of fierce confrontation was typical during the first few years of political transition to a multiparty system.

Former Prime Minister Andrey Lukanov
following 1989.

The Bulgarian documents presented below have never been published before. The first document has been obtained from the Diplomatic Archive, Ministry of Foreign Affairs, and the last two from the Archive of the Bulgarian Parliament. The rest of the documents are from the as yet unprocessed collections in the former BCP records.14

***

DOCUMENT No. 1
Memorandum from Foreign Minister Petar Mladenov to the Politburo of the Central Committee of the Bulgarian Communist Party, 12 July 1989

MINISTRY OF FOREIGN AFFAIRS
No. 01-05-20/ 12 July 1989

TO THE POLITBUREO OF THE CENTRAL COMMITTEE OF THE BULGARIAN COMMUNIST PARTY (THE CC OF THE BCP)

INFORMATION
by Petar Mladenov, Minister of Foreign Affairs

Comrades,

The routine session of the Political Consultative Committee of the member countries of the Warsaw Pact was held on 7 and 8 July in Bucharest [...] The most pressing problems of socialism and the present day were analyzed in a business-like, constructive, and on some issues, critical and self-critical spirit; the paths were mapped out for accelerating the positive processes leading to a more stable and democratic world. Comrade Mikhail Gorbachev’s speech set the tone for this atmosphere.

It was emphasized during the exchange of experience and information about the course of the renewal processes in the allied countries that, despite the diversity in national conditions, practically all socialist countries were struggling to resolve a series of similar problems. [These problems] had sprung from the necessity to overcome the negative tendencies in [these countries’] internal development and to stimulate and fully utilize the potentials of socialism.

The allied countries have lagged behind, especially in the field of new technology [and] in growth rates; the currency debts are perceived by the West as the “sunset of socialism.” With regards to [these facts], the necessity to prove the advantages of the new order through both strong arguments and real actions was emphasized. The further influence of the socialist countries on positive changes in the world will depend to a crucial degree on the ability of socialism to renew itself [...] In the future, the socialist countries’ political philosophy in the field of international relations should be a combination of active struggle for transition toward a new international order and a reliable defense of our countries.

In the process of exchanging opinions on the cardinal problems of disarmament, the leaders of the allied countries stressed the importance of signing a Soviet-American agreement on a 50% reduction in both countries’ strategic offensive weapons, providing a strict adherence to the 1972 Agreement on Anti-Ballistic Missile Defense [i.e., the ABM Treaty]. The universal and complete ban on chemical arms and the liquidation of [chemical arms] stockpiles continue to be issues on the agenda of the member countries of the Warsaw Pact.

The meeting paid special attention to the process of building a “pan-European home.” It analyzed the results of the recently held forums in the framework of the Helsinki process. Emphasis was placed on the interests and values common for the European peoples, on the need for equal dialogue and an enhancement of contacts in various areas. The unity of Europe from the Atlantic to the Urals is possible and necessary in the conditions of preserving each country’s identity and its social, economic and cultural diversity, which should be viewed as a treasure of European civilization. The meeting confirmed that every attempt to destabilize the situation in any socialist country will have an impact on the balance in Europe, and on the confidence building process between the two halves of the continent. Such an attempt will destroy what has been already achieved.

The Soviet leader informed the meeting about new developments in the relations and policies of the USSR towards the FRG [Federal Republic of Germany] and France. [...] Cde. Mikhail Gorbachev confirmed the readiness of the USSR to coordinate the size of the Soviet contingents and the order of their withdrawal from Eastern Europe with the leaderships of the allied countries. The combination of political, military and geographical factors should be taken into consideration during the discussion of [the above-mentioned] possibility because it would influence the European situation after the realization of such a withdrawal. It was emphasized that the US proposal for equal ceilings on Soviet and American military contingents in Eastern Europe and Western Europe respectively, should be considered in a broader context. An optimal position should be prepared for counting the military contingents of the other NATO countries in the FRG as well.

The process of conventional military disarmament should be started in the shortest possible time. The Soviet leadership considers that real steps in this respect should be made around 1992-1993. At that time the question about NATO modernization is going to be worked out, a United Europe will be created, and new elections for the American
The leaders of the member countries of the Warsaw Pact analyzed the achievements and the problems in the area of human rights and humanitarian cooperation. It was stressed that the most recent pan-European fora have put forward the idea of “pan-European legal space,” based on the commonwealth of law-abiding states. As a whole, however, the differences in the positions of the allied countries became most obvious on this question, in particular those between the PRH [People’s Republic of Hungary], the SRR [Socialist Republic of Romania] and the GDR.

During the discussion of the Soviet proposal for convening a second Helsinki (1975)-type meeting it was stressed that its realization could culminate in the first stage of the Vienna negotiations. In case the negotiations are prolonged, the convening of such a meeting at the beginning of 1992 will provide [us] with the opportunity to make the relevant conclusions on all “baskets” of the Helsinki process and to speed up the process [of building] a more secure Europe.

In his statement, the leader of the Bulgarian delegation, Todor Zhivkov, laid out the arguments for the strategic need to realize the new historic content of world development and to realize the opportunities, which appear as a result of the unavoidable effect of qualitatively new positive tendencies that reflect objective developments.

The theoretical conclusion was drawn that the new line of “opening” the US and the West toward the socialist countries is an expression of the objective need of new global economic redistribution, which will allow the developed capitalist countries to solve their own socio-economic problems. Therefore, it is possible to develop sufficiently wide cooperation between East and West without concessions on our part, which could lead to a “step by step transformation” of socialism.

The questions regarding the necessity of strengthening the positions of socialism occupied an important place in [Todor Zhivkov’s] speech. He stressed the international responsibility of our parties and states to combine the renewal of socialism with upholding its fundamental principles and ideals. He warned about the danger of destabilization and disintegration of some of our countries as units of the Warsaw Pact and the socialist community; this requires joint political decisions. Comrade Todor Zhivkov convincingly spoke in support of the necessity to renew the [allied countries’] economic and political cooperation in the framework of the COMECON and the [Warsaw Pact].

[Todor Zhivkov] set forth the position of the PRB [People’s Republic of Bulgaria] on the question of Turkey’s destructive actions in the Balkans and [its] unprecedented anti-Bulgarian campaign which is a part of broader plans aimed against socialism as a ruling system. Simultaneously, [he] affirmed our readiness for a dialogue with Turkey and for developing positive tendencies in the Balkans.

In the coordination of the final documents, difficulties were caused by: the exaggerated pretensions of the HPR with regard to human rights and the minorities question; the peculiar positions of the representative of the SRR on a number of important issues concerning international relations and reconstruction in the socialist countries; and the intensifying contradictions between the HPR and the SRR which already encompass opinions on a broad set of questions and assume differences in principles. Cde. N[icolae] Ceausescu emphasized in his speech the negative factors in international life, expressed doubt in the concept of “pan-European home,” and ridiculed the significance of the renewal processes.

Some changes in the SRR’s position provoked definite interest regarding the question of the Warsaw Pact’s role in the present situation, and the unity and cooperation of the allied socialist countries. Cde. N. Ceausescu opposed in his speech the one-sided disbanding of the Warsaw Pact and pointed out that our countries would have to continue to cooperate [in various areas], including the military field, even after the removal of all European military alliances. [He] underlined the need to jointly analyze the problems of socialist construction and to [undertake] joint measures for overcoming the crisis.
In connection with this, Cde. Ceaușescu suggested that a meeting be held between the Secretary Generals and the First Secretaries of the Parties, or among the Party and Heads of State of the allied countries, no later than October this year. [The goals of this meeting should be] to make a joint analysis of the problems of socio-economic development and socialism construction and to work out a realistic program for joint measures. [Ceaușescu] demonstrated his efforts to achieve a greater flexibility on the questions of perfecting the mechanisms of cooperation in the framework of the Warsaw Pact. [He] invited [us] to participate in the XIV Congress of the RCP [Romanian Communist Party] in October this year, at the highest level.

In general, the meeting proceeded in a open, friendly and constructive spirit.

During the meeting of the PCC [Political Consultative Council] a separate meeting between the delegation leaders took place (an additional report was prepared15) as well as two meetings of the ministers of foreign affairs.

The first joint meeting of the Committee of the Foreign Affairs Ministers and the Committee of the Ministers of Defense took place. It discussed the question of perfecting the mechanisms of cooperation between the allied countries.

[Source: Diplomatic Archive, Sofia, Opis 46-10, File 29, p. 4-12. Document obtained by Jordan Baev.]

DOCUMENT No. 2
Letter from Foreign Minister Petar Mladenov to the BCP CC,
24 October 1989

On 23 October 1989, I was scheduled to meet with the US ambassador [Sol Polansky] for a working lunch. Comrade Todor Zhivkov knew about this meeting, just as he knew about all my meetings and activities. The purpose of this session was to analyze the state of bilateral relations as they stood after the talks between [Deputy Foreign Minister Lyuben] Gotzev and First Deputy Secretary of State [Lawrence S.] Eagleberger and between Secretary of State [James] Baker and myself. That day—October 23—I had a meeting with the Swedish Minister of Foreign Trade at 11:30 p.m. When I reached my office at 12:30 p.m. —that is, just 10 minutes before my appointment with Ambassador Polansky—I was told that Todor Zhivkov had been trying to reach me by telephone. [Deputy Foreign Minister] Ivan Ganev was waiting in my secretary’s office to see me. I asked him to come into my office and told my secretary to put me through to comrade Todor Zhivkov.

Comrade Ivan Ganev, without waiting for me to talk to comrade Zhivkov, told me that, at my meeting with US Ambassador Polansky, I had to protest against the gross US interference in our internal affairs. I had to say that this was unacceptable and that Perestroika could advance in Bulgaria only under Todor Zhivkov’s leadership. I do not know who had instructed [Ganev] to speak to me in such an abrupt manner or what basis there might be for thinking that I was unclear how Perestroika should proceed in Bulgaria. Then comrade Todor Zhivkov called. He told me in an irritated tone that the US was grossly interfering in our internal affairs and that I had to express that bluntly—in other words, I had to repeat what Ganev had said. [Zhivkov] said that he knew about my appointment with the US ambassador and that such sessions, where we talked [only] gibberish, were unnecessary. I replied that it was not my intention to “talk gibberish” and that this meeting, which had been under preparation for a long time, was necessary for our country. I told him that I regretted his attitude but that I had always tried, in my work, to avoid damaging and irrelevant discussions. The extent to which I was permitted to do this was quite a different matter. Following my reply Todor Zhivkov adopted an altogether more respectful tone.

In connection with the episode I have just outlined, I request that the CC of the BCP and the Politburo take a position on this rude, indecorous, and totally unwarranted attack on me. I feel that, in view of the attitude of comrade Zhivkov—who is Secretary General of the CC of the BCP and Chairman of the State Council—I cannot continue to discharge my duties either as a member of the CC of the BCP and the Politburo or as Bulgaria’s minister of foreign affairs. I request that this letter be taken to mean that I am resigning from these posts.

On analyzing my experience further, I have come to the conclusion that the real reason for comrade Zhivkov’s irritation and rudeness is that he realizes that he has lead our country into a deep economic, financial, and political crisis. He knows that his political agenda, which consists of deviousness and petty intrigues and is intended to keep himself and his family in power at all costs and for as long as possible, has succeeded in isolating Bulgaria from the rest of the world. We have even reached the point where we are estranged from the Soviet Union and we find ourselves entirely on our own, in the same pigs’ trough as the rotten dictatorial family regime of Ceaușescu. In a word, with his policies Zhivkov has forced Bulgaria outside the currents of our age.

Do you think that it is easy to be the foreign minister of such a state, headed by such a leader? I believe that it is finally time for the Politburo, Central Committee, and Party to take up these questions. One fact that we should all be aware of is that the Bulgarian public took up these
questions long ago and now discusses them openly. I think that we all understand that the world has changed and that, if Bulgaria wants to be in tune with the rest of the world, it will have to conduct its political affairs in a modern way. If we do not believe in anything else, we should at least believe in the Soviet Union and the Communist Party of the Soviet Union.

Comrades, like all of you, I think I have a realistic picture of Zhivkov’s moral character. I know that he will stop at nothing, not even the most outrageous crimes, when what he holds most sacred—his power—is impinged upon. I know that he will fabricate a mass of lies and insults against me. He has already done this [with others]. I do not even rule out his trying to take physical retribution against me or members of my family. If this does happen, the responsibility will be yours, my comrades, with whom I have worked so long, whom I respect, and for whom I have great esteem and affection. I wish to offer my sincere thanks to all the comrades that I have worked with.

[Source: Archive of the Bulgarian Parliament, Sofia. Document obtained by Jordan Baev.]

DOCUMENT No. 3
Transcript of the Plenum Session of the Central Committee of the Bulgarian Communist Party, 16 November 1989

INFORMATION
about the Plenum of the Central Committee of the Bulgarian Communist Party [CC of the BCP], held on 16 November 1989 [...]

[...] The Secretary General of the CC of the BCP, Petar Mladenov, was given the floor:

“The Politburo of the CC of the BCP proposes that the Plenum discuss certain changes in the membership of the Central Committee of the Party, the State Council, and the Council of Ministers of the People’s Republic of Bulgaria.

Regarding the Central Committee of the Party:

1. The following comrades are to be dismissed from their positions as members of the Politburo and the Secretariat of the Central Committee of the Party, and to be removed from the membership of the Central Committee: Milko Balev, Grisha Philipov, Dimitar Stoyanov. They are to be retired with a pension.

Comrades Milko Balev and Grisha Philipov [are to be dismissed] because they lack the necessary qualities and they undermine the prestige of the Party and its leadership with their behavior and actions.

Strong negative attitudes have accumulated against them in society.

As Secretary of the CC of the BCP responsible for organizational issues and managing the work of the Secretariat of the Central Committee and that of the Council for Coordinating the Activities in Connection with the Situation in the Country, comrade Dimitar Stoyanov made glaring blunders, which contributed to increased tensions in the country.

2. Petko Danchev is to be dismissed as a candidate-member of the Politburo and removed from the membership of the Central Committee of the Party.

Cde. Danchev lacks the necessary political and moral qualities. Ever since he was appointed to office in the Council of Ministers, he has failed to handle even a single serious problem.

3. Cde. Stoyan Ovcharov is to be dismissed as a candidate-member of the Politburo of the Central Committee of the Party.

Resentment has developed against Cde. Ovcharov among the public and among economic managers due to the fact that he did not manage to master the work entrusted to him.

4. Cdes. Vassil Tzanev and Hristo Hristov are to be dismissed as Secretaries of the Central Committee of the Party and to be retired with a pension.

5. Vladimir Zhivkov, Nikolay Stefanov, and Hristo Maleev are to be expeditiously removed from the membership of the CC of the BCP.

6. The Plenum of the Central Committee is to revoke its resolutions of July and December 1988 to remove from the membership of the Central Committee of the Party comrades Stoyan Mihaylov and Svetlin Rusev, and to reinstate them as members of the CC of the BCP.

7. The following candidate-members are to be promoted to full membership of the CC of the BCP: Vassil Nedev—chief director of the firm “Metalokeramika”-Sofia; Georgi Pirinski—Deputy-Minister of Foreign Trade; Gospodin Yordanov—brigade leader of the electricians’ brigade at the Nuclear Power Plant-Kozloduy; Dichka Slavova—chairwoman of the agricultural collective in the village of Nicolaevka, Varna region; Rumen Serbezov—chief advisor to the Council of Ministers.

8. Comrade Nacho Papazov is to be promoted to member of the Central Committee of the Party. He is presently chairman of the Party’s Central Control Commission.

9. The following comrades are to be elected as members of the Politburo and Secretaries of the Central Committee of the Party: Andrei Lukanov—candidate-member of the Politburo of the CC of the BCP, and Nacho Papazov—chairman of the Central Control Commission of the BCP.

10. The following comrades are to be elected as members of the Politburo of the Central Committee:
Panteley Pachov—first secretary of the Regional Committee of the BCP in Plovdiv, and Mincho Yovchev—first secretary of the Regional Committee of the Party in Haskovo.

11. Comrade Jordan Jotov—member of the Politburo of the Central Committee of the Party, is to be dismissed from his position as Secretary of the Central Committee.

12. The following comrades are to be elected as candidate-members of the Politburo of the Central Committee: Dimitar Stanishev—Secretary of the Central Committee, and Ivan Stanev—brigade leader of an assembly brigade in the construction department at Kremikovtzi.

13. Comrade Prodan Stoyanov—director of the Personnel Department of the Central Committee of the BCP is to be elected as Secretary of the Central Committee

Regarding certain changes in the State Council.

The following changes in the State Council and the leadership of the permanent committees of the People’s Assembly are to be proposed:

1. Comrade Yaroslav Radev is to be dismissed as deputy chairman of the State Council, as chairman of the Council on Legislation, and as chairman of the Legislative Commission of the People’s Assembly.

I would like to tell you, comrades, that we do not have any particular objections against comrade Radev personally. He has worked in this office for 18 years. It is deemed that a certain renewal should occur in the State Council and that there should be some rejuvenation.

2. Comrades Grisha Philipov, Dimitar Stoyanov, Milko Balev, and Andrey Bundgulov are to be dismissed as members of the State Council.

3. The following comrades are to be removed from the leadership of the permanent commissions of the People’s Assembly: Grisha Philipov—chairman of the Commission on Socio-Economic Development; Milko Balev—chairman of the Commission on Foreign Policy; Emil Hristov—chairman of the Commission on Social Policy; Vassil Tzanov—deputy-chairman of the Commission on Preservation and Restoration of the Environment.

4. Comrade Todor Zhivkov is to be dismissed from his position as chairman of the Commission for Preparing a Draft Proposal for Changing the Constitution of the People’s Republic of Bulgaria.

5. Comrades Andrey Lukanov and Nacho Papazov are to be elected members of the State Council.

These are the proposals. [...].

I would also like to tell you, Comrades, in connection with these proposals, that I was handed the following letter from Cde. Milko Balev yesterday evening. I would like to familiarize you with it.

“To Cde. Petar Mladenov—Secretary General of the Central Committee of the Party

Esteemed Comrade Mladenov,

Through you, I direct a request to the Politburo to propose at the upcoming Plenum of the Central Committee of the Party that I be relieved from my position as member of the Politburo and Secretary of the Central Committee of the BCP.

After the session of the Politburo and the November Plenum, I made a serious self-critical analysis of my work and of my personal responsibility for the present situation of the Party and the country. I hope you do not have doubts that I have worked honestly for the cause of the Party.

I ask you to believe me that I accept the November Plenum resolutions with deep awareness, and that I will do everything within my abilities for the realization of the new course of the party. This is my deep communist conviction.

With respect—Milko Balev
14 November 1989"

Because this is a resignation request, the Politburo familiarized itself with it and deemed it advisable that [the request] be reported at the Plenum. Simultaneously with this, the Politburo insists on its proposals, which were just reported [...]

Then, comrade Pencho Kubadinski proposed on behalf of the Politburo to the session of the People’s Assembly, which took place in November this year, to nominate Cde. Petar Mladenov as Chairman of the State Council of the People’s Republic of Bulgaria. He pointed out that the combination of the two positions is extremely necessary at the present moment. It will allow better coordination in the activities of the Central Committee and that of the State Council during the period of reconstruction and in preparations for the Fourteenth Congress of the BCP. [...]

Then the speeches started. Comrade Nicolay Zhishev took the floor first. [...].

The main conclusion that could be reached, said cde. Zhishev, is that during the last few decades there has not been such an outstanding political event to have excited communists and all classes of the population so deeply and spontaneously. Life convincingly proves that all-round analysis and objective assessment of the situation as well as correct conclusions for the future work and active practical actions regarding reconstruction of the work of the party, state, economic, and public organs and organizations are necessary. [...]

[...]
After him spoke Cde. Hristo Hristov who supported the proposals for cadre changes and pointed out that the November Plenum held earlier this month, its resolutions, as well as comrade Petar Mladenov’s speech, were received by the Party and the people as the long-awaited word of the BCP. The results of the Plenum found overwhelming approval, support, and a readiness for an upsurge, for a truly revolutionary revival of the fatherland. [...] 

The cadre turnover in the Council of Ministers since 1987 turned out to be unsuccessful, continued comrade Hristov. Intrigues and struggles for political supremacy occurred. Attempts were made to create authority and social prestige through bombastic phraseologies and promises. The last two years were a hard period for the work of the Council of Ministers. Comrade [Georgi] Atanasov made tremendous efforts to achieve the [desired] results but it was very difficult for him when his deputies informed him after their visits to the building of the CC of the BCP that the decisions had already been made. It was obvious that everything was pointing against the authority of the head of the government. [...] 

I listened to the proposals and I cannot believe, said Slavcho Transky, who took the floor later, that such significant changes can be made during such a short period of time. And I keep wondering about the degree of deformation in the previous bureaucratic course. I also wonder about certain people who remained in the Politburo for 15, 20, or more years, and who could not find the moral strength to leave with dignity, but had to be dismissed in such a disgraceful way now. 

He supported the proposals put forward, and noted that there were few people with economic specialization in the Politburo and recommended that more economists be included in the future. 

Later on, cde. Transky emphasized that the people received with satisfaction Todor Zhivkov’s dismissal and Petar Mladenov’s election, and stated that the change was imperative, because socialism in our country was in crisis. 

Then he pointed out that with the beginning of reconstruction in our country a new socialist model has begun to be discussed. He noted that while we [the partisans] were struggling for freedom and independence, we had no idea or awareness that socialism could have various models and could assume whatever one we desired. He called for modesty in our choice of concepts, such as accelerated development, mature socialism, realistic socialism and the statement that we had built two Bulgarias [made originally by Todor Zhivkov]. Afterwards he drew the conclusion that we needed to break away from voluntarism and conformism as soon as possible [...] 

The speaker made the following suggestions: 

1. We should think objectively and calmly once more about the next Congress—should we hold it in 1990, or should we postpone it until 1991 taking into account the impoverished market, the discouraging report of the [Central Statistical Agency] for the first nine months of this year, the state of the economy, and the particularly bad labor discipline? 

2. The persecution of people who are not enemies of the state, but just think differently than we, should be terminated. Now that we have taken up a responsible mission, we especially need different opinions and pluralism. 

3. We should determine if Politburo members, with the exception of the Secretary General and the head of state, if the two positions are to be separated, need personal guards. Perhaps we need to reduce the number of militia officers who guard [industrial] objects and replace them with civil guards; the regular militia should concentrate on maintaining domestic order and controlling the highways in order to decrease the number of car accidents. [...] 

Later, cde. Nacho Papasov took the floor. [...] 

While cadre issues are being raised now, [he said] I would like to make several comments on them. It is not a secret that there was a crude violation of the collective style and method of management in our government, that there was a lack of principles in our cadre policy, as well as an instability in the structures, which cde. Slavcho Transky just discussed. And I would say that in Bulgaria a “nonstop reorganization” syndrome was created, a syndrome that made us the laughing-stock not only in this country but also abroad. The prestige of the government has gone downhill, most of all that of Todor Zhivkov. During the past 10 to 15 years comrade Zhivkov praised himself through incessant rambling memoranda, reports, commentaries, speeches and so on, all full of pseudo-scientific phrases, but poor in terms of content. [...] 

Now, stated cde. Papasov further, we are reaping the fruits of a policy that led Bulgaria into a degree of isolation that the country had not experienced before. [...] 

The floor was given to cde. Niko Yahiel. [...] 

Having emphasized the crucial importance of this period for the Party and the people, and expressed his genuine joy about the onset of changes, he stated: I will not conceal that after long and joyless self-critical reflections on the decades spent mostly in cde. Todor Zhivkov’s cabinet, I decided I ought to speak out not only to express my fervent support for a course which I personally deem only as life-saving and decent, but also to share my thoughts about things which in my opinion could restrict or threaten this course [of action]. 

The first steps taken after 10 November are decisive and strongly promising. They have already ensured the Party its first credit of confidence. However, public opinion is extremely strained and sensitive, more than I can remember since the [Stalin] era of the cult of the personality. [...] 

Comrade Yahiel stressed that it was only natural for a number of things to occur in this new situation that would
surprise and even startle us with their unusual obviousness. Pessimists, anti- and pseudo-restructuring, demagogues, and self-made innovators would emerge or simply people who would try to take advantage of the situation to make personal profit. Such occurrences will certainly create problems, not necessarily easy ones. However, all of this is inevitable in the course of a powerful democratic process and should not discourage and confuse us, or encourage us to take rash actions. We should protect this new course of development particularly strenuously from the leprosy of political demagogoy. The drastic difference between promises and actions, typical of the style of the former Secretary General of the Central Committee, has already once before robbed us of the people’s trust.

Later comrade Yahiel said that public opinion in the country is presently united on the issue of the economy’s dire situation.

The key question now is overcoming the constantly rising market deficit. He suggested that the measures for change be determined not by a narrow circle of people, traditionally working in anonymity, but be worked out by parallel and competing teams of widely recruited scientists and specialists, who will offer alternative opinions on ways out of the crisis and on the economic future of the country. No more Instanced of gross interference should no longer be permitted in the work of the Council of Ministers.

Everything indicates, continued comrade Yahiel, that in the upcoming months and years life will neither be simple nor easy for Bulgarians. This requires open and honest communication [between the people and their government]. We should at last start considering the study of the public as a guide to a more sensible and effective political and state governance.

In connection with this, the establishment of new relations between the Party and the mass media is highly imperative. We should cease patronizing and constantly instructing professionally and politically literate people on how to do their job. Humanity has not yet invented a more massive and effective means of dialogue between the people and its leaders [than the mass media]. The mass media is not just a tribune, but a daily People’s Assembly which debates real life, reflects and, simultaneously, shapes public opinion. This is why we should treat it as a respected partner. […]

Next to speak out was comrade Georgi Milushev who said he had taken the floor because he had held the position of director of the Department of Safety and Defense (DSD), as a result of the Party’s decision, for three years and one month. It was specific work, [he said,] in a department with clearly defined activities. This was a period of great suspicion and immense lack of trust. Only one person was trusted there who also played a part in resolving a number of cadre issues.

I believe, said cde. Milushev, that the Department of Safety and Defense [DSD] should take into consideration the decisions of the Politburo and the Secretary General, but it is actually a sub-department of the Ministry of Internal Affairs. The one-person management of such a significant and specialized sub-department should be avoided.

In response to a question from the audience to provide the name of the person who was trusted at the DSD, cde. G. Milushev replied that the person’s name is Ani Mladenova. She is registered in the DSD as an officer, a major, and holds the position of chief inspector and senior medical nurse, with an impressive number of [special] privileges.

We have put forward, said cde. Milushev, various motions, taking into consideration the specific character of the administration’s work in the spirit of reconstruction, democratization, and glastnost. This is a department which is directly relevant to our high-level political and state management, and every action or inaction on our part has repercussions because the DSD is a living organism with clearly defined political functions.

At the second session at 3 p.m., the first to speak was Vassil Mrachkov who expressed support for the proposed cadre changes in the Politburo, and classified them not so much as cadre changes, because we have experienced many such changes before, but as the first real step towards changing the work and policy of society’s governance.

As a party member, a citizen, and a professional, stated cde. Mrachkov, I am concerned with the problems of our legislation in the conditions of reconstruction. Shortly after the July Plenum, a new political directive was developed by the Central Committee, concerning the decrees adopted by the People’s Assembly. Two such examples are the decree for the self-government of municipalities and one for committing socialist property to the care of labor collectives. These decrees replace the Constitution and various other laws, and act as a “mini Constitution.” The decrees were also announced at the eighth session of the Ninth People’s Assembly on 28 July 1988. Politburo members and Secretaries of the Central Committee of the Party repeated these decrees at crowded gatherings of the party and state activists. These decrees did considerable damage to the rule of law in the country, created confusion among the cadres, and restricted the activities of the law-enforcing institutions because they were dictated “from above.” This led to legalistic nihilism and voluntarism manifested in the contemptuous attitude toward the laws and toward the supremacy of the People’s Assembly that adopts them.

My second comment, continued Cde. Mrachkov, concerns some crude legal violations as well as the trampling on the morality and human virtues in whose name the Party came to power. We have ceased appreciating them. People’s waning confidence in us results from immoral displays and from certain leaders taking advantage of their official state and party positions to enrich themselves. Last but not least, [people’s waning
confidence] comes from our attitude toward the people with whom we work and govern. It seems to me that all of us gathered in this hall stand in need of exercising greater morality in our exercise of power, and more glasnost in our professional and public work. And I would also add that we need more glasnost in our behavior as citizens.

Cde. Mrachkov’s final comment referred to the current social situation, to the accumulated dissatisfaction and tensions, to the pluralism in opinions and the necessity of greater freedom and legal guarantees for ensuring the right to citizens’ assembly.

In his statement, comrade Pavel Matev pointed out that the time for naming things by their real names had come, because we had had enough deformations and had lost our credibility before the people. Social tensions had built up and the main responsibility lay with the person who spoke against the monopolization of power the most, but hurt the feelings of numerous people, including many artists. He did not care about the gifted people of Bulgaria. He engaged in writing books perhaps as a way of having a rest so that nobody could deny his efficiency, said cde. Matev. He was writing on all possible topics, about all sciences and all the arts, including literature, [...] Comrade Konstantin Atanasov stated in his speech that despite the considerable tensions in various social sectors, efficiency had always been low, so low as to fall below zero. The only reason behind this is the anti-party and vicious style of party rule which was quickly transformed from collective, into ostensibly collective and finally became solely totalitarian during the past few decades.

Under the initiative of cde. Zhivkov’s personal retinue, everything possible was tried to promote all of his family members, relatives and friends to the highest-level positions, said comrade Atanasov. Of course, not all of them lacked abilities, but having found themselves in such a [favorable] position, they were quickly corrupted.

Ljudmila Zhivkova was not only promoted to the Politburo, but her exaltation began during her second year [in the Politburo]. It was hinted in various forms that she should succeed her father as head of the Party. True, Ljudmila had certain leadership qualities and contributed considerably to the popularization of our culture abroad, nevertheless, her talents were rather modest [for the exalted position of head of the Party]. She had not matured ideologically, or, to put it more precisely, she was confused and lacked the necessary experience.

Especially striking is the case of Vladimir Zhivkov’s promotion as a member of the Central Committee. At the most inappropriate time [he was promoted as] director of the Department of “Culture” at the Central Committee with the prospect of becoming a member of the Politburo. All those acquainted with him could say with a clear conscience that he lacks both the experience and qualities required for party work, let alone the question of his educational degrees which are undisputably subject to re-evaluation.

We all know that Milko Balev lay at the bottom of all these initiatives. Evidently, he had numerous helpers; however, he best knows who they are.

Comrade Balev published a book on Ljudmila in which he infused so many inaccurate appraisals and exaltations that if Ljudmila had been alive to read it, she would have felt embarrassed.

Comrade Balev went to an extraordinary amount of trouble to present a number of party documents and reports as Todor Zhivkov’s personal work. Why was this all necessary? [...] He did not accidentally remain indispensable for over 30 years nor was he accidentally promoted to become a member of the Politburo. After comrade Lilov was dismissed, [Balev] did not lack in ambitions to even become a Deputy Secretary General.

If we should discuss cde. Balev’s performance as a leader, cde. Atanasov proceeded after citing several examples, it could be said that his principal obligation consisted of strengthening Todor Zhivkov’s position by all means possible. In his direct work he pretended to work and in effect blocked the work of the International Department. The commission he ran has not put forward a single substantial motion before the Politburo.

[I would like to introduce] a case to illustrate how far he had gone in his initiatives to strengthen Todor Zhivkov’s position. Perhaps only few know that secret negotiations were conducted even with kings to make Todor Zhivkov a laureate of the Nobel Peace Prize. This was really a shameful conspiracy that took place in Europe.

Milko Balev was the sole Politburo member whom the Communist Party of the Soviet Union did not invite nor receive.

In order to create a truly calm atmosphere within the party, comrade Atanasov pointed out that it is imperative that [we] dispel the psychosis that spying devices have been installed in the offices of all party and state leaders. [The use of such devices] not only paralyzes the cadres’ abilities, but also places the MIA [Ministry of Internal Affairs] above the Party and inevitably leads to legal deformations and to totalitarian methods of government.

To decisively overcome this [paralyzing] atmosphere, I suggest that the Plenum charge the Politburo to assign members of the Central Committee to a commission. [The latter] should conduct an inspection in the Ministry of Internal Affairs, in certain subdepartments and units which may eventually need to be disbanded. This does not mean that the loyalty and dedication of the MIA cadres will be questioned, but that the above-stated units and methods of work should be re-evaluated. [...] Comrade Krastju Trichkov said that he was taking the floor in order to express his approval of the recently undertaken measures, and to support the motion for cadre changes.

We were too slow in dismissing some comrades, he said. I mean first of all the dismissal of Grisha Philipov and Milko Balev as well as the removal of Vladimir Zhivkov and Petko Danchev. We should not allow any more instances of
At last year's meeting with students, Todor Zhivkov stated: [“] The Ministry of Economics and Planning suggests a 12 % increase in the commodity funds. [“] (While, in truth, we had discussed this option in the People’s Assembly and found it unfeasible.) [“] We, [“] Zhivkov said, [“] decided in the Politburo to increase them by 20 %. [“] Let Todor Zhivkov come forward now and explain the meaning of the word “illusion”! Where is this 20 % increase in commodity funds? Irresponsible job! Irresponsible. I worked for five years as his first Deputy in the State Council. He had one saying. When we advised him against various decisions, he used to say: [“] Only God is above us. Whatever course we decide to take, it is correct.[“] He had gone that far.

I read, continued cde. Trichkov, the transcripts of comrade Mladenov’s meeting with representatives of the intelligentsia, and here also several comrades posed the question about the Bulgarians connected with Islam. We hear voices demanding a reversal, even the recognition of a Turkish minority and the restoration of [Muslim] names. These are serious questions and we no longer have the right to resolve such an issue according to political motives and considerations. We have erred enough. The government forced many of us to register as Macedonians according to similar political considerations on the Macedonian question. Even today certain individuals are pressuring us to betray history. There are no minorities in Bulgaria. We made a mistake, but it was a mistake in our approach—we violated the principle of pursuing cooperation in our work with them [the Muslims], the political approach.

I believe it only fair, cde. Trichkov stated in conclusion, that each of us should perceive his or her own guilt for the fact that during the period of 35 years we tolerated as head of the party and the state a person who managed to manifest himself as a cult and to monopolize power for himself. We should not run away from our guilt. We are responsible people. Each of us is responsible for alienating the people from the party. Everyone should make a self-evaluation in order to purge himself, and understand his own responsibility for the present situation. [...] Otherwise, we will be mistaken if we consider that one person is solely responsible for everything. We are all guilty and everyone should see his or her own guilt. Of course, some are guilty to a much greater degree [...]”

Next to take the floor was comrade Andrey Lukanov who stated that he did not intend to make a speech because he had already participated in the Politburo session and fully supported the proposals presented. He only wanted to share several thoughts in connection with comrade Dimitar Stoyanov’s speech (not from a personal perspective). He expressed his enthusiasm for what was happening at the Plenum. [He was also glad] that the roots connecting us to the most glorious moments of the Bulgarian Communist Party’s historic course were not destroyed. I am satisfied, said comrade Lukanov, with [Stoyanov’s] self-critical spirit, with his declaration of loyalty to the Party cause, loyalty that I do not doubt because of his rapidly evolving position. Nevertheless, this speech requires a commentary. It is not that I want to put comrade Stoyanov in a more distressing situation, I would certainly not wish anyone to feel the way he is feeling now. In my opinion, the main problem here is that despite his self-criticism, comrade Stoyanov failed to comprehend the major issue in question—that, voluntarily or not, he became the voice and vehicle of a failed administrative system, of a historically rejected style of political governance. Under his direct leadership and with his active participation, the merger of the staff of the CC of the BCP with certain specialized structures in the National Security Services rapidly approached realization. This symbiosis, rarely seen in the practice of the fraternal communist parties for several decades, was pursued to guarantee the affirmation and perpetuation of the regime.”

After 28 people had spoken, comrade Peter Mladenov suggested that the word be given to comrade Fotov, comrade Todorov, and comrade Philipov, as all of them had expressed a desire to speak. [He also] suggested that the rest of the people who wanted to speak take the floor at the upcoming December Plenum.

Comrade Jordan Jotov said that he wanted to clarify some issues but not because of a desire to be acquitted or have his responsibility and guilt reduced:

First, regarding the article against cde. Stoyan Mihaylov: I have not taken part in initiating this article nor in developing it, he said. It was worked out in another cabinet and you can guess yourself to which cabinet I am referring.

Second, regarding cde. Vladimir Zhivkov’s promotion: I bear responsibility and, naturally, guilt in this case. What actually happened? For a year or so, the Ministry of Culture, Science and Education had a Minister, but it was not a Ministry in practice. As agreed upon between the two of us, comrade Georgy Yordanov had drawn up several proposals and projects for developing such a Ministry, and suggested different structures, and so forth. All were rejected. Why? I could not comprehend. The Department of Ideological Policy [of the CC of the BCP], which was previously managed by cde. Stoyan Mihaylov, remained at a standstill for a year.

During this period, conversations with me were conducted on different occasions, but one question was always present: how do you, comrade Jotov, see my son’s situation? I said once during the first or second such conversation: “Comrade Vladimir Zhivkov has one major disadvantage—that he is your son and therefore his promotion.... [would seem inappropriate].” But the conversations continued and eventually I yielded. When I proposed him [for promotion], I must admit that in the subsequent procedures the idea of splitting the
Department of Ideological Policy was conceived. When I recommended comrade Vladimir Zhivkov as director of this department in the Politburo, comrade Dobri Dgurov objected categorically. Because comrade Zhivkov was absent from the conference room at that moment, Dgurov asked me to relate his objections to the proposal. I did so but, as you all saw, they were not heeded.

I would also like to say two words on the question of the informal groups. In our work in this respect, we committed many mistakes. We reacted to individual cases, but did not make the effort to analyze or study the entire phenomenon. We used to reduce everything to a common denominator. This was our [major] mistake. [...] What is the way out of the situation? The way out is through a change in the present system. The system could give birth not only to one, but to two, three, five, or even a hundred Todor Zhivkovs. The only way out is to reform the system.

Comrade Grisha Philipov turned down the offer to take the floor.

Comrade Stanko Todorov announced that he was taking the floor in connection with the proposal for him to be included in the membership of the Politburo. This proposal was put forward by Ivan Pramov, Kalajdgiev, and Radoslav Radev. After he thanked them for appreciating his work, he asked them to withdraw their proposal.

The story with my resignation in July of last year is well-known, he said. There is no point in delving into it once again. Then, as you know, I posed the request to be relieved from my post in the People’s Assembly. After the [July] plenum, I asked the chairman of our Party’s Parliamentary Commission—comrade [Pencho] Kubadinski—to approach the Secretary General [with this question] and to choose with him a candidate for the chairperson’s position in the People’s Assembly and to propose him or her for nomination at the next session. Kubadinski went to the Secretary General, came back and told me: “The Secretary General does not agree to accept your resignation. We both want to recommend that you stop creating problems for the Party by trying to resign from the People’s Assembly. You have to remain at work there.” I said: “If I am creating problems for the Party [by wanting to resign], then I will endure.” After this episode, however, things remained unchanged at the People’s Assembly: the Politburo and the State Council continued to completely ignore and deprive the People’s Assembly of authority. Apparently, all comrades have felt this, as indicated from the speeches on this question made by many comrades here.

I was compelled to write a letter to the Politburo on 14 December of this year, in which I raised the question that the violations of the Constitution should be ended and the authority of the highest organ should be restored as it has lost prestige in the eyes of our society. The legislative work is not up to the level required to carry out the July Plan and neither is the control work. In fact, presently there is no legislative work because the country is governed lately by decrees. As to the control activities, the head of the government has not accounted for his work for eight consecutive years, although the People’s Assembly annually includes in its agenda a provision for such a report. At the Secretary General’s order, and of course with the cooperation of the head of the government, this report invariably came to be meaningless.

In addition, two years have already passed since the Commission on Changes in the Constitution was appointed. The chairman of this commission, Todor Zhivkov, failed to find time to gather the commission and begin work on a draft proposal for changing the Constitution.

What was the reaction to my letter? I remember that I was called on 14 September by comrades Dimitar Stoyanov and Pencho Kubadinski who informed me that the Politburo had discussed my letter. [The Politburo had] rejected my critical comments on the grounds that things were not this way, that the People’s Assembly was developing well, that the parliamentary commissions were working well, and so on. I stated before the two comrades that I had nothing to change in what I had already written in my letter. With this, the question was closed.

I believe, Cde. Todorov finished his speech, there is no need for me to be included in the Politburo. If the comrades from the Central Committee feel that I can remain chairman of the People’s Assembly until the end of this mandate, I will continue to perform this duty without being a member of the Politburo. In a month’s time I am turning 69 and beginning my 70th year. The prospect to develop further is nonexistent for me. It is only appropriate that we give the new Secretary General the opportunity to select young and promising cadres for the Politburo.

I was rather hoping that the example of my resignation would be followed by some of my colleagues, but, unfortunately, my hopes were not realized.

Comrade Petar Mladenov said in conclusion:

“Comrades, I suggest that we draw the speeches to a close. I am well aware that the things I will say here should be brief and, therefore, they would not be considered as a concluding speech to the discussion that took place. I want to touch on only a few proposals.

In my opinion, this Plenum proved to be a natural continuation of the memorable 10 November Plenum. Moreover, I think we need to acknowledge that it turned out to be something of a purgatory, a purgatory for all of us. Earlier I shared this opinion with others in the corridor and cde. Elena Lagadinova understood it correctly. I call it a purgatory for the Party, a purgatory for the Plenum of the Central Committee of the Party, because many things were said and many bitter truths were revealed here.

Was there another way? No, because such a Plenum would not have happened or it would not have followed the spirit of the resolutions adopted on 10 November. Nor would it have been held in the spirit of this new political line, this new political course which we have undertaken.

I believe that the Plenum deserves high marks. I am
deeply convinced that if the rest of the comrades, who signed to speak, had had their word, they would have contributed additionally to this high mark. I regret that we needed to put an end to the speeches. We have, however, come to the agreement that those comrades will have the opportunity to speak first at the next Plenum [...]

The last point I want to make concerns the proposal for my candidacy for Chairman of the State Council. I would like to tell you, comrades, and let this remain here in the Central Committee, that I am deeply convinced that the two positions [Chairman of the State Council and Secretary General of the BCP] should not be held by the same person. And if I gave my consent for putting forward my candidacy before the Politburo plenum, I did so only because it was deemed that the present political moment necessitates such a combination of duties. I believe it is advisable that the Commission on Preparing a Draft Proposal for Changing the Constitution be gathered during the upcoming week. Its work should be examined, evaluated and voted upon. The above-discussed question should be generally resolved through changes in the Constitution and its new version. This is the only appropriate course of action. I mention it so that you will be aware that I have some reservations when you cast your votes [on the proposals].

After comrade Petar Mladenov’s speech, the Central Committee proceeded to vote on the Politburo’s proposals. The results from this voting were published. The Plenum closed at 7:50 p.m.

[Source: CC BCP Records, Bulgarian Central State Archive, Sofia, Fond 1b, Opis 65. Document obtained by Jordan Baev.]

DOCUMENT No. 4
Letter by Ognyan Doynov to Delegates of the People’s Assembly, 13 December 1989

ESTEEMED MEMBERS OF THE PEOPLE’S ASSEMBLY,

In reality, our economy is in a very dire situation. The diagnosis of the disease was very precisely defined at the last Plenum of the Central Committee.

There is no doubt that everyone is responsible for allowing the government of Socialist Bulgaria to become absolutist and autocratic. Everyone who has participated in the totalitarian machine, regardless of the field in which he or she has worked, is culpable to one degree or another for the grave deformations in the society and the economy of the country.

I do not underrate or hide my own political and personal culpability.

First, I admit responsibility that, as a former member of the Politburo, I voted for the dismissal of many capable comrades whose main fault consisted in the fact that Todor Zhivkov saw in them rivals and pretenders for his position. The fact that I am not aware of even one occasion during the whole period that I was in the government when someone stood up or voted against such unjust dismissals does not excuse me.

Second, I cannot help but be ashamed that, together with others, I have participated in the panegyric praising of Todor Zhivkov’s personality, virtues, and achievements.

Third, I bear a distinct guilt that I did not stand up against the unjust decisions concerning the life and plight of the Bulgarian Muslims. No one has given us the right to determine by decree their ethnic origin and to deprive them of the freedom to choose their own names. The sacred democratic right of every individual to be a member of the ethnic group that he or she believes they belong to cannot be abolished. So many family and personal tragedies were created that we will not be able to wash away the shame and disgrace of these deeds in the near future.

Fourth, I definitely do not wish to overlook my own responsibility for the sectors of which I was specifically in charge, because it is precisely my work there and the modest contribution that I made in those sectors that justifies my conscience for remaining a politburo member for 11 years. [...] His [Todor Zhivkov’s] true attitude towards me started showing strongly and openly after the end of 1985. He began to prepare my dismissal. He and his retinue endeavored for three whole years to manipulate public opinion through improbable rumors about me that were spread according to instructions by the centers for disinformation at the MFA [Ministry of Foreign Affairs]. It was alleged, and always from “reliable sources,” that I possessed several luxurious villas each of which were worth hundreds of thousands of dollars; that I had a great deal of money, foreign currency; that I took bribes; and many other [allegations].

In less than three years after 1986, it was decided that I would be removed from various positions as each time I was demoted to a lower and lower rank and a narrower field of specialization. Two out of five such decisions were never realized because they were revoked. I remained for more than 5 months without a work appointment. Eventually, I was appointed chairman of one of the numerous associations. [...] We know in whose hands the entire legislative and executive power of the country was concentrated and to whom the responsibility for managing the economy was entrusted. This was and still is Georgy Atanasov.42 Did Todor Zhivkov take away all his rights and leave him in a limbo? Is it not his responsibility above all for everything that happened, even for the endless reorganizations which led to chaos in the economy? Was he not the person who dismissed many capable economic activists by falsifying their actual economic results. We all remember the case of Ivan Andonov from Farmahim.
Much could be said about his [Atanasov's] economic incompetence and primitivism in working in the economic field.

I also want to address A. Lukanov and to ask him whether he feels himself the main culprit for the tremendous increase in the foreign debt. Who managed the currency commission? The privileged and [Todor Zhivkov's] retinue lined up to run this commission: Todor Zhivkov, Grisha Philipov, Georgy Atanasov. Invariably, Andrei Lukanov was either its chairman or its operative manager. [...].

I propose that G. Atanasov, A. Lukanov, and P. Pachov immediately hand in their resignation from all posts and duties currently occupied in order to avoid being disgracefully expelled later. [...] I have spoken seriously and made serious accusations. I am prepared to answer to them. Those who accused me of being one of Todor Zhivkov's retinue should not hide behind anonymity, behind the flag of the Party and the country.

I do not call for revenge, but for justice. Hatred is a destructive force. We need love and optimism now in order to go forward.

In the past, there was a ready scenario for a speech such as mine. The voters were advised to request a recall of their people's representative. This was followed by prison and, as a result of the imprisonment, a lack of access to any documents with which a person could defend himself or herself.

Let us now see how this matter will be dealt with in democratic conditions.

Now, if we want the new-born democracy to survive, I propose that a parliamentary commission with the wide participation of public organizations and the mass media hears out everyone who is being accused or has something to say. In this way the members of Todor Zhivkov’s retinue could be revealed as well as the real culprits responsible for the present situation.

Justice could be served only by uncorrupt people who will not take advantage of their power in order to hide their own shame and disgrace.

All of us who worked in the days of Todor Zhivkov, both good and bad, ought to leave and give way to new and young people, morally and mentally unburdened by the horrid deformations which we lived through.

13 December 1989
Ognyan Doynov

[Source: Archive of the Bulgarian Parliament, Sofia. Document obtained by Jordan Baev.]
the interest on debt. Such requests were made very often in connection with propositions for additional currency expenses by Ognyan Doynov or other individuals whom he managed. My colleagues in the government during these years can confirm this.

If we truly desire to be objective, we should also take into account that the reasons for the increase in the foreign debt during the last few years are connected not only to the deformations in economic policy, but also due to outside factors and domestic and international conditions. [...] 

Analyzing Ognyan Doynov’s accusations and his whole speech, I ask myself what motivated him to utter so many untruths at once. Knowing him well, I am convinced that this is not accidental and is not due to a lack of knowledge about the true state of affairs. I come to the conclusion that in this case he is trying to place himself ahead of truthful revelation in order to present himself as a victim once again—this time a victim of the present party and state leadership. I am confident that this tactic will not hinder the clarification of actual facts, provided the requirements for objectivity and impartiality are fully adhered to.

As for me, I understand very well that I am one rather “inconvenient” witness to Ognyan Doynov because I am very well familiar with many of his risky projects and concrete actions due to the authority of the duties I performed.

He expressed doubts about my impartiality by voting against my appointment as chairman of the parliamentary commission for investigations and for resolving urgent issues related to deformation and violation of the law. Taking this into account, I have already asked the commission to relieve me of the obligation to deal with the cases concerning Ognyan Doynov. This will be performed by other members of the commission against whom he has not expressed reservations.

I will be grateful, esteemed Comrade Chairman, if you bring this letter of mine to the attention of the people’s representatives.

18 December 1989

With respect,

[signature]

Andrey Lukanov,

People’s Representative from the 248th Electoral Region of Sliven

[Source: Archive of the Bulgarian Parliament, Sofia. Document obtained by Jordan Baev.]
Wilson Center Press, 1997), p. 81. In a 9 November 1989 cable in the afternoon Polansky informed the State Department: “That people wanted changes was clear; what was equally clear was that no one is prepared to mount any direct challenge to Zhivkov… We tend to agree… that there probably will not be major personnel changes.” The National Security Archive, Washington, D.C.

14 All documents are slightly abridged.
15 Not printed.
18 Minister (1987-1989); Deputy Prime Minister (July-Nov. 1989).
20 Minister of Foreign Trade.
21 Son of Todor Zhivkov; head of Department in CC BCP (1988-1989)
22 Head of Education Department CC BCP (1973-1986); Head of Todor Zhivkov’s Office (1986-1989)
23 Relative of Todor Zhivkov; Deputy Head of International Department CC BCP; Ambassador in Spain.
24 Secretary CC BCP (1978-1988); removed from CC BCP 1988.
28 Head of International Department CC BCP (1976-1989), Secretary of CC BCP (1977-1990)
30 Associate Professor of Sociology in Sofia University; First Secretary of Communist Youth Organization (1986-1989).
31 Secretary CC BCP (1986-1988).
32 Secretary CC BCP for Agriculture in 1980s.
34 Member of Politburo (1966-1989); Deputy Prime Minister (1962-1974); President of the Fatherland Front organization (1974-1989).
35 First Secretar of Burgas District of BCP and member CC BCP in the 1980s.
36 Repressed as Yugoslav and British spy 1950-1951; Deputy Minister of Defense (1962-1981); Chairman of the Committee of Solidarity with Asia, Africa and Latin America (1982-1989); Member CC BCP until 1991.
37 Adviser of Todor Zhivkov (1950-1988); Member of Board International Sociological Association (1972-1986); President of Bulgarian Sociological Association (1982-1988).
38 Former head of Politburo Guard B Security & Guard Department at the Ministry of the Interior (1986-1989).
39 Former General Prosecutor of Bulgaria; Member of Parliament (1990-1991).
40 Minister of Agriculture (1957-1962); Secretary of CC BCP (1962-1978).
41 Member of Politburo (1966-1989); Deputy Prime Minister (1962-1974); President of the Fatherland Front organization (1974-1989).
42 Member of Politburo (1981-1990); Prime Minister (1986 to Jan 1990).
Czechoslovak November 1989

By Oldřich Tůma

It is difficult to select only a few documents from among the hundreds that vividly illustrate the collapse of the Communist regime in Czechoslovakia. As the uniqueness of the Czechoslovak case consisted in the considerable dynamism of the process, one possible solution to the dilemma is to illustrate the unexpected acceleration of the Czechoslovak crisis using several documents from the regime and opposition issued immediately after the “Velvet Revolution” of 17 November 1989.

The collapse of the regime actually occurred in the ten to fourteen days after the evening of 17 November, when disciplinary police brutally broke up a demonstration of many thousands in downtown Prague. The nucleus of protesters was formed by university students. The following day, students from Prague University and the Technical University decided to react decisively. The students proclaimed a strike and also called for a general strike on 27 November. Theaters, first in Prague and then around the country, immediately went on strike. Instead of performances, spontaneous political debates took place in numerous theater buildings every day.

On 19 November, the Civic Forum (CF) was successfully set up as a coordinating organ of the opposition, that became, stage by stage and in cooperation with the students' strike committee, a major political force in the country. Demonstrations in Prague went on for days: on 20 November, for the first time, the number of participants exceeded a hundred thousand; on 25 November perhaps three quarter of a million men and women took part in an opposition demonstration in Prague. From 20 November on, many thousands of men and women demonstrated daily in numerous Czech and Slovak towns across the country.

That same day, first some of the print and then the electronic media freed themselves from the regime’s control. On 24 November, the leadership of the CPCz (Communist Party of Czechoslovakia) abdicated. The new leadership also failed to regain the initiative. On 26 November the first official meeting and negotiation between the government and Civic Forum (CF) took place. The next day a two-hour general strike gripped the country. On 29 November, due to public pressure, the Communist Party rescinded the constitutional article on the leading role of the Communist Party.

In the ensuing days and weeks a new government was established with the participation of the CF and its Slovak partner, Public Against Violence (PAV). Parliament, which was to be chaired by former communist party leader Alexander Dubček, ousted after the Prague Spring in 1968, was reconstituted, and former dissident Václav Havel was elected president. All of the important power shifts were finally completed with the first free elections in June 1990.

The powerful clash of people and principles lasted from about 17-29 November 1989. Documents 1-5, in which the leaders of the CPCz struggle hard to notify and furnish party members with instructions, show quite clearly their growing irresolution, helplessness and lack of control over the events. They also illustrate that when the CPCz could no longer make up its mind and wavered over the use of force (17 November was the last time that violence against the public was used), the leadership was powerless in the face of the growing opposition. Attempts at political mobilization proved ineffective and futile. Teleprinters (telexes) and information from the center increasingly became statements of its own concessions and impotence, as well as of the opposition’s éclats and their achievements. In the document of 29 November, the opposition is already accepted as a political partner, even though only a few days earlier the regime had refused to establish any contacts with those forces. Similarly, despite the CPCz's insistence on the continuation of Gustáv Husák’s presidency, on the continued existence of the People's Militia, the party organizations in the workplace, and party control over and ownership of vast amounts of property, the regime was unable to defend these positions. As early as 10 December, Husák abdicated the presidency, and before the end of the year the People’s Militia had been disarmed and broken up, party organizations at the work place had been forbidden, and soon after the elections, even the CPCz's property was confiscated.

Two important documents from the opposition, documents nos. 6 and 7, also give proof of the speed of the events: the CF Proclamation of 19 November and the CF Program Principles of 26 November. What We Want states that the problems of the country would not be solved by replacing people in positions of power or by the withdrawal of several politicians from public life. Yet, it was exactly that solution which the proclamation of CF had demanded a week earlier—and which had seemed at that time, extremely radical. The proclamation What We Want already brings a rather vague but consistent and rounded-off program of essential changes in all areas of public life—simply said, it calls for the end of the Communist system.
DOCUMENT No. 1
Teleprint from CC CPCz to First Secretary
CC CPCz and Secretaries of Regional
and District Committees,
19 November 1989

19 November 1989, Prague—Teleprint from the CC CPCz to the First Secretary of the CC CPS [Communist Party of Slovakia] and the Head Secretaries of the Regional and District Committees of the CPCz on the situation and roles of the Communist Party.

As you are already informed, at the end of the commemorative procession on the participants 50th anniversary of the 17 November in Prague there occurred an anti-government demonstration by several participators. In view of the character of the event, necessary measures were undertaken by the disciplinary forces. As a result of the dissemination of incorrect information about the death of one of the participants—the student Martin Šmíd—a hostile psychosis arose, especially among the students and actors from the theaters in Prague and in some counties which announced a week-long strike and want to misuse the theater buildings in order to sway the residents with their opinions, which are in conflict with the interests of the majority of the citizens and the state.1

Their aim is to launch a general strike on 27 November in the CSSR. It is necessary to assume that they will try to influence the cultural workplace and schools in the entire republic. They even want to infiltrate the factories and the JZD2 [Standard Farming Cooperative] in order to gain support for their destabilizing plans from all strata of society.

Anti-socialist groups headed by the Charter [-77] are evidently behind this activity. The plan of action is coordinated by the Western media.

The Presidium of the CC CPCz dealt with these questions today, 19 November, in the evening hours and adopted the necessary measures allowing [it] to confront these plans.

The Presidium calls on the regional and provincial committees to do everything necessary to reject the enemy’s efforts in the counties, districts, in the factories, in the cooperatives, in the schools and in other workplaces, and to ensure that uninterrupted work, peace and order be secured.

It is desirable that the collectives publicly express their resolute position against efforts to bring about a political coup in our country.

Within the framework of the adopted measures it is necessary to secure the readiness of the People’s Militia to protect the workplaces from the efforts of the enemy forces to penetrate into the workers’ collectives.

The Presidium has called on responsible workers to step up the offensive in their ideological work in this connection, especially in the media, with the aim of politically isolating the forces seeking an overthrow. Adopt the same measures in the counties and districts.

With comradely regards,

General Secretary,

[Jakeš’s signature]

[Source: SÚA, ÚV, KSC - teleprints and letters, ÚV-134/89. Obtained by Oldřich Tůma.]

DOCUMENT No. 2
Teleprint from the Presidium of the CC CPS to the Secretaries of Regional Committees of the CPCz [and] CPS and the Party Municipal Committees in Prague and Bratislava
21 November 1989

The Central Committee of the Communist Party of Czechoslovakia

Prague, 21.11.1989
#ÚV-0135/89

Dear Comrades,

In the last few days a disturbance of the peace and public order occurred in Prague and a list of other places in our republic. The organizers of these acts abused a segment of the public, especially the student youth. They are dramatizing the situation, influencing the feelings and opinions of young people, heightening emotions. They are misusing the cultural front for this. Strikes are being organized in a series of theaters.

Revolutions and demands with ultimatums calling for cadre changes in the leading organs, for the resignation of the government, for the destruction and liquidation of the CPCz, for the discrediting of the SNB3 (police). This is a direct attempt to overthrow the socialist order.

The forces of the opposition are trying to widen their influence beyond the scope of the capital. They are sending their organizers out to universities and various gatherings which are taking place in many areas at their initiative.

The current situation demands deliberate yet principled and offensive action on the part of all party organs and organizations and individual communists, in order not to let the situation slip out of our hands.

The current situation demands deliberate yet principled and offensive action on the part of all party organs and organizations and individual communists, in order not to let the situation slip out of our hands.

It is urgently necessary to mobilize party organizations, communists and all citizens who care about socialism, to support the position of the CSSR government, the
CSR and the SSR, made public on 21 November of this year, and to help bring about an atmosphere of peace and prudence.

The most important is mass political work among the people. The functionaries and apparatus of the party and people’s councils, the leading workers must go to the workers’ collectives to prevent efforts to call a general strike, which the forces of the opposition are planning for 27 November. Every managerial worker is personally responsible for the situation in his collective.

It is necessary to engage in discussions with the students and apprentices, who are being manipulated by irresponsible elements. It is especially important to strengthen the influence of the teachers and parents over the younger generation.

The main goal is to show convincingly that straining the situation is a threat to every citizen of our society, the safety of every family. The eventual strikes, which the opposition threatens to carry out, would significantly damage our national economy, lead our market and supplies to destruction (especially now in the winter period before the Christmas holiday).

The organizers of revolutionary acts will continue in their efforts to seek the support of the workers for their demands. They are trying to enlist support in the factories. Therefore it is necessary to prevent their emissaries from entering businesses, factories and other institutions and prevent them from using other methods of influencing the workers’ collectives. The factory management and party leadership must ensure proper defense of these interests. In these times the leading workers—communists and non-communists—must realize their responsibility for the handling of the political situation in their sphere of influence.

We must pay special attention to the media. The Presidium of the CC CPCz adopted measures which ought to stifle the high passions [of the public] and ensure uniform information [being given out by] the Czechoslovak Press Agency (ČTK), radio and television. Concrete tasks were handed down to the executive directors of these information agencies to this end.

The party press must influence the public. This applies in full also to regional, district, business and factory dissemination and information media. It is necessary for them to broadcast the positions of the worker’s collectives and individuals supportive of the politics of reconstruction and democratization, a dialog in the interests of socialism. The voices condemning the efforts to disrupt our society should be heard.

In this situation it is necessary to mobilize the ideological activists of the party, all those who have the ability to influence the opinion of communists and the public-at-large in the counties and districts. To ensure prompt information and uniformity of opinions, it is necessary to incorporate lecturers and propagandists of social organizations, including the Socialist Academy, into this group of activists.

We recommend that operational staffs be established in regional and district party committees, which would evaluate the situation, [and] its development and would propose concrete measures.

All party organs and organizations must act quickly, decisively and unanimously, and secure the support of the regional and district committees of the National Front, organizations affiliated with it, and national committees at all levels.

The positions and resolutions in support of the politics of the party should be sent without delay to the Central Committee of the CPCz.

The Presidium of the CC CPCz

[Source: SÚA, ÚV, KSČ - teleprints and letters, ÚV-0135/89. Obtained by Oldřich Tůma.]

DOCUMENT No. 3
Teleprint from Jozef Lenárt,
Secretary of CC CPS, to Regional Committees
and Municipal Committees
in Prague and Bratislava,
23 November 1989

It is evident from the information of the party regional (municipal) committees that in all regions measures were adopted according to the teleprint of the General Secretary of the CC CPCz. Working groups of party organs were dispatched to crucial centers and businesses in order to secure uniformity of information and analysis of the political situation. But even when the measures were adopted for the protection of businesses and factories against penetration by the opposition and the spread of negative demonstrations, in a series of instances the posting of appeals, flyers, organization of petitions eliciting pressure tactics against the CPCz and the government took place.

The students are continuing their efforts to establish contacts with workers in establishments and gaining support for the general strike. In factories, no tendencies toward strikes have been exhibited so far. On the contrary, in important political-economic centers, the workers are expressing demands for peace and work.

The opposition forces are trying to unite striking students and the part of the public which is in solidarity with them in the demands of the “proclamation" of the Civic Forum, established on 19 November. The Civic Forum consists of: Charter 77, The Czechoslovak Helsinki Committee, The Circle of Independent Intelligence, The Movement for Civic Freedom, Artforum, Renewal, indepen-
dent students, The Czechoslovak Democratic Initiative, VONS, Independent World Coalition, Open Dialogue, Czechoslovak PEN Club Center, several members of the Czechoslovak Socialist Party, Czechoslovak People’s Party, representatives of religious, creative and other groups, several former members of the CPCz. The proclamation was signed by: Eng. Rudolf Bátěk, Petr Čepěk, Václav Havel, Milan Hruška, Prof. Dr. Milan Jelínek, Milan Kňažko, Dr. Lubomír Kopecký CSc., Jiří Křižan, Václav Malý, Martin Mejsťířek, Petr Oslzlík, Dr. Libor Páť CSc., Jana Petrová, Jan Ruml, Prof. Dr. Věnek Šilhán, Ondřej Trojan, Eng. Josef Vavroušek CSc., [and] Saša Vondra.

The demands of the Civic Forum’s proclamation go much further than the original expectations of the students, expressed in the joint statement of the Presidium of the Municipal Council of the SSM in Prague and the MVR SSM, and the statement of the Secretariat of the of the CC SSM. It is necessary to reveal this fact. We present a shortened version for your information, for it contains a clear confrontational character, demagoguery and tactics of mounting attacks against the party through certain individuals. It can be expected that these demands will increase in intensity. Text of the proclamation:

1. That those members of the Presidium of the CPCz who are directly connected with the preparation of the intervention [in Czechoslovakia] by the five members of the Warsaw Pact in the year 1968 and who are responsible for the long years of devastation of all areas of our society, and who for years refused any kind of democratic dialogue with society, will immediately step down.
2. That the First Secretary of the Municipal Committee (MC) CPCz in Prague and the Federal Minister of the Interior, who are responsible for all of the measures which the police have carried out over the last few months against the peaceful demonstrations of citizens, immediately step down.
3. That a committee be set up which will concretely investigate these measures, find the culprits and propose punishments for them. Civic Forum representatives must be included in this committee.
4. That all political criminals, including those who have been detained in connection with the last demonstration, be immediately released.

In its proclamation, the Civic Forum further calls for carrying out a general strike on 27 November 1989, from 12:00 p.m. to 2:00 p.m.

In discussions with students and the public, it is necessary to show that the Civic Forum is misusing the original demands of the students, directed primarily at the investigation into the security force’s intervention on 17 November 1989. It broadens them to ever more momentous political demands, aimed at destroying our social order. Several flyers distributed in Prague signed by “students on strike” endorse these demands.

Strike committees, the composition of which often changes, are negotiating with school administrations. Students are outside of the school buildings and their faculties throughout the day. Students are keeping watch to make sure that only students and school workers enter.

At several universities other demands are being submitted of a general political nature, which the university administrations are rejecting.

The student strike committees are run from one center which is probably connected to the spokespersons of the independent initiatives. Some artists and representatives of independent initiatives also have made appearances at several universities and led discussions with the students that often have called for a general strike and agitated for an active connection between the student strikes and the worker unions at factories and collectives. The majority of strike committees are in negotiation with the school administrations.

The CPCz Works Organization and CZV CPCz at the universities are planning their political acts in such a way that the employees and teachers in schools would be able to continue fulfilling their work duties, which is not the case in the majority of instances. At several universities, however, differences of opinion exist between the teachers and the staff, especially the younger ones, for whom several—including party members—generally support the political demands of the students which the school administration opposed.

The Ministry of Education adopted measures to bar the students from using duplication technology, and computers, and to try and keep the students in the schools.

The main task is to resume instruction in high schools and universities as soon as possible. In those places where it is impossible to engage in discussion with the students, it is necessary to offer them a specific program to turn their attention to a constructive outlet for their activities.

At the high schools we must take advantage of the PTA meetings [to ensure] that the school administrations are in constant contact with the students’ parents. The national committees and school administrations are responsible for the situation in the schools, and must control the situation and direct the activity of the teachers.

The representatives of strike committees from all schools and representatives from the universities in the CSR will meet on 23 November at the agricultural college in Prague Suchdol with the representatives of the Ministry of Education of the CSR for an open dialogue intended to exchange information on the situation and to reach agreement on the next steps, including the resumption of the normal school year and an end to the strike.

The situation among the workers of the cultural front is basically unchanged. Other cultural institutions in the capital and in other regions of the republic are gradually joining in the protests against the intervention of the security forces on 17 November 1989. Prague sculptors and painters have [now] also joined the strike. The attempt
to reverse the decision to strike has so far been unsuccessful. Some theater directors have said that their influence on the developments could be even further diminished because the strike committees are handling the decisions.

The situation in the clergy and religious groups was basically solid on 21 November, without any tendencies toward activism on the part of spiritual and religious people.

While there is peace within the clergy and religious groups in our republic, the prevailing sentiment [among them] is one of apprehension about possible further developments.

The exception is the Roman Catholic Church. Cardinal Tomášek’s written statement entitled “To all the People of Czechoslovakia,” reproduced in The People’s Democracy, on 22 November, is of a confrontational character. The statement, prepared by the former cleric Malý who is the leading proponent of illegal organizations, is the sharpest criticism of the political development of the last forty years to date.

On the other hand Cardinal Tomášek expressed his constructive position in a personal conversation with the Head Secretary of the MC CPCz, comrade Štěpán, on 22 November 1989, in Prague, where he stated the following: “The situation surprised me, I can not yet express myself. I would like to get acquainted with the situation in order to openly express myself. I am convinced that there is good will on both sides.” This conversation, broadcast on the television news on 22 November, should be used as an argument against the articles in The People’s Democracy.

The planned so-called Thanksgiving service, which is supposed to take place on 25 November 1989, in the St. Vitus Cathedral in the Prague castle on the occasion of the elevation to sainthood of Anežka Přemyslovna, is in serious danger of being misused. Although the event was announced as early as two months ago, the current level of preparation, whose purpose is to attract the largest possible number of believers, has intensified. To this end a circular was recently sent to all the dioceses in the CSR. Apart from this, a group of believers, who have prepared pilgrimages to Rome, is planning a significant activity, namely the mass would be preceded by a procession of believers through Prague beginning at the buildings of the former convent on František and ending at the castle.

From the letters and resolutions arriving at the CC CPCz it is clear that the opinion within society and within the ranks of the strikers are differentiating. They mostly express support for the policies of the party and request acceptance of measures to ensure a renewal of peace and to create normal conditions for work.

Václav Havel made an appearance on Wenceslas Square on 22 November, which also was shown on the Czechoslovak television program “Contact.” He spoke about the tactical approaches of the opposition forces at the current time. He greeted all the workers who are supporting the demands of the artists, students and intelligentsia, and who are founding civic forums and strike committees. After twenty years, history is returning to our country. For that we have to thank the free-thinking students and young people in general, to whom the future of our country belongs. He thanked theater and other artists, who rebelled after many years of degradation. He said that the Civic Forum is becoming a real representative of critical thinkers, and is beginning to be taken seriously through the power of freedom. Within the next few hours the Forum will try to unify the introduced demands into a single list. He expressed his faith in the support for the demands, in the form of a general strike. He informed [the people] that Civic Forum had written a letter to Bush and Gorbachev, who were supposed to discuss the developments in Eastern Europe, which requested support for democratization efforts in Czechoslovakia. He announced that telegrams were sent to Solidarity [the independent Polish labor union] and to the People’s Fronts in the USSR and Hungary.

Analysis of the broadcasts of Western radio stations during the course of the last year has revealed that they are intensifying their attacks against the authorities with the aim:

- of gradually creating in the minds of the populace the opinion that, considering the “illegality” and “brutality” of [the authorities’] actions against the “peace-loving” demonstrators and citizens, it is possible and humanly justified to use the “same” means against them,
- of creating pressure to change the laws dealing with the actions of security and the judicial organs, to limit their numbers and completely restructure them, and especially to limit the [powers of] State Security,
- of creating a separation between the police units (especially with Public Security on one side and State Security and Emergency Units on the other) and a separation between the Investigative apparatus of the State Security and judicial organs,
- of more deeply discrediting the state and, especially, the party leadership through attacks on the authorities, and introducing the idea that it is possible to resolve the growing problems of ineffective leadership without recourse to the methods seen in the fifties’.

It is possible to conclude that the attacks against the state power apparatus will have a tendency to rise. This was fully proven in the period starting 17 November.

Since the situation is changing very fast it is essential to act constructively and accurately.

Party organs at all levels must stop being on the defensive. The Central Committee of the CPCz will deal with the current political situation at its meeting on 24 November 1989, and discuss the role of the party.
Regional and district CPCz organs and basic party organizations must mount pressure against the opposition independently of the preparations of the Plenum. We are fighting for public opinion. The future of the country and its citizens is at stake. Every act, day and hour is decisive.

We must show the harmfulness of pressure tactics, which prevent real dialogue, and from which new political demands are constantly being introduced that go far beyond the boundaries of the previous spontaneous student reaction.

We must demonstrate to the workers and students on the basis of concrete facts what the losses caused by strike actions are, in relation to businesses, districts and individuals. No long words, but concrete numbers.

We must show the moral damage of continuous strikes in high schools upon the psyche and discipline of the students, on their future development and on their education. We have to call on the parents at the same time and show them how children are drawn into confrontational acts by those who present themselves as “fighters for humanity.”

Our tactical agenda must rest on plans to divide the until now united front of participants in the protest. It is essential to differentiate between those who participate in strikes and those who go to protest gatherings, and the organizers of these acts and those who go to open confrontation and take advantage of the inexperience of young people.

It is necessary to prevent the entry of emissaries from the opposing forces into factories, their demagogic influence on the workers and their inflammatory speeches against socialism and the Communist Party.

It is necessary to concentrate all of our forces on stopping the general strike. We must talk with young people and other citizens about how the original student demands—investigation of the events of 17 November 1989—together with the call for a general strike is being realized. Added to that we must mobilize the entire apparatus and party caucus, communists in national committees, representatives and activists from national committees. It is necessary to make an impact on the members of strike committees. They are not united in the question of the aim of the general strike. It is necessary to take maximum advantage of each different opinion in the strike committee to ensure the main goal—preventing the general strike.

In connection with the dramatic developments in the internal political situation, the activity of non-communist political parties (in particular the Czechoslovak People’s Party) is intensifying. This is resulting in their orientation in the wrong direction, even though these parties are members of the National Front.

Directly after the CC CPCz meeting it is necessary to acquaint the functionaries and the party caucus with its conclusions, establish a concrete plan, unify the communists behind the fulfillment of the decisions, explain them and seek a wide public for them.

Jozef Lenárt [in his own hand]
Secretary of the CC CPCz

[Source: SÚA, ÚV, KSC - teleprints and letters, ÚV-0133/89. Obtained by Oldřich Ţima.]
The demand to activate the society and the information system (develop an intense dialogue with all the social and ethnic groups in the CSSR and even the émigrés in foreign countries in such a way that the population would become a political nation with a pluralist society, the legalization of independent periodicals, the creation of objective information networks, to enable plurality of opinion in education, liquidation of the state monopoly on schools, the launching of broadcasts of radio and television programs for believers).

Political changes stemming from the revocation of the Lessons from the Crisis Development, [the resignation of] all so-called compromised functionaries of normalization, the removal of Soviet army units in the CSSR in the course of abandoning the security component within the framework of the Warsaw Pact agreements, the removal of paramilitary and police elements from civilian life, the abolition of the People's Militia, an end to political and cadre privileges. The extension of the separation between church and state, freedom of activity for male and female religious orders, the retraction of state control over the church. The pluralization of union life, the independence of unions from the state and the employers, the right to establish “free” union organizations.

Further, changes in the Czechoslovak Constitution, especially the retraction of Article 4, which establishes the leading role of the CPCz, and elimination from the constitution of so-called ideological concepts and constructs such as “the working people, Marxist scientific world interpretation, socialist social and state leadership, the leading role, et al.,” removal of the “indefinite state sovereignty over one or another political alliance” (basically a veiled demand for neutrality), constitutional “demand for the right for national self-determination up to an eventual split” within the federation, the new delimitation of Moravia, and the return of the traditional state symbols (emblem, flag, hymn).

The opposition further demands that the constitution be expanded to include recognition of the Gypsies and the Jews as nationalities, and to allow the free contact “of minority nationalities with their people, the supplementation of the system of constitutional court and the system of administrative courts, the election of judges and their complete independence, the leadership of jury trials and the institution of investigating judges, the possibility of private law suits against state organs and their members, the institution of the rule that no one can be forced into “military service” and the “establishment of service of a non-military character” for conscientious objectors. The shortening of the basic military service, the introduction of a civil substitution service, a decrease in the army budget and its publication, the humanization of the military service, and the demilitarization of education.

C. The Economy
They demand radical reform of economic aid, the introduction of autonomous forums of collective owner-

ship, plurality of different types of ownership, full renewal of private enterprise in the sphere of trade, craft, small and medium businesses, parts of agriculture and culture. The introduction of family forums and long-term lease of land, provision of long-term loans and material aid to private owners, reconstruction of heavy industry with the removal of false employment and preferences stemming from adverse international economic relations.

In the last hours the following demands are emphasized (the minimal program for the next few days):

- the recognition of the leadership of the Civic Forum as a partner of the Presidium of the CC CPCz and an immediate round-table negotiation;
- the creation of a new government of the so-called Great Coalition coalition with the participation of the representatives of the Civic Forum (i.e. all opposition groups), revived National Front parties and individuals having informal authority;
- the call for free elections with the participation of the established forces;
- the legalization of the activity of opposition groups and the procurement of material means for their activity (offices, etc.).

The research done by the Institute for Public Opinion Research at the Federal Statistical Office in May 1989, shows that a group of the people who were asked, endorsed the following demands of opposition groups represented by the Civic Forum. The demands in question are:

- removal of the leading role of the CPCz – 32% were in favor;
- change in the way the leading role of the CPCz is implemented – 49% were in favor;
- pluralization of the union movement – 35% were in favor;
- cadre changes in the leadership – 77% were in favor;
- changes in the laws limiting freedom of expression, assembly and information – 59% were in favor;
- changes in the system of elections – 60% were in favor;
- changes in the evaluation of the year 1968 – 59% were in favor;
- reprivatization of the means of production – 32% were in favor.

In the research conducted from 22-24 November 1989, 88% (and 93% in Prague) were in favor of cadre changes in the leadership, and 81% (and 88% in Prague) were in favor of official negotiations with the opposition (meaning its legalization).

A significant number of individuals questioned also
think that the next development of the CSSR (its political system and economy) should head towards a system that is somewhere between socialism and capitalism (47%). An almost identical number of people think that it should go the socialist route. In the polls conducted, the difference of opinion between CPCz members and those not affiliated with the party was not ascertained.

From the information of the CC CPCz from 26 November 1989, at 12:00 p.m., it is noticeable that the series of demands found among party members is identical to the demands of the opposition. Emphasis is placed upon:

- further cadre changes in the leadership of the party (with more emphasis on the resignations of Štěpán, [and] Zavadil, and less emphasis the resignations of Lenárt, Knotek, Hofeny);
- a thorough analysis of the past with the assignment of personal responsibility for the state of society;
- engaging in discussion with the opposition;
- an accelerated elaboration and introduction of a proposal for a new constitution of the CSSR, a law on the freedom of association and a law on the freedom of assembly.

In comparison with the information from the RC CPCz from 25 November 1989, a shift has taken place in the demands of the party members to benefit the demands of the opposition (on 25 November only 3 of the 11 demands included in the information were in agreement with the demands of the opposition; on 26 November, 5 of the 10 demands were in agreement with those of the opposition). It is obvious at the same time that in the workers’ collectives the level of opposition to the general strike called by the Civic Forum for 27 November is diminishing.

**Conclusion**

In public opinion, but also among CPCz members, there is a noticeable growth of negative tendencies and an inclination toward the demands of the opposition. The situation reveals that in the last few days a significant weakening of the role and prestige of the CPCz in society has occurred as a result of the belated reaction to the developments and the ineffectively accepted decision.

The opposition took the initiative because of the developments in the party. The decisive question will be the correct formulation of the leading role and position of the party in the social system, which must correspond to the opinion and demands of the people. It is clear that the Party will have to be a partner both in the National Front as well as in its relations to the opposition (Civic Forum). Should the corresponding measures and clearly formulated party lines fail to be adopted, there is danger that the party may disintegrate and will have diminished hopes of gaining a significant portion of the vote in the next elections.

It is necessary to immediately publish the accepted measures and conclusions from the dialogue, because the opposition today can use the legal media (radio, television, the National Front press). In the information for the RC and DC CPCz it is necessary to on the one hand to accelerate their flow, inform [everyone] without any delays on all events and decisions about the demands of the opposition and their escalation, but, on the other hand, especially to inform [everyone] about our positions and arguments, through which it would be possible to react to the demands. The RC and DC CPCz themselves must ensure a political evaluation of the situation in the regions, including the developments of local branches of opposition groups and their demands.

We are sending information on the conclusions of the nation-wide party caucus which took place in Prague on 28 November of this year.

[Source: SÚA, ÚV, KSČ - teleprints and letters, ÚV-144/89. Obtained by Oldřich Tůma.]

---

**DOCUMENT No. 5**

Teleprint, Information on the Conclusions of Nation-wide Party Congress held in Prague, 28 November 1989

FOR INFORMATION OF THE CENTRAL COMMITTEE OF THE COMMUNIST PARTY OF CZECHOSLOVAKIA

125 11 Praha 1, Nábřeží Ludvíka Svobody 12
Telephone 2199
Telegram address: UVKOMSTRANY

Praha, November 1989

Refer to in answer: #ÚV-145/89

Issue:

The Central Committee of the CPS, the regional committees of the CPS, CPCz municipal committees in Prague and Bratislava district (provincial) committees of the CPS, CPCz

The nation-wide party caucus which took place in Prague on 28 November 1989 reached the following
conclusions:

1. The political directive for the plan of action of the entire party over the next few days is laid out in the speech of the Secretary General at the Nation-wide Party Caucus. The program of the party will be prepared by the Presidium of the CC CPCz and introduced for discussion in the party.

2. To acquaint every communist with the discussions of the Caucus, and explain the conclusions of its discussion and seek their fulfillment by communists and other workers. To strengthen the unity of the party behind the principles of socialism. Trust in the party must be supported by well thought-out cadre decisions and not by lack of control and certainly not by pressure.

3. It gives total support and trust to our leadership of the Central Committee and its Secretary General, comrade Karel Urbáněk, during the discussion of the current problems.

4. The CC CPCz proposes to begin an analysis of the entire forty-year period of the construction of socialism, especially the years 1968-1969.

5. Engage in an active dialogue and cooperate with all who want to build a socialist Czechoslovakia. This [includes] those individuals and groups who are concentrated in the Civic Forum and uphold these positions. To show at the same time the true side of those who, in the name of the citizens, try to break up the socialist leadership of our CPCz.

6. To enable the members of the CPCz expelled from of the party in connection with the developments of the years 1968-1969 to return to the CPCz, as long as they are in favor of socialism.

7. The date for the [next] Party Congress was approved by the session of the CC CPCz for 26 January 1989. If the situation demands it, call the congress earlier. The CC CPCz will decide these questions, however, to immediately initiate the preparations and to responsibly choose delegates who will carry the responsibility for the ensuing fate of our party and this country.

8. We refuse the demands for the liquidation of the People's Militia, basic organizations in the workplace and the transfer of party property. The People's Militia are not aimed against our nation, but are necessary to prevent sabotage and revolutionary attempts.

9. The main goal at the present is to secure the fulfillment of all the tasks in the national economy. To ensure the continuation of production, supply, operation of services and healthcare. The communists must lead by example in these activities.

10. The caucus repudiated the random attacks of the Civic Forum against the president of the republic, for this function must be protected in accordance with our Constitution.

11. The reminders which were introduced at the nation-wide party caucus will be used by the Central Committee of the Party in preparation for the emergency congress and during the elaboration of the platform of the CPCz.

[Source: SÚA, ÚV, KSČ - teleprints and letters, ÚV-145/89. Obtained by Oldřich Tůma.]

DOCUMENT No. 6
Proclamation on the Establishment of Civic Forum
19 November 1989

PROCLAMATION

At the meeting in the Prague Theater Club on 19 November at 10:00 a.m. the Civic Forum was established as the mouthpiece of that part of the Czechoslovak public which is ever more critical toward the policies of the current Czechoslovak leadership and which was recently deeply shaken by the brutal massacre of students who were peacefully demonstrating. Charter 77, The Czechoslovak Helsinki Committee, The Circle of Independent Intelligence, The Movement for Civic Freedom, Artforum, Renewal, independent students, The Czechoslovak Democratic Initiative, VONS, The Independent World Coalition, The Open Dialogue, The Czechoslovak PEN Club Center, several member of the Czechoslovak Socialist Party, The Czechoslovak People's Parties, religious parties, creative and other associations, several former and current members of the CPCz and other democratically minded citizens will take part in the work of this forum. The Civic Forum feels itself competent to negotiate immediately with the government about the critical situation in our country, to express the actual demands of the public and to discuss the solutions.

The Civic Forum wishes to begin such negotiations, which should be the beginning of a universal discussion on the future of Czechoslovakia, by a negotiation of these urgent and ever more openly formulated demands:

1. That those members of the Presidium of the CC CPCz who are directly connected with the preparation of the intervention by the five members of the Warsaw Pact in the year 1968 and who are responsible for the years long devastation of all areas of our society, immediately step
down. These are, namely, Gustav Husák, Miloš Jakeš, Jan Fojtík, Miloslav Zavadil, Karel Hofman and Alois Indra. The pernicious politics of people, who for years refused any kind of democratic dialog with the society, completely legally resulted in the terrible events of the last days.

2. That the First Secretary of the Municipal Committee (MC) CPCz in Prague Miroslav Štěpán and the Federal Minister of the Interior, František Kincl, who are responsible for all of the measures which the police have carried out over the last few months against the peaceful demonstrations of citizens, immediately step down.

3. That a committee be set up which would concretely investigate these measures, find the culprits and propose punishments for them. Civic Forum representatives must be included in this committee.

4. That all the criminals of conscience, including those who have been detained in connection with the last demonstration, be immediately released.

The Civic Forum demands that this proclamation be published in the official Czechoslovak media.

The Civic Forum stakes its authority behind the plan for a general strike on 27 November from 12:00 p.m. until 2:00 p.m., called by Prague university students, and understands it to be an expression of support for the demands which it wants to discuss with the state leadership.

The Civic Forum believes that its creation and task corresponds with the will of the 40,000 current signatories of the petition Several Sentences, and is open to all the constituents and forces of society whose concern is that our country should begin peacefully finding the way to a democratic social order, and through it to economic prosperity.

On behalf of the Civic Forum:

Eng. Rudolf Battěk, Petr Čepek, Václav Havel, Milan Hruška, Prof. Dr. Milan Jelínek, Milan Kňažko, Dr. Lubomír Kopecký CSc., Jiří Krňan, Václav Malý, Martin Mejstřík, Petr Oslzlí, Dr. Libor Páty CSc., Jana Petrová, Jan Ruml, Prof. Dr. Věnekl Ilhán, Ondřej Trojan, Eng. Josef Vavroušek CSc., Saša Vondra.

Prague, 19 November 1989.

[Source: Ústav pro sodobé dějiny (ÚSD), Akademie věd České republiky (AV ČR), Koordinační centrum Občanského fóra (KC OF) Archive, file Dokumenty OF.]

---

**DOCUMENT No. 7**

**List of Goals by the Civic Forum, 26 November 1989**

**What We Want**

Programatic directives of the Civic Forum

Our country finds itself in a deep moral, spiritual, ecological, social, economic and political crisis. This crisis is the result of the inactivity of the current political and economic system. Almost all the mechanisms necessary for society to properly react to the changing internal and external conditions have been eliminated. For ineliminable decades the self-evident principle has not been respected: who has the power must also carry the responsibility. All three fundamental powers in the state—legislative, executive and judicial power—have landed in the hands of a narrow ruling group, composed almost exclusively of CPCz members. Thus the principles of a legitimate state were overturned.

The CPCz monopoly on the occupation of all important positions creates an unfair vassal system, which cripples the entire society. The people are thus sentenced to play the role of mere executors of the orders of the powerful. A slew of fundamental human, civic and political rights are denied to them.

The directive system of the central leadership of the national economy has plainly failed. The promised reconstruction of the economic mechanism is slow, ineffective and is not carried out by the necessary political changes.

These problems will not be resolved by a substitution of persons in positions of power or by the departure of a few politicians from public life.

The Civic Forum is therefore pressing for these program goals:

**1. Rights**

The Czechoslovak Republic must be a legal, democratic state in the spirit of the traditions of Czechoslovak statehood and in the spirit of the internationally accepted principles, expressed above all in the Universal General Declaration of Human Rights and in the International Pact on Civic and Political Rights.

A new constitution must be worked out in this spirit, in which the relationship between the citizens and the state in particular will be revised in detail. This constitution must, of course, be only accepted by a newly elected constitutional assembly. The enforcement of civic rights and freedoms will be reliably ensured by a developed system of legal guarantees. An independent judiciary must also constitute a constitutional and fair judiciary.

It will be necessary to gradually make the whole Czechoslovak legal establishment consistent with these principles, and ensure that it will be committed not only to the citizens, but also to the organs and functionaries of the
We insist on righting the wrongs done in the past as a result of politically motivated persecutions.

2. The Political System
We demand fundamental, effective and lasting changes in the political system of our society. We must create anew or renew the democratic institutions and mechanisms, which will enable the real participation of all citizens in public affairs and at the same time will become an instrumental barrier against the abuse of political and economic power. All existing and newly created political parties and other political and social groups must have the same opportunities to partake in the free elections of all the representational bodies. It is assumed, however, that the CPCz, will relinquish its constitutionally ensured leading role in our society and its monopoly over the media. Nothing stands in its way of carrying this out as early as tomorrow.

Czechoslovakia will be an equal union of both nations and all nationalities, observing the principles of a federative state order.

3. Foreign Policy
We are striving for our country to once again occupy a worthy place in Europe and in the world. We are a part of Central Europe and we want to therefore maintain good relations with all of our neighbors.

We are counting on inclusion into European integration. We want to subordinate our policy toward our partners in the Warsaw Pact and COMECON to the idea of the “Common European home.” We respect our international legal obligations while fully reserving our state sovereignty. Meanwhile, we want to revise the agreements motivated by the excessive ambitions of the leading representatives of the state.

4. The National Economy
We must abandon the current economic system. It takes away the desire to work and wastes its results, plunders the natural resources, destroys the environment and increases the total backwardness of Czechoslovakia. We are convinced that this economic system is impossible to improve through partial improvements.

We want to create a developed market, not deformed by bureaucratic interference. Its successful functioning is contingent on the breaking of the monopoly on the positions in today's big businesses, and the creation of true competition. The latter can only be created on the basis of a parallel, equal existence of different types of ownership and the gradual opening of our economy to the world.

The state will, of course, retain in the future a series of irreplaceable functions. It will ensure universal economic conditions equal for all, and undertake macro-economic regulatory policies with the intent to contain inflation, the growth of foreign debt and impending unemployment. Only

5. Social Justice
Decisive for us, is that conditions be created in the society for the development and the assertion of everyone's ability. The same conditions and the same opportunities should be provided for all.

Czechoslovakia must be a socially just country in which people receive aid in old age, sickness and difficult situations. An important precondition for such a society, however, is a prosperous national economy.

Churches, communities, businesses and various state volunteer organizations can contribute to the creation of a vivid network of social services. Thus the possibilities for the assertion of a rare sense of human solidarity, responsibility and love for one's neighbor will be expanded. These humanist principles are necessary for the cementing of our society.

6. The Environment
We must all look for a way to renew the harmony between the people and the environment. We will strive for a progressive repair of the damages which we have inflicted upon nature for the last several decades. We will try to restore our countryside and our dwellings to their original beauty, to ensure better protection of nature and natural resources. We will accomplish in the shortest possible time a significant amelioration in the basic conditions of human life: we will try to ensure quality drinking water, clean air and uncontaminated food. We will press for a fundamental amelioration in the system of environmental care which will be aimed not only at liquidating the current sources of pollution, but first of all at preventing further damages.

We will, at the same time, change the composition and objective of the national economy, and thus decrease in particular the consumption of energy and raw materials. We are aware that this will lead to sacrifices that will touch every one of us. All this requires a change in the hierarchy of values and in our lifestyle.

7. Culture
Culture can not be only something for the artists, scholars and teachers, but a way of life for the entire civic society. It must be extricated from the chains of any ideology and must overcome the artificial separation from world culture. Art and literature can not be limited and must be provided many opportunities for publication and contact with the public.

We will put science and scientific work in the place where it belongs in society. We will rule out its naive and demagogic overestimation, as well as its degraded position which makes it a tool of the ruling party.

A democratic school system should be organized on humanist principles, without a state monopoly on education.
Society must respect teachers in any type of school and must provide them with a space where they can assert their personality. It is necessary to return to the universities the rights, which ensure their independence and the freedom of the academic soil, and this for professors and students alike.

We consider the education of society to be the most valuable national asset. Upbringing and education must lead to independent thought and morally responsible discussion.

This is what we want. Our program today is concise, we are working, however, on making it more concrete. The Civic Forum is an open coalition of citizens. We therefore call on all who can contribute to this task to do so.

In Prague on 26 November 1989—6:00 p.m..

[Source: Ústav pro sodobé dějiny (ÚSD), Akademie věd České republiky (AV ČR), Koordinační centrum Občanského fóra (KC OF) Archive, file Dokumenty OF.]

Dr. Oldřich Tůma is the director of the Institute of Contemporary History in Prague.

1 On 18-19 November a rumor swept Prague (the origin and source of which is still not satisfactorily explained) about the death of one participant in the 17 November demonstration. Admittedly, the news was never confirmed. Nonetheless, it played a huge role in mobilizing society.

2 JZD - Jednotná zemědělská družstva (Standard Farming Cooperatives) - a name for a basic form of collectivized agricultural farms in communist Czechoslovakia.

3 SNB - Sbor národní bezpečnosti, policie (Public Security, i.e. Police).

4 ČTK - Československá tisková kancelář (Czechoslovak Press Agency).

5 SSM - Svaz socialistické mládeže (Socialist Youth Organization) - a large youth organization controlled by the Communist party; its central leadership, and even more so its lower ranks and bodies, emancipated themselves partly from the influence of the CPCz leadership.

6 People’s Democracy (Lidova demokracie) - a daily newspaper issued by the Czechoslovak Populist Party, one of two political parties (together with the Czechoslovak Socialist Party), that from 1948-1989 played a role in the “democratic pageantry” of the Communist regime. Both parties and the paper worked as quite dependent, puppet organizations of the CPCz. However, in the key days of November 1989 they emancipated themselves. It is true that the news they issued played an important role in informing and mobilizing of the public.

7 VB - Veřejná bezpečnost (Public Security) - uniformed police.

8 StB - Státní tajná bezpečnost (State Security) - secret political police.

9 Karel Urbánek became General Secretary of the Central Committee of the CPCz on 24 November, in place of Milouš Jakeš. He did not remain in his position for even a full month.

10 Lidová milice (People’s Militia) - paramilitary organization, a “private army” of the CPCz, it originated with the Communist take-over in February 1948.

(continued from page 29)

the immutability of this principle simply through good motives. We have been led to it through impartial analysis of the objective processes of our time. The increasing varieties of social development in different countries are becoming in ever more perceptible feature of these processes. This relates to both the capitalist and socialist systems. The variety of sociopolitical structures which has grown over the last decades from national liberation movements also demonstrates this. This objective fact presupposes respect for other people’s views and stands, tolerance, a preparedness to see phenomena that are different as not necessarily bad or hostile, and an ability to learn to live side by side while remaining different and not agreeing with one another on every issue.

The de-ideologization of interstate relations has become a demand of the new stage. We are not giving up our convictions, philosophy, or traditions. Neither are we calling on anyone else to give up theirs. Yet we are not going to shut ourselves up within the range of our values. That would lead to spiritual impoverishment, for it would mean renouncing so powerful a source of development as sharing all the original things created independently by each nation. In the course of such sharing, each should prove the advantages of his own system, his own way of life and values, but not through words or propaganda alone, but through real deeds as well. That is, indeed, an honest struggle of ideology, but it must not be carried over into mutual relations between states. Otherwise we simply will not be able to solve a single world problem; arrange broad, mutually advantageous and equitable cooperation between peoples; manage rationally the achievements of the scientific and technical revolution; transform world economic relations; protect the environment; overcome underdevelopment; or put an end to hunger, disease, illiteracy, and other mass ills. Finally, in that case, we will not manage to eliminate the nuclear threat and militarism. […]

(continued on page 307)
A broad agreement about the essence of the Cold War as a propaganda contest in a great variety of social activities, and not primarily a military conflict, has led to a re-evaluation of the relations between cultural activities and political agendas in the early Cold War era. This has led to a renewed interest in the manufacturing of consent and the role of covert action in the promotion of ideas on social and political organization and freedom of expression. This conference aims at a multi-disciplinary evaluation of the lasting significance and consequences of the cultural activities of the Cold War in Western Europe as a battle-ground for the shaping of democratic societies. It also seeks to reassess the critical interpretations of the Cold War that were developed in the 1960s and 1970s and take a fresh look at the complex mix of public and private organizations that were engaged in this struggle.

The journal Intelligence and National Security is keen to publish the conference papers with the idea of bringing out a Special Issue. In connection with this, the material is also likely to appear as both a hard-back and soft-back book.

Themes:

1) Scripting the Cold War: The Discourse of Peace and Freedom. In what terms was the Cold War perceived in the western world? What can discourse analysis reveal about the conditions of the Cold War mood? How did memories of and traditions of resistance in the Second World War affect the conceptualization of the Cold War? What role did gender play as a category in the perception of the Cold War?

2) Organizing the Cold War: How did a combination of private and public organizations fight the Cold War? Which initiatives were taken on both sides and how did these trigger reactions?

3) The Politics of Productivity. How were labor and business relations shaped under the influence of Cold War thinking, and what were the consequences for democratic society?

4) Opinion Makers and Covert Action. What use was made of intellectuals and their ideas in the (covert) politics of the cultural cold war? How does one assess the linkages between intellectual activities and clandestine networks?

5) Cold War and the Popular Imagination. How did various forms of popular culture (sports, arts, film, religion, etc.) reflect the Cold War mood and how did political and civil institutions use them to direct public opinion?
Czechoslovak Regime Documents on the Velvet Revolution

DOCUMENT No. 1
Czechoslovak Secret Police (StB)
Memorandum, “Information on the Security Situation and Further Tasks in the Struggle Against the Internal Enemy” in the Period Preceding 21 August 1989

Information
On the security situation and further tasks in the struggle against the internal enemy

In the period from the end of July to the present day, information has established increased activity of the internal and external enemy in the preparations of provocative and confrontational acts on the occasion of the anniversary of 21 August 1968. The evident goal is to compromise the leading position on the events of 21 August years ago and the politics of the Communist Party of Czechoslovakia, and through a public demonstration of [the enemy’s] own strength to manifest themselves as an essential socio-political factor. The enemy’s actions demonstrate increasingly pronounced tendencies toward a transition from criticism to political activity aimed against the principles of a socialist state. The actions of the 20-21 August should, according to the expectations of the adversary, accelerate the fall and development of events in the country with the aim of achieving their purpose.

One of the chief means of fulfilling [the opposition’s] plan is the campaign centered around the pamphlet “A Few Sentences,” which is being spread over the territory of the entire country and which 16,500 citizens are supposed to have signed. The activity of the adversary necessitated undertaking extensive measures. Legal proceedings were taken against the criminal act of sedition according to paragraph 100 of the criminal code. With the agreement of the municipal prosecutor in Prague, house searches of the main organizers S. DEVÁTY, A. VONDRA, J. URBAN and J. KŘÍŽAN were conducted.

It was proven that Václav Havel was the chief organizer and author of the pamphlets. Documentation was obtained on the criminal activity of the enemy campaign. Prosecution of these individuals can be successfully carried out only in the event that all of the organizers, including Václav HAVEL, about whom there is also incriminating material, be tried. It is necessary to consider the leveling of accusations and imprisonment through the perspective of the developing security situation and decide whether to proceed to trial immediately on the 21 August 1989. Measures taken against the distributors confirm that in most cases these individuals do not have any ties to the organizers and that they gather signatures at the instigation of Western media (RADIO FREE EUROPE, VOICE OF AMERICA).

Measures were undertaken on the entire territory of the CSSR with respect to the distribution of pamphlets and preparation for anti-socialist actions. In total 211 interrogations were carried out, 10 people were charged with crimes according to paragraph 100 of the criminal code, 76 people were charged with felonies according to paragraph 6 of law #150/69 Sb., 13 were charged with misdemeanors, and 15 were given a warning.

An analogous action, which was supposed to intensify the atmosphere and bring about a split in the ranks of the CPCz, was in the form of a letter from the leadership of the so-called RENEWAL (OBRODA) to all members of the party. The plan of the antagonist was nipped in the bud and its spread was successfully stopped. The original letter along with copying equipment was confiscated and house searches of main organizers M. HÁJKA, V. ŠILHAN and V. KOLMISTR were conducted after the opening criminal prosecutions for the criminal act of dishonoring the Republic and its representatives. A warning was given to all those named by the municipal prosecutor in Prague.

On the territory of the Slovak Socialist Republic (SSR), ČARNOGURSKÝ, KUSÝ, SELLECKÝ, PONIKÁ and MAŇÁK in particular are perpetrating enemy acts, consisting of organizing anti-social appearances, instigating citizens to participate in them, and distribution of materials abroad for enemy purposes, where they are used in anti-Czechoslovak campaigns. Criminal prosecution for crimes of sedition, specifically injuring the interests of the Republic abroad, was initiated by an investigator of the SNB (National Security Force) on 14 August 1989, and the above-mentioned individuals were indicted. A proposal was brought forth for the imprisonment of ČARNOGURSKÝ and KUSÝ. This measure was approved by the general prosecutor of the SSR.

Within the framework of the preparations for the August gathering, the so-called Independent Peaceful Coalition began to organize a so-called silent march in pedestrian zones daily, starting on 1 August 1989. Several dozen people are participating in these marches, and their numbers increase daily. Besides provoking the state powers, the antagonist wants to activate the public, confirm his own ability to act and disclose eventual counter-measures.

The fundamental issue in the activity of the opponent is the preparation for public appearances on 20-21 August, 1989. As the result of security measures carried out (for example, prevention of a meeting of the Coordinating
Committee of Independent Initiatives—OBRODA, HOS, CH-77, NMS, Ecological Section of CH-77—on 2/2, during which forms of protest and the publication of a common declaration were supposed to be discussed; prevention of a meeting of the members of an HOS branch in Prague 4, during which the concrete events for the anniversary in August were supposed to be discussed; impairment of the public acts of NMS, etc.), the opponents’ opinions about the character of these acts significantly differ and are divided. From the marginal (demonstrations on Wenceslas Square with a clash with police—asserted for example by the speaker of Charter-77 HRADLIK) through the “restrained” to the opinion not to hold any public events (for example Jan Urban advises instead to concentrate on the establishment of independent committees and penetrate into enterprises and territories). A group of former communists united in the so-called RENEWAL [group] who refuse to take part in eventual public appearances, likewise endorses this last opinion, under the influence of undertaken measures.

At the present time, the “silent march” variation of demonstrating in the pedestrian zone in Prague on 20-21 August 1989, dominates in the enemy camp. CH-77 together with other initiatives are inclined toward this.

Analogous acts are to take place in other towns, such as Brno, Plzeň, Tábor, Ústí nad Labem, Litomšice, Olomouc, Chomutov, Hradec Králové, Zlín, Bratislava and Košice. It is possible to envision provocative demonstrations also in other parts of the Republic. We are dealing with the tactics of an opponent who does not call directly for open enemy manifestations, but tries to create the appearance of a peaceful gathering of citizens. The opponent is counting on the creation of a tense situation during a greater gathering of people, which will then easily lead to a demonstration of spontaneous protest against the politics of the CPCz.

Several other forms of provocative acts are also being assessed, such as the distribution of the declaration by Charter 77 and [the laying of] flowers to honor the memory of those who fell at the embassy of the USSR in Prague, the laying of a bouquet on 20 August at the statue of St. Wenceslas, the laying of flowers where Czech citizens died during the Warsaw Pact army invasion, the hoisting of a red flag on Pradeda in Jeseníky and the ringing of the bells of St. Tomas in Brno.

The internationalization of the acts of the internal enemy and the cooperation with its counterparts from PLR (People’s Republic of Poland) and MLR (People’s Republic of Hungary) is clearly increasing, and is constantly acquiring more concrete shapes, from instruction and consultation to organizing common concrete acts. From the experience of MICHNIK, BUJA and others’ impact on the representatives of opposing forces during their stay in the CSSR in the beginning of August 1989, measures will be taken to prevent their announced arrival in CSSR and the prevention of their participation in provocative acts. Analogous measures are also being taken against the representatives of Hungarian opposition groups. Polish Solidarity is preparing provocative acts on the borders with the CSSR in support of acts in the CSSR.

In recent times the danger of the impact of the so-called Democratic Initiative (MANDLER and co.) is growing, and unlike CH-77, is principally oriented towards penetrating into working-class youth and into the countryside in order to try and create so-called alternative organizations.

The so-called Czechoslovak Helsinki Committee sent a letter to the Prime Minister and the general prosecutor of the CSSR on 12 August 1989, in which it completely [and] unequivocally accused the government of the CSSR and the Ministry of the Interior of trying to incite a confrontation with citizens demanding democratic renewal. They allege that for example the campaign against the appeal “A Few Sentences” developed into a direct “criminalization” of this legal petitional act.

They further accuse the organs of state power of trying to fabricate proof of a connection between a group of saboteurs who commit arson in northern Bohemia and “independent initiatives,” of which there supposedly is no proof. Hitherto investigations unequivocally prove, through witness statements and house searches, a connection between one of the main defendants Jan GRĘGOR and representatives UHL and CIBULKA of CH-77. Witnesses have proven that GRĘGOR also visited the representative of CH-77 Václav BENDA many times in Prague. In his established correspondence GRĘGOR expresses his resolve to fight by any means against the rising socialist leadership and the CPCz, and his decision to influence youth in this spirit. Despite the defendants’ denial of the charges against them and their refusal to testify, there is further proof of the their criminal act of sabotage, especially concerning the four main defendants.

From the contents of the above-mentioned letter it is evident that it is the endeavor of anti-socialist forces to shift the blame for the confrontational nature of the acts and for the eventual decisive intervention of the power apparatus against them, onto the Czechoslovak departments Public Security (VB) and Peoples’ Militia (LM). Through this they wish to show the “illegitimacy” of the present leadership of the CSSR on the August platform and to create an atmosphere which they expect will result in the resignation of the political and state leadership and in the installment of “temporary state organs.” The foremost exponents of illegal structures have decided to establish the so-called Czechoslovak civic forum for coordination and [to create a] unified plan of action, as a guarantee for the “creation of a democratic and legal state.” Proposals are being prepared detailing the nature of the activity of a “united” opposition aimed at the factual assumption of power, in which they anticipate the dissolution of the Federal Assembly and the establishment in its place of a “temporary legislative assembly” which will prepare and negotiate a new constitution for the CSSR. According to the expectations of the antagonist, a new
A set of complex measures in preventive and repressive areas is being carried out to frustrate the plans and goals of the opponent.

Technical measures were carried out to prevent the communication of news abroad by telephone by known informers of the editorial staff of Radio Free Europe and Voice of America. All meetings of the so-called initiatives are being stopped with the aim of not allowing them to unite.

In order to strengthen the effectiveness of security measures carried out on the territory of the CSSR, the FMZV [Federal Ministry of Foreign Affairs] took steps toward the prevention of the arrival of visa-holding foreigners who are presumed to partake in enemy activities and for the prevention of the arrival of individuals with enemy intentions from ZSS [Socialist Countries] (specifically from Poland and Hungary). On the border crossings measures [are being implemented] to prevent the arrival of known exponents of Solidarity and the so-called independent initiative from Hungary, who have come to the CSSR in the past.

In the area of counter-propaganda, materials are being distributed which document the enemy activity of the main organizers, in order to discredit them to the public-at-large.

The chief exponents of the so-called independent initiatives and known individuals from the enemy environment will be under the control of the organs of the SNB [National Security Force] so that they will not be able to participate in enemy activities.

The course of action of the security organs in collaboration with the LM [People’s Militia] in the event of organized antisocial appearances is being elaborated in several variations.

In the event that the so-called “silent march” takes place, documents will be checked and individuals actively participating in the organization of the SNB [National Security Force] will be summoned. If petitions, verbal attacks or spontaneous declarations of opposition against the party and state leadership and the police of the CSSR should come to pass, security units will be called in to force out and disperse the crowd from the area.

If, despite these measures, a massive antisocial demonstration takes place, disciplinary powers will be brought in to carry out necessary decisive intervention and restore peace and order through the use of technical equipment.

The Emergency Regiment VB CSR [Public Security of the Czech Socialist Republic] (1,200 informers and 400 members of the permanent establishment) and the Emergency Department VB SSR [Public Security of the Slovak Socialist Republic] in Bratislava (565 informers and 190 members of the permanent establishment) are the decisive force of the SNB to be dispatched in the event of mass anti-social gatherings in Prague. The technical equipment of these organizations includes armored carriers, water-canons and other emergency instruments.

Emergency units of the VB are being created and prepared according to the possibilities and needs of any given section in every SNB organization at the county and district level. Within the framework of the CSR, the leaders of KS SNB (including the administration of SNB Prague) have at their disposal school emergency departments which function as their reserves to be brought in as a compact unit. All the mentioned emergency units are thoroughly prepared to perform tasks and their preparedness is good. During their preparation they collaborated with the units of the LM in their exercises.

From the Border Guards a reserve of 720 soldiers from the basic service and career soldiers with the necessary technology has been created, of these 460 members of the Border Guards are intended for Prague.

In individual counties and districts, [possible] locations for anticipated mass anti-social gatherings are being identified and intervention plans are being practiced there.

Extraordinary attention in the preparation for the protection of law and order is devoted to the capital, Prague. Mass anti-social gatherings are anticipated specifically within the confines of Wenceslas Square, Peace Square, Old Town Square, on Letna [plain], Stromovka [park] and Kampa [island]. Intervention actions are practiced in these locations, but forces are ready to strike in other places as well.

The operational staff of the FMV [Federal Interior Ministry] was created for the leadership and coordination of security measures. The responsibility for the preparation and completion of tasks to protect the peace from attempts to stage anti-social gatherings has been to the responsible deputies of MV ZP CSR and SSR. Emphasis was placed on the universal preparedness of the security forces and technologies, preparations of individual variations and placement and leadership.

The head of the administration of LM CSSR announced extraordinary measures for the days of 17-22 August 1989. The focus of the tasks lies in the acquisition of information and assurance of uninterrupted activity in the factories. Heightened attention is being given to the protection of stockpiles of weapons and ammunition.

Regional LM staffs have cooperated with SNB organizations and are prepared for combined security patrols during the above-mentioned period and incorporation into security units with forces and equipment determined in the plans for cooperation.

For the capital Prague, 10 troops will be prepared specifically on buses destined for the local SNB administrations, and 1 LM company for MS VB Prague. In addition to this, 300 members of the LM will be prepared as reserves.

The chief of the General Staff of the MNO [Ministry of
National Defense] released a “guideline” for securing the tasks in which he ordered the troops to prepare and detail forces and equipment for the SNB in the calculations determined in the agreement between the FMV and ČSLA [Czechoslovak People’s Army] before the redeployment of the army.

The third degree of extraordinary security measures [which has been] announced [MBO], does not yet presuppose the deployment of forces and equipment of the ČSLA. Their usage is possible only under higher degrees of MBO. Under the fourth degree, MBO soldiers are brought in for combined patrols and part of the technology is used. Under the fifth degree of the MBO, the guarding of designated objects is added and the ČSLA arranges the planned security forces and special technology, which will be brought in during the sixth degree (MBO). The law #40/74 Sb. makes it possible for ČSLA troops to be brought in, according to which the minister of the interior of the CSSR has the authority to enlist the members of the ČSLA to fulfill the tasks of the SNB after an agreement with the minister of national defense.

The detailed technology of the ČSLA include trucks, connecting appliances, armored transports for infantry and water canons.

For the capital Prague, 2,300 soldiers of the basic service and career soldiers with the necessary technology [already] have been prepared for service in the combined security patrols and the security units. Furthermore a regiment of tanks of the minister of national defense is prepared to serve as a reserve (1,160 members of the ČSLA with necessary technology).

Conclusion:

It has been proven that the internal and external enemy considers the anniversary of 21 August as an opportunity to confront the state powers and to discredit the present leadership of the party and the state.

The western media provides the necessary framework for this. They try to draw a picture in the public’s mind of a deepening crisis in our society which, according to their prognosis, should result in its end, and, at the latest by next year’s end, develop into a struggle for political power, the removal of the CPCz from the leading role in society and a complete dismantling of the principles of socialism.

They clearly, at the same time, count on developments in neighboring socialist countries, especially in Poland and Hungary to influence the minds of our people. They concentrate primarily on the support and propagation of the activity of illegal organizations and their members, and simultaneously strive to prove that the party is not able to lead the society and secure its progress any longer.

The activity of internal and external enemies is aimed at bringing about the legalization of the operation of opposing groups and their assertion as real political powers in the societies, which, following the Polish model forced the state leadership to a round-table dialogue. At the same time one must not underestimate the influence and long-term plans of the Roman Catholic Church. Its political ambition was explicitly expressed by Cardinal Tomášek in an open letter to the government functionaries and citizens of the CSSR.

The existence and activity of illegal organizations and the prolonged and increasing influence of the western media, especially the broadcast stations RADIO FREE EUROPE and VOICE OF AMERICA, impacts in a negative way on a segment of our population. Cases of anonymous threats addressed to functionaries of party and state organs and the National Front organization, of disrespect for the SNB, ČSLA and LM, and of verbal attacks on their members are on the rise.

With regard to these realities it is impossible to rule out the possibility that during the so-called silent demonstration on the 20-21 August 1989, an atmosphere will be created among the participants that could grow into an open display of enmity toward the state and the party as a start of a series of further acts planned during the course of this year and the beginning of the next, aimed at destabilizing the society.

This is the reason for the preparation of necessary security measures for the frustration of their confrontational plans.


DOCUMENT No. 2
Czechoslovak Secret Police (StB)
Memorandum, “Information Regarding the Situation in the CSSR up to 20 August 1989,” 20 August 1989

Information regarding the security situation in the ČSSR up to 20 August 1989

In recent days (Friday and Saturday) the so-called protest marches, organized by the so-called Independent Peace Association, have continued in the pedestrian zones in Prague. Approximately 100 individuals attended these activities. Saturday’s marches were video-recorded by accredited employees of the British and Austrian television company “V.”

Internally, “Charter-77” has been somewhat divided over questions of policy and tactics in preparation for a confrontational rally. The older “charter-77” signatories are
determined to stop any activities on 21 August while the more radically oriented youth groups are contemplating an open clash with state authority, even at the cost of provocation. They have declared they are even willing to allow themselves to be shot for their cause. Within the internal enemy groups, a strong moderate center exists which has been pushing for a peaceful demonstration in the form of a procession around the pedestrian zone.

There are confirmed efforts by employees of Western media organizations to incite [Charter 77 activists and other to give] a confrontational character to the anti-socialist rally of 21 August. To this end, they have been spending time with and emphatically [trying to] convince individual prominent “Charter-77” activists. The editors of the BBC are particularly active in doing this.

Further, information has been confirmed regarding preparations for the anti-socialist rally on 21 August, organized by activists of the so-called Independent Initiatives in certain cities in the western Bohemian, southern Bohemian, southern Moravian, northern Moravian, central Slovakian, and eastern Slovakian regions. From the perspective of the internal enemy, this has the effect of enlisting additional supporters for demonstrations in Prague and in other cities. Their common goal, among other things, is to aggravate as much as possible [attempts by] security to intervene—for instance, by organizing a scattered march through Prague. The effort of the enemy will be to draw the attention of security services away from Prague to other regions or, as the case may be, district cities.

Appreciable activity in support of the so-called Czechoslovak Independent Initiatives is being generated by Polish and Hungarian opposition groups, which are encouraging large-scale participation at the anti-socialist rally, particularly in Prague. Their intentions have been confirmed by the arrival of Polish opposition groups in Prague on 15 August, which ensures that the activated Polish groups can remain through 21 August. The delegation even visited J. HAJEK who familiarized them with the “Charter-77” provision requiring signatories to distance themselves from open confrontational acts and reminded them that if they chose to remain until 21 August, they were under no circumstances to portray themselves as guests invited by “Charter-77.”

The Hungarian contingent has similarly organized the arrival of their members in Prague to participate in the anti-socialist rallies of the FIDESZ (Young Democrats’ League) organization, whose activists are preparing a demonstration on August 21 in front of the Czechoslovak embassy in Budapest, where they intend to hold the protest. On 19 August, Hungarian radio broadcast an interview with a FIDESZ representative who indicated that a large number of members of the organization would be leaving for the CSSR to support activities through 21 August.

In an effort to prevent the arrival of individuals with such intentions from Poland and Hungary, the necessary precautions have been put in place at the state borders. Thus far, 15 suspicious individuals have been turned back at the rail station on the Hungarian border, of whom 14 were Hungarians and one was French. At the Polish border crossings there has thus far been a total of 13 Solidarity activists and [other] suspicious Polish citizens turned back.

In order to expose the aims of the Hungarian opposition groups to organize specific unfriendly acts on Czechoslovak territory, cooperation has been established with Consul TABA at the Hungarian embassy.

In connection with 21 August, the Polish Solidarity movement is making preparations at certain Polish-Czechoslovak border crossings, for instance, at Vyšný Komárnik (district of Svidník), Palota (district of Humenný), for a so-called quiet, passive sit-in demonstration using banners and signs with slogans. Participants are to sign a written declaration calling for mutual cooperation with the Independent Initiatives, the denouncement of international aid from Warsaw Pact troops, and a declaration of support for the anti-socialist forces in the CSSR. On 21 August at 4:00 p.m., on the town square of the Polish border town of Cieszyna, a protest demonstration has been planned, at which time a declaration from the Polish [Sejm] is to be read denouncing the entry of Polish troops into Czechoslovakia (according to Polish border guard intelligence organs, security will be intensified in the above stated areas to prevent Polish citizens from crossing illegally into Czechoslovakia).

According to routinely gathered intelligence, one may assume, as a consequence of the anti-Czechoslovak campaign in the West and the anti-government demonstrations announced in Prague, that there will be an influx of tourists from the West. Within only the past few days there has been an enormous volume of visas granted to Italian citizens (totaling more than 440), at a time when there was no reason to deny their applications.

According to intelligence gathered, members of the Italian Radical Party plan to arrive soon in Prague with the typical aim, as has been the case in the past, to elicit anti-socialist provocation through the use of banners and leaflets. This intention was even confirmed by the president of this party, STANCERI, at their rally.

In the effort to thwart these aims, the appropriate measures have been taken at border crossings as well as general security measures for the territory of Czechoslovakia. Each case of provocation by Italian or other foreigners [who have been] granted visas will be documented and will incur the appropriate legal measures.

Currently there are noteworthy efforts by certain individuals to obtain weapons and bomb-making materials. Nine cases with a total of 250 CZ parabellum 9 mm semi-automatic pistols were distributed through PZO Merkuria to Britain V. Upon carrying out an inspection of the contents of the shipment it was discovered that a total of 30 pistols had been stolen prior to distribution to Britain V. On 12 August, there was a break-in at the ČSPA
[Czechoslovak People’s Army] ammunition depot in the community of Cakov (district of České Budějovice), from which a significant amount of plastic explosives, charges, detonators, and other bomb-making materials was taken. The perpetrators were discovered to be basic service recruits L[...] Michal (born 1969) and N[...] Milan (born 1968), both from Military Unit 4445 of České Budějovice[,] and a civilian named K[...] Radek (born 1971) from České Budějovice. The motive behind the act is under investigation.

Within the last two days on state territory there have been more than 150 leaflets discovered, which have made a particular call for participation in the protest rally on 21 August and the denouncement of the international assistance provided in 1968; the majority were discovered in the cities of Prague (33), Brno (26), Český Krumlov (20) and Gottwaldov (19). This involves only those cases discovered by NSC [National Security Committee] organs and informers; the actual number is likely much higher. During the same period, 15 opprobrious signs were discovered at public locations and promptly removed. In Brno, an unknown perpetrator made a telephone call threatening the destruction of the MC CPCz building (Municipal Committee of the Communist Party of Czechoslovakia).

Today, during the hours between 9:15 a.m. and 11:00 p.m., Mass was held at St. Vitus Cathedral. It was officiated by cleric KORÍNEK and was not misused for anti-socialist provocation. The departure of members of the congregation was recorded by the staffs of ARD [television] (German Federal Republic) and ABC [television] (United States of America), with the above mentioned staffs conducting no interviews with our citizens. Attendance at the first Mass celebration fluctuated around 1,300 individuals and the second around 2,000 individuals.


In Prague, 17 October 1989
CONFIDENTIAL
Print-out #33
Number of pages: 13

**For a meeting of the government of the CSSR**
Matter: Information on the security situation in the CSSR

The information is rendered according to a proposal by the Minister of the Interior.

Contents: Information on the security interior of the CSSR situation in the CSSR

[...]

Composed by:
František Kincl
Minister of the Interior of the CSSR

Designated as personal information for member of the government of the CSSR, to be returned upon acquaintance with the material!

**Information on the security situation in the CSSR**

After the unsuccessful acts of the internal enemies for the 21 August anniversary, pressure in the enemy camp was stepped up to perfect the organizational structures of individual enemy groups and to elaborate a common platform.

At the same time the opponent is concentrating his energies, besides the coordinated distribution of various declarations, on the elaboration of a common strategic plan of the opposition in the CSSR and the preparation of a joint political party—the so-called Party of the United Opposition. This was also established at the meeting of the consultative group of the independent initiatives (the representatives of the Movement for Civic Freedom (HOS), the Czechoslovak Democratic Initiatives and KSP Renewal) on 2 October 1989 in Prague. The aim of the opponent to form a so-called Civic Committee also persists. The purpose of these efforts is the creation of a representative organ of the opposition and to bring the state and party organs to a “round-table” discussion following the Polish and Hungarian models.

Besides the efforts for integration, the tendency of the internal enemy to engage official organizations in their activity, with the intent of gaining their own legalization and achieving a dialog between official and so-called independent organizations, is becoming more pronounced. It is possible to introduce as an example the efforts of the “Independent World Association—initiatives for the demilitarization of society” to engage the Czechoslovak World Organization in the preparation of the so-called Helsinki Assembly for Peace and Democracy with a seat in Prague (the origin of which is prepared in the first half 1990) and the efforts of the preparatory committee “Society for the study of democratic socialism” to organize an international seminar on Socialist Internationales in cooperation with Committee of the Czechoslovak Public for
Human Rights and Humanitarian Cooperation in November of this year.

The internal enemy is also trying to penetrate into the superstructures of the society. This can especially be seen in the areas of scientific and cultural intelligence, and not only in forced petition signings, but also in the creation of other so-called independent initiatives. An example of this is the establishment of the initiative “MOST”,14 made up of cultural workers which should also become the mediator of dialog between the enemy environment and official organizations, and also establish the so-called Circle of the Independent Intelligence (KNI), whose goal is to create a platform uniting scientific workers who are opposed to the politics of the CPCz. Its efforts are concentrated on the discrediting and disbanding of the SSM [youth union], and the creation of a series of independent youth initiatives. The evidence for this is the creation of the new “politically independent youth union” in the central Bohemian region and other places.

A dangerous phenomenon related to the coming anniversary of the origin of the CSR and the effort to activate high school youth, is the distribution of anonymous anti-communist letters from Prague addressed to high schools. For now, this has been proven in eastern, southern and northern regions. They summon the directors, pedagogical counsels and SSM groups [youth unions] to “a dignified celebration of the 28 October” and to the elevation of the work of T. G. Masaryk. They condemn the document “Lesson from the crisis development…” and rate positively the intentions of the so-called Prague spring 1968. It is possible to assume that they will be gradually distributed on the entire territory of the CSSR and broadcast in the transmissions of the inflammatory stations Radio Free Europe and Voice of America, with the aim of sending out their message to the widest Czechoslovak society.

The internal structure of individual initiatives is also gradually being strengthened with the aim of increasing their ability to act on the entire territory. For example, during the so-called conference of Democratic Initiatives on 10-16 September 1989, the group was further politicized, reflected in the newly approved title “Czechoslovak Democratic Initiative, Political and Social Movement” (CSDI), the organizational policies and program contents. The immediate goal was the expansion of the member base, the strengthening of the organizational structure, the establishing of local and provincial groups, and the development of activity in thematic units and consumer clubs. The realization of these goals is tied to the creation of satellite organizations, working as sections of CSDI (e.g. the student, ecological and others) with their own program, making possible for them the future transition to their own political organization. Proof of this are the intentions to change, for example, the so-called ecological section into the Green Party.

Several negative political manifestations in the activity of non-communist parties in the CSSR are multiplying.

Right-wing and religious-oriented functionaries in centers and regions are trying to bring about changes in the positions of these parties in the political system independent of the CPCz line and establish political pluralism. These tendencies are especially marked in the functionaries and member bases of ČSL and ČSS.15 During the realization of his goals, the internal enemy is also counting on increased support for his activity from the Polish Solidarity party as government and parliamentary powers and the Hungarian Democratic Forum and the youth organization FIDESZ as an organization directly connected to the politics of the state with a decisive influence in parliament, but also with the support of the official institutions and personages of Hungary. The contacts with several individuals and groups from the USSR, especially journalistic and historic-theoretical circles, with the representatives of so-called independent initiatives are becoming especially important for the moral support of the enemy.

The cooperation of the internal enemy with Western political structures and official institutions is on a qualitatively higher level. The official actors of the Austrian SPÖ and the West German SPD are expressing their support for the activity of the so-called Society for the Study of Democratic Socialism, which should gradually change into assistance during the organizing of a party of the Social democratic type. Honorable awards from various Western foundations have been given to the head representatives of the so-called independent initiatives in the CSSR, as an expression of appreciation of their “fight” for human rights. An example of this is the award of “German Publishers” with a grant of 25,000 DM given to Václav Havel, which is supposed to be used for the founding and anti-social activity of the so-called publishing cooperative ATLANTIS.

Besides the activity of the internal enemy, Western ideological centers and emigrant groups are trying to influence the Czechoslovak public and organize provocative acts even on the territory of socialist countries. Polish Solidarity together with the Czechoslovak emigration is organizing a seminar in the beginning of November this year in Vratislav devoted to the problems of culture in Central Europe, a part of which will be an overview of “Czechoslovak independent and emigre literature.” Underground concerts of Czechoslovak emigrants and meetings with the representatives of so-called independent initiatives are organized in Hungary by ideological centers.

The simultaneous activity of the internal enemy nevertheless does not fulfill the expectations of the Western ideological centers about the ability of the opposing forces in the CSSR to act. There is pressure from abroad on the Charter-77 and other initiatives to present themselves in public more conspicuously and to “come out of illegality” and politicize their activity, under threat of ending their financial support. The nearest convenient occasion for this is the anniversary of the origin of the CSR [Czechoslovak Republic]. A concrete example is the
pressure on the representatives of CSDI to announce their formation of a political party at the above-mentioned anniversary.

The meeting of the speakers of Charter-77 on 23 September 1989 was supposed to prepare concrete acts, but it was prevented. Vaclav Havel prepared the so-called pronouncement for the 28 October for this occasion, in which the conditions of the first republic are idealized and the legalization of the opposition, the end of the applicability of the temporary agreement on the stay of Soviet troops in CSSR, and the destruction of barricades on the borders are demanded. Other groups are to prepare analogous pronouncements. The endeavor of the opponent is to establish from of these declarations a common position of the so-called independent initiatives for the anniversary of the origin of the CSSR.

A meeting of the representatives of illegal organizations The Independent World Coalition, The Movement for Civic Freedom and the Czechoslovak Independent Initiatives on 3 October 1989 in Prague had the same purpose. Among other things, it was agreed that if they were not allowed to use any spaces for their “celebrations”, they would arrange a gathering in the pedestrian zone in Prague.

The speakers of “Charter-77” sent a letter on 26 September 1989 to the National Committee of the capital Prague, in which they proposed allowing “Charter-77” to organize their own “independent reminder of this state holiday”, and for its implementation they recommended the lease of a hall of the Radio Palace or Lucerna type.

The coordinating committee, made up of representatives of from HOS, CSDI and Renewal, are organizing the demonstration. On 2 October 1989 Rudolf Batték and Ladislav Lis met with Dr. Martin Houska of the National Committee of Prague, and they requested in the name of HOS, CSDI and Renewal a permit for a demonstration on 28 October 1989 at 3 p.m. or 6 p.m. on an open space (Letná plain, Hvězda park, in front of the park of culture and the vacation house of Julius Fučík or the memorial at Vitkov). In connection with this request, during a meeting at the department of internal affairs of the ONV Prague 7 on 3 October 1989, they probed the possibility of obtaining a permit for a demonstration on Letná plain. This program is proposed at the gathering: after the opening ceremony, several main Czechoslovak actors will read quotations from Čapek, followed by the main declaration probably by V. Havel with a demand for a dialog with the opposition and free elections.

It is evident from the context of the activity of the opposition, that through these requests it is trying to rid itself of responsibility for eventual consequences of the anti-social gathering, which they are striving for, and blame the state and party organs.

The climax of the acts motivated by the anniversary of the origin of the CSR is supposed to be a common demonstration of so-called independent initiatives in the center of Prague on 28 October 1989. For now there are various opinions as to its concrete shape.

Just as in August of last year the enemy environment is counting on the presence of representatives of Solidarity and the Hungarian opposition at the demonstration. A meeting of the delegates of CSDI, “Charter-77”, Renewal and HOS with the delegates of the Hungarian Democratic Forum is also planned for this day to establish a common committee.

Despite the efforts of the radical part of the opposition, represented by T. Hradlík, to concentrate enemy powers in Prague, it can be expected that the acts of 28 October 1989 will cross over to other parts of the republic. Evidence has been ascertained of the efforts of the representatives of HOS and the T. G. Masaryk society to organize a demonstration in Brno on Victory Boulevard and Place of Peace for the renaming of Victory Boulevard to Masaryk street.

As evidenced from the above-mentioned facts, despite the organizational measures and the continuing efforts for integration, diversity of opinion and disunity on how to organize the anti-social gathering persists in the enemy camp. Especially prevalent are the fears of counter measures by state organs and the subsequent “crash” of the prepared acts, as was in August. The moderate wing of the opposition is apprehensive of the radicalization of a growing part of the group, especially young members and adherents, which could lead them to a direct clash with the state powers and even impede the long-term goals and plans of the opposition.

On the other hand they are well aware that the current international and internal political conditions provide them with a suitable space for such a gathering, and to not take advantage of them could result in isolation and loss of support not only from abroad, but also from the politicized part of their followers, especially the young.

For these reasons with 28 August nearing, it is possible to expect increased activity on the part of the internal enemy trying to correct the “bad impression” from August of this year.

The situation regarding the safe-guarding of the state border of the CSSR was to some extent complicated by the decisions of the Hungarian government on 11 September 1989 to enable citizens from the GDR to travel to any country. As a result of this, the CSSR has practically become a transit stop for them before emigrating to capitalist countries. In total 3,288 trespassers were caught on state borders in September 1989, 3,082 of them were citizens from GDR. In September there were 9 [incidents of] violent border crossings at passport control booths from the CSSR to Hungary. In this period the attitude of the Hungarian passport and border organs toward cooperation with Czechoslovakia has worsened, since they refuse to extradite the citizens from the GDR who illegally crossed the border between the CSSR and Hungary.

After the state organs of the GDR decided on 3 October 1989, to put an end to GDR citizens’ ability to travel without a visa or passport to the CSSR, the number...
of individuals arriving from the GDR dramatically decreased. At the same time, however, the number of attempts to illegally cross the borders into the CSSR have risen abruptly. For example, just between 3 and 5 of October 1989, 726 GDR citizens who had penetrated into the CSSR in order to emigrate were detained. The situation calmed down after measures were implemented by the organs of the CSSR and GDR.

A difficult situation came about at the end of September and beginning of August 1989, on the border with Poland, where it was not possible to secure safe transit for overfull international trains from Poland. The delays frequently exceeded 10 hours. There were also problems in clearing Polish citizens at the Czechoslovak-Austrian border, where the waiting period exceeded 8 hours. The reason for this was the unusually high number of traveling Polish nationals and their strict clearance by Austrian customs officials. More attention is being paid to the situation on the state borders with Poland, Hungary and the GDR, and necessary measures will be taken according to its concrete development.

There is unrest among Czechoslovak citizens because citizens of Poland, Hungary and in part the USSR buy up consumer goods during their stay, especially the ones imported from capitalist countries, mostly foodstuffs of all kinds, but also clothes, footwear, sporting goods, installation and building materials, etc. Purchases of foodstuffs reaching 1,500 Kčs are not exceptional. In some areas, especially those close to the borders, it is becoming more difficult to maintain fuel supplies and even certain essential foods. As a result, our citizens are criticizing party and state organs.

The public security situation in the CSSR in 1989 was basically stabilized, and peace and order were secured. Disciplinary units were dispatched only in the event of provocative gatherings of anti-socialist forces in January, May and August in Prague. Decisive cooperative measures between other units of the security apparatus and the People’s Militias brought the gatherings under control. Several instances of disturbing the peace also arose during sporting and cultural events. These, however, never went beyond the city limits and did not require special forces or measures.

Since the beginning of the year (especially in the first quarter and before 21 August), a significant increase in anonymous phone calls and letters was noted (in the end of September the number exceeded 520), in which the culprits threatened terrorist acts. There is a clear shift in their intentions. In the beginning of the year in almost all cases the destruction of objects or means of transportation was threatened. Recently there have been a growing number of individual death threats, above all [aimed at] those who publicly denounced the enemy acts of anti-socialist elements.

The anonymous threats were proven to be false through effected measures. Finding the culprits has not been successful, with only around 15% of cases closed. More than 2.5 thousand flyers and 500 harmful letters were recorded. They were largely aimed at party and state functionaries.

The number of recorded criminal acts and felonies increased slightly to a total of 135,234, with a constant level of 80% of cases closed. Damages due to by the crime rate rose by more than 64 million Kčs and exceeded 511 million Kčs. The slight increase in the crime rate was caused by the greater number of general criminal acts (2.3% more). The biggest gain in the crime rate was noted in property crimes, rising by 3.2%, with 62% of all such cases closed. Property crime represented about half of all crimes committed in the CSSR. Breaking and entering sustained the most striking growth, climbing by 8%. Breaking and entering into apartments is increasing ominously, the number of incidents up by 1.641 from last year, while the rate of cases closed remains at 55%.

The number of violent acts remains at the same level of the previous period, with 95% of cases closed. The number of the most serious violent crimes has gone up, 2 murders added to a total of 89 cases (with 96.6% of them closed), and 54 cases of burglary added to 651 (with 87.6% of them closed).

Out of the specific and key problems in the fight against crime, the criminal relapse and violent crime committed by Gypsies are rising, constituting almost two thirds of all crime and more than one third of white-collar crime. The slight increase in crime among young people continues. They commit 16% of all crimes in general and one third of all white-collar crime. Most disturbing is the high rate of criminality among young Gypsies, representing 25% of crimes committed by young people, exceeding 40% in Slovakia.

There is a very negative situation in the area of non-alcoholic addiction. The number of addicts recorded by the organs of the VB (Public Security) is close to 7,000. About half are individuals 18-25 years of age, and some addicts are even children 15 and younger, with 200 such cases recorded. As a result of abuse of dangerous substances 21 people have died in an estimated period.

In total 21,877 cases of white-collar crimes and felonies have been solved, but the documented damages grew by 79 million Kčs. and exceeded 250 million Kčs. The investigative organs and economic organizations share slightly less than 9% of crimes solved, although for the most part they are infractions in the work-place. The most frequent white-collar crime remains burglary of property in socialist possession. The growing delinquency of work bosses in the economic sector is evidenced in the uncovering of 1,924 crimes against economic order (a growth of 829).

The numerous extraordinary events are causing not insignificant damage to the national economy. They outweighed fires, traffic break-downs and accidents, and mishaps of public rail transportation. The most frequent cause of the extraordinary events is still the disturbance of work procedures, not respecting technical safety, gross...
violation of policies and regulations on work safety.

The number of traffic accidents have also increased. There have been 48,912 traffic accidents, which is basically at the same level as last year. The consequences are in all indications the most dire. In all 589 people have died (up by 50), 2,619 were heavily injured (up by 401), and serious damages have also increased. There have occurred 3,122 accidents induced by alcohol, an increase of 111.

+ + +

Preventive and destructive measures are undertaken in order to suppress the enemy’s activity, frustrate the efforts to unite individual groups and impede the enemy’s ability to act, especially that of the organizers of enemy acts.

In the places of the assumed origin of mass anti-social gatherings and in places with a concentration of enemy individuals, especially in Prague, Brno and Bratislava, the patrol units of the VB will be strengthened, with the aim of preventing the distribution of flyers and stopping enemy elements from participating in anti-social gatherings.

In all regions of the CSSR measure have been taken to prevent the participation of the main enemies at anti-social gatherings, especially in Prague. Analogous measures are also undertaken with respect to enemies from abroad.

In the event of mass anti-social gatherings VB and LM units will be ready to intervene for the use of more peaceful means.


DOCUMENT No. 4
Czechoslovak Ministry of Interior
Memorandum, “The Security Situation in the CSSR in the Period Before 28 October,”
25 October 1989

Supplement #1 to #OV-00138/S-89

STRICTLY CONFIDENTIAL
Copy #: 24
Number of pages: 6
The Security Situation in the CSSR in the period before 28 October

Characteristic of the developments of the security situation in the CSSR are the increasing tendencies of the internal enemy to bring out anti-socialist moods in the public by means of anonymous letters and flyers, particularly in Bohemia, in connection with the 71st anniversary of the CSR. The organizers wish to ensure the widest participation of citizens (most of all youth) in prepared provocative gatherings during which the celebration of 28 October will be used to glorify T. G. Masaryk and the bourgeois state.

The evidence for this lies in the continuing distribution of anonymous letters in high schools in which authors summon the people to the “dignified celebration of 28 October” and give prominence to the work of T. G. Masaryk. Letters are gradually being distributed on the majority of the territory of the CSR. In northern, western, southern and eastern Bohemia and Prague flyers of the coordinating board of the so-called Movement for Civic Freedom (HOS) and the Czechoslovak Democratic Initiatives (CSDI) are being circulated. They call for participation in the “celebrations” on 28 October for example in Chomutov (on K. Gottwald Square), in Plzeň (on the Square of the Republic), in Karlovy Vary (at the main post office), in Sušice (at the monument to T.G.M.), in Rumburk (in the park of the Rumburk Revolt) and in Červený Kostelec (in the park at the square). The organizers of the acts sent letters to the National Committees in Sušice, Náchod and Chomutov with a request for permission for a “ceremonial gathering,” referring to article 28 of the constitution of the CSSR. The “Declaration of the Charter 77 on 28 October”, signed by its speakers and Havel, is being distributed at the same time (this has been proven, for example, in Kladno). 7

On 18 October R. Battěk and L. Lis introduced in the name of the illegal organizations CSDI, HOS and Renewal a “communication on the event of a public gathering” in the ONV in Praha 7. In it they inform [people] that on 28 October at 3:00 p.m. they are arranging a “ceremonial gathering of their members and followers for the anniversary of the origin the CSR” on the Letná plain. After the commencement Čapek’s “Prayer for Truth” will be recited, followed by the “ceremonial address” and finally the national anthem will be sung. Afterwards, when the stations Radio Free Europe (from 23 October 1989) and Voice of America (from 24 October 1989) were broadcasting announcements of the event the “independent gathering” on the anniversary of the origin of the CSR on Wenceslas Square in Prague from 3:00 p.m. to 4:00 p.m., they revoked their announcement for alleged technical difficulties connected with such a public gathering under the “given social situation.”

The exponents of illegal organizations in Brno M. Jelinek (HOS and TGM Society member), J. Mezník (prepared for the function of speaker of CH-77) and D. Slavík (TGM Society member) are developing an analogous action. They sent a letter to the department of internal affairs of the MNV in Brno, in which they announce that they intend to call a public gathering in front of the Janacek theater in Brno on 28 October. Serving not only as a reminder of the anniversary of the origin of the CSR, the gathering is also supposed to vote on a resolution which would change the name of the Place of Peace to Masaryk
Place and to begin preparations for the erection of a monument to T.G. Masaryk.

Even the activist Milan Vlk of the illegal group Peace Club of J. Lennon called on his fellow activists for a “silent demonstrations” in Děčín on 28 October. He is simultaneously organizing the distribution of a protest petition against the imprisonment of “political prisoners.”

The plans of the anti-socialist forces from Hungary—the Hungarian Democratic Forum which is in contact with CSDI since last year—to take part in the “celebrations” of 28 October have been proven. On this day they plan to effectuate a meeting of the “Commission for Hungarian-Czechoslovak Cooperation” (established on 26 August 1989 in Prague by representatives of both organizations), which will devote itself to questions of Czechoslovak-Hungarian “reconciliation and cooperation.”

An anti-Czechoslovak activity aimed at discrediting the CSSR for the disrespect of the plans of the CSCE is the conclusion of an informal agreement between Hungarian television and the American television company ABC. At its core is their collaboration during the reporting of the actions of the so-called independent initiatives in Prague on various opportune occasions. The first act of collaboration of both television companies is supposed to be the participation in the anticipated demonstration on 28 October 1989, in Prague.

The leadership of the Hungarian Federation of Young Citizens (FIDESZ) is pushing its members to “help” the Czechoslovak independent initiatives on 28 October during the organization of a gathering of citizens in Prague and other cities. During a meeting of FIDESZ on 16 October, it was decided to send their members to Prague as tourists in the same number as on 21 August of this year. A group of about 12 people is supposed to be created which would join up with several prominent representatives of “Charter-77.” They plan to organize a swift and conspiratorial courier service between Prague and Budapest to secure prompt information about the course of the “celebrations” for Hungarian media. Analogous activity should be anticipated from anti-socialist forces in Poland.

In relation to the up-coming anniversary of the origin of the CSR and the internal enemies’ preparations of its misuse, even the staffs of foreign broadcast stations are being reinforced. The arrivals of other categorized individuals are being registered, for example employees of Swedish, French and West German television, journalists from Great Britain, USA, Austria, West Germany and others, with intent to gain information on the anticipated anti-social gatherings in CSSR in connection to the 28 October anniversary.

In the above-mentioned period two American television companies CBS NEWS and NBC NEWS will be working in Prague. They want to capture the events around 28 October and inform the American public about the “troubles” in CSSR with the aim of presenting them as the continuation of the disintegration of the eastern bloc and the unwillingness of the Czechoslovak leadership to agree to a dialog with the opposition. They also plan to interview the representatives of illegal structures. The West German television company ZDF has identical plans.

Through effected security measures, a meeting of the delegates of the so-called independent initiatives (Renewal, Movement for Civic Freedom, Czechoslovak Democratic Initiatives and NMS) on 12 October was successfully impeded. The meeting was supposed to prepare a common declaration of illegal organizations on the 28 October anniversary. During the measures for the prevention of a nation-wide meeting of CSDI activists on 14 October 1989, a declaration drawn up by the illegal “T. G. Masaryk Association” and “DTSV – the southern Czech group of the CSDI” for the 28 Oct. anniversary was uncovered.

Furthermore, in order to prevent the enemy’s ability to plan acts before the 71st anniversary of the CSR, security measures were carried out to:

- prevented a meeting of the leadership of the so-called Organization of Eastern Czech Opposition, whereby the founding of a regional organization of the “CS public organization” as a basis for a new opposition party was to have been discussed,
- prevented the plenary session of the “CS Helsinki organization” (CSHV) in Prague,
- impeded the meeting of more than 50 people from the Southern Czech region inclined to various illegal groups,
- prevented the mass distribution of the flyers “HOS Manifesto” (five distributors were prosecuted with respect to this),
- prevented the arrival into CSSR of Polish nationals connected with the so-called Polish-Czechoslovak Solidarity – J. Janas, W. Maziarzki, Jasinski and Borusewicz on 19 October,
- impeded the protest gathering of “young radicals” from so-called independent groups against the issue of a new 100-crown bill with a portrait of Klement Gottwald in the pedestrian zone in Prague on 25 October 1989, and assured peace and order in this area. The gathering was filmed by the television crews of ARD and ZDF.

In the effected security measures, in total 43 exponents of illegal organizations were detained and brought in, several of them repeatedly. Out of this number 23 individuals were given a warning by the organs of the SNB, 3 were given a warning by the head of HS KR and 5 a warning by the investigative organs of the StB.

In cooperation with the prosecutor’s office warnings will also be given to other main organizers of enemy acts and activists of illegal organizations (planned for 23 people). In the period directly before the anniversary these individuals will be under the control of the organs of the SNB with the aim of preventing their participation and contribution in the organization and coordination of
confrontational acts.

For the prevention of wider distribution of flyers and the recurrence of anti-socialist signs, an operational investigation will be organized and the output of disciplinary services will be strengthened.

In the future any meetings of the so-called independent initiatives will be stopped to prevent their unification. In order to prevent the transmission of tendentious reports by telephone, technical measures will be carried out against the known informers of the editorial board of RFE and VA.19

Necessary measures will be taken to prevent the participation of known organizers and participants of anti-Czechoslovak campaigns in the West, active members of anti-socialist movements and groups from socialist countries in acts prepared by Czechoslovak illegal organizations. In view of the anticipated arrival of a larger number of these individuals, they will be searched at the border crossings and will not be admitted onto our territory. The individuals who, despite the measures, penetrate onto the Czechoslovak territory with intent to participate in enemy acts, will have their stay shortened by administrative means. In the event that the individuals’ participation in anti-social acts in the CSSR is proven, charges will be brought against them in accordance with valid Czechoslovak laws.

In cooperation with Czechoslovak media, particularly those operating nation-wide, evidence of their resolute offensive propagandist influence is prepared with intent to discourage adherents and those sympathizing with illegal organizations from engaging in anti-socialist acts.

In the event of a so-called “silent march” papers will be checked and actively participating individuals will be brought in to SNB departments. If it should come to petitions, verbal attacks or spontaneous demonstrations of opposition to the party and state leadership and politics of the CPCz, disciplinary units will be called in to drive the crowd out of the area and disperse it.

If despite the effected measures it should come to a mass anti-social gathering, disciplinary forces will be called in to carry out necessary decisive intervention and to restore order through technical means.20

secondary school students), and the so-called Independent Student Society, centered on university students, headed by Milan RUŽICKA (Technical University, VUT Brno), Radek VÁNA (Faculty of Philosophy, Charles’s University, Prague) and Petr FIALA (Faculty of Pedagogy, Charles’s University, Prague). Both initiatives, in terms of subject matter, began with a policy-statement, from an appeal for a “few sentences,” and proposed preparations to misuse the commemoration of Jan Opletal’s death as an opportunity to denounce the role of the CPCz, as well as the activities of the SSM, and the political system of the CSSR.

In order to thwart this design, associative and academic organs took measures to divert crowds from the original rout from the Albertov Pedagogical Institute via Charles’s bridge, Štepánská (St.), Opletalova (St.), to the Main Train Station and the J. Opletal monument, to a rout from Albertov to Vyšehrad and made a public announce-ment that the crowd was the result of a joint activity between the SSM and unorganized students. In consideration of the situation, the associative organs brokered a compromise to the effect that the executive member of the so-called Circle of Independent Intellectuals, an academic named KATETOV, would make an appearance on behalf of the independent initiatives. His address at Albertov did not go beyond a policy-statement and was not an openly aimed attack against the socialist structure in the CSSR.

The official program was effectively disrupted by whistling and the chanting of unfriendly slogans such as “Destroy the CPCz monopoly,” “We want a different government,” “String up all the communists,” “Destroy the army, State Security, and the Peoples’ Militia”, “We don’t want Jakeš,” “We don’t want Stěpán,” “We want a charter,” etc. Organizers, in light of the development of the situation, did not have the opportunity to establish order and secure the proper course of the demonstration. After the rally at Albertov ended, the participants broke up and reassembled at Slavín 23 [cemetary in Vyšehrad], where the official mourning portion of the commemoration concluded.

Afterwards, approximately 5,000 individuals continued in a procession into the center of Prague along the B. Engels Embankment, up Národní třída and the neighboring streets were closed by IS (Internal Security) peace-keeping units. 24

By around 10:00 p.m., approximately 3,000 people had assembled within the confines of Národní třída, of which only about 1,000 acknowledged the call to disperse and leave the area. Those remaining lingered in the area and began sitting down on the pavement in demonstration fashion and continued to chant unfriendly slogans. Over 15 calls to disperse went unheeded and the participants of the demonstration had over an hour to restore order to the area. After the calls went unheeded, measures were taken to suppress the crowd. During the course of those measures, a skirmish ensued with some of the more aggressive participants in the demonstration. After intervening, 179 individuals were detained, of whom approximately 145 were held for aggressive behavior directed at the IS department. Shortly after 11:00 p.m., public order was restored. During intervention a total of 38 individuals were injured including one member of the SNB (National Security Committee) and one US citizen.

On Saturday, 11 November 1989, a group of students, primarily from TAPA and [VŠE] 25 Prague, issued a declaration condemning the intervention of peace-keeping units and proposed a weekly strike consisting of university students and pedagogues to push for the creation of a special government commission to investigate the intervention as well as other demands. In the effort to call on students to implement a general strike at all theaters in the CSSR on 11 November, in excess of 400 individuals gathered at a production at the Realistický Theater in Prague.

In response to the call to theater performers, actress Milena DVORSKÁ walked out at the E.F. Burian theater on Wenceslas Square on the afternoon of 11 November 1989. All Prague theaters and a few elsewhere in the CSSR (in Liberec and Datec) responded by suspending their performances and reading the invitation to the audience.

During the afternoon hours on Saturday 18 November 1989 a gathering of around 700 people gradually formed on Národní třída, which had been closed. After calls to disperse, the crowd broke-up prior to 6:00 p.m., with intervention being carried out by peace-keeping units. Ninety-six individuals were detained, of whom nine made displays against the SNB department.

Elsewhere around the CSSR there have been no reports of peace disturbances or public disorder.

In the effort to incite emotion, particularly among young people, and to elicit additional protests, information has been distributed by means of internal antagonists and Western communications regarding the death of Martin ŠMÍD, of the Charles’s University Mathematics Faculty, from injuries sustained as a result of a confrontation with peace-keeping units. This information was disclosed by “Charter 77” signatory Petr UHL to Radio Free Europe which repeatedly aired the information on Sunday, 19 November 1989. Leaflets were then subsequently distributed providing information about the death with a call for a general strike on 27 November 1989. Similar leaflets were discovered in the northern Bohemian, eastern Bohemian, and southern Bohemian regions.

A further attempt to instigate anti-socialist protests and provoke the intervention of peace-keeping units came to a head on Sunday, 11 November 1989 during the afternoon and evening hours in downtown Prague. In implementing the security measures, only the accessibility and safety of the highway thoroughfare was secured; peace-keeping units were not attacked.

On 19 November 1989, National Theater play-actor Boris RÓSNER and head actor Milan LUKÈS instigated the reading of a resolution to the audience during the afternoon performance on the new stage at the
National Theater in Prague, in which they expressed their disagreement with the Security intervention on 17 November 1989. At the urging of LUKEŠ, the theater choir and those in attendance sang a theater hymn. Afterwards they promptly dispersed. National Theater director Jiří PAUER responded by closing the premises of the historical building and the new stage of the National Theater and cancelled evening performances with the justification that the National Theater would not serve to organize illegal gatherings. After director PAUER’s decision, actors from the National Theater began to assemble in the National Theater club where they decided to strike.

During the evening hours, CSSR cultural minister Milan KYMLIČKA visited the National Theater. In an interview with the National Theater employees, he indicated that the CST (Czechoslovak Television) news would address the establishment of a government commission to investigate the SNB intervention on 17 November 1989. Those present promised that as long as the commission was established, the National Theater actors’ club would rescind their decision to strike. At 7:30 p.m. all closely followed the CST television broadcast. Because no announcement was made about the creation of a government commission, National Theater actors, at the urging of Boris RŮSNER, undertook additional initiatives. RŮSNER, as the spokesman for the National Theater actors, along with three other individuals, proceeded to the front of the theater building where, after only a short time, he was able to organize a crowd of approximately 500 people. RŮSNER announced that the National Theater would strike continuously until it was called off, the crowd chanted the slogan “OUT WITH PAUER.”

On 19 November 1989, shortly after 10:00 p.m., at the Jiří Wolker Theater, at the location originally determined for the performance, theater employees read a declaration to the audience explaining that the theater had joined the protest strike as an expression of their disagreement with the Security intervention on 17 November 1989. 17 December was determined as a substitute date for the original performance. Patrons then quietly dispersed.

A petition denouncing the SNB intervention was also read at the Komorní Theater in Plzeň, where [OBRODA] branch members Stanislav NEDVÉD and František JURIČKA were seated in the auditorium. Similarly, the planned performance did not materialize.

During the evening hours of the same day, a “public discussion forum” took place in the actors’ club in Prague involving the most important opposition group supporters, representatives of the Cultural Front, and university students. The actors’ club was filled to capacity, including the vestibule, where others followed the course of the forum on a video display monitor. Included among the viewers in the vestibule were well-known actors such as HANZLÍK, BREJCHOVÁ, KANYZA, Josef DVOŘÁK, and others.

The goal of this forum was to unify the independent initiatives and compose joint declarations, which are to be presented to the government of the CSSR by 10 representatives on 20 November 1989. The forum was conducted by Václav HAVEL, who addressed the declaration and put the various alternatives to a vote, and he then read and spoke favorably of the outcome. During the course of the discussion, appearances were also made by well-known independent group advocates including BATTÉK, KANTUREK, HRADÍLEK, VONDRA, and others.

Similarly, an unidentified TAPA student emerged to read a declaration from the TAPA students. The declaration amounted to an ultimatum for the removal of the CSSR minister of the interior, the investigation and prosecution of subordinates who were involved in the intervention of 17 November 1989, the abolition of stipulations regarding the leadership role of the Party in the system, and the resignation of the current representatives of the Party and State. On 20 November 1989 a coordinating student body is to be created at the TAPA faculty, which is supposed to guarantee the distribution of this declaration and thereby aid in the actualization of the general strike on 27 November.

Václav HAVEL supported the student declaration by suggesting that the coordinating committee supporting the forum should meet daily in some of the Prague theaters in order to direct and organize the student strikes; theaters, which are to similarly strike, would be open, however, discussion clubs would be held in place of the performances.

The aim of university students in the next few days is to travel around to various locations around the CSSR to publicize and popularize the stated declaration in the effort to convert the youth in secondary and vocational schools.

The forum was essentially divided by two differing opinions. A significantly smaller camp asserted the opinion that in essence a dialogue with the current government could be entertained provided certain changes were made, the most important of which they considered to be the resignation of comrades Jakeš, Štěpán, Zavadil, Hoffmann, Indra, and Fojtík. A notably stronger group represented by HAVEL, BATTÉK, and KANTUREK and the university student representatives, was against dialogue in any form and supported an open confrontation with the powers of the State. Both groups decided on the unconditional abolition of the principle of a leading role of the Party, anchored in the institution.

The forum culminated with a declaration read and submitted for approval by Václav HAVEL. This declaration, filled with comments from the discussion forum, will be submitted to the State organs. After singing a state hymn the participants of the forum dispersed.

Conclusion

The development of events proves that internal enemies, with foreign support, have crossed-over to a frontal, and from their perspective, decisive attack in the effort to further their own political goals after the pattern exhibited by Poland and Hungary. To this end, it has been decided to actualize and utilize all reasonable means,
...primarily abusing the youth for pressure tactics. These events, according to the plans of the enemy, together with the expected economic difficulties and foreign pressure for political change, should be the beginning of a quick series of successive events resulting in principle political change in the CSSR.

Václav NOVOTNÝ
Chief of the Secretariat of the FMI Operation Staff

To be obtained by:

RA (Regional Administration) SNB Chiefs – České Budejovice, Plzeň, Ustí nad Labem, Hradec Králové, Brno, Ostrava, Banská Bystrica, Košice; S (Slovak) SNB Chief main m. Bratislava, XII. S SNB; (Ministry of the Interior and Environment CSR, SSR. [Ministry of the Interior and Environment CSR, SSR."


16,516 citizens signed the petition “A Few Sentences” of 8 August 1989.

Alexandr Vondra—Signator and Spokesperson for Charter 77, organized demonstrations in January 1989 and was imprisoned for his participation in the “A Few Sentences” campaign. Co-founder and leading member of Civic Forum. From 1990-92, foreign policy advisor to President Vaclav Havel, 1996 negotiator of the Czech-German Accords, Ambassador to the United States, Spring 1997-present.


Jan Čarnogursky—A trial lawyer who defended dissidents until 1981, when the authorities forbid him trial work. Čarnogursky organized independent Catholic activists, became a leader of Slovak dissidents, was arrested in 1989, and was released after the events of 17 November. He became First Vice Premier of an independent Czechoslovakia and in 1991 became Prime Minister of the Slovak government. Čarnogursky was defeated by Mečiar.

M. Kušy was released from prison on 10 June 1989, J. Čarnogursky only in November 1989.

Hnutí Občanského Sbovodu (Movement for Civic Freedom)

NMS—Nezávislé místové sdružení (Independent Peace Action)

Prada in Jeseníky—The Prada is the name of one of the peaks in the Jeseníky mountains, located in northern Moravia.

Adam Michnik—A founder of the Polish dissident group KOR (the Worker’s Defense Committee) in 1976, a lecturer at the “Flying University” and advisor to Solidarity trade union during the 1980s, Michnik was frequently imprisoned (1981-84 and 1985-86). A negotiator for Solidarity at the Roundtable talks with the Polish government in 1989, Michnik served in the first non-communist Sejm (1989-91) and co-founded one of the first free Polish newspapers Gazeta Wyborcza.

Petr Uhl—After the Prague Spring, Uhl became the leader of the illegal “Movement of Revolutionary Youth” and was jailed from 1969-73 for his activities. One of the first signatories of the Charter 77, Uhl helped found VONS—Committee for the Defense of the Unjustly Prosecuted—one of the first significant dissident groups. Arrested with Havel, Dienstbier and Benda, he was jailed again from 1979-84, from 1984-89 he worked as a dissident journalist.

Vaclav Benda—A devout Catholic layman, active in VONS and served twice as spokesman of Charter 77, he was imprisoned and served a manual labor sentence. His writings focused on Catholicism and politics, and the sphere of morality in politics. After 1989, a founder and chairman of the Christian Democratic Party in the independent Czechoslovakia which in 1995 merged into Vaclav Klaus Civic Democratic Party. He later served as a Senator of the Czech Republic.

VB—Veřejná Bezpečnost (Public Security, the regular police like traffic, criminal, etc. under control of SNB).

LM—Lidová Milice (the People’s Militia, party-controlled para-military “worker’s” police).

FZUH—Federalní Ministerstvo Zahraničních Vecí (Federal Ministry of Foreign Affairs).

MBO—Mimořádní Bezpečnostní Opatření (Extraordinary Security Measures).

Jiří Hálek—A leading figure in the Communist Party from 1948 through the 1950’s and Minister of Foreign Affairs under Dubček, Hálek was dismissed from the party in 1969. A dedicated socialist even after the Prague Spring, he was one of the first three spokesmen of Charter 77.

Editor’s Note—in Czech, the word “most” means bridge. This organization was clearly to serve a bridging function between groups.

Československá Strana Socialistická (Czechoslovak Socialist Party) and Československá Strana Lidová (Czechoslovak People’s Party)—two of the smaller political parties that were part of the official “National Front.”

Wroclaw—a city in Poland near the border with Czechoslovakia.

The first Czechoslovak Republic was founded in Prague by official declaration of the Czech National Council on 28 October 1918. This day was subsequently celebrated as the national independence day until the Communist takeover in 1948.

Karel Čapek, well-known author of numerous short stories, political observer, journalist, friend of President T.G. Masaryk (1890-1938).
In the volatile situation in East Germany in the summer of 1989, the bloody suppression of the peaceful student demonstrations in Beijing on 3-4 June fueled the unrest within the German Democratic Republic, much to the concern of the ruling Socialist Unity Party (SED). Fearing a spill-over from the events in Beijing, news of which quickly reached the GDR population through reports in Western media, secret police chief Erich Mielke sounded the alarm and put his organization on alert, hoping to forestall any visible unrest within the country. In his instructions to the MfS network throughout the GDR, published below, Mielke approvingly notes the Chinese government measures—raising the specter of a “Chinese solution” to the growing unrest in the GDR.—Christian F. Ostermann

Secret Instructions by State Security (MfS) Chief Erich Mielke to Heads of all State Security Units, 10 June 1989

Mielke to Heads of Service Units

Berlin, 10 June 1989

VVS [Vertrauliche Verschlusssache] Nr. 0008,
MfS-No.45/89

The denunciation campaign of Western media in connection with the recent developments in the People's Republic of China, in particular the resolute measures in suppression of the counterrevolutionary unrest in Beijing have led to an increase in provocatory and pointed actions of negative enemy forces against the measures of the Chinese party and state leadership as well as against PRC institutions and citizens in the GDR. In particular, provocatory gatherings, the spreading of appeals and propagandistic writings as well as anonymous phone calls threatening provocations have occurred. Mindful of the further developments of the political situation in the PRC, increased vigilance is necessary.

The heads of responsible service units have to assure that:

—all signs of such negative enemy activities and their instigators are immediately checked and clarified;
—any provocatory actions against the PR China, in particular its embassy in the GDR, its privileged personnel, other official representations and their staff as well as all other PRC citizens are preempted and, respectively, effectively suppressed;
—above all any form of spreading of appeals to such activities and of propagandistic writings against the policy of the PR [of] China are prevented by appropriate means;
—persons who intend to undertake such activities are prevented from reaching the GDR capital by appropriate means;
—the responsible agencies in line with the determination of my 9 June 1989 communication (VVS 44/89) are informed about the participants in such activities, their behavior, and the measures introduced against them;
—all indications of such planned activities as well as the political-operative measures designed to prevent them preemptively are communicated without delay to the responsible service units. Information on operationally particularly significant measures are to be passed to me immediately.

Mielke
Army General


1 See Zhang Liang, comp., Andrew Nathan and Perry Link, eds., The Tiananmen Papers. The Chinese leadership’s decision to use force against their own people (New York: Public Affairs, 2001).
“We Are the Opponents of Violence ... We Want to Live as Dignified and Free People”

Civic Forum Documents, 1989

DOCUMENT No. 1
The Civic Forum’s Exposition of its Position in Public Life with a Call for Nonviolence, Tolerance and Dialogue, Prague, 20 November 1989

The Civic Forum is not a political party, nor an organization which accepts members. It is an absolutely open society of people who feel themselves responsible for the positive resolution of the untenable political situation, wanting to unite the forces of all the honest and democratically-minded citizens—artists, students, workers and all people of good will. It was established spontaneously in the presence of all the groups which on Sunday, 11 November, took part in an independent social activity. We consider this representation of the people to be competent to negotiate with responsible political authorities. We are, therefore, after an objective plan of action, not violence. We do not want crudeness. We appeal to the members of the police, the army, the militia, to refuse brutality and repression of the will of the people. As long as in reality nobody was killed during the harsh intervention of uniformed units, we are all happy, but this does not mean that there did not occur massacres, injuries and bloodshed. Various wild rumors and willfully disseminated misinformation are multiplying. Let us not succumb to them! We ask all citizens to act responsibly, humanely, tolerantly and democratically. Let us lead our common goal, as much as it is in our power, to a good conclusion. Let us persist and let us not give up!


DOCUMENT No. 2
The Civic Forum’s Position on the Negotiations of its Representatives with Prime Minister Ladislav Adamec, Prague, 21 November 1989

Part of today’s declaration of the government of the CSSR also contained information on the meeting of Prime Minister [Ladislav] Adamec1 with the representatives of the Civic Forum [CF].

The government understood the negotiations to be the beginning of a dialogue and interpreted them in the sense that even this event is testimony to the government’s effort to decisively resolve the rising crisis situation. According to the government, this dismisses the reasons for the organization of strikes and demonstrations.

We proclaim: The meeting between the CF’s representatives and L. Adamec was merely of an informational character, and therefore could not in any way influence our positions. The CF unequivocally supports the strikes of the students, theater artists, sculptors and painters, and supports the call for a general strike on 27 November as well.

We want to contribute to the eventual dialogue by sharing the responsibility of establishing committees which would represent the broadest public and would initiate negotiations on four of the demands of the fundamental declaration of the Civic Forum.2

Prague, 21 November 1989.

[Source: Ústav pro sodobé dějiny (ÚSD), Akademie věd České republiky (AV ČR), Koordinační centrum Občanského fóra (KC OF) Archive, file Dokumenty OF—copy of the computer print. Translated by Caroline Kovtun.]

DOCUMENT No. 3
Letter from the Civic Forum to US President George Bush and USSR General Secretary Mikhail Gorbachev, 21 November 1989

Dear Sirs!

On 19 November 1989, the Civic Forum, which feels itself responsible to act as the mouthpiece of the Czechoslovak public, was established in Prague. In a demonstration by the Prague populace, attended by hundreds of thousands of people on Wenceslas Square, the Civic Forum gained a consensus of opinion and therefore is turning to you also in the name of these people.

The Soviet government has announced a policy of non-involvement in connection with the democratic
movements in Eastern Europe. We must warn you that in the case of Czechoslovakia, this policy in reality means support for the political leadership which was installed in the year 1968 by forceful intervention, and which, during the course of twenty years of rule, has absolutely discredited itself. One of the demands of the mass demonstration on 21 November was precisely the removal of these politicians from the political scene.

Dear Sirs, we are of the opinion that the past intervention into Czechoslovak internal events in the year 1968 should be condemned and decried as an unlawful encroachment. The silence surrounding the intervention in August de facto means entanglement into Czechoslovak internal conditions. We besiege you to pay attention to this question during your negotiations; it is not only important for Czechoslovakia these days, but also for all of Europe.

The Civic Forum
In Prague on 21 November 1989


DOCUMENT No. 4
The Declaration of Civic Forum Representative Václav Havel on Wenceslas Square, Prague, 23 November 1989, 4 p.m.

The Declaration of The Civic Forum

After twenty years Czechoslovakia once again finds itself at a historical intersection thanks to the people’s movement, to which all generations and segments of the population and the majority of the still existing social organizations are quickly adding themselves. This movement is a movement of both of our nations. Its mouthpiece has spontaneously become the Civic Forum, which today is the real representative of the will of the people. Its natural component has become the well-organized student movement, which, through its protest demonstration, gave us the impulse for dramatic social movement. Within it work all the current independent initiatives, artistic unions headed by the theater—the first to be in solidarity with the students—and the renewed currents in the National Front, including many former and current members of the CPCz. The Catholic Church supported the Civic Forum through the words of the cardinal, and other churches in Czechoslovakia. Anyone who agrees with its demands is joining, and may join, the Civic Forum.

The Civic Forum is prepared to secure a dialogue between the public and the present leadership immediately and has at its disposal qualified forces [from] all areas of society, capable of carrying out a free and objective dialogue about real paths toward a change in the political and economic conditions in our country.

The situation is open now, there are many opportunities before us, and we have only two certainties.

The first is the certainty that there is no return to the previous totalitarian system of government, which led our country to the brink of an absolute spiritual, moral, political, economic and ecological crisis.

Our second certainty is that we want to live in a free, democratic and prosperous Czechoslovakia, which must return to Europe, and that we will never abandon this ideal, no matter what transpires in these next few days.

The Civic Forum calls on all citizens of Czechoslovakia to support its fundamental demands by the demonstration of a general strike declared for Monday, 27 November 1989, at noon. Whether our country sets out in a peaceful way on the road to a democratic social order, or whether an isolated group of Stalinists, who want at any price to preserve their power and their privileges disguised as empty phrases about reconstruction will conquer, may depend upon the success of this strike.

We challenge the leadership of this country to grasp the gravity of this situation, rid themselves of compromised individuals and prevent all eventual efforts for a violent revolution.

We call on all the members of the ruling party to join the citizenry and respect its will.

We challenge all the members of the People’s Militias to not come out violently against their comrade workers and thus spit upon all the traditions of worker solidarity.

We challenge all the members of the Police to realize that they are first and foremost human beings and citizens of this country and only second subordinate to their superiors.

We challenge the Czechoslovak People’s Army to stand on the side of the people and, if necessary, to come out in its defense for the first time.

We call on the public and the governments of all countries to realize that our homeland is from time immemorial the place where European and world confrontations have begun and ended, and that in our country it is not only its fate which is at stake, but the future of all of Europe. We therefore demand that they support in every way the people’s movement and the Civic Forum.

We are opponents of violence; we do not want revenge; we want to live as dignified and free people, who have the right to speak for the fate of their homeland and who also think of future generations.

The Civic Forum
23 November 1989
Czechoslovak society is going through a deep crisis. This crisis is displayed primarily:

1. In the disregard of several human rights, especially the right of free assembly and association, the right of free expression of opinion, and the right to partake in the decisions of public affairs.
2. In the continuing disillusionment of society, the unsteadiness of moral values, the erosion of the meaning of truth and knowledge, education and rationality, dialogue and tolerance, that is values which have been in European culture for thousands of years; this process is accompanied by actual or internal emigration, corruption, orientation towards consumerism and other undesirable phenomena.
3. In the emptiness of a great part of official culture.
4. In the decrease in the level of culture and education, which is especially pronounced when compared internationally.
5. In the rapidly worsening quality of the environment, connected to the devastation of natural resources, the contamination of drinking water and comestibles by parasitic, harmful substances; through this the most basic human right, the right to life, is violated.
6. In the worsening state of health of the Czechoslovak population and the endangerment of its ability to reproduce.
7. In the backwardness of Czechoslovak science in many scientific fields and applied areas.
8. In the decline of the total innovational activity in the society.
9. In the decreasing effectiveness of the Czechoslovak economy and the growth of foreign and especially internal debt.
10. In the rising alienation between individual and social groups; the alienation between ordinary citizens and the ruling group is reaching Kafkaesque proportions.
11. In the abuse of the means of force against the citizens, which we were reminded of once again with the intervention of “disciplinary forces” on 17 November 1989, in Prague.
12. In the worsening of the overall position of Czechoslovakia in the international community.

All these introduced, deeply disturbing phenomena bear witness to the impairment of the ability of our society to control effectively our development; [they] are testimonies to the unsuitable current political and economic system. In the society almost all corrective feedback, which is essential for effective reaction to the fast-changing internal and external conditions, has been impaired. For long decades, the simple principle of the symmetry between authority and responsibility has not been respected: those in the state who attribute every executive authority to themselves, do not feel themselves to be responsible for the effected and missed decisions and refuse to settle accounts with the nation for their actions. All three fundamental powers of the state: legislative power, executive and judicial (regulatory), have come into the hands of a narrow ruling group, composed almost exclusively of CPCz members. This struck at the very foundations of a lawful state. The ruling group does not respect its own laws and international agreements not only in the area of human rights, but not even in other, wholly non-political spheres—an example of this can be the systematic violation of laws on environmental protection.

The practice of the nomenclature of the CPCz, consisting of the placement of leading workers in all important places, creates a vassal system which cripples the entire society. The citizens were thus degraded to the position of a common mob, who are denied basic political rights.

The directive system of the central leadership of the national economy has reached the limits of its potential. The promised reconstruction of the economic mechanism is without results and proceeds slowly. It is not accompanied by political changes, which undermines its effectiveness. A solution to these problems cannot be the simple exchange of seats in the positions of power or the resignation of several of the most compromised politicians from public life. It is necessary to make fundamental, effective and lasting changes in the political and economic system of our society. The basis of this must be newly created or renewed democratic institutions, which would enable real—not just proclaimed—citizen participation in the management of public affairs and simultaneously establish an effective system to prevent the abuse of political and economic power. A condition for this is the creation of such a climate in the society that would provide equal opportunities to all existing political parties and newly established political groups to prepare and hold free elections with independent candidate lists. A self-evident condition is the resignation of the CPCz from its constitutionally ensured leading role in our society and in its monopoly of the control of public media.

In the national economy we consider it essential to support the activity and productivity of the widest strata of
society through the quick development of a market economy during the demonopolization of our economy, and by a significant increase in the responsibility of the state institutions for the regulation of economic processes, e.g., in the areas of healthcare and social welfare, science, education, culture and care of the environment. A key problem is the reevaluation of proprietary relations in the society. We are pressing for our country to once again take its honorable place in Europe and in the world. We are not asking for change in Czechoslovakia’s current membership status in the COMECON and Warsaw Pact. We are assuming that the Soviet Union and other Warsaw Pact countries which participated in the military invasion of Czechoslovakia in 1968 will condemn this intervention, by which the indispensable reform process of socialist countries was pushed back for decades.

[Source: Úsd AV ČR, KC OF Archive, file OF Documents—copy of the computer print A4, 2 p. Translated by Caroline Kovtun.]

⭐⭐⭐

DOCUMENT No. 6
The Position of the Civic Forum and Public Against Violence Toward the Negotiations with Czechoslovak
Prime Minister Ladislav Adamec, Prague, 28 November 1989, 4 p.m.

The CF believes that the negotiations with the prime minister of the federal government, Mr. Ladislav Adamec, and his associates authorizes it to provide the public with this information and these proposals:

1. The Prime Minister promised the delegation of the CF and PAV [Public Against Violence] that he would form a new government by 3 December 1989.

2. The Prime Minister announced to the delegation of the CF and PAV that tomorrow the CSSR government will present the Federal Assembly with a proposal for a constitutional law by which the articles legally establishing the leading role of the CPCz and Marxism-Leninism as the state ideology will be expunged.

3. The Prime Minister promised the CF and PAV delegation that he would immediately discuss with the Prague National Committee the issue of allotting the CF rooms, and discuss with other institutions the issue of giving the CF and PAV access to the media, including creating conditions for the publication of their own journals.

4. The Prime Minister informed the CF and PAV delegation that he had already submitted to the President of the republic a proposal for amnesty for political prisoners, [and] a list that the CF submitted to the Prime Minister during the previous meeting. The CF will challenge the president of the republic to accommodate this proposal at the latest by 10 December 1989, which is Human Right’s Day. The Civic Forum is receiving information that this list was not complete and therefore the CF and PAV are reserving the right to complete it.

5. The CF gratefully received the news from Dr. Kučera, the deputy chairman of the Federal Assembly [FA], that tomorrow at the meeting of the FA he will propose the creation of a special committee for the investigation of the brutal intervention against the peaceful demonstration of Prague students on 17 November 1989. CF representatives, especially students, will be invited to work on this committee.

6. The CF and PAV delegation requested that the new government publish the directives of its program declaration as soon as possible, in which it should be obvious that the government is prepared to create legal guarantees for securing free elections, freedom of assembly and association, freedom of speech and press, for the elimination of the state control over the church, for the amendment of the National Defense Act and others. It is further necessary to ensure the liquidation of the People’s Militia and consider the question of the future existence of political party organizations in all workplaces. The CF and PAV delegation also requested that the government turn its declaration into visible deeds as soon as possible. The delegation let the federal prime minister know that, should the public not be satisfied with the programatic declaration of the government and with its implementation, then at the end of the year the CF and PAV will demand that the prime minister resign and that the president of the Republic nominate a new prime minister suggested by the CF and PAV, if the President should deem it necessary.

7. On 29 November 1989, CF and PAV will demand in writing that the President of the Republic, Dr. Gustav Husák, step down by 10 December 1989.

8. The CF and PAV delegation suggested to the Prime Minister that the government of the CSSR submit to the Federal Assembly a proposal for a constitutional law by which the representatives of the Federal Assembly, the Czech National Council and the Slovak National Council and the national committees of all degrees who have broken their oath as representatives and ignored the will and interest of the people, will be recalled from their functions. The CF and PAV will propose a system of supplementary elections in the nearest future.

9. The CF challenges the government and the Federal Assembly to immediately condemn the 1968 invasion of Czechoslovakia by Warsaw Pact troops, and the Federal Assembly to request the Highest Soviet of the USSR and the representative organs of the Bulgarian People’s Republic and the German Democratic Republic to declare the intervention by the armies of five Warsaw Pact countries was pushed back for decades.
Pact countries in Czechoslovakia a violation of the norms of international law and the Warsaw Pact itself, because the intervention occurred without the knowledge or agreement of the highest state organs of Czechoslovakia.

10. The CF believes that this outcome justifies it in challenging every citizen to continue working in peace while in a state of readiness to strike. Strike committees can transform themselves into civic forums, but can also work along side of them. Students and theater workers will decide themselves whether they will end their strike today or tomorrow, or whether to continue it. When they decide, however, the CF will support their position. The CF and PAV challenge the public to assess itself the results of these negotiations and to make their opinion known to the CF and PAV by all accessible means.

The Civic Forum and Public Against Violence
28 November 1989 at 4 p.m.

[Source: ÚSD AV ČR, KC OF Archive, file OF Documents—typescript copy A4, 1 p. Translated by Caroline Kovtun.]

★ ★ ★

DOCUMENT No. 7
Internal Organization of the Civic Forum,
28 November 1989

What We Are

The Civic Forum is a medium for the renewal of genuine civic positions and life, forgotten more than forty years ago. The following text therefore does not contain any statutes, it only wants to be a concise guideline for creating local civic forums.

The internal organization of Civic Forums:

1. The Civic Forum (further only CF) is a spontaneously created citizen movement, which is united by the effort to find positive outcomes from the current crisis in our society. No one is excluded from this movement who agrees with the program directives of the CF, published on 26 November 1989 and who especially refuses the further continuation of a political system consisting of one ruling party. We consider the basic goal of the CF to be the complete opening of an environment for the creation of political pluralism and for the organization of free elections in our country.

2. It is possible to create a local CF anywhere based on regions, professions or interests by citizens, and not institutions. We recommend that membership in the CF be established by signing the charter of the local CF organizations; we further recommend that an informal coordinating group be established to which the citizens could turn, and that its representatives be elected.

3. Relations between the Coordinating Center and the local CFs:
   a) The CF Coordinating Center and the local CF constitute a unit joined solely by the active civic attitude of its members. The Civic Forum does not have a complicated hierarchy, only a horizontal net with every local Civic Forum, connected to one coordinating center;
   b) The Coordinating Center is just an informational and organizational center, and it is in no way an administrative center; its task is to collect information from local CFs, exchange it and inform [all local CFs] about past and future activities. All local Civic Forums operate completely independently on the local level;
   c) The Coordinating Center represents the Civic Forum in negotiations with central state and international institutions, mostly on the basis of suggestions and recommendations from the local CF.

4. The function of the informational center of the CF:
   a) In order to secure informational links, it is necessary to submit in writing to the Coordination Center these basic details about the local CF: business, region or interest group where the CF was created, precise address, telephone number, names of the representatives, number of members (rough estimate at least). These data will be entered on file centrally;
   b) Contact with the Coordinating Center—for a period of three weeks starting on 28 November 1989, the record-keeping, collection of information and consulting services of the CF will be located at: Špálova gallery, Národní Třída 30, 110 00 Praha 1, tel. 268366, 265132, 267529. The new address and telephone line of the Coordinating Center will be released promptly. The post office box of the CF: 632, pošta 111 21, Praha 1, Politických věz 4, Communications Professional Training Center entrance. CF account 2346-021, SB S branch Praha 2, 110 01 Praha 1, Václavské náměstí 42;
   c) Transfer and exchange of information between individual local CFs and the Coordinating Center will be ensured in the form of an informational bulletin, which will be sent out by the Coordinating Center by means of mass communications or exceptionally by telephone.

5. The orientation of the activity of the local CF:
The point of the activity of the local CF is the activation of civic behavior of its own free will and discussion in political and everyday life. Therefore the Coordinating Center can not and does not want to hand down any orders and restrictions, it solely provides suggestions and recommendations.

6. We believe that the local CFs should concern themselves very soon with these areas of activity:
a) Local CFs should specify and define the opinions of citizens in the broad democratic discussion. The discussion should lead to political differentiation, which is an indispensable prerequisite for a pluralistic democratic political system;
b) Local Civic Forums can pursue solutions to local problems, which are not satisfactorily dealt with by the current social structures. Local CFs can thus contribute to the creation of civic home rule or to the transformation of the institutional bureaucratic apparatus into a democratic one;
c) Local CFs can prepare strikes, demonstrations and other activities supporting their demands, even the demands of the whole Civic Forum if it should be necessary. In this sense, the local CFs are a continuation of the strike committees until all the demands of the CF have been met.
d) Local CFs should support all citizens in all areas where relations with the current undemocratic structures result in violations of civic rights in the broadest sense of the word. Local CFs are therefore the means for civic self-defense.

Supplement solely for consultative workers
Legally the local CF is a free coalition of citizens, it is not a legal subject and in this way does not have any rights or responsibilities. The Civic Forum as a free coalition of citizens has the same rights as an individual citizen. If the local CFs should deal with money, it is useful to keep it in a safe and enter the contributions and withdrawals into the account book and elect a treasurer and auditor. It is useful to provide monetary gifts over 3,000 Kcs in the form of a deposit book.

The Civic Forum
Prague, 28 November 1989

[Source: ÚSD AV ČR, KC OF Archive, file OF Documents—typescript copy A4, 3 p. Translated by Caroline Kovtun.]

DOCUMENT No. 8
Instructions of the Coordinating Center of the Civic Forum for the Local Forums with a Recommendation for Policy Toward the Communists,
Prague, 29 November 1989

In the last two days information is coming from individual Civic Forums in the regions and especially in the factories and workplaces about communists becoming members, sometimes with intent to control them. We are democrats and therefore we cannot prohibit our fellow citizens, without regard to their party affiliation, from joining and participating in the new structures of the civic movement. It is necessary, however, for all who work in them to be honest followers of our movement, the basic goal of which is, as introduced in the declaration on the internal organization of the CF from 28 November, “the complete opening of an environment for the creation of political pluralism and for the organization of free elections in our country.” A person whose actions are in blatant contradiction with efforts to create a democratic [society] while fully respecting human rights does not belong here, and it is necessary to expel him from the Civic Forum. This without regard to his party affiliation. Such an expulsion is especially urgent in those instances where there is a larger group of opponents of democracy [than honest members] in the forum. If there is a majority of them anywhere, it is necessary for the followers of the civic movement to leave the forum, found a new forum, and release a statement about their action. The opponents of democracy are in the minority, let us not let them rule and frighten us! In order to avoid such conflicts, we must be careful when accepting new Civic Forum members and in particular members of its committees, commissions et. al., especially in those cases when CPCz members are applying for work. It is unacceptable for any kind of group within the CF (for example, CPCz members, but also others) to assert their so-called party discipline, according to which all the members of this group are bound to a common plan of action, including those who would otherwise disagree with the plan.

The existence of various political and social groups, including communist ones, their activity and their influence over public opinion is, on the contrary, very demanding outside of the framework of the forums and certainly should not develop into discrimination against any group during speeches at public gatherings, in workers’ and local presses etc.

We can only build democracy by democratic means! In some establishments and places, civic activities are coming up against refusals to negotiate with Forum representatives by the organs of state power, national committees, business managements etc. It usually occurs where the forums have not yet gained greater support from fellow citizens or co-workers. Only one thing will help in this situation: turn to the citizens and factory workers, inform them of your activity and challenge them to take part in it. If you will be many, no chairman of a national committee or factory director will refuse to negotiate with you.

[Source: ÚSD AV ČR, KC OF Archive, file OF Documents—typescript copy A4, 1 p. Translated by Caroline Kovtun.]
Ladislav Adamec was a member of the Central Committee, Prime Minister of the Czech Federal government in 1987 and Prime Minister of Czechoslovakia in 1988. A moderate communist economic reformer, Adamec’s proposed (3 December) changes to form a new government were not accepted by the non-communist opposition. He withdrew from public life in 1990.

COLD WAR HISTORY

A new international history journal from Frank Cass Publishers

CALL FOR SUBMISSIONS

We are pleased to announce that Cold War History, a new academic journal, will be launched by Frank Cass in 2000. The journal aims at publishing articles that will stimulate new research and new interpretations of the Cold War. With the end of the Cold War in 1989/91, and also with the gradual opening of the archives in the former Soviet Union, East-Central Europe, and in China, studies of the Cold War have now achieved an academic status in their own right.

The new journal is intended to re-examine past interpretations and approaches, and to add new research findings in the field. The aim of the editors is to move away from the view of Cold War studies as centered on the bilateral Soviet-American diplomatic relationship, as this approach is much too narrow to cover the new research which has been undertaken by scholars in the 1990s and which will be undertaken in the new century. The journal will be interested in new perspectives of the Cold War as seen from Europe, Asia, the Middle East, Africa and Latin America as well as a critical analysis of the ideologies, alliances, security and intelligence issues, economy and trade, human rights, and cultures and beliefs that affected, or were influenced by the Cold War.

For the initial issues, examinations of how the new evidence from the Eastern bloc has changed our understanding of the Cold War will be particularly welcome. A re-appraisal of major aspects of international history during the Cold War, including nuclear deterrence, disarmament and rearmament, the perception of the Soviet and US threats, the German question, European integration, neutrality, and non-alignment movement in the Third World will be most welcome.

The editors believe that the new journal will serve both as an academic forum for deepening an understanding of the recent past, and as a means of investigating methods of achieving peace in the international community.

Editors:
Alexander O. Chubarian (Russian Academy of Sciences)
Saki Dockrill (King’s College, London)
Jussi Hanhimaki (London School of Economics and Political Science)
Beatrice Heuser (King’s College, London)
Maxim Korobochkin (Russian Academy of Sciences)
Piers Ludlow (London School of Economics and Political Science)
Odd Arne Westad (London School of Economics and Political Science)

Managing Editors:
Arne Hofmann (LSE)
Simon Moores (LSE)
The Last Days of a Dictator

By Mircea Munteanu

To those interested in the history of contemporary Eastern Europe, the past ten years offered a great opportunity to analyze the rise, establishment and fall of communist governments. The ability to study documents from both Western and the former Communist-world archives has allowed for the formation of better theories and a more complete understanding of the history and inner-workings of the dictatorships controlling so many lives for more than half a century.

The following document, excerpted from Şerban Sândulescu’s book December ’89: The Coup D’Etat Confiscated the Romanian Revolution, contains the Romanian minutes of the conversation between Nicolae Ceauşescu and Mikhail Gorbachev on 4 December 1989, only 12 days before the start of the Romanian Revolution and 20 days before the Romanian dictator’s execution. The document not only gives historians a glimpse into the last days of what has been called the last Romanian “absolutist monarchy,” but also provides a window into the Kremlin’s attitude towards the situation in Romania on the eve of the December 1989 events.

The break in the relationship between Ceauşescu and the Kremlin leadership, created purposely by Ceauşescu over the years, by the late 1980s had effectively isolated Romania from the reforms instituted in the Soviet Union by Gorbachev. By December 1989—following the transition from power of the Communist Parties in Poland, Hungary, and Czechoslovakia, the fall of the Berlin Wall, and the toppling of Bulgarian leader Todor Zhivkov—the bankruptcy of the communist ideology in Eastern Europe should have been clear to anyone, including Ceauşescu. The minutes of the conversation between Gorbachev and the Romanian leader, however, make clear is that Ceauşescu was so far removed from reality that he believed it possible to overturn the “velvet revolutions” that had taken place in the previous months. Advocating military intervention across the East Bloc, Ceauşescu, the “defender” of Czechoslovak independence in 1968, had come full circle by 1989.

But intervention was out of the question. Fortified in his confidence in US President George Bush following the 2-3 December 1989 Malta summit, Gorbachev rejected the idea of military intervention. Later, the Soviet government would outright reject the possibility that Soviet troops be used on the behalf of the Romanian dictator, or the revolutionary forces. Following the Romanian coup d’etat, Washington made clear that it no longer viewed Soviet actions in Eastern Europe as necessarily a cause of instability. The US–Soviet talks, along with Gorbachev’s unwillingness to use force to maintain communist regimes, proved that the Brezhnev Doctrine was dead.

Illustrative of the new international situation, Gorbachev, throughout the conversation with Ceauşescu, never alludes to the meeting with Bush and to any decisions that were taken in Malta regarding the future of Communism in Europe.

It is also interesting to note that throughout the discussions between Gorbachev and Ceauşescu, the later never suggested that he needed either help from Soviet troops or Soviet support for himself. He seemed more concerned about remaining the only communist dictator in power in the region, seemingly unconcerned as to how the wave of revolutions might effect his country. Hence, the revolution in Timişoara, Cluj, Bucharest, and all other major Romanian cities in December 1989 surprised both Ceauşescu and, it seems, the communist reformers that took over power on 22 December without much resistance from the old regime. Events unfolded so fast that even today it is still unclear what exactly happened between 22 and 25 December, from Ceauşescu’s flight to his execution.

Romanian archival sources, especially concerning the dictator’s last years, days and hours are scarce and documents are only selectively declassified. Despite availability of documents on Romania’s involvement in certain Cold War crises, such as the 1956 Hungarian Revolution and the 1968 Prague Spring, and on the early years of the Securitate secret police, the bulk of the records of the Romanian Communist Party and Ceauşescu’s regime files remain classified. A full opening of the Romanian Archives would allow for a more complete history of the communist regime and a more complete history of the region.

 DOCUMENT

Minutes of the Meeting between
Nicolae Ceauşescu,
and Mikhail S. Gorbachev,
Moscow, 4 December 1989

At the meeting were also present comrades Constantin Dăscălescu, Prime Minister of the of the Government of the Socialist Republic of Romania, and Nikolai I. Ryzhkov, President of the Council of Ministers of USSR.

M.S. Gorbachev:

- Comrade Ceauşescu, first and foremost I would like to congratulate you on behalf of the entire leadership of Soviet Union for the successful finalized of your
Congress. I believe that you are satisfied with the results of your Congress. Within Romanian society, among the Romanian communists, as our comrades have told me, the reaction to the decisions of the Congress has been a positive one.

From me as well as from the leadership of the Soviet Union, I would like to communicate to you and to the entire Romanian party leadership, a friendly salute and good luck in bringing the decisions of the Congress to fruition.

N. Ceaușescu:
- I would like to thank you for your good wishes and, in turn, to express to you, in the name of our party leadership and me personally, a cordial salute to you and the Soviet leadership.

Of course, I am happy to have even this short meeting although there is need for a longer meeting.

Gorbachev:
- Of course, we will try to find time for that as well.

Ceaușescu:
- There are a lot of issues to discuss.

Thank you for the good words regarding our Congress. It was a good Congress and there were a lot of good decisions taken during the Congress. Now we need to work on putting them into practice.

Gorbachev:
- Always, after a great event, especially after a Congress, we have to deal with a lot of obligations. This has always been that way.

[Here,] at home, the situation demands a great deal of attention. We already consider it sensitive. Our main preoccupation rests in shedding those elements that have impeded our development. Of course, we are committed to our political choice and we cannot agree with the idea that the path we have taken until now has been a path of mistakes and unfulfilled promises. This is a complex process and a change in the world as our revolution has been can not be appreciated only in “black and white,” even if we are to judge it under large, historical criteria and we are not to exaggerate.

I believe that we can not admit, from the perspective of truth and morality, that the accomplishments of the previous generations are under-appreciated. They lived, sacrificed their health and even life, and though there have been dramas, they were happy. That is why we, through our perestroika, [hope] to accumulate all that has been good and open up prospects for the renewal and perfecting of our society. Of course, this process is complex. However, we hope for a successful end, though we know it will not be a quick one.

Ceaușescu:
- At our Congress we had a special passage about the Great October Socialist Revolution and about the great realizations of the Soviet people. What the Soviet people have accomplished cannot be forgotten.

Gorbachev:
- This [that there were no realizations] is one of those falsities, even more stupid than those that are usually being told.

Ceaușescu:
- Of course, in such a grandiose activity there have also been mistakes and abuses, but history only records that which assures advance.

I salute your position, Cde. Gorbachev, in regards with the necessity to show, with the backing of facts, what socialism has accomplished, because through that, the Soviet people will be mobilized in support of the new objectives. Yes, we need to constantly perfect the organization of society, the economy, all that stands at the basis of a closer path towards socialist ideals.

Gorbachev:
- I think this is a very consistent remark since we ourselves have been late in solving certain problems though they were ready to be solved.

Ceaușescu:
- I hope you realize that no matter what we shall do now, in ten years it will again be outdated if we do not always keep an eye out for what is new.

Gorbachev:
- Absolutely.

Ceaușescu:
- What is important is that we reach socialism so that we offer the people a better spiritual and material life.

Gorbachev:
- I will ask Comrade Stoica to translate for you the last article I wrote regarding the ideals of socialism and their relationship with perestroika. There I have talked about all those issues.

Ceaușescu:
- I have looked over it. I received an executive summary.

Gorbachev:
- It is hard to get the overall idea from summaries.

Ceaușescu:
- I’ll think about it [the article] and I’ll give you an answer.

Gorbachev:
- Very well.

Ceaușescu:
- This is my idea: two delegations, one from each of our parties—if we could find others it would be great but now it might be harder—to elaborate a declaration regarding socialism and its prospects.

Gorbachev:
- I am not opposed to that.

Ceaușescu:
- I can assure you that a lot of parties are waiting for such a declaration and will certainly salute the fact that the Soviet Union participates in this issue.

Gorbachev:
- Excellent.
Ceaușescu:
- Of course, not the old forms—we have criticized them, you remember—but, let’s face it, the entire world pays a great deal of attention to the actions of the Soviet Union. I am, of course, referring to the communist movements and the progressive forces.

Gorbachev:
- Fine, let’s give this task to the ideological and international sections [of the Central Committee] and let them begin work, most likely in the scientific field at first and maybe after that in the political field.

Ceaușescu:
- After that we can look at it together.

Since we are discussing such issues, let us begin to discuss the possibility of a congress of the Communist and Workers Parties. Of course, I do not want to take a decision right this minute, but a lot of parties have expressed interest in such an event. As a matter of fact, one of the decisions of the congress has been that [the Romanian Communist Party] will pursue this idea. We could form an exploratory committee.

Gorbachev:
- I have a different idea.

Ceaușescu:
- They should start working on it.

Gorbachev:
- I am inclined to agree more with the idea you proposed in your letter. However, we in the socialist countries should have a debate regarding this issue. How could we establish a larger meeting without first establishing our position regarding the problems we face?

Ceaușescu:
- This will take a long time to prepare for. Even the creation of a group will have a positive influence on the socialist countries. You should know that no one desires a conference where they say this and that. Thus, it would be great if an exploratory group would be formed and if they would start working on this issue. This could be a great help for the socialist countries.

Gorbachev:
- We are of the following opinion: the Central Committee of the Romanian Communist Party should run an opinion poll since this is not a very good time to have a conference. There was a time when there was a friendly attitude regarding such a debate, but after that a process of renewal about the role of the party began and now there is a different desire taking shape: everybody wants to clean his own house.

Ceaușescu:
- I want to state openly that, for a time, we ourselves have been against such conferences.

Gorbachev:
- Now others are opposed.

Ceaușescu:
- But we have received requests from many parties and, since this is such a dire time for the communist movement, we have a responsibility to do something even if a small number of parties might show up.

Do you know what Lenin said in 1903?

Gorbachev:
- No, I do not.

Ceaușescu:
- No matter how few we are, we must raise the flag. The people need to see that we are taking action to extend the influence of socialism and the revolutionary movement.

Gorbachev:
- I was under the impression that what we do regarding the renewal of socialism does raise the interest of others in the development of socialism.

Ceaușescu:
- We do not have the time to discuss this. There are some good things, there are a few things that are not as good, and if we are to discuss this right now we would need a great deal of time. There are some good things.

Gorbachev:
- Yes, we only have a short time. But we should think about this.

Ceaușescu:
- I am against creating such an exploratory committee without the Communist Party of the Soviet Union.

Gorbachev:
- Maybe it would be better like that.

Ceaușescu:
- I don’t think that would be a good idea.

Gorbachev:
- The concept of equal rights [among the parties] suggests that.

Ceaușescu:
- This is so, but I think that the Communist Party of the Soviet Union must not be left out of such a debate. However, as I mentioned before, we need not decide this issue right now. I do hope that you will think about this problem.

Gorbachev:
- We will consider it and give you an answer.

Ceaușescu:
- This is an actual problem and we must have an answer. There are many such problems today and the people feel the need to receive answers. After all, the people think that if the social-democrats, the liberals, the christian-democrats can all meet…

Gorbachev:
- The conservatives…

Ceaușescu:
- The conservatives, yes… Then why can not the communist parties meet as well?

Gorbachev:
- Because, some time ago, Cdes. Ceaușescu and [Italian Communist leader Enrico] Berlinguer were against that.
Ceaușescu:
- We were against a certain format... and history proved us right.

gorbachev:
- I was against it myself, but there was not much I could do at the time.

Ceaușescu:
- Then why don’t we work out a common declaration and, if other parties will agree with it, so much the better. I understand you agreed with this point.

gorbachev:
- We will think about it and we will give you an answer.

Ceaușescu:
- Very well.

Should we start discussing bilateral issues now? Or would you rather finish up the more general problems first. We are very preoccupied about what is going on with a few European socialist countries. We understand the drive to perfect, to renew, but I do not want to discuss this right now. The format of this renewal places in grave danger not just socialism in the respective countries but also the very existence of the communist parties there. If we allow this flow of events, a dire situation will develop.

In any case, one can not say that socialism did not accomplish anything in those countries. I believe that the Soviet Union, and I am referring primarily to the Communist Party of the Soviet Union, could have a certain role—not by the force of the military—to help produce a better orientation. You were speaking today about a better orientation for those parties and countries.

Of course, a meeting between the socialist countries and our parties could help, but we have to think hard about the actions taking place in some countries.

gorbachev:
- Here we need to ask how we all could act and more importantly how they should act.

Who prevented Czechoslovakia and the East Germany—countries that had a high level of economic development and high living standards—from beginning in time the process of modernization and [from] taking into account the changes that began to take shape in the development of society? If they would have done this at the right time, today’s events would be different.

We too, in the Soviet Union. If we would have taken care of the modernization of the technology and of economic development at the right time, there would be a different approach today. There was a lot of talk at the time, in meetings and during congresses, about the technological and scientific revolutions, about the development of our country. Yet in the end, all was set aside. Right now we have a report in the Central Committee about the technological and scientific revolution from 1973, and, look, 15 years later, we are just beginning to do what needed to be done then. I believe that we have lost a lot of our prestige because we have not taken direct action regarding those problems at the right time.

cceaușescu:
- This is true.

gorbachev:
- Whether or not we like the methods employed by Comrade Ceaușescu, we know that a lot has been done in Romania, and, in an objective manner, all are free to chose their own methods to accomplish progress and the construction of socialism. That’s about it.

Look at the situation in which our common friend, Comrade [deposed East German leader Erich] Honecker is today. We have a great deal of mutual sympathy, but as of late, he did not want to speak with me, and I did not have a chance to speak with him. After all, I told him: Comrade Honecker, it is your job to decide, we will not decide for you, we do not force you to adhere to our decisions. As a matter of fact, I know that the both of you have criticized me...

cceaușescu:
- No, we did not criticize you. On the contrary, we decided that we should meet more quickly and discuss what we could do to work better together.

gorbachev:
- Sincerely speaking, I am very uncertain about the future of Comrade Honecker.

cceaușescu:
- I am very sorry about this and that is why I even brought it to the attention of the public, something must be done, because this cannot be continued in this manner. That includes, of course, Comrade [deposed Bulgarian leader Todor] Zhivkov.

gorbachev:
- I believe that [as far as] Cde. Zhivkov is concerned, the situation will be a lot more normal. I do not know what the situation is there [in Bulgaria]. Of course, over the years, a lot of things have accumulated. If there are no grievous abuses, I believe that the situation will come to a positive end. However, politics can not be done this way. We, at the leadership level, try to concentrate on political problems, not to decide who has done what. You know that there are always certain elements of society that will raise such problems. What can we do? You seem concerned about this, tell me, what can we do?

cceaușescu:
- We could have a meeting and discuss possible solutions.

gorbachev:
- In East Germany, they [the Communists] have already discussed it and have excluded them [the old leadership] from the party.

cceaușescu:
- Yes, I saw that, but at this time, in East Germany there are already influences from outside at work, from the Federal Republic of Germany.

gorbachev:
- [deposed Czechoslovak leader] Milos Jakeš is an old friend of mine. I told him: you have a great country, a well-trained population, well-educated and well-orga-
nized, you need to make the necessary changes faster, faster. Otherwise, you’ll end up like us, having to solve your problems under the marching of boots. Jakeš listened to me and said: then we shall wait until others come to power in the Soviet Union. He waited, and this is what happened. Those are two countries with a great economic situation, rich countries, the richest countries, except for us, the richest of them all.

Ceaușescu:
- Beginning with 1968 we said: we need to develop our economy because no one will help us otherwise. We have taken steps in that direction.

Gorbachev:
- You have done a lot.

Ceaușescu:
- Until 1984 we did not import even one liter of gasoline from the Soviet Union.

Gorbachev:
- You had no need for it. You had your own gasoline. This is already clear now.

Ceaușescu:
- I just wanted to remind you.

Gorbachev:
- In any case, you have done a lot.

Ceaușescu:
- We have worked on and succeeded in bringing about the development of society and the economy. What you are doing now we have tried in the past. We created then the so-called private-holders and after a year we saw they are getting rich and we put a stop to the entire situation.

Gorbachev:
- Is this the future you see for us?

Ceaușescu:
- If some get rich by playing the market, that is not a future, you know that I’m sure. We have introduced the idea of economic self-rule, the new economic mechanism, and the leadership councils.

Gorbachev:
- As I listen to you I cannot help but think that in a year you have time to visit every administrative region in your country.

Ceaușescu:
- Maybe not quite all the regions.

Gorbachev:
- Tell me, though, in a country as big as ours, how could we rule in the same manner as you? We need to think of different methods.

Ceaușescu:
- We, too, have autonomy, but there is a difference between the autonomy of republics or even regions and the autonomy of factories. In any case, general direction and control from the center are necessary, even for the Soviet Union.

Gorbachev:
- Comrade Ceaușescu, we too desire a powerful center, but we think of it in a somewhat different manner.

Ceaușescu:
- This must be done. Of course, the republics must have a great deal of autonomy. So must the administrative regions. We are going as far as villages now. Yes, we are a small country…

Gorbachev:
- It’s not small, it’s medium size…

Ceaușescu:
- In any case, it is mistaken to allow the factories, even at the national level, to be outside central control. A lot of autonomy, a lot of rights, of course, but under a central guidance. About 20 years back, we gave them a lot of rights and, the first thing they did was to take loans and make all kinds of poor economic investments. Then we realized that we needed to control certain things so we took some of their liberties away. For Romania, $11 billion debt in 1980 was a grave problem. As a matter of fact, I can tell you that in my discussions with Brezhnev at the time, he told me: don’t go and get yourself in debt. He told me that a number of times, but my mistake was that I gave too much discretion to the factories and all of them decided that if they have discretion then they can take credits from outside.

Gorbachev:
- It is the fault of the government!

Ceaușescu:
- Comrade Dăscălescu was not then prime-minister.

C. Dăscălescu
- I came when we began to pay.

Ceaușescu:
- After that we made some changes and we put a stop to that situation while paying back the debt.

Gorbachev:
- Of course, we do not want to create a bad situation, we want to succeed.

Ceaușescu:
- Everybody wants that. The Soviet Union has countless possibilities to overcome the problems you are experiencing now. You can become a model socialist economy.

Gorbachev:
- This is exactly what we want to do. Maybe those goals are too high, but those are our goals. Maybe our generation will not finish all the changes, but we could do a lot. What is most important now is that we establish the foundation for change, that we determine the future direction in a correct manner.

Ceaușescu:
- In a few years the Soviet Union could surpass its difficulties, mainly because it is an economic force.

Gorbachev:
- This is so.

Ceaușescu:
- You are criticizing research and development but you have a powerful sector in those fields.
Gorbachev:
- Absolutely.

Ceaușescu:
- The mistake was that you have placed too much emphasis on the military side of research and development and you have neglected the other aspects.

Gorbachev:
- I know.

Ceaușescu:
- I understand that the international situation necessitated such behavior. But you do have a powerful research and development sector, very powerful... it could solve easily any problem. And, after all, the other socialist countries, they might be smaller, but we can work together in this field.

Gorbachev:
- If we think about the countries in Europe, with all the problems they are experiencing, they are modern nations.

Ceaușescu:
- The changes that have taken place... they need to be stopped and we need to get under way.

Gorbachev:
- We have considered that as well. Maybe we have different methods, but this is the method employed by all others. What is important is that we strengthen socialism. The rest is the other's concern. There are different rhythms, different methods. Of course, we need to consider the differences between the republics, between their populations, between their economic development.

Ceaușescu:
- But it [the system] must be kept, [must be] improved.

Gorbachev:
- Not just kept, comrade Ceaușescu!

Ceaușescu:
- When I said that it must be kept it was understood that all that is necessary must be kept.

Gorbachev:
- Absolutely. Now, what are the bilateral problems you want to discuss.

Ceaușescu:
- First and foremost economic relations. Of course, the prime ministers have not had a chance to meet.

Gorbachev:
- Then they should meet.

N.I. Ryzhkov:
- We shall meet on 9 January 1990.

C. Dăscălescu:
- This would be a meeting within the confines of COMECON. We desire a bilateral meeting.

Gorbachev:
- You shall be alive on the 9 January. [Veți mai trăi până la 9 ianuarie!]

In any case, what are the problems that preoccupy you?

Ceaușescu:
- I am under the impression that we have discussed those problems already. The prime-ministers must meet and resolve the problems already discussed. We need to think about the next five year plan.

Gorbachev:
- I think that they have already discussed those problems.

Dăscălescu:
- Only for 1990.

Ceaușescu:
- Of course, there are topics of discussion. We consider that we could improve our collaboration. This is the foremost issue on our minds.

Of course, I don't think it necessary to get into issues that would require a lot of time. We can not debate now those topics but, if we agree on a time for the prime ministers to meet, that would be a good thing. In Romania, the time is now ripe.

Dăscălescu:
- I have written to comrade Ryzhkov on this topic, this is the forth letter this year.

Ryzhkov:
- The time was not right.

Ceaușescu:
- This might be true, but we need to make time for a meeting. At that time we could look at the issues of collaboration in the fields of production, specialization, even the realization of certain goals.

Why do I bring up those issues? Because, especially in the member countries of COMECON there are many debates and now, bilaterally, we could solve those problems much more easily. Some believe that the Americans will come and invest billions of dollars in their economy. Of course, they will reach certain conclusions. It is their business, but, until we clarify the many problems, we could solve many of them through a bilateral solution.

I don’t want to get into it right now, I just wanted to mention this right now.

Gorbachev:
- Maybe the Romanian government could explain what it expects from the Soviet Union. Comrade Dăscălescu could write a letter listing the resources you would need.

Ceaușescu:
- I would like you to note that I do not desire to resolve the problem of raw materials only through the Soviet Union. We have worked closely with the developing countries and we desire to accentuate this trend. We can even give them some credits now. As a matter of fact, we have now to recover 2.7 billion dollars from those countries.

Gorbachev:
- In a year?

Ceaușescu:
- No, those are credits given by Romania to a few developing countries.
Dăscălescu:
- This year Romania has outstanding credits for almost 500 million dollars.

Ceaușescu:
- We would like to participate actively in the development of those countries and, in turn, assure our access to raw materials.

Gorbachev:
- Then we should talk about our particular problems.

Ceaușescu:
- From the Soviet Union we have imported 5 million tons of petrol, beginning in 1984, and from other countries we have imported 15 million tons. Thus we need not resolve this particular problem only with the Soviet Union.

Gorbachev:
- And how much do you extract from Romania?

Ceaușescu:
- Only about 10 million tons since we no longer have reserves.

Gorbachev:
- But there was a time when you were mining about 22 million tons.

Ceaușescu:
- It was closer to about 15 million tons, but that was some time ago. We no longer have reserves. We thought about going to 10,000 meters depth.

Gorbachev:
- Our extraction is also falling.

Ceaușescu:
- There are a number of fields in which we could collaborate. For example, we could collaborate in the energy field, based on new technology.

Gorbachev:
- I would be interested in discussing the nature of this collaboration rather than simply trading goods.

Ceaușescu:
- We, for example, import about 7 million tons of iron ore from the Soviet Union. From other countries we import about 12 million tons. As such, we do not desire to import raw materials only from the Soviet Union. We import coal from the United States…, some time ago we invested 100 million dollars there, so we own property there.

Gorbachev:
- There, the Japanese have a lot of property.

Ceaușescu:
- The Japanese invest on a grand scale.

Thus, we want to discuss this collaboration because we want to participate. We were informed a few days ago that you would like to open two new exploratory sites in Lvov and Kharkov. We would like to participate, to collaborate with you in Mongolia. As a matter of fact, we have been discussing this for a long time since the Soviet Union is interested in investing there as well. We have invested in coal in China. We do not want to ask for anything, we do not want aid from the Soviet Union, we want to collaborate.

Gorbachev:
- There can be no help from us… you need to help us.

Ceaușescu:
- We would like to collaborate on economic principles—this is our intention.

Gorbachev:
- Comrade Dăscălescu should think about the proposals we have discussed.

Dăscălescu:
- I shall wait for comrade Ryzhkov in Romania.

Ryzhkov:
- I apologize, comrade Gorbachev. I will meet with comrade Dăscălescu and we shall discuss what problems we need to address in our bilateral relations, including the issues regarding the next five year plan. I am not against [this] and I assume we will talk about specialization and cooperation, in production and every other aspect, but I want to mention that, and this is not targeted at Romania, we will present a report on 15 December regarding our plans for the development of the economy. We have prepared the necessary documents and have distributed them to the deputies for debate.

When we prepared those documents, we began with the idea that we need to move from the exchange of goods, the barter system, towards regular commerce. This is why, on 9 January, when the meeting between the chiefs of governments will take place, we will bring this problem up. We know that many countries agree with us, many have suggested that we move from the barter system to world prices and payments in hard currency.

We understand that this can not be done over night. Maybe we will need to wait 1-2 years until we can switch over to this system. This does not mean however that we can not or will not negotiate long term deals, even in regard to bartering for goods, but we have no other solution in the long term. Neither for us, nor for the other countries, can [we] continue in this [old] system. This is why you should think about this yourself.

Ceaușescu:
- I understand what you are saying. After all, we ourselves exchange goods for hard currency. We have chosen the convertible ruble as our currency of choice, but we do not barter. Of course, we seek to reach a balance of payments, but this takes place throughout the world. With the United States for example, we calculate the prices in dollars but exchange goods.

Gorbachev:
- If we think about moving to the world system, then we need to adopt the world’s methods. Many countries, Czechoslovakia, Poland and even Bulgaria have brought up the idea that we need to move to world market prices and thus to commerce using hard currency.
Ceaușescu:
- That is very good. We consider that this problem must be discussed with due seriousness. For example, we and the Chinese deal in Swiss Francs.

Ryzhkov:
- So do we.

Ceaușescu:
- We do however make sure that there is a balance of payments—only the calculation of the value of trade is in hard currency. I do not believe that for the Soviet Union it will be acceptable to move from the ruble to the dollar. Of course, this is a problem for the Soviet Union to decide on.

Gorbachev:
- We desire that, in this whole process we also incorporate the redesign of our financial system and the system of prices, to try to quickly reach the convertibility of the ruble. The most important thing is to integrate ourselves in the world market, otherwise we have no basis of comparison.

Ceaușescu:
- This problem will need to be discussed, discussed for a long time.

Gorbachev:
- We will then propose this at the meeting, on 9 January, and we hope that by that time you will also have a position.

Ceaușescu:
- We do not consider this to be the most opportune time to make this move.

Gorbachev:
- Why?

Ryzhkov:
- 1990 will continue the same why but we expect to make this move in 1991.

Ceaușescu:
- It is not about 1990. I am thinking more about the next five years.

Gorbachev:
- Why?

Ceaușescu:
- Because this will not strengthen the economy of the socialist countries nor that of the Soviet Union.

Gorbachev:
- Why?

Ceaușescu:
- For us it is not a big deal to do such a thing. Even now, with China and the other countries we have about a 60 per cent exchange in hard currency.

Gorbachev:
- I will tell you this: this is not a short time plan. We must make this change, maybe we will end up in debt, but we must adopt this system. We must create the opportunity for the energy sector to earn hard currency and make investments. Today this is the least developed part of our economy, but it not only about the energy sector. In general, our industries must compete in the world market and understand that they must make ends meet. How long can we continue to push them along?

Ceaușescu:
- It is not about pushing them forward, the economic activity must be planned on sound economic principles.

Gorbachev:
- Comrade Ceaușescu, it is easy to talk about it now, but in a few years—Comrade Ryzhkov suggests that it may take about 2 years—we can also use credits to take care of moments of transition. But we need to adopt the system right away.

Ryzhkov:
- We think that we need to get our economists with the Romanian economists and calculate the balance of payments if we are to move to the world system. It will be a complex system in any case.

Gorbachev:
- We have a lot to discuss both with respect to the method of restructuring but also regarding concrete issues.

Dăscălescu:
- What is concrete is that I expect Comrade Ryzhkov in Bucharest. We cannot discuss the balance of payments in Sofia.

Ryzhkov:
- I can not come before the meeting in Sofia. In the first trimester of the next year I could be there.

Dăscălescu:
- Let’s say February then?

Ceaușescu:
- I have a request for Comrade Ryzhkov, regarding natural gas.

Ceaușescu:
- The problem of natural gas is not one for the future, it regards the situation at this time.

Dăscălescu:
- I have a request for Comrade Ryzhkov, regarding natural gas.

Ceaușescu:
- The problem of natural gas is not one for the future, it regards the situation at this time.

Dăscălescu:
- For the past few days, something must have happened on your side, we are receiving 7 million cubic meters less a day. We were told that this will only last a few days. Could you please analyze this problem?

Gorbachev:
- This happens every year. Always something more.

Dăscălescu:
- It is not more, it is less.

Ceaușescu:
- What will we say about our bilateral meeting?

Gorbachev:
- You can issue a press release, we will issue a
press release. Here is a short text.

(*the news release is read*)

**Ceauşescu:**
- Maybe the part about the bilateral collaboration needs to be better developed. We can say that there has been an exchange of opinions regarding cooperation between our countries. We should make a separate paragraph about this thing.

**Gorbachev:**
- Very well, let’s talk about the situation of our relationship and their prospects.

**Ceauşescu:**
- Very well.

[Source: Published in Serban Sândulescu’s, December ’89. The Coup D’Etat Confiscated the Romanian Revolution (Bucharest: Omega Press Investment, 1996), pp. 283-298; Translated by Mircea Munteanu.]

Mircea Munteanu is a Master of Arts in Security Policy Studies at the Elliott School of International Affairs, The George Washington University. Originally from Romania, he received his bachelor of arts from Sonoma State University in 1999. He is currently working on a research project regarding Romania’s diplomatic involvement in crisis surrounding the Vietnam War, the Sino-Soviet split and the Sino-American rapprochement.

---

1. Ţerban Sândulescu, December ’89: The Coup D’Etat Confiscated the Romanian Revolution (Bucharest: Omega Press Investment, 1996)
2. Ceauşescu, (joined by the PCR CC) was the only Warsaw Pact leader that opposed the Soviet-led invasion of Czechoslovakia. See Scrisoare de răspuns adresată Biroului Politic al Comitetului Central al PCUS de către Comitetul Executiv al CC al PCR, 26 August 1968

[Response letter of the Executive Bureau of the Central Committee of the PCR addressed to the Politburo of the CPSU, 26 August 1968], CC PCR Archives, State Archives, Bucharest, Romania, published in Alexandru Oşca, Teofil Oroian, Gheorghe Nicolescu and Vasile Popa, eds., Tentaţia Libertății (Bucharest: Editura Militară, 1999) pp. 139-41

3. Thomas Blanton, “When did the Cold War End?” CWHIP Bulletin 10, pp. 184-187. Blanton sets the end of the Cold War on 25 December 1989, during a meeting between Jack Matlock, US Ambassador to the Soviet Union and I. Aboimov, Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs of the Soviet Union to discuss the events in Romania. In the context of the violence in Romania, Ambassador Matlock asked Deputy Minister Aboimov about the possibility of Soviet military intervention in defense of the revolutionary forces in Romania. Aboimov responded “entirely clearly and unequivocally” that “the American side may consider that ‘the Brezhnev Doctrine’ is now theirs as our gift.” See CWHIP Bulletin 10, pp. 190.


5. For documents regarding the Prague Spring see Mihai Retegan, In the Shadow of the Prague Spring (Iaşi: Center for Romanian Studies, 2000).

6. Dennis Deletant’s Ceauşescu and the Securitate: coercion and dissent in Romania, 1965-89 (Armonk, NY: ME Sharpe, 1995), remains the most important work to date on Romanian Communism and specifically on Ceauşescu.


8. The meeting took place during a series of consultations between Gorbachev and Communist leaders in Moscow.

9. Berlinguer was Secretary-General of the party starting in 1972.
New CWIHP Initiative
"Korea in the Cold War"

At its workshop on “New Evidence on the Korean War from Russian, Chinese and European Archives” on 21 June 2000, the Cold War International History Project (CWIHP) launched a new initiative on “New Evidence on Korea in the Cold War.” The initiative, which will have a particular research emphasis on the North Korea, will be a focus of CWIHP’s efforts over the next three years.

Korea’s role was central in the making and development of the Cold War. More than any other event, the Korean War (1950-1953) shaped the perceptions, alignments and parameters of the early Cold War. The Western response to the North Korean attack, followed by China’s entry into the war, militarized what had until then been largely a political conflict. At the same time, it set limits on superpower military confrontation that remained in place for the duration of the Cold War. Despite the central importance of events in Korea, however, until communist bloc archives began to open in the last few years, scholars and the general public still debated the most basic questions about the war in Korea—who started the war, whether the Soviet Union was involved, who made the important decisions on the communist side during the war, what finally brought the war to an end.

In part due to the efforts by scholars associated with the Cold War International History Project, a large body of documentation has been collected from Moscow and Beijing that has answered many of these basic questions. We now know when, how and by whom the decision was made to attack South Korea. We also know much about when and why the Chinese made the decision to enter the war and about the relative roles of Moscow, Beijing and Pyongyang in conducting the war. We have good evidence suggesting that Stalin’s death was the critical factor in bringing the war to an end. The new sources also illuminate the complex interactions among North Koreans, Chinese and Soviets and the interplay of their varying perceptions of the “capitalist” states. CWIHP has made much of this new evidence and analysis available to scholars, policymakers and the general public. In 1993, CWIHP’s conference in Moscow highlighted the first documentary proof located in the Russian archives that Stalin had indeed approved North Korea’s attack on the South, information which was subsequently published in CWIHP Bulletin No. 3. And in 1995 and 1996, subsequent issues of the CWIHP Bulletin featured the first ever publication of documents from the Russian Presidential Archives disclosing details of communications among Kim Il Sung, Stalin, and Mao Zedong concerning the origins of the war as well as China’s decision to intervene in the conflict. Perhaps most strikingly, the CWIHP Bulletin’s special issue (No. 6/7) on “The Cold War in Asia” (and a major international conference in Hong Kong on the same theme) in January 1996 attracted front-page headlines as well as scholarly interest with revelations of contradictions between Russian and Chinese documents on the Korean conflict (a controversy that prompted authorities in Beijing for the first time to allow access to top-level materials concerning the Korean conflict; see Bulletin No. 8/9). Most recently, CWIHP featured documents and commentaries by scholar Kathryn Weathersby and scientist Milton Leitenberg on the allegations of U.S. bacteriological warfare during the Korean War. These Russian materials call into question the long-standing, never officially revoked allegations that the United States used biological warfare during the conflict in Korea. CWIHP has facilitated scholarly access to its materials by donating all East-bloc documents it obtains—including several thousand pages of Russian documents on the Korean War—to a database collection in Washington, D.C., open to all interested researchers. This collection, located at the National Security Archive (a non-governmental, non-partisan research institute and documents repository located at George Washington University), will also house documents obtained by the Korea initiative and will also be accessible internationally via the CWIHP home page on the World Wide Web.

New questions have emerged, along with new possibilities for studying them. Russian and Chinese archives continue to be important, but we have also discovered that Eastern European archives contain
significant documentation on Korean issues. In addition to political records from Eastern Europe, we now have access to important sources from the military archives of several former DPRK allies-including East Germany, Poland, Bulgaria, Czechoslovakia, Hungary and Romania. While most American diplomatic records pertaining to the Korean War have long been available, scholars are only now beginning to gain access to four decades of intelligence reports, estimates, and analyses of all aspects of the North Korean regime and the politico-military situation on the Korean peninsula during the Cold War. Naturally, it is the integration of Eastern and Western documents and sources and their comparison with longstanding and influential previous accounts that will provide the most important and useful historical results.

CWIHP’s new Korea initiative will use these archival sources from the former communist bloc and the United States to illuminate key issues in the conflict on the Korean peninsula over the entire post-armistice period. A major focus will be on the external relations that have played a central role in shaping the actions of the DPRK. We will examine Pyongyang’s changing relationships with the Soviet Union and China, and also its important but less well-known relations with Eastern European countries. Since Kim Il Sung had especially friendly relations with East German leader Erich Honecker and the Romanian head of state Nicolai Ceaucescu and at times spoke more freely with them than with his Soviet or Chinese patrons, records from those two countries can reveal important information about North Korean attitudes on a broad range of foreign policy issues. What was the rationale behind Pyongyang’s several rounds of talks with South Korean representatives since 1972? How did the North Korean leadership view the relationship between its “peace offensive” and its violent provocations against the South? What conditions in the international environment either facilitated or discouraged negotiations and/or violent confrontation between North and South? How have North Korean views of the United States and Japan changed since the late 1950’s? What were the limits of outside influence on Kim Il Sung? The record of how Pyongyang explained and justified its actions to its communist allies, and how those allies sought to shape North Korean actions, provides an essential window into these and related questions.

A second major focus of the initiative will be on the military confrontation on the Korean peninsula. From our research on the Korean War, we know that Kim Il Sung and his Soviet backers believed in 1949 that South Korea would soon attack the North, with support from the United States. We also learned that in 1950 the North Korean leadership greatly overestimated the support it enjoyed among the population of the South and underestimated the likelihood of U.S. intervention to defend the ROK. Using American intelligence reports along with the military archives of the former Soviet bloc countries, we will examine North Korean perceptions of South Korean intentions and capabilities in the post-armistice period. How did Pyongyang view the conflicting signals regarding US commitment to South Korea? What were the main influences on DPRK military doctrine? In April 1975, as the Vietnamese communists were entering Saigon, Kim Il Sung delivered a speech in Beijing forecasting the collapse of the ROK and the worldwide victory of Marxism-Leninism. He then visited his East European allies, but did not go to the Soviet Union since Moscow had made it clear it would not support war against the South. What signals did he get in the East European capitals, and how did he describe there the prospects for war on the peninsula? How has North Korea altered its military doctrine since the introduction of American precision weapons in the early 1980’s? What has been Pyongyang’s view of the capabilities of the combined forces in the South? This list of issues that can be fruitfully investigated through East Bloc archives is, of course, not exhaustive. As new sources are uncovered, new questions arise. Furthermore, changing events on the Korean peninsula may also prompt alterations in the research agenda. The project will lay a foundation for the most effective use of Korean archives, if and when they become available.

CWIHP’s new Korea initiative addresses the lack of information concerning North Korea’s role in the Cold War. This initiative will be guided by an advisory board consisting of Chen Jian (University of Virginia), Nicholas Eberstadt (American Enterprise Institute), Carter Eckart (Harvard University), Vojtech Mastny (CWIHP Senior Research Scholar), Don Oberdorfer (SAIS), Park Myung-Kim (Seoul) and will be managed on a day-to-day basis by CWIHP’s Initiative Coordinator for Korea, Kathryn Weathersby, in consultation with CWIHP Director Christian F. Ostermann.

The Korea Initiative’s first step is a detailed preliminary survey of Korea-related materials in former
Communist archives, undertaken by CWIHP's Russian and Eastern European Partners in consultation with the Korea Initiative coordinator. As a second step, selected materials will be xeroxed, translated and published in the Cold War International History Project Bulletin, the CWIHP Working Paper Series and on the CWIHP Website. Hardcopies will be made publicly accessible through the CWIHP’s archive (REEAD) at George Washington University. CWIHP also plans organize an international conference in Washington or Seoul facilitating the presentation and exchange, discussion and evaluation of this and other new documentation from Western and former Soviet-bloc archives. The scholarly conference will assess the significance of the new findings and put them into the context of existing scholarship. In addition, the conference will, if possible, be used to undertake critical oral histories of key former policymakers/officials who played a role in North Korea’s relations with the Communist bloc countries, in order to add to the documentary record made available through the project. Conference papers are slated to be published in a volume in the CWIHP Book Series (Stanford University Press/WWC Press).

CWIHP welcomes scholarly contributions to and financial support of the Korea Initiative. For further information, contact the Cold War International History Project at coldwar1@wwic.si.edu.

CONGRATULATIONS!

The Cold War International History Project congratulates three long-time CWIHP associates on the publications of their latest books:

Jian Chen, University of Virginia: Mao’s China and the Cold War (University of North Carolina Press, 2001)


On 2-3 December 1989 Soviet President Mikhail Gorbachev met with US President George Bush. The impetus for the meeting grew out of plans for a summit between the two leaders to be held in mid-1990, announced in September 1989. Spurred by the rapid course of change in Central and Eastern Europe that fall, however, aides to Bush pressed for an earlier, informal “interim” meeting. On 31 October 1989 it was announced in Washington and Moscow that Bush and Gorbachev would meet on board warships of the two countries off the coast of Malta. The meeting proved to be an important step in developing closer American-Soviet relations and came to symbolize the end of the Cold War. While no agreements were concluded, the leaders decided to press ahead in the Strategic Arms Reduction Talks (START), as well as in efforts to reduce arsenals of chemical weapons and conventional forces in Europe. Bush also made a number of proposals to advance bilateral relations, including steps to normalize trade relations through the granting of most-favored nation status, efforts to bar Congressional restrictions on credits, and US support for Soviet observer status at the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT). The leaders also discussed regional conflicts, particularly in Central America. Most importantly, however, the meeting afforded both Bush and Gorbachev with an opportunity to establish direct personal contact and rapport with their counterpart. Symbolized by a joint press conference at its end, the meeting proved a success. Gorbachev emphasized to the US president that “we don’t consider you an enemy any more,” while Bush assured the Soviet leader in turn of his support for perestroika.1—Christian F. Ostermann.

At Historic Crossroads: Documents on the December 1989 Malta Summit

M. S. Gorbachev: I welcome you, Mr. President, and also the members of the American delegation, on board the Soviet cruise ship “Maxim Gorky.” The initiative to hold this meeting was yours. I would like to start by saying that we view the President’s initiative favorably.

G. Bush: Thank you very much.

M. S. Gorbachev: I think what has been occurring in a peaceful evolution prompts the USSR and the US to have such meetings. It has not only taken place but much else is taking place. That’s the main thing. Therefore we need a new, extensive dialogue which would be organically connected with those changes and the new conditions with which we have to deal in the international arena. We should do business differently, suitable to the changes. Therefore it is already impossible to restrict ourselves to activities at the foreign ministers’ level. Reality dictates the need for more frequent working meetings and contacts between the leaders of our countries.

This meeting is probably a prelude to an official meeting with you. Nevertheless it will have its own significance. Generally, the unofficial meetings which impress me are not accompanied by special formalities. We have been conducting a substantive correspondence. But it is very important to sit at a table and talk. This has not only symbolic significance for the USSR and the US, but for the entire world.

In the Soviet Union and the United States, and yes, in the whole world, people hope that the talks in Malta will become not only a positive symbol of our relations, but bring results.

Let our experts work side by side with their presidents. Opportunities will be created for them to do this.

Again, I sincerely welcome you, Mr. President.

G. Bush: Thank you for your kind words. I indeed suggested this meeting. But I proceeded from the belief that the idea of such talks would also be useful for the Soviet side. Therefore I think that we are prepared to begin a meeting with you. When, on the way from Paris to Washington this summer, I was editing a draft of my letter to you about the issue of this meeting, I realized that I was changing my previous position by 180 degrees. This change in our approach has found understanding among the American people.

Several important events have occurred in the international arena since the idea arose to hold the present summit meeting. I expect that during the upcoming exchange of opinions we can share our evaluations of these events, not only of those in Eastern Europe, but those in other regions as well in order to understand one another’s positions better and more deeply. I favor having this exchange of opinions not only between the delegations but in one-on-one talks. I think that we ought to meet more often.

M. S. Gorbachev: Agreed. I have the feeling that we have already discussed this, and that this meeting is a continuation of our useful conversations.

G. Bush: Yes, this is right. We have already had productive discussions. I would like for you to allow me to describe some ideas of the American side in summary form.
I completely agree with what you said about the importance of our meeting in Malta. I prepared quite similar points in my notes. Therefore I won’t repeat myself.

About our attitude to perestroika. I would like to express with all certainty that I completely agree with what you said in New York [during Gorbachev’s visit to the UN]: that the world would be better off for perestroika’s success. Until recently, there were still some doubters on that score in the US. Then in New York you said that there are certain circles which did not want perestroika to succeed. I cannot say that there are no such elements in the US. But I can say with all certainty that seriously thinking people in the US do not hold such views.

But the changes in Eastern Europe and the entire process of perestroika influence these changes in the American mindset. Of course, there are differing points of view among analysts and experts. But you can be confident that you are dealing with a US administration and also with a Congress that wants your reforms to be successful.

I would now like to describe a number of positive steps which, in our opinion, could define in general terms the direction of our joint work to prepare for an official summit meeting in the US. […]

Some comments about economic questions. I want to inform you that my administration intends to take steps directed at preventing the Jackson-Vanik amendment which prohibits granting the Soviet Union most-favored nation status, from going into force …

I would also like to report that the administration has adopted a policy of repealing the Stevenson and Byrd amendments which restrict the possibility of granting credits to the Soviet side. […]

These measures, which the administration is proposing right now in the area of Soviet-American relations, are restrained [vyderzhany] in the appropriate spirit: they are not at all directed at demonstrating American superiority. And in this sense, as we understand it, they correspond with your attitude. We in the US, of course, are deeply confident of the advantages of our way of economic management. But that is not the issue right now. We have been striving to draw up our proposals so as not to create the impression that America “is saving” the Soviet Union. We are not talking about an aid program, but a cooperative program.

After the Jackson-Vanik amendment is repealed, favorable conditions will arise to remove the restrictions on granting credits. The American administration is not thinking about granting aid but about creating conditions for the development of effective cooperation on economic issues. We have in mind sending the Soviet side our proposals on this matter in the form of a document. It concerns a number of serious projects in the areas of finance, statistics, market operations, etc. […]

I would like to say a few words to explain our position regarding the Soviet side’s desire to gain observer status at GATT. Previously we had a difference of opinions on the subject, the US was opposed to the USSR joining this organization. This position has now been reexamined. We are [now] in favor of the Soviet side being granted observer status at GATT. In doing so, we are proceeding from the belief that Soviet participation in GATT would help it familiarize itself with the conditions, the functioning, and the development of the world market. […]

There is one more area to use new approaches in a plan to develop economic cooperation. I have in mind the establishment of ties with the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development. This would provide a good framework for cooperation on economic questions through East-West channels. The administration is in favor of moving actively in this direction. […]

G. Bush next switches to regional problems, describing the US position regarding the situation in Central America. Then he suggested moving on to disarmament issues.

M. S. Gorbachev: Agreed.

G. Bush: You know that my administration is in favor of ridding mankind of chemical weapons. Today I would like to describe our new proposal which will contain a certain shift [podvizhka]. If the Soviet side consents in principle to our proposal about chemical weapons which was described in my speech to the UN General Assembly in September, then, in the framework of this approach, the US could undertake to renounce our program of modernization—that is, the further production of binary weapons, after a comprehensive convention prohibiting chemical weapons goes into force.

On the practical level this means that even in the near future both sides could reach agreement about a considerable reduction of chemical weapon stockpiles, bringing this amount to 20% of the amount of CW [Chemical Warfare] agents the US presently has in its arsenal, and, 8 years after the convention goes into force, to 2%. We propose to pursue work in such a manner that, by the time of the summit in the US in the middle of next year, a draft bilateral agreement will have been prepared which would then be signed.
About conventional weapons. Although serious efforts will be needed for this, including those associated with the need to overcome certain obstacles not only on our side but in other countries, let’s say in France, one could count on reaching agreement as early as next year. It appears in this regard that we could put forward such a goal: to orient ourselves toward signing agreements about radical reductions of conventional forces in Europe in 1990, signing such an agreement during a summit of representatives of the countries which participate in the talks in Vienna.5

Concerning the issue of a future agreement about reducing strategic offensive weapons. The American side is trying to provide the proper impetus to the talks on this subject. We are in favor of resolving all remaining key questions through joint efforts before the upcoming summit meeting in the US. We also do not exclude the possibility that a draft treaty on reducing strategic offensive weapons, and the documents associated with it, will be completely worked out. The treaty could be signed during the summit in this case.

We proceed from the position that at the upcoming Soviet-American talks at the foreign-minister level, solutions could be found in the near future to such problems as the procedure for counting long-range air-launched cruise missiles, enciphered telemetry, limitations on undeployed missiles, etc. The American side plans to form its own position on these issues just before the foreign ministers’ meeting, which could take place at the end of January, and will set them forth at the talks.

We are also planning to send instructions to our delegation at the Geneva talks that the previous American proposal to prohibit mobile ICBMs [Intercontinental Ballistic Missiles] be permanently withdrawn.

I would like to call upon the Soviet side to again return to the question of limitations on the SS-18 ICBMs. We are in favor of prohibiting the modernization of these missiles and of the Soviet side considering the possibility of deeper unilateral reductions in their numbers.

The resolution of the issue of preventing the proliferation of missiles and missile technology is gaining ever greater significance at the present time. In this regard the United States welcomes the accession of the Soviet Union to the regime of limitations which seven Western countries having been observing.

M. S. Gorbachev: This question is already at the discussion stage.

G. Bush: We would like to raise the question about the possibility of the Soviet Union publishing information about their military budget in approximately the same detail as is done in the United States. It appears that our publications give a quite complete picture of what activity is being carried out in the military field in our country. I am confident that your intelligence agencies can authoritatively testify to this.

M. S. Gorbachev: On the contrary, they report to me that you do not publish everything.

G. Bush: I am confident that the publication of more detailed information about military budgets on a mutual basis would facilitate the growth of [mutual] trust in this entire area.

I would like to touch on several questions which are important for the future…

The issue of protecting the environment is acquiring special urgency at the present time. Now we have to take into account even the economic consequences of the changes in the global climate. In several Western countries, feelings are emerging in favor of preventing such changes to phase out even necessary economic activity as much as possible.

We are trying to approach these issues rationally and avoid extremes. At the present time the USSR and US are actively working in a committee to prepare an international conference on the climate under the aegis of the UN. This is cause for satisfaction. In the future we plan to take two more important steps in this direction. First, after work in the committee is completed by autumn of next year, we plan to host a conference in the US to work out a framework agreement on climate change issues.

Protection of the environment requires the attention of eminent representatives of science. I have instructed White House Science Adviser Dr. [Alan] Bromley [Translator’s note: incorrectly rendered as “Romli” in Russian] to convene a conference on ecology in the spring of next year in which the best scientific energies [sily] as well as the leaders of the appropriate agencies from many countries of the world could participate. I hope that Soviet representatives will also come to this forum.

The development of cooperation between nations depends in large part on the participation of youth in this process. Student exchanges are called upon to play a great role here. We propose that it be arranged, so that such an exchange in the 1990-1991 school year be increased by 1,000 students from each side. This would mean carrying out such an expansion from young people under age 25. At the same time special, attention would be devoted to an exchange of students who are studying humanities and sociology [sic]. Such a practice would be quite rewarding with respect to all kinds of programs in the field of agriculture.
M. S. Gorbachev: Thank you for your interesting ideas. It’s possible that this is the best evidence that the administration of President Bush has shaped its policy in the Soviet-American direction. I intend to touch on several specific issues later.

But right now I would like to make a number of comments of a philosophical nature. It seems to me that it is very important for us to talk with you about what conclusions can be drawn from past experience, from the “Cold War.” What has happened remains in history. Such, if you will, is the privilege of the historical process. However, to try to analyze the course of previous events—this is our direct responsibility. Why is this necessary? Certainly we can say that we have all ended up at historical crossroads. Completely new problems have arisen before humanity which people had not previously anticipated. And what about it—will we decide them using old approaches? Simply nothing would come out of this.

By no means should everything that has happened be considered in a negative light. We have managed to avoid a large-scale war for 45 years. This single fact alone says that not everything was so bad in the past. Nevertheless, one conclusion is obvious—reliance on force, on military superiority, and the associated arms race have not been justified. Our two countries obviously understand this better than others.

And confrontation arising from ideological convictions has not justified itself either; as a result of this we ended up swearing at one another. We reached a dangerous brink and it is good that we managed to stop. It is good that now mutual trust between our countries has emerged.

Yes, and reliance on an unequal exchange between developed and underdeveloped countries has also been a failure. On what terms? The former colonial powers gained much from this exchange. But so many problems arose in the developing world which literally grabbed all of us by the throat. So everything is interconnected.

Cold War methods, methods of confrontation, have suffered defeat in strategic terms. We have recognized this. And ordinary people have possibly understood this even better. I do not want to preach here. People simply meddle in policymaking. Ecological problems, problems of preserving natural resources, and problems connected with the negative consequences of technological progress have arisen. All of this is completely understandable since we are essentially talking about the issue of survival. And this kind of public sentiment is strongly affecting us, the politicians.

Therefore we together—the USSR and the US—can do a lot at this stage to radically change our old approaches. We had felt this even in our contacts with the Reagan administration. And this process continues right now. Look how we have confided in one another.

We lag behind the mood of the people at the political level. And this is understandable since various forces influence leaders. It is good that [Chief of the General Staff] Marshal Akhromeyev and your [National Security Adviser, [General Brent] Scowcroft understand the problems which arise in the military field. But there are people in both countries—and there are many of them—who simply scare us. Many people working in the defense sector are used to their profession and for whom it is not easy to change their way of thinking. And all the same, this process has begun.

Why have I begun with this? The thesis is consistently advanced in American political circles that the Soviet Union “has begun its perestroika and is changing policy under the influence of the ‘Cold War’ policy.” They say that everything is collapsing in Eastern Europe [that] and this also “confirms the correctness of those who relied on ‘Cold War’ methods.” And if this is so, then nothing needs to be changed in this policy. We need to increase strong-arm pressure and prepare more baskets in order to catch more fruit. Mr. President, this is a dangerous delusion.

I have noticed that you see all this. I know that you have to listen to representatives of different circles. However, your public statements, as well as specific proposals directed at the development of cooperation between the USSR and US which you spoke of today, mean that President Bush has formed a certain idea about the world, and it corresponds to the challenges of the time.

Of course, each side makes their own independent choice. But it is clear that when we talk about relations between the USSR and the US, mistakes and oversights in policy are impermissible. It is impossible to assume that our policy is built on misconceptions, both in relations with one another and in relations with other countries.

Initially, I was even thinking of expressing something of a reproach. To say that the President of the United States has not once expressed his support for perestroika, wished it success, and noted that the Soviet Union itself should deal with its own reforms. What we were expecting from the President of the United States was not only statements, but specific steps in accordance with these statements.

Now there are both statements and these steps. I am drawing this conclusion having heard what you have just said. Despite the fact that these are only plans for steps. But this is very important.

Second consideration. A great regrouping of forces is
underway in the world. It is clear that we are going from a bipolar to a multipolar world. Whether we like it or not, we will have to deal with a united, integrated European economy. We could discuss the issue of Western Europe separately. Whether we want it or not, Japan is one more center of world politics. At one time you and I were talking about China. This is one more huge reality which neither we nor you should play against the other. And it is necessary to think about what to do, so that China does not feel excluded from all the processes which are taking place in the world.

All these, I repeat, are huge events typical of a regrouping of forces in the world. I am watching India’s policy. This is a dynamic policy. I have talked many times with Rajiv Gandhi. India has a deliberate approach, striving to establish good relations, both with us and you.

But what is our role in this regrouping? Very serious things ensue from this. We began to discuss this question with [former Secretary of State George P.] Shultz. Once during the conversations he showed us diagrams describing the changes which would occur by the end of the century in economic relations between the leading countries of the world. And now it is simply necessary to understand the roles of the USSR and US in these huge changes. They cannot always be accompanied by the quiet flow of events.

And now Eastern Europe. Its share of the world economy is not very great. But look how we are all tense. What should our form of actions be, our cooperation?

And what is waiting ahead for us with regard to the economy, the environment, and other problems? We need to think together about this, too.

We in the Soviet leadership have been reflecting about this for a long time and have come to the conclusion that the US and USSR are simply “doomed” to dialogue, coordination, and cooperation. There is no other choice.

But to do this we need to get rid of the view of one another as enemies. Much of this stays in our brains. And we need to keep in mind that it is impossible to view our relations only at the military level.

All this means that we are proposing a Soviet-American condominium. We’re talking about realities. And this does not at all cast doubt on our relations with our allies and current cooperation with other countries. An understanding of all this is necessary. I do not think that all this has happened yet. We have only entered into the process of mutual understanding.

You raised the question: what kind of a Soviet Union is in the US interest—a dynamic, stable, solid one, or one struggling with all kinds of problems. I am informed about the type of advice they give you.

As far as we are concerned, we are interested in the US feeling confident from the point of view of solving its national security problems and making progress. This thought is present in all the conversations with my counterparts in the West. And there have been hundreds of such meetings. I think that any other approach is dangerous. Any reliance on ignoring internal processes, a reluctance to consider the real interests of the US in the world—these are dangerous policies.

But the US, too, has to consider the interests of other countries. In the meantime there is still the desire to teach, to pressure, and to grab by the throat. There is yet more. We know all this. Therefore I would like to hear your opinion on this score since we are talking about how to build a bridge between our countries: across the river or alongside it.

Since the President still has much time to lead such a country as the US, there should be clarity. I think that we will not bring it up after this meeting. But the main issues need to be investigated. I repeat: clarity is necessary. All the rest—the specifics and the frequency—in the final account are organically connected with mutual understanding on these fundamental issues. […]

G. Bush: You have noted, I hope, that, as changes occur in Eastern Europe, the United States has not come out with arrogant pronouncements directed at causing harm to the Soviet Union. Meanwhile some people in the US accuse me of excessive caution. True, I am a cautious person, but not at all timid, and my administration is trying to do nothing which would lead to undermining your position. But something else has been consistently suggested to me—as they say, climb the Berlin Wall and make high-sounding pronouncements. The administration, however, is not going to resort to such steps and is trying to conduct itself with restraint.

M. S. Gorbachev: […] I want to react to the ideas expressed by you at the beginning of the conversation. I welcome your words. I find in them a display of political will. This is important to me.

And from my personal experience, and from the experience of cooperation with President Reagan, I know how we have more than once ended up in such a situation on disarmament issues when everything came to a stop and got bogged down. The delegations sat in Geneva and drank coffee, but no business was conducted.

Then I received a letter from President Reagan. I read it carefully and came to the conclusion that it contained no conclusions. Of course, I could have written a formal reply.
but I don’t care for wordy rehashing. It was necessary to take a decisive step. Thus the idea of a meeting in Reykjavik arose. The results of the Reykjavik talks scared some people. But in reality Reykjavik became a genuine breakthrough on arms control issues. After this, the entire negotiating mechanism started working actively and effectively.

Or take another field—economic relations. There are limited opportunities here to move forward. Political will is needed in order to overcome these restraints. A signal from the President is needed. American businessmen are disciplined people, and they will react to a display of new thinking in economics.

The delegations at the talks in Geneva have squeezed literally everything out of the directives they have. It is necessary to give momentum to all the work. I noted your ideas in this regard. They seem to me to be deserving of attention.

Thank you for putting issues of bilateral cooperation in first place. We are ready to discuss these issues.

This situation often arises: when the question is about our relations with you, they tell us—if you agree with the Americans we will support it. But as soon as we come to an agreement they cry—“a new Yalta.” This is, in general, natural. Much depends on our work with our allies and the non-aligned countries.

We will move to adapt our new economy to the world economy. Therefore we attach significance to participation in the GATT system and other international economic organizations. We think that it will benefit our perestroika and allow us to better understand how the world economic mechanism functions.

Earlier the US took a negative position regarding the question of the USSR’s participation in world economic organizations. They said that USSR’s participation in GATT would politicize the activity of this organization. I think this is a vestige of old attitudes. Actually, there was a time when we put ideological goals first. And, by the way, you [did] too. It is a difficult time now, and there are different criteria, different processes, and these processes will not reverse themselves.

[…] We are permitting various kinds of property to function in our country. We will pursue matters so that the ruble will become convertible. Perestroika is taking place in COMECON in order to bring the operating principles of this organization closer to the generally accepted standards of the world economy.

Now about Central America. […]

I want to stress again: we do not pursue any goals in Central America. We do not want to seize bridgeheads or strongpoints there. You should be confident of this.

Let us return to the problems of disarmament. We know the US approach to the solution of the problem of chemical weapons. However, earlier an important element was lacking in this approach—the readiness of the US to cease the production of binary weapons after a convention on the prohibition of chemical weapons came into force. Now this element has appeared, and it is quite important. There is movement here.

Thus both of us think that a global prohibition is necessary. We will maintain this goal. But we will get to it through bilateral measures and specific stages. Let us have the foreign ministers discuss this.

G. Bush: The issue of proliferation of chemical weapons is also very urgent. I hope that our experts will touch on this theme [as well].

M. S. Gorbachev: Agreed.

Now about the Vienna talks and the reduction of conventional weapons in Europe. You have spoken in favor of concluding an agreement on this most important problem in 1990 and signing it at a summit. Our approaches coincide here. We are prepared for active and constructive cooperation to achieve the designated goal. There are, of course, difficulties. But I will not get into details.

About the strategic armaments limitation talks. Political will is needed here to give momentum to the work underway. I have been listening to you carefully, and you have specified some elements. But unfortunately I did not hear mention of the problem of sea-launched cruise missiles [SLCM; Russian acronym: KRMB: krylatye rakety morskogo bazirovaniya].

Realistic conditions are developing right now to prepare a draft treaty on strategic offensive weapons for signature before our meeting next year. And if a solution to KRMB [SLCM] has not been found by this time, then serious difficulties will arise. You have an enormous advantage here. The American side needs to think this issue over again in the context of what I have said.

G. Bush: This is a problem.

M. S. Gorbachev: We are not trying for mirror symmetry. Each side has its own choice [to reach]. Each country has its own choice, each is in a [unique] situation and has a different armed forces structure.

But it is impossible to ignore KRMB [SLCM] in
conducting affairs toward a reduction of strategic offensive weapons. The US has a substantive advantage in this area. Put yourself in our place. Our Supreme Soviet will not agree to ratify a treaty if the problem of KRMB [SLCM] is passed over.

I very much welcome your suggestions about the environment. You can proceed from the premise that our experts will take an active part in the conference on ecological problems which the White House staff has planned.

I am glad that you touched on the expansion of student exchanges. We began this good work during in the Reagan presidency. It is easier for young people to find a common language. And I am confident that they will make their contribution to the positive development of Soviet-American relations.

In summary, I would like to stress again that the steps that you have described and spoken of here have made me happy. The Soviet-American dialogue has gained a certain dynamic. And new efforts, new steps are necessary to give it a second breath. […]  

*   *   *

[The talks continued on 3 December 1989.]

M. S. Gorbachev: I will say right away: we are satisfied with the work which was done yesterday but think that there are opportunities to move forward even further. If you do not object then I would like to begin first. After all, today I am your guest[…]

G. Bush: I like “my ship” very much.

Speaking seriously, we would like to express our great thanks for the excellent opportunity to work offered to our delegation on the Soviet liner. Although the press is besieging me right now, tossing out questions about the brevity of our conversation yesterday, I do not think that the changes in the program have substantially influenced the substance of our conversations. For our part, I think our discussion has been very good and productive since we, for instance, have essentially continued the conversation through breakfast.

M. S. Gorbachev: Yes, we have counted and it turns out that the conversations lasted over five hours.

Although we have not yet begun to discuss the main issues, I would like to make one suggestion of an organizational nature to you. Why not hold a joint press conference? I think there would be great positive symbolism in this.

G. Bush: A good idea. I agree in principle. I am only afraid that our American journalists might think that I am avoiding their questions if I decide [not to hold] a separate press conference.

Possibly we will hold a press conference in several parts: at first we will talk together with journalists, and then I will reply to questions from our own people.

M. S. Gorbachev: I have also planned to meet with Soviet television after our joint press conference. So this works for me.

G. Bush: That is fine. So it is agreed.

M. S. Gorbachev: Mr. President, yesterday I reacted very briefly to the ideas you expressed about military-political issues. Today it is our turn. I believe that our position in this area is also of considerable interest to you. I will correct my description considering yesterday’s exchange of opinions.

Although this is an informal meeting all the same, we are meeting for the first time in this capacity. And I would like to begin with several statements of principle.

First of all, a new US President should know that the Soviet Union will not start a war under any circumstances. This is so important that I would like to personally repeat this declaration to you. Moreover, the USSR is prepared to no longer consider the US as its enemy and openly say so. We are open to cooperation with America, including cooperation in the military sphere. That is the first thing.

Second point. We are in favor of ensuring mutual security through joint efforts. The Soviet leadership is devoted to a continuation of the process of disarmament in all directions. We consider it necessary and urgent to get past the arms race and prevent the creation of exotic new kinds of weapons.

I note in passing that we welcome the process of cooperation which has begun between our militaries. In particular, we are appreciative of the opportunity afforded to the Soviet minister of defense to become acquainted with the US armed forces.

One more consideration of principle. We have adopted a defensive doctrine. Many explanations have been given to you that this is so. Our armed forces are already involved in deep changes. The structure of the military grouping in Central Europe is becoming defensive: there are fewer tanks in divisions now, and amphibious crossing equipment is being withdrawn. The deployment of aircraft is also being changed: strike aviation is being assigned to the second echelon, and fighters, which are defensive aircraft, are being moved to the forward
lines.

We are not making a secret of our plans for perestroika of the armed forces. The Soviet military is ready at any time to meet their American colleagues, present the necessary information, and discuss issues which arise.

But reciprocal issues arise. At the same time as the Soviet Union has adopted and is implementing a particularly defensive doctrine, the United States continues to be guided by a flexible response strategy adopted more than 20 years ago. Earlier this would have been justified. However, now when it is recognized at the military-political level that a threat from the Warsaw Pact no longer exists, we naturally ask the question: why does the US delay perestroika of its own armed forces? I have familiarized myself with the long—about 60 pages—Brussels Declaration. And, unfortunately, I have noticed that there is as of yet no progress planned on the part of NATO in its attitudes at the doctrinal level in this most important area.

The next issue of principle. We have already touched on it in some measure in examining the dynamics of the negotiation process. However, I would like to return to this problem and select one very important point.

The two of us have recognized that, as a result of the arms race, absolutely inconceivable military power was created on both sides. We have come to the common conclusion that such a situation was fraught with catastrophic [dangers]. We have started to act in the right direction and have displayed political will. A most important negotiation process was launched, in which issues of nuclear arms reductions moved to the forefront.

G. Bush: Please forgive me for interrupting you, but I would like in this context to express my thanks for the deeply symbolic gift which you sent me via Ambassador [Anatoly] Dobrynin—a souvenir made from scrapped missiles.

M. S. Gorbachev: Yes. The INF [Intermediate Nuclear Forces] Treaty became a historic watershed.

Generally, good prospects are opening up, and your comments yesterday have only convinced me of the idea that a reliable basis for further movement has been created.

But what worries us? Up to now one of the three basic components of military power, the naval forces, has remained beyond negotiations. Both previous administrations, and now the current administration, have reacted emotionally to this issue being raised. Moreover, there is no encroachment on American security here. I want to declare with all responsibility that we are considering the interests of the US. Your country is a naval power, and its critically important lines of communications pass through seas and oceans. The development of naval forces is both a historic tradition for you and an entire system in science, industry, and deeply integrated economic interests. Therefore it is not so easy to change the attitude here. We well understand this inasmuch as we ourselves are experiencing similar difficulties in other areas of military policy.

But what will come of this? Even from the beginning of the 1950s we were literally ringed by a network of military bases. There were more than 500,000 men, hundreds of combat airplanes, and powerful fleet forces on them. The US has 15 carrier strike formations and about 1,500 combat aircraft. And such enormous forces are either deployed at our shores or can show up there at any moment. I am not talking about strategic submarines—even if they fall under YavlK negotiations. As a result of the Vienna talks, we will considerably reduce the level of confrontation on the ground. As I have already said, there are good prospects for concluding a treaty about limiting strategic offensive weapons. Under these conditions we have the right to count on the threat to the Soviet Union from the sea also being reduced.

Our ministers have already talked about this. I am taking the initiative myself and officially raising the question of starting talks on the problems of naval forces. When they begin, we should display flexibility here. Let there be confidence-building measures at first, then a general reduction in the scale of naval activity. Then when our positions are clarified at the same time in Geneva and Vienna, the time will come to deal with the question of naval force reductions in earnest.

I will say beforehand that we will take a realistic position. In particular, we realize that the US has other problems besides the Soviet armed forces. But all the same again, it is necessary to stress with all certainty that, however important the security of Europe is to the US and its allies, we are just as interested in security on the seas and oceans.

Now, after describing some of our fundamental approaches I would like to comment on individual negotiation problems. Since we had earlier agreed not to get into detail, I, like you yesterday, will restrict myself to the main things.

It would be desirable if we achieved clarity, at least regarding three important negotiating positions. First, let our ministers and military experts clarify the interrelationship of the future START treaty and the ABM treaty. Second, we consider it quite important—and [Soviet Foreign Minister] E. A. Shevardnadze’s initiatives in
Wyoming are evidence of this—to agree about the rules for counting heavy bombers and air-launched strategic cruise missiles. If we take the present American formula, the US can end up not with 6,000 but with 8,500 warheads. We are not trying to haggle for anything here for ourselves: it is necessary to accept only the factual aspect of the matter as a basis.

The third problem which I have already dwelled on is sea-based strategic cruise missiles.

There are, of course, other issues, but right now I will not talk about them. If I have understood the President correctly then we are setting ourselves general guideposts: at minimum to resolve all the large remaining issues before the summit in Washington, and by the end of next year to sign the START treaty itself.

And one more important point. As I understand, Akhromeyev and Scowcroft have “chased it off.” The Soviet and American navies have nuclear weapons, both strategic-ballistic missile submarines and sea-launched cruise missiles as well as tactical: short-range sea-launched cruise missiles, nuclear torpedoes and mines. The strategic nuclear component of naval forces is a subject of the Geneva talks. That leaves tactical nuclear weapons. Although this is an unofficial conversation, I am proposing to begin official discussions. The Soviet Union is ready to completely liquidate naval tactical nuclear weapons on a mutual basis. Such a radical step would simplify immediately the procedures of monitoring its implementation.

Now some words about Vienna. On the whole, I agree with the evaluation of the talks which the President gave. However, three important problems remain here. First, this is an issue of reducing not only armaments but also personnel of the armed forces. We have been proposing to reduce them to 1,300,000 men on each side, that is by one million on both sides. NATO representatives do not agree but for some reason do not give their own figures. I think that people simply will not understand us if we limit ourselves only to arms reductions since enormous [force] groupings oppose one another in Europe.

Second issue, the reduction of the numbers of troops on foreign soil. We propose to limit them to a ceiling of 300,000 men. But we are being pulled in another direction—to reduce only Soviet and American troops. But there are also British, French, Belgian, Dutch, and Canadian troops. In short, they are proposing a solution unfair to us.

Now about the problem of air forces. We have proposed a level for each alliance of 4,700 tactical frontal aviation aircraft and a separate level for interceptors. But here this matter has been moving slowly so far. We propose that special attention be paid to this issue at the next meeting of ministers.

Briefly about the President’s “Open Skies” proposal. We support it. We will participate in the Ottawa conference. We favor joint effective work with the US. It seems to us there is substantial leeway in this proposal. Let our ministers and military specialists discuss expansion of the status of openness to the oceans and the seas, space, and land. […] Summarizing what I have said, I would like to stress again with all my strength that we favor peaceful relations with the US. And proceeding from this very precondition we propose to transform the present military confrontation. This is the main thing.

M. S. Gorbachev: Maybe we will now close the books on the discussion of military issues and talk about Europe, and give some thought to how to regard the processes of cooperation developing there?

G. Bush: An excellent idea. But let me add some words. I am very satisfied with the cooperation of our diplomatic departments both in the military and other areas. I think that these channels for discussing military political problems are now organically supplementing the contacts for which Akhromeyev and Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Admiral William Crowe have laid the basis. The meetings of military specialists have helped military matters quite a bit and I hope that we will develop this practice.

M. S. Gorbachev: We indeed favor doing just that.

G. Bush: I will say openly: our military has enormous influence on NATO. I have now charged them with doing an analysis of the military expenditures of the US and the West as a whole and presenting appropriate recommendations. I think that in this important period, contacts between our two militaries have special significance.

M. S. Gorbachev: That is why we are telling them to meet more often. Did you want to speak first about European matters?

G. Bush: You are closer to Europe, but I would like to anticipate our conversation with some comments.

First of all, I admit that we were shaken by the rapidity of the unfolding changes. We have a high opinion of your personal reaction and the reaction of the Soviet Union as a whole to these dynamic and at the same time fundamental changes.

Yesterday, when talking eye to eye, we discussed the problem of the reunification of Germany, although without
going into detail. I hope you understand that it is impossible to demand of us that we disapprove of German reunification. At the same time we are aware how much of a delicate, sensitive problem this is. We are trying to act with a certain restraint. I will formulate this thought somewhat differently: neither I nor representatives of my administration want to be in a position which would be viewed as provocative. I am stressing this point.

One more example of our policy with regard to Eastern Europe. We have sent a high-level delegation to Poland. It includes my senior diplomatic advisers, other representatives of the administration, business people, trade union leaders, etc. They have gone there not to create difficulties for you but to explain to the Poles what mechanisms, in our opinion, are effective in the economic sphere.

Without dwelling on each Eastern European country, I will share only the thought that we well understand the significance of the section of the [1975] Helsinki Act about national borders in Europe.

Of course, I am ready to respond to any questions you have. Nothing interests me more than how you view the possibility of moving beyond the status quo.

M. S. Gorbachev: I do not agree that we are “closer to Europe.” Both the USSR and the US are integrated into European problems to different degrees. We understand your involvement in Europe very well. To look otherwise at the role of the US in the Old World is unrealistic, mistaken, and finally, not constructive. You should know that this is our fundamental position.

G. Bush: I had something else in mind: we simply were not so close to Eastern Europe historically. Of course, we are close—and will be close—to Europe and vitally interested and involved in NATO. The US is really the leader of NATO.

I want to stress separately that you are catalyzing the changes in Europe in a constructive way.

M. S. Gorbachev: I reaffirmed our principled position about the US role in Europe on purpose. There has been too much speculation on this subject. I feed it [sic] both to you and us. But we should be absolutely clear on such important matters.

Now about the changes in Europe. They really are of a fundamental nature. And not only in Eastern Europe—in Western Europe, too. I received representatives of the Trilateral Commission. After one of our conversations, [former French President] Giscard d’Estaing, who was the speaker, addressed me in a very meaningful way: “Be ready to deal with a united federated state of Western Europe.” By saying that, I think, he wanted to say that when European integration reaches a qualitatively new level in 1992, it would be accompanied by a deep rebuilding of political structures which would also reach the federal level.

Therefore, all of Europe is on the move, and it is moving in the direction of something new. We also consider ourselves Europeans, and we associate the idea of a common European home with this movement. I would like to ask E. A. Shevardnadze and Secretary of State [James] Baker to discuss this idea in depth since it appears that it is in the interests of both, the USSR and the US.

We should act—and interact—in an especially responsible and balanced way in this period when all of Europe is undergoing such dynamic changes.

G. Bush. I agree with you.

For, as it is said, a gun fires itself once every five years. The fewer weapons, the lesser the possibility of an accidental catastrophe.

Thus security of the US and her allies should not be a millimeter less than our personal security.

E. A. Shevardnadze: Yesterday the President introduced some interesting ideas about chemical weapons. The Secretary of State and I have discussed this issue very constructively and in great detail. As you can imagine, it deserves the greatest attention.

M. S. Gorbachev: I have already described my first reaction. As I understand it, there are two areas in which it appears we have agreement: a common goal remains a global prohibition on chemical weapons, but we are moving in stages and thus are abandoning the modernization of binary weapons. This is a good basis for negotiations.

G. Bush: If you will allow me, I would like in this regard to raise the very thorny problem of the proliferation of chemical weapons beyond the borders of our two powers. Libya in particular worries us. Of course, I understand that we are in no position to control the Libyan leader. However, we are convinced, as before, that the plant in Rabta is designed to produce chemical weapons. We would like to work with you not only on this specific problem but also on the entire issue of preventing the proliferation of chemical weapons, which is sometimes called “the poor man’s atomic bomb.” The whole world has already seen the terrible consequences of the proliferation of chemical weapons in the example of the Iraq-Iran conflict. Therefore we propose to achieve an agreement in this area. Personally, this problem concerns me very much.
COMECON. We are planning comprehensive measures in COMECON to ease its inclusion into the structure of the world economy.

Our legislators are already cooperating—and not badly—and a “people’s diplomacy” is developing. Such a meticulous and positive attitude will protect all of us from unpleasant surprises in the future.

I have gained the impression that the US leadership is how somehow especially actively promoting the concept of overcoming the division of Europe on the basis of “Western values.” If this proposition is not only for propaganda but is intended to lay a foundation for a practical policy, then I will openly say it could be very foolish. At one time alarm was expressed in the West that the Soviet Union was planning to export revolution. But plans to export “Western values” sounds similar.

I would say that right now is a very difficult time and therefore an especially crucial one. At a time when Eastern Europe is changing in the direction of greater openness and democracy and drawing close to universal human values, creating a mechanism of compatibility with world economic progress, all this opens unprecedented opportunities to reach a new level of relations. Reaching it by peaceful and calm means. And it is very dangerous here to artificially force and goad the processes which are taking place, especially to satisfy some unilateral interests.

The variations of European integration—at the cultural and political level—including unknown ones, can be quite diverse. And this will not happen painlessly. In certain places the situation will even become contentious. And this is natural since enormous and diverse social forces are involved in what is taking place.

I can make a judgment about this only as far as the Soviet Union is concerned. Our country is a genuine conglomeration of peoples. But they have differing traditions and historical peculiarities of evolution. We are frantically debating the future of the Soviet economy or, let us say, the issue of what political institutions are needed in conditions of deep democratization. The task of reforming our federation has arisen sharply in a new way. Not long ago we were sharing [our] experience on this issue with the Prime Minister of Canada [Brian Mulroney]. He is concerned about Quebec, which has been pursuing separatist goals for many years. By the way, the thought then came to me: why does the American Congress occupy itself with the Baltic countries and does not help the Canadians deal with Quebec?

Our own experience permits us to predict that the processes in Europe will not always come smoothly. Generally, this has already been confirmed. But as a whole, we look on matters optimistically. When you think on the level of a simple reaction to what is happening then
it actually could send a shiver down your spine and some people will give way to panic. But if you raise it to a political, philosophical level, then everything falls into place. For if the process is deep, affects fundamental matters, and involves millions of people and entire nations, then how could it proceed easily and simply?

It is necessary to proceed from an understanding of the enormous importance of the current changes. It is necessary to avoid possible mistakes and use the historic opportunities which are opening up to bring East and West together. Of course, differences will remain. We talked about this yesterday. Even in the Soviet Union, in one country, the differences between the republics and various regions are evident to the naked eye. I am confident that such differences exist in the US. They should be present in the large continent of Europe all the more.

We favor a common understanding with the US of what is occurring in our country [u nas]. I note that there is such a common understanding today. But the process will develop. And I want this understanding not to diminish but, on the contrary, to intensify.

I am in favor of our constant cooperation on the basis of this understanding for this entire difficult transition period. Otherwise this process can break down and we will all end up in a chaotic situation which would give birth to many problems, halt the changes, and throw us back to the times of suspicion and mistrust.

I stress that a special responsibility rests on the Soviet Union and the United States at this historic moment.

G. Bush: I want to clarify one point. You expressed concern about Western values. It would be understandable if our devotion to certain ideals provoked difficulties in the USSR or Eastern Europe and interfered with the progressive processes developing there. But we have never pursued such goals. Any discussion of Western values in NATO or other Western organizations are completely natural and do not have destructive intent. But what are Western values? They are, if you will, glasnost’, openness, and heated debates. At the economic level—incentives to progress and a free market. These values are not something new or expedient but long-shared by us and the West Europeans, and they unite the West. We greet the changes in the Soviet Union or in Poland but do not at all set Western values against them. Therefore I want to understand your point of view as much as possible in order to avoid any misunderstandings.

M. S. Gorbachev: The main principle which we have adopted and which we follow in our new thinking is the right of each country to free choice, including the right to reexamine and change their original choice. This is very painful, but it is a fundamental right. The right to choose without outside interference. The US is devoted to a certain social and economic system which the American people have chosen. Let other people decide themselves, figuratively speaking, what God to pray to.

It is important to me that the tendency toward renewal noted in Eastern and Western Europe is proceeding in the direction of drawing closer. The result will not be a copy of the Swedish, British, or Soviet model. No. Something will result which meets the needs of the present stage of development of human and European civilization.

It has been observed now that people have no fear of choosing one system or the other. They are looking for their unique version which provides them with the best living conditions. When this choice proceeds freely then one can say only one thing: go right ahead.

G. Bush: I do not think that we differ here. We approve of self-determination and the attendant debates. I want you to understand our approach on a positive level: Western values do not at all mean imposing our system on Romania, Czechoslovakia, or even the GDR.

M. S. Gorbachev: This is very important for us. Fundamental changes are occurring and peoples are drawing closer together. And this is the main thing. I see that several means of solving problems used by another system are taking root in Eastern Europe—in the fields of economics, technology, etc. This is natural.

If we and you have such a common understanding, then all practical actions in changing conditions will be adequate and will begin to have a positive nature. […]

J. Baker: I would like to clarify our approach to self-determination. We agree that each country should have the right of choice. But all of this makes sense only when the people in the country are actually in a position to choose freely. This is contained in the concept of “Western values,” and is not at all the right to force their systems on others.

M. S. Gorbachev: If someone lays claim to the truth—expect disaster.

G. Bush: Absolutely right.

J. Baker: I’ve been talking about something else. Let us say, the question of the reunification of Germany, which is causing nervousness in both our countries, and even among Europeans. What do we say here about this? So that reunification takes place according the principles of openness, pluralism, and a free market. We do not at all want the reunification of Germany done on the model of 1937–1945 which, obviously, concerns you. The Germany of that time had nothing in common with Western values.
M. S. Gorbachev: This is what [longtime Gorbachev aide] A. N. Yakovlev asks: “why are democracy, openness, and a [free] market ‘Western’ values?”

G. Bush: It was not always so. You personally have laid the foundation for these changes, the movement toward democracy and openness. It is actually considerably clearer today that you and we share these values than, say, 20 years ago.

M. S. Gorbachev: We ought not be drawn into propaganda battles.

A. N. Yakovlev: When they insist on “Western values,” then “Eastern” and “Southern” values unavoidably appear. […]

M. S. Gorbachev: That’s it. And you see that ideological confrontations flare up again…

G. Bush: I understand you and agree. Let us avoid careless words and talk more about the substance of the values themselves. We welcome the changes which are occurring with all our hearts.

M. S. Gorbachev: This is very important since, as I have said, the main thing is that the changes lead to greater openness in our relations with one another. We are beginning to be organically integrated and liberated from everything which divided us. What will this be called in the final account? I think—a new level of relations. Historically this has always led to religious wars.

J. Baker: Could we possibly say as a compromise that this positive process is proceeding on the basis of “democratic values”? […]

[Source: The notes of A. S. Chernyaev, Gorbachev Foundation Archive, Moscow. Published in Gorbachev, Gody trudnykh resheniy [Years of Difficult Decisions] (Moscow: Al’fa-print, 1993). Translated by Gary Goldberg.]


2 Section 402 of the 1974 Trade Act. It denies normalized US commercial relations with communist countries who restrict free emigration of their citizens.

3 Limits the credit (to a maximum exposure of $300 million) that the US Export-Import Bank can lend to the Soviet Union. Passed in 1974 as an amendment to the Trade Act.

4 General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) was the precursor to the World Trade Organization [WTO] and established as part of the Bretton Woods System. Unlike the WTO, it was not legally binding in international law.

5 The talks in Vienna were comprised of several meetings including CSCE meetings (Conference on Security and Cooperation in Europe) with representatives of countries negotiating conventional arms control. Several CSBM (confidence-building measures) agreed upon in 1989 and early 1990 included Bush’s revived “Open Skies” talks and a seminar on military doctrine at the Chiefs-of-staff level. Secretary of State Baker and Foreign Minister Shevardnadze agreed to call an international conference on “Open Skies” scheduled for February 1990 in Ottawa, Canada.

6 Prime Minister of India and member of Indian National Congress 1984-1989.

7 George P. Shultz was the US Secretary of State from 1982 to 1988.

8 Council for Mutual Economic Assistance, trading bloc between Soviet Union and Eastern Europe.

9 NATO agreement on 11 December 1986 for strengthening the stability and security of Europe through a balance of conventional forces, arms control, and nuclear reduction while continuing to maintain a deterrent posture.


11 Translator’s note: abbreviation unknown, but apparently nuclear-related.

12 Strategic Arms (Limitation and) Reduction Talks.

13 Anti-Ballistic Missile Treaty, signed in Moscow 26 May 1972 and ratified on 3 August 1972.

14 See note 5.

15 Formed in 1973 by private citizens in North America, Japan, and Europe (EU countries) to foster the international system especially through NGOs.

16 Libya first obtained chemical agents from Iran which were used against Chad in 1987. Subsequently, Libya opened its own production facility in Rabta in 1988. The Rabta facility may have produced as much as 100 tons of blister and nerve agents before a fire closed it down in 1990.
Record of a Meeting in Berlin on 3 September 1989 between Comrade Hermann Axen, Member of the Politburo and Secretary of the Communist Party of the Social Unity Party [SED], and Comrade Raoul Castro Ruz, Second Secretary of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of Cuba and First Deputy of the State Council and Council of Ministers of the Republic of Cuba

The meeting took place during a brief stopover the Cuban delegation had en route to the Conference of Non-Aligned Countries.

Comrade Hermann Axen welcomed Comrade Raoul Castro, along with Juan Almeida Bosque and Vilma Espin, the members of the Politburo of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of Cuba accompanying him, and Carlos Aldana, member of the Secretariat of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of Cuba, on behalf of Comrade Erich Honecker, Secretary General of the Central Committee of the SED and Chairman of the State Council. He expressed the great pleasure he took in being able to welcome to the capital of the GDR such long-standing comrades-in-arms from socialist Cuba. He noted that Cuba’s unswerving efforts to advance the causes of peace, disarmament, and détente were followed with great interest in the GDR.

Comrade Raoul Castro expressed his heartfelt thanks for these words of welcome […] Currently the escalation in imperialist pressure is perceived very clearly in Cuba. The Bush administration’s reaction to international events has been increasingly aggressive in the Caribbean sphere. The situation in and around Panama, in particular, has intensified. Washington has not recognized the new government in Panama. The constant military maneuvers conducted by US troops in Panama are extremely provocative. The situation has escalated to the point that any shot could lead to a serious military conflict. Cuba’s leadership is very concerned about this situation and is following it closely. A military clash in Panama could also directly impact Cuba and Nicaragua.

Addressing the recent trials of members of the military and Ministry of the Interior, Raoul Castro characterized them as very serious proceedings that led to a “regrettable outcome” of four death sentences and stiff sentences for a large number of officers. The situation in the Ministry of the Interior is particularly complex. Given the trial of Abrantes, the former Minister of the Interior, the Ministry has been completely reorganized. All high-ranking officers at both the Ministry and Province level have been dismissed. Fidel Castro is personally involved in the reorganization. In terms of the trial of General Ochoa, all of the trial materials have actually been published. More reserve was exercised for the trial of Foreign Minister Abrantes. The “Granma” official party organ published a detailed lead article on the trial several days ago. This should be the end of the matter.

Raoul Castro remarked that imperialist propaganda is attempting to exploit these internal problems for intensified subversive action against Cuba. Intensive preparations are currently underway in Cuba to record American television propaganda broadcasts. Given these conditions, it is a great consolation to Cuba that it has dependable allies. “The stability of the GDR is extremely important to us.”

Raoul Castro noted that Cuba considers its relations with the GDR and SED to be very good. It was remarked with great satisfaction that the main statements made by Comrade Fidel Castro at the 30th Anniversary of the Victory of the Cuban Revolution, as well as on subsequent occasions, were reported in detail in the GDR press. “We are very proud of how our views are in concordance with those of the SED.”

Comrade Hermann Axen expressed his thanks for this candid assessment and told his Cuban counterparts about the basic course of the GDR’s domestic and foreign policy. It is evident that development in the GDR is stable and dynamic. The resolutions of the XI Party Congress are being attained on an on-going basis. The stability of the German socialist state is demonstrated by the fact that it has been possible to increase national income by 4 per cent. The local elections held in May 1989 are another affirmation of the SED’s policies.

At the western edge of the socialist society, the GDR is fulfilling its obligations with the Warsaw Pact. The GDR is a solid barricade, a solid bulwark at this sensitive border in the heart of Europe. It is increasingly apparent that crises and erosion are occurring in some socialist countries, that is, in our own backyard.

The GDR fundamentally supports and welcomes the changes underway in the Soviet Union. At the same time, however, the GDR rejects any attempts by imperialist propaganda to exploit perestroika and glasnost for counter-revolutionary purposes in the GDR. Because of its steadfast stance, the GDR is currently a special diversionary target against socialism for the most aggressive imperialist forces.

Comrade Hermann Axen noted that the GDR is satisfied that bilateral cooperation between our two countries and parties is operating at a high level. The SED will do anything it can to continue to enhance this cooperation in solidarity. He asked Comrade Raul to convey to Comrade Fidel brotherly regards from Comrade Honecker.

Comrade Raoul Castro expressed his gratitude for the [GDR’s] hospitality and his best wishes for the GDR as it prepared for its 40th anniversary.

New Evidence on the Cold War in Asia

[Editor’s Note: With the following documents (and introductions), CWIHP continues its publication of critical new sources on the Cold War in Asia. In the first article, Vladislav Zubok (National Security Archive) introduces a remarkable set of conversations that took place between Soviet leader Nikita S. Khrushchev and his Chinese counterpart, Mao Zedong, in the summer of 1958 and the fall of 1959. The minutes of these conversations allow the reader to be a fly-on-the-wall in the wide-ranging and colorful discourse between the two communist giants at a pivotal moment in their relationship—during the opening salvos of the Sino-Soviet split.


Stein Tønnesson’s introduction of the document “Comrade B on the Plot of the Reactionary Chinese Clique against Vietnam,” highlights another crucial moment in the evolution of the Cold War in Asia: Presumably written by Vietnamese Workers’ Party General Secretary Le Duan in 1979, after the Chinese military incursion into Vietnam, the document reflects the views of Vietnam’s top leader on relations with Beijing and provides insight into the Sino-Vietnamese relationship at the height of the clash between the two communist regimes. The document was discovered and copied by Christopher E. Goscha (Groupe d’Etudes sur le Viet Nam contemporain, SciencesPo, Paris), with full authorization, in the People’s Army Library in Hanoi and later translated into English for CWIHP.

Few archival documents have become available from the “other sides” on the Sino-Vietnamese conflict and the Indochina Wars, particularly from a Vietnamese perspective. Key archives in Beijing and Hanoi remain inaccessible to scholars, who are forced to rely largely on official government publications and internal “nebu” histories. Earlier efforts by CWIHP to provide perspectives and documents from the Chinese and Vietnamese side include the publication of ‘77 Conversations between Chinese and Foreign Leaders on the Wars in Indochina, 1964-1977 (CWIHP Working Paper No. 22), edited by Odd Arne Westad, Chen Jian, Stein Tønnesson, Nguyen Vu Tung and James Hershberg (1998) and Zhai Qiang, Beijing and the Vietnam Peace Talks, 1965-1968: New Evidence from Chinese Sources (CWIHP Working Paper No. 18, 1997).

When the 1979 document was first presented by Tønnesson and Goscha at the conference “New Evidence on China, Southeast Asia and the Vietnam War,” sponsored by the University of Hong Kong and the Cold War International History Project in January 2000 (see the conference report in this Bulletin), it sparked considerable controversy among some of the Vietnamese and Chinese participants. Several participants questioned the provenance and significance of the document, given its strong coloring by the author’s animosity towards the Chinese leadership at the time. With the publication of the document, along with Tønnesson’s careful introduction that speaks to the authenticity and significance of the document, CWIHP seeks to continue this important discussion and add one Vietnamese perspective on the history of the Indochina Wars and Sino-Vietnamese relations. Above all, the document—and the discussion engendered by its presentation—underlines the need for the further release of archival materials on this and other subjects from Vietnamese and Chinese archives. CWIHP welcomes the submission of other previously inaccessible documents that add to our understanding of Sino-Soviet-Vietnamese relations during the Cold War period.—Christian F. Ostermann.]


The Mao-Khrushchev Conversations, 31 July-3 August 1958 and 2 October 1959

By Vladislav M. Zubok

The last summits between the Soviet leader Nikita S. Khrushchev and the Chairman of the Chinese Communist Party (CCP) Mao Zedong played a significant role in political and psychological preparations of the Sino-Soviet split. This was already obvious from the secondary sources, including Khrushchev’s memoirs. More recently documentation from the CCP archives, published selectively in Beijing, added significantly to the picture. Further documents from Soviet archives shed new light on the period when the Sino-Soviet friendship capsized and began to sink. But transcripts of the summit talks were still not available. Russian historian Dmitri Volkogonov was the first to study these documents and cite from them in the mid-1990s. It took the efforts of dedicated individuals and four years of time before these remarkable documents became part of the public domain as the Volkogonov Collection at the Library of Congress opened its microfilm reels of materials from the Russian Presidential Archive in January 2000.

This brief introduction cannot provide a comprehensive analysis of Sino-Soviet summits, but it attempts to place them into historical context. Several observations should be made in this regard for future, more substantial research. Disputed issues were at the center of the two Sino-Soviet summits. Also equally important was the broader context that Norwegian historian Odd Arne Westad called “history, memory, and the languages of alliance-making.” The ideological nature, discourse and rituals of the Sino-Soviet alliance-making defined the nature, discourse and rituals of the alliance-breaking. Finally, the clash of personalities added to the drama. Mao Zedong’s pride and revolutionary ambitions contributed as much to the trouble in Sino-Soviet relations as Khrushchev’s impulsive anti-Stalinism and defiant earthy character.

Issues and personalities at the 1958 summit

The Sino-Soviet summit of July-August 1958 was an unforeseen and secret affair. Nikita Khrushchev came to Beijing as a trouble-shooter, on the instructions of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union (CPSU Central Committee) Presidium, in response to a sharp reaction by Mao Zedong to two Soviet proposals. First, to build a short-wave radar station in China in order to help Soviet submarine and surface fleets operate against the US Navy in the Pacific. Second, to create a joint Sino-Soviet submarine flotilla, operating under the Soviet command. According to Chinese sources, the second proposal was in response to the Chinese request sent by Zhou Enlai to Moscow on 28 June, to provide technology and documentation for construction of Chinese nuclear submarines with SLBMs. On 21 July, Soviet ambassador Pavel Yudin laid out the Soviet “joint fleet” proposal to Mao. The next day Mao called him back and in the presence of the CCP leadership lashed out at the Soviets, accusing them of chauvinism and plans to dominate China. The record of conversations between Khrushchev and Mao informs us about the final act in this dispute. Several important documentary links are, however, still missing, among them the exchange between the Soviet and Chinese military. Two additional memoranda of conversations exist, presumably on 1 and 2 August 1958, which were not found in the Volkogonov collection.

The major issue at the summit was Mao Zedong’s profound dissatisfaction with the old model of the alliance according to which the USSR posed as “senior brother” and the People’s Republic of China (PRC) had to be satisfied with the role of the “junior brother.” Economic costs of Soviet industrial aid to China are cited as a reason for dissatisfaction. Indeed, Soviet data show that in 1958-1960 the PRC had to pay back 2.3 billion rubles on Soviet loans. Nevertheless, in general economic terms, the Sino-Soviet alliance by that time worked exceptionally well for China. After Stalin’s death, Nikita Khrushchev made a strong emphasis on the ideological, romantic foundations of the Sino-Soviet alliance, and on “fraternal, selfless” forms of assistance. Genuine euphoria about “friendship deeper than the sea and higher than the mountains” spread in the USSR from the top leadership down to common citizens: there were far-reaching expectations of integration between the two communist giants in all fields. Even the pragmatic Vyacheslav Molotov, ousted by his rival Khrushchev, at that time shared this euphoric mood and submitted to the Central Committee a plan for further Sino-Soviet integration all the way into a giant “socialist confederation.”

The Chinese leadership seemed to reciprocate these expectations. For instance, in February-March 1958 Zhu De urged Yudin to think about “tight coordination” of economic development of the Northeastern China and Soviet Far East, as well as about a common “ruble zone” and “an international bank of socialist countries.” In 1957, the Kremlin, prodded by the Chinese leadership, decided to help China become a nuclear power, i.e. to transfer nuclear know-how, help constructing facilities of the nuclear-industrial complex and, ultimately, to get a prototype device of the 1951 Soviet atomic bomb. On 18 June 1958, shortly before the dispute and Khrushchev’s secret trip, a group of Soviet nuclear experts came to China to tell their colleagues “how to make nuclear weapons.” Against this context, the proposals on the construction of joint fleet and the
eagerness to pay for the joint radar station in China came indeed, as Khrushchev insisted at the 1958 summit, from the heart and had no strings attached. For the Soviets, from all indications, Mao’s attack came as a bolt from the blue.

In retrospect, it is obvious that political and personal, not economic reasons, motivated Mao’s action. In the view of a Soviet diplomat who worked in Beijing from 1951 until 1966 and was a keen observer of China, “the Chinese felt too tight in our embrace. They wanted to break out of our arms and go their own way.” About that time, Mao was getting ready to mobilize hundreds of millions of people for the Great Leap Forward. By its meaning and tone, this grandiose campaign was designed to resume the revolutionary process in China and the world, to surpass Stalin’s “collectivization” and “industrialization” of the 1930’s. The Chinese continued to take advantage of the large-scale assistance from the USSR and other “socialist countries.” At the same time, however, they sought to demonstrate that they were no longer “pupils,” but actually the leaders of the communist movement, since, by contrast to the Soviet “friends” who “marked time and made no headway,” they moved “straight from socialism to communism.”

Readers of the transcripts will immediately see why American scholar William Taubman concluded that “the Sino-Soviet dispute was personal as well as political.” The huge contrast between the personalities of Mao and Khrushchev leaps into the eyes. In terms of experience and historical role, Mao was Chinese Lenin and a Chinese Stalin combined, both the leader of victorious revolution and a founding father of the post-revolutionary Chinese state. He was the driving engine behind the challenge to Soviet authority in the communist camp. It is well known that Stalin’s calculating and mistrustful attitudes towards the PRC had upset and offended Mao. It is less understood that the amicable embrace by the Soviets under Khrushchev repelled Mao no less. As Mao explained, he had long wanted to challenge Soviet seniority, and only waited for an auspicious moment. From the record of the 1958 summit Mao comes out looking almost the same as in his stormy meeting with Yudin on 22 July: offended, irritable and peevish, as well as haughty and lecturing. As Khrushchev tried to explain the Soviet position, Mao constantly interrupted him with teasing and provocative remarks.

By contrast to Mao, Khrushchev led his country and its bureaucratic classes on the road towards “normalization,” not revolution. Mao, like Stalin, had the right to say, “l’état est moi” [the state is myself], and sought to symbolize the dignity of power. Khrushchev, who sought to overcome the excesses of Stalinism, was the caricature of a communist potentate. He was an extrovert, big-bellied, nearly farcical figure. He never minced words. Mao, on the contrary, posed as a sphinx-like, philosophizing emperor. Khrushchev’s thinking was earthy, Mao’s was cosmic. Taubman pointed out several personal characteristics of Khrushchev that explained his “allergic reaction” to Mao. Among them was his “shaky sense of self-esteem,” “vaulting ambition and an extraordinary low level of culture,” “impulsiveness and hyper-sensitivity to slight,” and his racist sense of superiority over the “Oriental” Chinese.

The contrast of personalities continued on the lower level of participants: between the pedantic head of the CPSU International Department, Boris Ponomarev, and the pithy, politically gifted Deng Xiaoping. According to American scholar William Taubman concluded that “the Sino-Soviet dispute was personal as well as political.” The huge contrast between the personalities of Mao and Khrushchev leaps into the eyes. In terms of experience and historical role, Mao was Chinese Lenin and a Chinese Stalin combined, both the leader of victorious revolution and a founding father of the post-revolutionary Chinese state. He was the driving engine behind the challenge to Soviet authority in the communist camp. It is well known that Stalin’s calculating and mistrustful attitudes towards the PRC had upset and offended Mao. It is less understood that the amicable embrace by the Soviets under Khrushchev repelled Mao no less. As Mao explained, he had long wanted to challenge Soviet seniority, and only waited for an auspicious moment. From the record of the 1958 summit Mao comes out looking almost the same as in his stormy meeting with Yudin on 22 July: offended, irritable and peevish, as well as haughty and lecturing. As Khrushchev tried to explain the Soviet position, Mao constantly interrupted him with teasing and provocative remarks.

By contrast to Mao, Khrushchev led his country and its bureaucratic classes on the road towards “normalization,” not revolution. Mao, like Stalin, had the right to say, “l’état est moi” [the state is myself], and sought to symbolize the dignity of power. Khrushchev, who sought to overcome the excesses of Stalinism, was the caricature of a communist potentate. He was an extrovert, big-bellied, nearly farcical figure. He never minced words. Mao, on the contrary, posed as a sphinx-like, philosophizing emperor. Khrushchev’s thinking was earthy, Mao’s was cosmic. Taubman pointed out several personal characteristics of Khrushchev that explained his “allergic reaction” to Mao. Among them was his “shaky sense of self-esteem,” “vaulting ambition and an extraordinary low level of culture,” “impulsiveness and hyper-sensitivity to slight,” and his racist sense of superiority over the “Oriental” Chinese.

The contrast of personalities continued on the lower level of participants: between the pedantic head of the CPSU International Department, Boris Ponomarev, and the pithy, politically gifted Deng Xiaoping. According to American scholar William Taubman concluded that “the Sino-Soviet dispute was personal as well as political.” The huge contrast between the personalities of Mao and Khrushchev leaps into the eyes. In terms of experience and historical role, Mao was Chinese Lenin and a Chinese Stalin combined, both the leader of victorious revolution and a founding father of the post-revolutionary Chinese state. He was the driving engine behind the challenge to Soviet authority in the communist camp. It is well known that Stalin’s calculating and mistrustful attitudes towards the PRC had upset and offended Mao. It is less understood that the amicable embrace by the Soviets under Khrushchev repelled Mao no less. As Mao explained, he had long wanted to challenge Soviet seniority, and only waited for an auspicious moment. From the record of the 1958 summit Mao comes out looking almost the same as in his stormy meeting with Yudin on 22 July: offended, irritable and peevish, as well as haughty and lecturing. As Khrushchev tried to explain the Soviet position, Mao constantly interrupted him with teasing and provocative remarks.

By contrast to Mao, Khrushchev led his country and its bureaucratic classes on the road towards “normalization,” not revolution. Mao, like Stalin, had the right to say, “l’état est moi” [the state is myself], and sought to symbolize the dignity of power. Khrushchev, who sought to overcome the excesses of Stalinism, was the caricature of a communist potentate. He was an extrovert, big-bellied, nearly farcical figure. He never minced words. Mao, on the contrary, posed as a sphinx-like, philosophizing emperor. Khrushchev’s thinking was earthy, Mao’s was cosmic. Taubman pointed out several personal

The contrast of personalities continued on the lower level of participants: between the pedantic head of the CPSU International Department, Boris Ponomarev, and the pithy, politically gifted Deng Xiaoping. According to

Readers of the transcripts will immediately see why American scholar William Taubman concluded that “the Sino-Soviet dispute was personal as well as political.” The huge contrast between the personalities of Mao and Khrushchev leaps into the eyes. In terms of experience and historical role, Mao was Chinese Lenin and a Chinese Stalin combined, both the leader of victorious revolution and a founding father of the post-revolutionary Chinese state. He was the driving engine behind the challenge to Soviet authority in the communist camp. It is well known that Stalin’s calculating and mistrustful attitudes towards the PRC had upset and offended Mao. It is less understood that the amicable embrace by the Soviets under Khrushchev repelled Mao no less. As Mao explained, he had long wanted to challenge Soviet seniority, and only waited for an auspicious moment. From the record of the 1958 summit Mao comes out looking almost the same as in his stormy meeting with Yudin on 22 July: offended, irritable and peevish, as well as haughty and lecturing. As Khrushchev tried to explain the Soviet position, Mao constantly interrupted him with teasing and provocative remarks.

By contrast to Mao, Khrushchev led his country and its bureaucratic classes on the road towards “normalization,” not revolution. Mao, like Stalin, had the right to say, “l’état est moi” [the state is myself], and sought to symbolize the dignity of power. Khrushchev, who sought to overcome the excesses of Stalinism, was the caricature of a communist potentate. He was an extrovert, big-bellied, nearly farcical figure. He never minced words. Mao, on the contrary, posed as a sphinx-like, philosophizing emperor. Khrushchev’s thinking was earthy, Mao’s was cosmic. Taubman pointed out several personal
war on us.” Khrushchev continues: “One again, we touched on sensitive chords of a state whose territory had long been dominated by foreign conquerors. After this [summit] I began to understand much better what motivated Mao in this conversation…I understand that a lot of tact is required in this kind of issues. Now I came to understand this consideration especially well. [Italics added - V.Z.].”

In reality, this understanding must have dawned upon Khrushchev much later. Had he been just a bit more literate in the history and mentality of the “Middle Kingdom,” he would have armed himself with a better strategy—to the extent the erratic Soviet leader was ever capable of strategizing. But the only source from which Khrushchev could cull explanations for Chinese motivations was his own Stalinist experience and his current context of fighting against “Stalinists” among his colleagues. And something told him that Mao was trying “to play Stalin” on him, which was absolutely intolerable, both for political and personal reasons.

The first conversation appears to end in a full agreement between the two leaders. “Dark clouds have passed away,” Mao commented. But the summit did not resolve the crisis of the alliance, and brought into the open the mistrust between the two communist leaders. In his memoirs, Khrushchev downplays this, recalling that “the conversations were in a rather calm, friendly tone.” Yet, the transcript of the first conversation suggests the opposite. Particularly important was the exchange on Soviet advisers in China. It provides a new important insight into Khrushchev’s decision in the summer of 1960 to recall all Soviet advisers from the PRC, and indicates that it was not so spontaneous as it looked. Other sources show that it marked the beginning of steep decline in Soviet efforts to assist China in creating its nuclear arsenal.

From Khrushchev’s memoirs we know that in the conversations that followed the leaders disagreed on the issues of war and peace in the nuclear age, and the meaning of the Soviet nuclear arsenal and missile technology for future joint policy of the Sino-Soviet alliance. The minutes of the concluding talks on 3 August, recently declassified and published below, hide the echoes of these disagreements behind the mutual assurances of unity.

The Road to the 1959 Summit

Khrushchev’s mistrust of Mao grew during the Taiwan crisis, provoked by Beijing on 23 August 1958. As many Soviet sources indicate, Mao did probably not discuss his intentions regarding Taiwan and the off-shore islands of Quemoi and Matsu with Khrushchev during the 1958 summit. When the People’s Liberation Army of China began shelling the islands, however, the Soviet leadership was convinced that the Chinese wanted to seize them to remove the threat to their coastline. Moscow was prepared to help its ally in this endeavor. As the Eisenhower Administration, particularly Secretary of State John F. Dulles, made threatening declarations that implied the use of nuclear weapons, Khrushchev sent a letter to Eisenhower on 7 September declaring that the Soviet Union would abide by the Sino-Soviet treaty of 1950 and would regard nuclear attack on its ally as an attack on itself.

These threats concealed the embarrassing lack of unity and coordination between the Chinese and Soviet leadership during the crisis. When it broke out, the Soviets tried desperately to learn about Chinese plans. On 6 September, Soviet foreign minister Andrei Gromyko flew to Beijing, officially to coordinate Soviet and Chinese positions at the forthcoming UN General Assembly. But the reconnaissance attempts confused the Soviets rather than clarified the situation for them. On one hand, Zhou Enlai told Soviet envoys that there would be no war over the islands. On the other hand, the war hysteria in China was intensifying. At one point Zhou Enlai told Gromyko that the Soviet Union should stay out of the war in case the Americans used tactical nuclear weapons against the PLA. Khrushchev was uncertain about the real Chinese objective: to test his ally’s loyalty or to drag him into a confrontation with the US without even informing him. After deliberating for almost twenty days, the Soviet leadership sent a special message to the CC CCP on 27 September, “thanking” the Chinese for their noble attitude, but affirming its intention to consider the war against China “a war with the entire Socialist camp.”

Once again, Khrushchev leadership failed to recognize the significance of the crisis in the light of Chinese domestic politics and Mao’s urge to make China stand tall and fearless. As Soviet diplomat Fedor Mochulsky recalled, “It became clear to me, then just a young China specialist, that the [off-shore] islands were not the issue. The issue was domestic, not foreign policy.” The war scare helped Mao Zedong and the Chinese communist authorities to mobilize the people for the “Big Leap Forward.” The Chinese peasants toiled in the fields, while their rifles were stacked nearby. The war preparations also helped explain to people why they had to eat less and work harder. Unfortunately, Mochulsky’s observations did not reach the Kremlin: the euphoric expectations among many Soviet officials fed the bureaucratic mood that impeded critical and objective observation.

Mochulsky also recalled an episode in September 1958, when Soviet diplomats consulted with their American colleagues in search of a negotiated resolution on the disputed offshore islands. At one point they decided to inform the Chinese leadership that, if the PLA stopped shelling the islands, the US would attempt to persuade the Taiwanese regime to withdraw their troops from them. Mao Zedong’s reaction came as a surprise: “We do not need any [of your mediating] mission with Americans! This is our business!”22 On the contrary, the Chinese leadership intended to maintain the tension over the islands indefinitely, using it as “a means of educating all the peoples of
the world, first of all the Chinese people.”

In the fall of 1958, Khrushchev was still sympathetic to Chinese brinkmanship, despite his ally’s bizarre methods. He was also in a risk-taking mood with regard to West Berlin, and must have believed that only a “shock therapy” with threats of the use of force could bring the West to the negotiating table on the German question. He did not believe that the United States would start a nuclear war—either over the Chinese offshore islands or West Berlin. Mikoyan recalled in his memoirs that it was the second time (the first was in November 1956, over the Soviet invasion of Hungary), when he sharply disagreed with Khrushchev and thought about resigning the leadership. In November 1958, Khrushchev unleashed the “Berlin crisis” which to many in the world seemed to be synchronized with the Taiwan Crisis.

One year later the situation changed dramatically. By autumn 1959, Khrushchev seemed to be winning his risky game: first, British Prime Minister Harold Macmillan traveled to the Soviet Union indicating his willingness to negotiate; second, US President Dwight D. Eisenhower invited the Soviet leader to visit the United States (the last such invitation had come to Stalin from Truman in March 1946). Khrushchev’s trip to the United States in September vastly expanded his international recognition. From the UN podium, the Soviet leader presented a plan of general and complete disarmament. At the meeting a Camp David Eisenhower vaguely hinted to Khrushchev that the situation around West Berlin was “abnormal.” This was enough for the Soviet leader, who celebrated the triumph of his personal diplomacy. His foreign policy adviser Oleg Troyanovsky recalls: “Khrushchev returned from the US in a good mood, confident that he [had] achieved substantial political results. As an emotional and impulsive person, he began to view his trip over the ocean as the beginning of a new era in US-Soviet relations. In particularly, he grew to believe that the Western powers would make concessions on the German problem.”

Khrushchev’s optimism had another dimension to it: in the summer of 1959, the CPSU adopted the new party program of “construction of communism” to be achieved in twenty years. It was as risky a commitment as his promise “to catch up and surpass the United States.” As some observers believed, it was Khrushchev’s response to Mao’s Big Leap in the race for the reputation of the most ambitious communist. Such was the mood and baggage of achievements (real or imaginary) that Khrushchev brought with him on his trip to China on 1-4 October. This time his summit with the Chinese leaders took place openly, during the national celebration of the 10th anniversary of the founding of the People’s Republic of China. He came not only as a leader of the communist superpower who could talk on equal footing with the US president, but also as a successful architect of peace and détente with the West.

By contrast, the leaders of the CCP, particularly Mao Zedong, had grave problems on their hands. Despite tremendous achievements and sacrifice, the Great Leap Forward fizzled out and led to the tremendous ecological disaster and, ultimately, to a three-year-long famine in the Chinese countryside. The number of famine casualties reached astronomical number—up to 20 and perhaps 30 million people. At the Wuhan conference of the CC CCP in December 1958, Minister of Defense Peng Dehuai criticized Mao’s policies, and in August 1959 the CCP Plenum began to back off from the disastrous policies. In Tibet, the Great Leap Forward, in combination with the attempts to eradicate Lamaism, led to a rebellion in March 1959. Though the Chinese authorities suppressed it (with full Soviet support), the Dalai Lama fled to India, creating an international uproar and triggering a Sino-Indian propaganda war. As before, the Chinese leadership sought to use external tensions as a means to defuse the domestic crisis. On 25 August 1959, during initial skirmishes, the Chinese military killed several Indian border-guards who were positioned along the McMahon Line (established in 1914 between Great Britain and the Tibet authorities). Unlike India, China never recognized this line as the Sino-Indian border.

The Sino-Indian conflict came at the worst possible time for Khrushchev who was about to leave for the United States on his “mission of peace” and with a message of disarmament. This time Khrushchev decided to distance himself from the PRC, and TASS released an official announcement calling on both sides to reach a negotiated settlement. On 13 September, the Chinese responded with an unpublished communiqué to the CC CPSU through party channels, criticizing its policy of “time-serving and concessions [politika prisposoblenchestva i ustupok] with regard to Nehru and the Indian government.” Soon Khrushchev would get these reproaches thrown into his face in person.

The thaw in US-Soviet relations and its implications for the Sino-Soviet alliance were the first irritants at the two leaders’ talks in early October. Khrushchev’s itinerary—he came to Beijing almost straight from Washington via Moscow—added insult to injury. As a witness recalls, “Khrushchev enraged the Chinese, when he went to America first, instead of China; This produced strong antipathy on their part. And when Khrushchev arrived, they could not conceal it.” Khrushchev noticed the cool reception, the absence of cheering crowds on his way, and probably decided to challenge the hosts for their lack of politeness and hospitality. As the transcripts of the talks reveal, this time the Soviet leader did not spare Chinese sensibility: he continuously referred to his recent talks with President Eisenhower at Camp David; suggested to release the remaining American prisoners in China, and criticized, in a quite undiplomatic manner, Chinese policies that had led to the Taiwan crisis.

The summit, however, survived the discussion of these issues and collapsed only over the sharp disagreements over the Sino-Indian war. Mao was enraged by Moscow’s position of the middleman between the
neutral India and the PRC. This war revealed a real discrepancy between Soviet foreign policy and Chinese interests. The official Soviet record provides necessary correction to Khrushchev’s memoirs: what the Soviet leader remembered was “rude” and “awkward” manners of Chen Yi. The record shows that these epithets fitted Khrushchev more than anyone else in the talks, especially providing possible refinement of his expressions by Russian interpreters who wrote the transcripts. Volkogonov, commenting on the October summit of 1959, wrote: “Khrushchev in Beijing did not show flexibility, tact, wisdom, and his ‘revolutionary diplomacy’ collided with its counterpart.”

Indeed, the Russian transcripts show Khrushchev as much more confident of himself in comparison with the 1958 summit, and prepared to attack the Chinese as Mao had assaulted the Soviets more than a year earlier. Wearing the mantle of a world statesman, Khrushchev preferred this time to disapprove of Mao’s brinkmanship as illogical, unnecessary and contradicting Soviet policy of “détente.” From Mao’s angle, Khrushchev practiced a double standard, since he himself was doing approximately the same thing with different means with regard to West Berlin.

Even during the first conversation in July 1958, Khrushchev’s patience had begun to wear thin under the barrage of Mao’s prickling, unnerving comments. In October 1959 he was considerably more short-tempered. Contrary to his claims in the memoirs, he had learned nothing about the Chinese motivations, and was not even prepared to listen. At one point Chinese Foreign Minister Chen Yi hinted to him openly that the Chinese belligerence towards India was dictated by the desire to take revenge for the century of humiliation at the hands of European great powers. He tactfully omitted Russia. But this useful hint was ignored by Khrushchev. He was incensed by Chen Yi’s repeated use of the word “time-servers” in connection with the Soviet leaders. There might have been a problem of language and translation involved: for Khrushchev this word was synonymous with “opportunist,” a deadly ideological label for a good communist. It is not clear what the word exactly meant in Chinese context.

Khrushchev rushed to give a rebuff: “What a pretty situation we have: on one hand, you use the formula [the communist camp] ‘led by the Soviet Union,’ on the other hand, you do not let me say a word. What kind of equality can we talk about?” Later Khrushchev and Suslov repeated this argument in Moscow, expecting to get support from his colleagues.

The October 1959 summit presents a different Mao in comparison with 1958; the Chinese leader was less forceful and somewhat mellow. Perhaps the disastrous consequences of his Great Leap Forward forced Mao to take a lower profile, and provided more room for his politburo colleagues at the meeting. At the same time he was clearly in command and must have enjoyed when his colleagues, one after another, attacked the Soviet leader. At some point, when the altercation between Khrushchev and Chen Yi degenerated into a brawl, Mao must have realized that things had gone too far. He intervened with reassuring calm tone to bring the stormy meeting to a civilized conclusion.

**Consequences of the Summits: The Soviet Side**

Whether Mao expected an open Sino-Soviet split soon or not, he obviously did not want to be blamed for it. After Khrushchev’s departure, in a conversation with Soviet charge S.F. Antonov, the Chinese leader struck a very conciliatory tone. He pointed out that the Sino-Soviet differences constituted only “half a finger” out of ten. He even approved Khrushchev’s plan of general and complete disarmament (it was not even mentioned at the summit in Beijing), and remarked that Khrushchev “spoke very firmly and correctly on the issue of Taiwan” during his talks with Eisenhower. He promised to refrain from war over Taiwan and “to wait for 10-20, and even 30 and 40 years” for China’s control over the island. One could imagine, Mao continued, that the Taiwan crisis was “a tricky and mysterious affair.” In reality, it was just “one link in the chain of difficulties that we created for the Americans. Another chain was the issue of Berlin put forth by the Soviet Union.” All these issues “assisted in achieving some goals that you set in Europe.” As to the Sino-Indian conflict, Mao said: “We would never go beyond the Himalayas. This is a dispute over insignificant patches of territory.” This was not the last time the Chinese leader turned to sweet talk in his conversations with Soviet representatives. But he was hardly sincere.

Khrushchev did not do so well protecting his flanks after the disastrous communist summit. Offense was the best defense for him. Even on his way to Moscow he began to complain that Mao was “an old galosh;” later he indiscreetly used this expression publicly. Khrushchev also authorized Mikhail Suslov, who accompanied him to Beijing, to prepare a report that for the first time contained an open criticism of the CCP leadership, and Mao Zedong in particular. The report cited “mistakes and shortcomings in the field of domestic and foreign policy of the Communist Party of China” and explained them largely “by the atmosphere of the cult of personality of cde. Mao Zedong.” The report blamed Mao for coming “to believe in his own infallibility. This is reminiscent of the atmosphere that existed in our country during the last years of life of I.V. Stalin.” This, incidentally, reveals that the Soviet leader continued to rationalize Chinese challenge against the backdrop of his political experience. From that moment on, Mao became “another Stalin” to Khrushchev—the enemy of his course of de-Stalinization, the advocate of obsolete and disastrous policies.

Khrushchev’s incautious steps caused negative reaction among Soviet officials and general public. The flywheel of Soviet euphoria regarding China could not be stopped so abruptly. As some recalled the spirit of the time, “It seemed that the friendship sanctified by the same
ideological choice would be unbreakable. It seemed much more solid than the ties that emerge between countries on the ground of sober pragmatic interests.” The truth that Mao had decided to shake off the fraternal embrace was completely irrational and unthinkable for the Soviet people, even the most intelligent of them. Therefore, after Khrushchev’s trip to Beijing, public opinion was concerned that the Soviet leader, already well known for his capacity to be rude and unpredictable, might have damaged the Sino-Soviet friendship. Troyanovsky recalls that “back in Moscow, one could not help feeling in some circles of the society a new concern with the aggravation of the relations with China. I recall that about that time I received several calls from the people whose opinion I valued very much. They asked me to do whatever is possible to prevent a split with [China].”

Other radical initiatives by the Soviet leader, who was still euphoric about the prospects for improving Soviet-American relations, did even more to antagonize him to a growing segment of Soviet officials and broader public. Even the rapid reduction of Soviet armed forces which was designed to turn swords into plowshares and to liberate resources for improvement of civilians’ living standards, created for Khrushchev hosts of new enemies. Former Soviet diplomat Oleg Grinevsky believes that by the spring of 1960 a “new opposition” to Khrushchev emerged in the leadership and among the officials. Its mood was that it would be better to do everything to mend the alliance with the communist China, rather than to risk everything by aiming at an elusive friendship with Americans.

The first casualty of the acrimonious summit in Beijing was another summit in May 1960 in Paris. It is said sometimes that Khrushchev just used the U-2 episode to wriggle out of the summit when he realized that the West was not ready for negotiations on the German Question. The available record reveals Khrushchev as, above all, willing to project image of toughness to the party elites. On 4 May, he told the CC Plenum that he planned an anti-American speech at the forthcoming session of the Supreme Soviet about the US spy plane. He warned that “perhaps we would not have a meeting on 16 May, this outcome is also possible.” He explained that he and other members of the CC Presidium believed that the collapse of the summit “not only would not be a failure for us, but it would work to our advantage, since the situation is such that [hopes] for resolution of any questions at the meeting are weak.” He added: “It would be difficult for Eisenhower to come [to Paris] after this.”

The October 1959 meeting in Beijing contributed to Khrushchev’s mood in this case. Troyanovsky claims in his memoirs that Khrushchev was forced to confront Eisenhower after the U.S. President admitted the guilt for sending the spy plane into the USSR. “There is no doubt,” he writes, “that had he not reacted with enough toughness, the hawks in Moscow and Beijing would have used this incident—and not without justice—as a testimony that the person who stands at the helm of the Soviet Union is ready to bear any insult from Washington.” Back in Beijing, Khrushchev had said: “We shot [down] several American planes and always said that they crashed by themselves. This you cannot brand as time-serving.” Now Khrushchev decided to prove to the Chinese and anybody concerned that he was not a coward and opportunist.

Another casualty of the 1958-59 summits were the chances for a peace settlement in Laos, and perhaps in the Indochina in general. At the end of the October 1959 meeting Mao suggested to discuss the Laotian situation, but an angry Khrushchev was not interested. During the 1950s the PRC and the USSR had jointly kept the more belligerent among Vietnamese communists from expanding “revolutionary struggle” in the region. As the transcript reveals, they continued to understand that Stalin’s mistake in Korea in 1950, that brought American military might there, should not be repeated in Indochina. For historians of the Vietnam War it may be of interest that both Khrushchev and Mao were pessimistic as to the ability of the communist forces in Vietnam to withstand US intervention. The Sino-Soviet duel, however, precluded any effective cooperation on this issue, and ultimately the Vietnamese were able to have their way.

Suslov’s report on the 1959 summit failed to arouse much discussion. As long as Khrushchev remained in power, the rest of the Soviet leadership did not have the nerve to discuss openly the reasons for the Sino-Soviet dispute that quickly turned into the split. But Khrushchev’s colleagues had their opinion on what happened, and they expressed it in October 1964, when they sent Nikita Sergeevich into forced retirement. At that time, of course, the relations between the communist powers were already poisoned by years of mutual ideological and political hostility. CC Secretary Alexander Shelepin, speaking at the Presidium, said Khrushchev’s policy vis-à-vis China was correct, but he had to be “more flexible in pursuing the line.” “There is much that you have to be blamed for,” he rebuked Khrushchev. A more detailed opinion was in the undelivered Presidium report (prepared by Dmitry Polyanski, the Presidium member, in case Khrushchev would not surrender and prefer to fight at the CC Plenum). The report stated that “the main reason of the danger of the split is the subversive activity of the Chinese leadership that slid back to the position of great power nationalism and neo-Trotskyism. But there are some points for which Khrushchev has to be blamed. He is crude, haughty, and does not contain himself in conversations with the leaders of fraternal parties. He uses offensive expressions. He called Mao Zedong publicly ‘an old galosh,’ [the Chinese leader] learned about it and, of course, became enraged.”

These phrases, however, might not have been completely sincere either. Shelepin and Polyanski, among others (including Alexei Kosygin), still misunderstood the Chinese reasons and dynamics; they tended to believe that, without the factor of Khrushchev and after correction
of Soviet foreign policy, the Sino-Soviet rift could be mended. In January 1965, this group severely criticized Yuri Andropov, then the head of the CC International Department (for socialist countries) and Foreign Minister Andrei Gromyko for defending the course of “détente” and disregarding measures to improve relations and strengthen unity with our “natural” allies and our “class brothers” (meaning the Chinese). These sentiments finally died off only by the end of the 1960’s. There are still no archival documents available illustrating the painful reconsideration on the Soviet side. One may suggest that ultimately the Chinese challenge became, in the Kremlin’s eyes, primarily a geopolitical challenge. The most perceptive among Soviet leaders began to see what Khrushchev had failed to see in 1958-59: how naïve and romantic the Soviets were in trying to hold in its fraternal embrace a giant country with unique history and culture. As Gromyko told to an assistant in 1978, when the question of German unity was discussed: “A united socialist China is enough for us.” According to this new Soviet convictions the Sino-Soviet alliance was doomed because of the geopolitical weight of China and political ambitions of Beijing. Khrushchev’s impulsiveness, abysmal lack of culture and other personal qualities only played a secondary role.

The documents published below reveal that it is impossible to extract great acts of history from their actors. In the situation, when personal sympathies and antipathies were as important and real as state interests, the two summits in Beijing became the important and necessary preludes to the split and fragmentation of the Sino-Soviet alliance and to the end of the world communist movement as it existed since 1917.

★★★★

DOCUMENT No. 1
First Conversation of
N.S. Khrushchev with Mao Zedong
Hall of Huaizhentan [Beijing],
31 July 1958

Present at the meeting: Cdes. B.N. Ponomarev, Deng Xiaoping.

N.S. Khrushchev passes on greetings and best wishes from the members of the Presidium of the C[entral] C[ommitee of the] CPSU.

Mao Zedong thanks him. He says that cooperation between the leaders of the two parties facilitates decision-making on world problems.

N.S. Khrushchev agrees.

Mao Zedong: Without making forecasts for a longer time, one can say that our cooperation is assured for 10,000 years.

N.S. Khrushchev: In such a case we could meet again in 9,999 years in order to agree on cooperation for the next 10,000 years.

Mao Zedong: We have, however, certain differences of opinion. Such differences on specific questions were, are, and will be the case. If we compare this with 10 fingers, then our cooperation will [account for] 9 fingers, and the differences for one.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes, we can have a difference in understanding.

Mao Zedong: These issues can be easily solved, and cooperation between us will last forever; therefore we can sign an agreement for 10,000 years. He suggests to move to the discussion on the question of interest.

N.S. Khrushchev: We received information from Yudin45 on his conversations with you.46 Judging by it, there was a lot there that was exaggerated [nakruchen]. Therefore, I would like to talk to you, so that everything would become clear.

Mao Zedong: Good.

N.S. Khrushchev: I will not dwell on the issues where, according to the messages on the conversation with your ambassador, we have common views. These are issues relating to the international situation, the assessment of the events in the Middle East [na Blizhem I Srednom Vostoke],47 the Yugoslav question. We also support your declaration where you say that we cannot have issues that might generate different viewpoints. We take great joy in the successes of your Party and the PRC. I believe you take joy in ours.

Mao Zedong: Yes.

N.S. Khrushchev: I would like to touch on the issue that hit us squarely on the head [ogorosh]. It is on the building of the Navy [voenno-morskogo flota]. You said that you spent a night without sleep. I also had a sleepless night when I received this information.

Mao Zedong: I was shocked, therefore I could not sleep.

N.S. Khrushchev: Never, did any of us, and above all as far as I am concerned, for it was primarily I who talked to Yudin, and only then he received the instructions from the CC Presidium, have had such an understanding of this issue that you and your comrades developed. We had not even an inkling of the idea about a joint fleet. You know my point of view. When Stalin was alive, I was against joint companies. I was against his senile foolishness [starcheskoi gluposti] regarding the concession on the factory for canned pineapples. I am emphasizing this–it was his senile stupidity, since Stalin was not so stupid as to not understand this. But it was the beginning of his sclerosis.

Mao Zedong: I also cited these examples and kept saying that Khrushchev liquidated this heritage.

N.S. Khrushchev: I was one of the members of the Politburo who said it straight to Stalin that we should not send such a telegram on the concession to Mao Zedong, because it would be wrong as a matter of principle. There were also other members of the Politburo, with whom I
have parted ways now, who did not support this proposal by Stalin either. After Stalin’s death we immediately raised the issue of liquidating the joint companies [smeshannye obshchestva], and today we do not have them anywhere.

Mao Zedong: There were also two half-colonies— Xinjiang [Sinkiang] and Manchuria.

N.S. Khrushchev: The abnormal situation there has been liquidated.

Mao Zedong: According to the agreement, there was even a ban on the residence of citizens of third countries there. You also eliminated these half-colonies.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes, since it contradicted basic communist principles.

Mao Zedong: I am in absolute agreement.

N.S. Khrushchev: Even in Finland, a capitalist country, we liquidated our military base.

Mao Zedong: And it was you personally who liquidated the base in Port Arthur.

N.S. Khrushchev: It could not be otherwise. This was even more correct with regard to a socialist country. Even in capitalist countries this causes nothing but harm. We liquidated joint ownership in Austria; we sold it to the Austrian government. This bore its fruits. Otherwise there would have been a constant source of conflict with the Austrian government. We had good, warm meetings when we received a delegation from Austria. Earlier we would not have been able to hold such meetings. The fact that we have good relations with a neutral capitalist country is advantageous for all socialist countries.

Our course is crystal-clear. We render assistance to former colonies; there is not a single clause in our treaties that would cloud our relations or contain encroachments on the independence of the country which we assist. In this lies the strength of the socialist camp. When we render assistance to former colonies and do not impose political conditions, we win over the hearts of the peoples of these countries. Such assistance is provided to Syria, Egypt, India, Afghanistan, and other countries. Recently we agreed to sign a treaty with Argentina. This will strongly affect the minds of people in Latin America and particularly in Argentina. We agreed to provide equipment for the oil industry in the amount of $100 million. This is directed against the United States, so that South Americans would not feel completely dependent on the US and would realize that there is a way out.

Mao Zedong: This is right.

N.S. Khrushchev: How could you think that we would treat you in such a way as was described in the conversations with cde. Yudin? (Joking.) Now I am launching an attack.

Mao Zedong: What is a joint fleet? Please, clarify.

N.S. Khrushchev: It displeases me to speak about it, since the ambassador is absent. I sent him the instruction, talked with him separately and then at the Presidium. When I talked with him, I feared that he might misunderstand me. I asked: “The issue is clear for you.” He said: “Clear.” But as I can see, he did not tell you the essential thing from what I said to him.

Mao Zedong: Is that so? [Vot kak?]

N.S. Khrushchev: As I can see, these issues are as far from him as the moon is from the earth. This is a special issue, in which he is not involved.

The issue about the construction of the fleet is so complicated that we have not passed a final judgment on it. We have been dealing with it since Stalin’s death. We sent Admiral [Nikolai] Kuznetsov into retirement, freed him from military service, because, in case we had accepted his 10-year program of naval construction, then we would have ended up with neither a Navy nor money. That is why, when we received the letter from com. Zhou Enlai with the request of consultation and assistance in the construction of a navy, it was difficult for us to give an answer.

Mao Zedong inquires about the cost of this program.

N.S. Khrushchev gives an answer.

We were asked to build cruisers, aircraft carriers, and other big-size vessels. One cruiser is very expensive, but there is the construction of ports and the places of anchorage for the fleet. It’s many times more expensive. We discussed this program and rejected it. But, most importantly, we subjected to criticism the very doctrine of the Navy in the light of the changed situation with regard to military technology.

In 1956 we convened a conference of seamen at Sevastopol, where [Klementi] Voroshilov, [Anastas] Mikoyan, [Georgy] Malenkov, [Gen. Georgy] Zhukov and I were present. The seamen reported on how they planned to use the Navy in war. After such a report they should have been driven out with a broom, not only from the Navy, but also from the [Soviet] Armed Forces.

You may remember, when we were returning from you in [October] 1954, we took a detour via Port Arthur to Vladivostok, and then to Komsomolsk [on Amur]. Then we made a brief trip on a cruiser, during which we held a small exercise. Admiral Kuznetsov was with us. During the exercise our submarines and torpedo boats attacked the cruiser. Not a single torpedo from the boats hit the cruiser. From the submarines only one hit the target. We felt that if the Navy was in such combat readiness, then our country could not rely on its naval forces. This was the beginning of our critical attitude. After that we instructed Kuznetsov to make a report and prepare proposals. At the CC Presidium his proposals were not accepted. He grew indignant and became insolent, declaring: “When would the CC take a correct position with regard to the Navy[?]” Then we built a correct relationship—sacked Kuznetsov from the Navy.

Under Stalin we built many cruisers. During my stay in London I even offered [British Prime Minister Anthony] Eden to buy a cruiser. Today people scratch their heads how to use the Navy in war. Can you recall any large-scale sea battles during the Second World War? None. The Navy was either inactive or perished. The US and Japan were the strongest naval powers. Japan inflicted a serious defeat on the American Navy by its air force. The Americans then
also routed the Japanese Navy with the help of the air force.

The question is where one should invest money.

When we received your letter, we began to think—to send the military [to China], but they have no unanimous viewpoint on naval construction. We already discussed this question three times and one last time decided to give them a month deadline for presenting their proposals. What kind of navy does one need under modern conditions? We stopped the construction of cruisers, [and] tossed the artillery turrets that were already finished into the smelting furnaces. And they had the value of gold. We have several cruisers under construction in docks [na stapeliakh]. Within our General Staff, people are divided into two camps: some say—toss them away, others say—we should finish them and then should stop building. Upon my return I will have to decide on this. The military advisers split into two groups. I did not have a firm opinion on this: to end the construction—investments are lost, to finish—more expenses are needed. One does not need them for war. Before I left for vacation, [Defense Minister Marshal Rodion] Malinovsky asked me to look into this question. At the Military Council for Defense I spoke against finishing the cruisers, but did not do so decisively. Malinovsky cajoled me, I decided to support him. We held a session of the CC Presidium, and many distinguished marshals and generals spoke there categorically against [terminating construction]. We then decided to postpone the question until Malinovsky returned from vacation and to discuss it once again. I think that at this time we will decide to throw them in the furnace [vragranka].

What kind of consultation under such circumstances could our military have given you? Therefore we said to ourselves that we must get together with the responsible Chinese comrades to discuss and resolve this issue. We could not rely on the military alone since they lack themselves any precise point of view. We wanted to discuss jointly with you which direction we should take in the construction of the Navy. For instance, I cannot say today which point of view on this question the head of the Naval Headquarters has [shtaba voenno-morskikh sil]. If we send him [to the PRC], one cannot say which opinion he would express—his own or ours. Therefore we wanted to discuss this with comrades Zhou Enlai and Peng Dehuai, with military and civilian officials. We did not want to impose our point of view and we are not going to; you might have disagreed with us on which kind of navy we should build. We are still in the exploratory phase.

Who today needs cruisers with their limited firepower, when rockery exists[?] I told Eden in London that their cruisers are just floating steel coffins.

The question of naval construction is very complicated. Military officers ask, why then do the Americans keep building their Navy[?] I believe that the Americans, from their point of view, are doing the correct thing because the United States are located in America, and they are going to wage war in Europe or Asia. They need the Navy for transportation and support [prikritiia]. Otherwise they should renounce their policy and declare the Monroe Doctrine.

Mao Zedong turns to Deng Xiaoping and asks him for the records of conversations with Yudin. Deng Xiaoping passes to Mao Zedong the records of conversation.

N.S. Krushchev: Such is now the situation with regard to this business. Therefore I talked with Yudin in such a way, instructed him to tell you about this situation. I asked him if everything was clear. He responded affirmatively. But he never dealt with the Navy, therefore he could only render the crux of the matter imprecisely. The CC CPSU never intended and does not intend to build a joint Navy.

Mao Zedong (irritated): I could not hear you. You were in Moscow. Only one Russian spoke with me—Yudin. Therefore I am asking you: on what grounds you can speak of “launching an attack” against me?

N.S. Krushchev: I did not claim it. [Ja ne v pretenzii.]

Mao Zedong (with irritation): So who should be attacked—Mao Zedong or Yudin?

N.S. Krushchev: Am I bothering you with my long explanation?

Mao Zedong: Not at all. You have said the main thing.

N.S. Krushchev: For reasons that I mentioned we wanted your comrades to come for joint discussions of the issue of what kind of navy is needed, about its technical and combat use. Indeed, I spoke to Yudin in such a way—that cde. Mao Zedong had welcomed coordination of our efforts in case of war. You spoke about it in 1954 during our visit and during your stay in Moscow in 1957. Until now, unfortunately, we have not acted on this. Therefore I told Yudin to clarify the situation. It is obvious for us that one should build a submarine fleet and torpedo boats armed not with sea-to-sea missiles, but instead with sea-to-air [vozdushnimi] missiles, because the main task of the submarine fleet would be not the struggle against the surface fleet of the enemy, but instead the destruction of its ports and industrial centers. So I talked with Yudin along these lines. It would be good to discard the fleet located in the Black and Baltic Seas. We do not need it there, and if something should be built in those areas, then it should be mid-size submarines. In this case, where can we build them? In the area of Murmansk, but reaching America from there is not easy. In England and Iceland they take measures to intercept us. Vladivostok is better, but there as well we are squeezed by Sakhalin and the Kurile Islands—they defend us, but also allow the enemy’s submarines to monitor the exit of our submarines. I told [Yudin] that China has a vast coastline and access to open seas, from where it would be easy to conduct the submarine war with America. Therefore it would be good to discuss with China how to use these possibilities. More specifically—perhaps, on one of the rivers (Yellow River or another) we need to have a plant producing submarines in rather big numbers. We believed it would be necessary to talk about this, but we
did not think to build a joint plant or a joint fleet. We do not need anything like this.

Mao Zedong: Yudin spoke not once about the creation of a joint fleet and said that the Black and the Baltic Seas do not have outlets, that to operate the Navy from Murmansk is not easy, that the road from Vladivostok is blocked by Japan, etc. He also pointed out that the Chinese coastline is very extended. According to Yudin, the USSR produces atomic submarines. His entire speech boiled down to the creation of a joint fleet.

N.S. Khrushchev: We build our Navy and can use it. This is a formidable weapon. It is true that it will be difficult to use it, but so will it be for the enemy. War in general is a difficult business.

Mao Zedong: I asked Yudin, who would have ownership of the fleet—the Chinese, the USSR, or both countries jointly? I also emphasized that under current conditions the Chinese need the fleet as Chinese property, and that any other ownership is out of question. In case of war we will deliver everything to the Soviet Union. Yet, Yudin insisted that the fleet should be a joint one. For the third time Yudin was received by cde. Liu Shaoqi and other comrades. At this conversation Yudin repeated what he said previously. Our comrades spoke against the joint fleet. He changed the formula and instead of a “joint fleet” started talking about “joint construction.” Our comrades criticized this statement as well, and said that we understood this to mean joint ownership of the fleet. Then Yudin began to speak about “joint efforts” to create the fleet.

N.S. Khrushchev: This is also my fault. I should not have instructed Yudin, who does not command the issue, to inform you. But we did not want to write a letter on this question. We wanted to inform you orally.

Mao Zedong: We understood it as follows: if we want to obtain [Soviet] assistance, then we must build a joint fleet aimed primarily against the US. We understood that Khrushchev wanted to resolve the question about a joint creation of the Navy together with Chinese comrades, having in mind also to draw in Vietnam.

N.S. Khrushchev: I said that, when the war begins, we would have to use the coast widely, including Vietnam.

Mao Zedong: I already said that, in case of war, the Soviet Union will use any part of China, [and] Russian sailors will be able to act in any port of China.

N.S. Khrushchev: I would not speak about “Russian sailors.” Joint efforts are needed if war breaks out. Perhaps Chinese sailors would act, perhaps joint efforts would be necessary. But we did not raise the question about any territory or our base there.

Mao Zedong: For instance, if there were 100 men-of-war in the fleet, which part would be owned by you and by us?

N.S. Khrushchev: The fleet cannot be owned by two countries. The fleet needs to be commanded. When two are in command it is impossible to fight a war.

Mao Zedong: That is correct.

N.S. Khrushchev: You may disagree with us. We consider this, and we may say [now] that we are against it. If you had suggested this to us, we would have been against it as well.

Mao Zedong: If this is so, then all the black clouds are blown away.

N.S. Khrushchev: There were no clouds in the first place.

Mao Zedong: However, we spent a night without sleep. It turns out, that I missed my sleep in vain.

N.S. Khrushchev: How could Comrade Mao Zedong imagine that we might enforce this, going completely against party principles?

Mao Zedong: I even told my comrades that I could not understand this proposal from the principled point of view, and perhaps this was a misunderstanding. You eliminated the wrong that had been perpetrated by Stalin. I personally and some other comrades had doubts that perhaps this proposal might be one of the Naval Headquarters of the USSR. Your advisor (a sailor) advised us four times to send a cable asking for assistance in building the fleet. He assured us that this request would get a positive decision.

N.S. Khrushchev: Such advisers must be thrown out.

Mao Zedong: Advisers did not speak about a joint fleet.

N.S. Khrushchev: Anyway, they had no right. Their business is to give advice when they are asked for it.

Mao Zedong: The advisers suggested to ask the USSR for assistance. After this Zhou Enlai sent this request, having in mind the fleet with missile launchers.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yudin was not instructed to make this proposal. He was instructed only to pass an offer to discuss jointly the issue of constructing the submarine fleet. How could we have instructed Yudin to carry out negotiations on the construction of the submarine fleet? We know Yudin and trust him in party matters, but he is a poor fit for negotiations on atomic submarine fleet.

Mao Zedong: He said that we should send representatives for the negotiations about the joint creation of a navy. I asked him to inform that we cannot conduct such negotiations.

N.S. Khrushchev: He tried to give the correct account in essence [po suschestvu], but must have misperceived our instruction, misinterpreted it, and let it happen that we find ourselves in a mistaken relationship.

Mao Zedong: But Yudin said precisely this. And Antonov was present there. Whose pride is pricked now?

N.S. Khrushchev: As I can see your pride was very much pricked.

Mao Zedong: That is why I lost sleep.

N.S. Khrushchev: Our pride is touched as well. How could you have misperceived our policy?

Mao Zedong: Your representative made such an account. And I told him that I would disagree with such a proposal, would not accept, and declared: “You wage the war on sea and in the air, and we will stay as partisans [guerillas] on land [mi budem na sushe partizanit].”
Deng Xiaoping: The issue stemmed from the analysis of the maritime coast of China and the Soviet Union. Yudin said that China has a good coast, and the Soviet Union’s coast is bad, thus one needs a joint fleet. Then Mao Zedong said—is this a cooperative?

Mao Zedong: A cooperative consists of two parts.

N.S. Khrushchev: Everything is absolutely clear. I expressed my opinion. I believed that Chinese friends held us in better esteem. Therefore I believed it was necessary to get united [ob’ediniatsia]. We did not encroach on the sovereignty of China. We had one approach in the Party. I believe that you adhere to the same principle.

Mao Zedong: In this case I cease to worry. [ia spokoien]

Another scenario would have been [to build] a joint fleet. If the fleet were not a joint one, then there would be no assistance.

N.S. Khrushchev: Did Yudin say that?
Mao Zedong: No, he did not. I am telling you the essence of his words.

N.S. Khrushchev: But this is your inference!

Mao Zedong: And the third scenario means that we withdraw our request, because the second scenario does not suit us. Even if in the next ten thousand years we do not have atomic submarine fleet, we will not agree to build a joint fleet. We can live without it [oboidemsia].

N.S. Khrushchev: You did not write about the atomic submarine fleet in your letter.

Mao Zedong: Yes, we did not write about it. We posed the question about the equipment of the fleet with atomic weapons. Yudin spoke about the atomic submarine fleet.

N.S. Khrushchev: That is why I am saying: which kind of fleet to build, we have to discuss. Who will give you advice—[commander of the Soviet Navy Admiral Sergei Gorshkov]? I am not sure he gives you good advice. When he gives you advice, you may consider that it is we who are advising you. Then you sort it out and may say—they gave the wrong advice.

Mao Zedong: For us there is no question of building a large-size fleet. We only spoke about torpedo boats and submarines with rocket launchers. This is laid out in our letter.

There is a second issue—on the construction of a radar station in China.

N.S. Khrushchev: I would like to finish the business on the navy, and then [talk] about the station. I consider that this part of the instruction Yudin misrepresented. Perhaps he did not formulate it carefully and gave occasion to misinterpret him.

Mao Zedong: But there were 7 to 8 persons present. I said then that it was not a cooperative. Everyone just gasped with surprise when they heard this proposal. Because of that I lost my sleep for a night.

N.S. Khrushchev: And I—the next night. I agree to take upon myself part of the blame. I am the originator [ pervoistochnik]. I explained to Yudin, he misperceived me and misrepresented it. Yudin is an honest man and he treats China and you personally with a great deal of respect. We trust Yudin and believe he could not deliberately distort it. He is an honest member of the CC and does everything to strengthen the friendship between our countries. All this is a result of a misunderstanding flowing from his misperception of the instruction. I want to say that I had premonitions myself, and I repeated 2-3 times if all was clear, because I gave him instructions on a matter in which he was not involved at all. And I have a problem with you [ia k vam v prezentii]. If you see that the matter goes beyond the boundaries of communist attitudes, then you should have had a good sleep, told yourself it was a misunderstanding, and tried to clarify this once again. (Jokingly.) You see, I am pressing you hard [na vas nasedaiu].

Mao Zedong: I said that perhaps it was a misunderstanding, and I hope this is a misunderstanding.

N.S. Khrushchev: You should have gone to bed.

Mao Zedong: Several times the conversation was exclusively about the joint fleet, therefore I then launched a counterattack. Now you are counterattacking me. But wait, I will still attack you back.

N.S. Khrushchev: There is a law in physics: action produces equal counteraction.

Mao Zedong (crossly): I had my reasons. I said then that we could give you the entire Chinese coast, but we disagree with a joint fleet.

N.S. Khrushchev: We have plenty of coastline of our own, God help us to cope with it.

Mao Zedong: There is a forth scenario—to give you the whole coast. There is a fifth one—I am accustomed to fight guerilla wars [ia privik partizanit].

N.S. Khrushchev: Times are different now.

Mao Zedong: But we had no hope, having in mind that if we had given up on the coastline, we would have had only the hinterland [susha].

N.S. Khrushchev (jokingly): Well, let’s trade our seacoasts, but better still let each of us stay with ours, we are accustomed to them.

Mao Zedong: I agree to give you the whole coast all the way to Vietnam.

N.S. Khrushchev: Then we should invite Ho Chi Minh. Otherwise he may learn about it, and would say that here Khrushchev and Mao Zedong plotted against him.

Mao Zedong: According to the fifth scenario, we would have given you Port Arthur, but we would still have had several ports.

N.S. Khrushchev: Now, do you really consider us as red imperialists?

Mao Zedong: It is not a matter of red or white imperialists. There was a man by the name of Stalin, who took Port Arthur and turned Xinjiang and Manchuria into semi-colonies, and he also created four joint companies. These were all his good deeds.

N.S. Khrushchev: You are familiar with my viewpoint. On the issue of Port Arthur, however, I think that Stalin
made the correct decision at the time. Then Jiang Jieshi [Chiang Kai-shek] was still in China, and it was advantageous for you that the Soviet Army was in Port Arthur and Manchuria. This played a certain positive role. But this should have been brought to an end immediately after the victory of People’s China. It seems to me that in 1954, when we raised the issue about withdrawal of troops from Port Arthur, you expressed doubts whether it would be advisable, for you considered the presence of Soviet troops as a factor containing aggressive US ambitions. We asked you to study this issue. You promised to think. You thought and then agreed with us.

Mao Zedong: Yes.

N.S. Khrushchev: You then said that non-communists raised in your parliament the issue if this was in China’s advantage. Did you speak about it?

Mao Zedong: Yes. But it was one side of the problem. Stalin not only committed mistakes here. He also created two half-colonies.

N.S. Khrushchev: You defended Stalin. And you criticized me for criticizing Stalin. And now—vice versa.


N.S. Khrushchev: At the [20th] Party Congress [in February 1956] I spoke about this as well.

Mao Zedong: I always said, now, and then in Moscow, that the criticism of Stalin’s mistakes is justified. We only disagree with the lack of strict limits to criticism. We believe that out of Stalin’s 10 fingers, 3 were rotten ones.

N.S. Khrushchev: I think more were rotten.


N.S. Khrushchev: Yes. If we speak of Stalin’s accomplishments–we are also part of them.

Mao Zedong: This is fair.

N.S. Khrushchev: Stalin was and remains Stalin. And we criticized the scum and scab that accumulated, in particular when he became old. But when Tito criticized him, it’s another thing. 20 years from now school-kids will search the dictionaries [to see] who Tito was, but everyone will know Stalin’s name. And the dictionary will say that Tito was the splitter of the socialist camp who sought to undermine it, and it will say that Stalin was a fighter who fought the enemies of the working class, but committed grave errors.

Mao Zedong: Stalin’s main errors regarding China were not on the issue of the semi-colonies.

N.S. Khrushchev: I know. He incorrectly assessed the CCP’s revolutionary capabilities of the CCP, wrote courteous letters to Jiang Jieshi, supported Wang Ming.

Mao Zedong: Even more important is something else. His first major error was one as a result of which the Chinese Communist Party was left with one-tenth of the territory that it had. His second error was that, when China was ripe for revolution, he advised us not to rise in revolution and said that if we started a war with Jiang Jieshi that might threaten the entire nation with destruction.

N.S. Khrushchev: Wrong. A nation cannot be destroyed.

Mao Zedong: But that is how Stalin’s cable read. Therefore I believe that the relationship between the Parties was incorrect. After the victory of our Revolution, Stalin had doubts about its character. He believed that China was another Yugoslavia.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes, he considered it possible.

Mao Zedong: When I came to Moscow [in December 1949], he did not want to conclude a treaty of friendship with us and did not want to annul the old treaty with the Guomindang [Kuomintang]. I recall that [Soviet interpreter Nikolai] Fedorenko and [Stalin’s emissary to the PRC Ivan] Kovalev passed me his [Stalin’s] advice to take a trip around the country, to look around. But I told them that I have only three tasks: eat, sleep and shit. I did not come to Moscow only to congratulate Stalin on his birthday. Therefore I said that if you do not want to conclude a treaty of friendship, so be it. I will fulfill my three tasks.

Last year, when I was in Moscow, in a conversation where [Soviet Premier Minister Nikolai] Bulganin was also present, we heard that Stalin had bugged us back then.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes, I said it at that time. He had bugged us as well, he even bugged himself. Once, when I was on vacation with him, he admitted that he mistrusted himself. I am good-for-nothing, he said, I mistrust myself.

Mao Zedong: What kind of a fleet to build–this question does not exist for us. We will not build a fleet along the plans of Admiral Kuznetsov.

N.S. Khrushchev: We have not decided on the fleet ourselves.

Mao Zedong: We would only like to obtain assistance in the construction of the submarine fleet, torpedo boats and small-size surface ships.

N.S. Khrushchev: I agree. We should have a powerful submarine fleet armed with missiles, and torpedo boats armed not with torpedoes, but with missiles.

Mao Zedong: This was what we asked for in our letter.

N.S. Khrushchev: We believe one needs destroyers armed with missiles. We believe one should build a merchant fleet with the view of using it for military goals. We are building several rocket-carriers. We believe that we also should have guard-ships armed with rockets, minesweepers. And most important–the missile-carrying air force. I think that you need this in the first instance. You have further shooting range from the air. In the first instance we will need maritime defense. Artillery in Port Arthur makes no sense. Its capacity is severely limited. One needs coastal rocket launchers and rocket-carriers, or a mobile coastal defense. This is the direction we are taking in the fleet construction.

Mao Zedong: This is the right direction.

N.S. Khrushchev: I would suggest that rocket-carriers are needed in the first place. A submarine fleet is more expensive. With the help of rocket-carriers we can keep the enemy at a very respectable distance from our shores.

Mao Zedong: Absolutely correct. We already spoke about it in Moscow [in November 1957].
N.S. Khrushchev: Aircraft have more potential. We are ready to give China what we have. TU-16s have lost their significance as bombers, but they are still good as rocket-carriers for sea approaches [na morskikh podstupakh]. In general, the bombing aviation is in crisis. The military is confused. And for fighters there is a substitute—rockets.

Mao Zedong inquires about missile armaments of the USSR, America, England, its combat specifications and types.

N.S. Khrushchev gives answers to the questions by Mao Zedong.

Mao Zedong says it would be good to avoid war.

N.S. Khrushchev: That is why we keep the enemy in fear by our missiles. We wrote to the Turks that with 3 to 4 missiles there would be no more Turkey. 10 missiles suffice to wipe out England. In England they debate: some say that 9 missiles are needed to destroy England, others say, no, 7 to 8. But nobody doubts that, in case of nuclear war England will be destroyed. They only debate how many missiles one needs for this. When we wrote letters to Eden and [French Prime Minister] Guy Mollet during the Suez events [in November 1956], they immediately stopped the aggression. Now, that we have the transcontinental missile, we hold America by the throat as well. They thought America was beyond reach. But this is not true. Therefore, we must use these means to avoid war. Now we should save Iraq.

Mao Zedong: In my opinion, the US and England gave up on attacking Iraq.

N.S. Khrushchev: I think this is 75% true.

Mao Zedong: About 90%.

N.S. Khrushchev: This is the Chinese way. Here are our “disagreements.”

Mao Zedong: They are afraid of a big war.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes, they are very afraid. Particularly in Turkey, Iran, Pakistan. The revolution in Iraq stirs up these people [in these countries], and they may repeat the events in Iraq.

Mao Zedong: We will talk about the international situation tomorrow. I consider that on the maritime matters the question is resolved.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes, without a fight and defeat for either side.

Mao Zedong: There will be no joint fleet?

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes, and we never posed this question.

Mao Zedong: But three Soviet comrades still spoke about a joint fleet.

N.S. Khrushchev: Here are four Soviet comrades. And we are saying that there will be no joint fleet.

Mao Zedong: Let’s not return to this question.

N.S. Khrushchev: This question does not exist. This was a misunderstanding.

Mao Zedong: Agree. Let’s write it down—withdraw the question.

N.S. Khrushchev: I agree. Let’s write it down: there was no such issue; there is no such issue; and there will not be any. This was the result of misunderstanding, misinterpretation of this issue by Yudin. I consider that the matter is exhausted.

Mao Zedong: Now I am calm.

N.S. Khrushchev: I am calm, too. Let us have sound sleep.

Now I would like to talk about the radar station. There was no CC decision on this question. Our military comrades say that one should have a radar station, so that, when needed, one could command Soviet submarines in the Pacific. I think these considerations are correct. I thought that on this issue we could get in contact with Chinese comrades in order to build such a station. It would be better that Chinese comrades agreed that we participate in the construction of this station via credit or in some other way. The station is necessary. We need it, and you will need it, too, when you will have a submarine fleet. The issue is exploitation [ekspluatatsia]. I think that two cannot be masters at this station. Therefore we could agree on the basis of equality, so that you could via this station maintain communications with your submarine fleet. There is no question about ownership. It should be Chinese. I would like to reach an agreement on its exploitation on equal terms. You might exploit our stations in Vladivostok, in the Kuriles, the northern coasts. If there is no objection from your side, I think that our military should consider this matter. If the PRC disagrees, we will not insist.

Mao Zedong: This station may be built. It will be the property of China, built with investments of the Chinese government, and we could exploit it jointly.

N.S. Khrushchev: Not jointly, but only partially. For us it will be needed only in case of war and for training in peacetime.

Mao Zedong: Then we must change the formula in Malinovsky’s letter.

N.S. Khrushchev: I did not see the letter. We did not discuss it in the CC.

Mao Zedong: Another cooperative venture [kooperativ]. The Chinese share is 30% and Soviet share—70%. We gave answer to Malinovsky in the same spirit you heard.

N.S. Khrushchev: I am not familiar with the correspondence on this issue. Perhaps this occurred as a result of the contacts between our military, and the contact went awry.

Mao Zedong: The second letter from Malinovsky, in July, contained a draft treaty on this issue. If in the first letter the Chinese share was 30%, in the second one the whole belonged to the Soviet Union.

N.S. Khrushchev: I suspect good intentions on the part of our military. We need this station. This is an expensive project. So they just wanted to help. But they ignored the political and legal aspects of the issue.

Mao Zedong: We sent our answer on behalf of Peng Dehuai, in which we said that we would build it, and the USSR may exploit it.
N.S. Khrushchev: The military told me that they thought they reached complete agreement with the Chinese comrades.

Mao Zedong: Here, you can see, the entire correspondence.

N.S. Khrushchev: I have not seen it. If it had gone through the CC then perhaps it would have not allowed such foolishness and would have offered to build it at our expense, but in the CC, we did not discuss it. But if you do not wish us to pay for it, then so be it.

Mao Zedong: But we represent socialist countries. We will build the station ourselves, and it should be exploited jointly. Do you agree?

N.S. Khrushchev: We do not need the station now. It costs many millions. Do not repudiate the money. Don’t let friendship interfere with work. Under conditions of socialism we should carry the burden together. We may give credits for the construction. Part of it you can pay back, and part of it not, since you also need the station.

Mao Zedong: It is possible to build the station without any credit.

N.S. Khrushchev: It would be wrong. You do not need it now.

Mao Zedong: We will need it.

N.S. Khrushchev: But above all we need it.

Deng Xiaoping: We have already answered that we will build it ourselves and will exploit it jointly.

N.S. Khrushchev: Perhaps because of this our military told me that the Chinese agreed, but they ignored the Chinese nuance. They are wondering—what’s the problem[?] Full agreement seemed to have been reached.

Mao Zedong: We agree to build at our expense, but exploit it jointly.

N.S. Khrushchev: I would suggest that credit is needed, assistance from our side.

Mao Zedong: If you insist on assistance, then we will not build the station at all.

N.S. Khrushchev: Now the issue about [Anastas] Mikoyan. We were surprised by your declaration, for all are convinced that you have the best possible relations with cde. Mikoyan. We do not think he could be suspected of disloyalty towards China, of some kind of attitudes that stand in the way of our friendship. He never mentioned it himself and we never saw anything like this. His speech at your [Party] Congress [in September 1956] was discussed at the CC Presidium and raised no objections. He was advised to show the speech to you, to introduce your remarks and proposals as an obligatory matter. In 1954, when I spoke here, I also sent you my report and asked for your remarks.

Mao Zedong: We welcomed your speech, for it reflects [the spirit of] equality. The speech of cde. Mikoyan was not so bad either, but the ratio of good and inappropriate was 9 to 1. This concerns the tone of the speech that was somewhat didactic [pouchitel'nym]. Some delegates of the Congress expressed dissatisfaction, but we were too shy to tell cde. Mikoyan about it. When we say that the Chinese Revolution is the extension of the October Revolution—this is the unquestionable truth. But there are many things that the Chinese themselves should speak about. There was something in Mikoyan’s speech resembling the relationship between father and son.

N.S. Khrushchev: I did not re-read recently these speeches, but I recall that I told him that a great deal of attention was devoted to international affairs. Perhaps he should not have done it, but Mikoyan provided some kind of explanation, and I agreed with him. If some unnecessary points crept into it, he was not the only guilty one. Then all of us overlooked them.

Now the issue of the displeasure about his stay in Xibaipo [in February 1949].

Mao Zedong: All that he did there was good, but his behavior was a bit haughty. He was like an inspector.

N.S. Khrushchev: I am surprised.

Mao Zedong: I am surprised as well. But to some degree it looked like lecturing of father to son.

N.S. Khrushchev: It is hard for me to explain this. You should have told him. Mikoyan knows how to listen, how to pay attention and draw conclusions.

Mao Zedong: Yes, he is a good comrade. We are asking him to come back to us.

N.S. Khrushchev: He is now on vacation.

Mao Zedong: We would welcome a trip by him to China at any time. We thought it necessary to state what we found inappropriate in his speech.

N.S. Khrushchev: His stay in China then [in 1949] was caused by Stalin’s order. Stalin demanded from him reports every day, instructed him to sniff out everything, whether there were spies around you. Stalin was motivated by good intentions, but in his way, in Stalin’s way. Then Stalin insisted on arresting two Americans, and you arrested them. After Stalin’s death Mikoyan said that they were not guilty. We wrote you about it and you released them. You should keep in mind that, at that time, Mikoyan did not do what he wanted, but what Stalin wanted. For instance, [US journalist Anna Louise] Strong was evicted from Moscow, then she was rehabilitated. I believe Stalin did it to prevent her from going to China since he took her for a spy. Now Strong is going to visit China and the USSR. We have no objections, although she wrote stupid things about Stalin and your newspaper published them.

Mao Zedong: I did not read it, but people talk about it.

N.S. Khrushchev: I read and hear that this was the newspaper of the Chinese capitalists.

Mao Zedong: Yes, this newspaper was in the hands of the rightists.

N.S. Khrushchev: The article was directed against the USSR. We even thought to write to you about this, but then decided it was not worth it, if it was a capitalist newspaper.

Mao Zedong: The newspaper belonged to the rightists, now it is in our hands.

N.S. Khrushchev: We have no problems with this, but Strong was mistaken.
Mao Zedong: The direction of the newspaper was erroneous, and now the situation is rectified.
N.S. Khrushchev: This is your business. We also considered the direction of the newspaper to be erroneous. I think the business with Mikoyan is resolved.
Mao Zedong: He is a good comrade. But the ratio in him spawned our remarks. We would like him to come.
N.S. Khrushchev: Among us in the Presidium there is no differences of opinion about our relations, [about relations] between our Parties. We all take joy in your successes as if they were ours. We think that you treat us similarly. We nurture no doubts about this. Now on the specialists. I believe they are like a pimple on a healthy body.
Mao Zedong: I disagree with such a formula.
N.S. Khrushchev: We send thousands of specialists to you. Who can guarantee that all of them give 100% correct advice?
Mao Zedong: It is more than 90% correct.
N.S. Khrushchev: The specialists whom we send know the particulars of their field, but they do not deal with political matters. We cannot even demand that they know the particulars of our relations. If somebody knows about them, then he does not know his trade. So we wrote to you with a request to recall all the specialists. Then you could send your people to us for study.
Mao Zedong: One should take advantage of both ways.
N.S. Khrushchev: But then we have unequal conditions. We do not have your people and you are guaranteed that they do not commit follies.
Mao Zedong: We are not asking you for these guarantees.
N.S. Khrushchev: But you are placing us in an unequal position. We send specialists, they commit follies, and I have to make excuses.
Mao Zedong: You need not bring excuses. We must settle the matter.
N.S. Khrushchev: As if we have no other things to do. Mao Zedong: We are talking here of several people. They are all communists.
N.S. Khrushchev: Not all of them. Some are not communists, and some are expelling from the Party. But even this is not a guarantee against follies.
Mao Zedong: The same can be said about China.
N.S. Khrushchev: We do not take a license only for follies for the Russians. This is an international quality, it can strike all the nations. But the conditions are unfair for us. You can bring complaints about the follies of our specialists, and we do not have your specialists. Therefore, it turns out that only we commit follies.
Mao Zedong: History is to blame for this.
N.S. Khrushchev: And we have to answer for it?
Mao Zedong: You made a revolution first.
N.S. Khrushchev: And should we be blamed for this?
Mao Zedong: That is why you have to send specialists. You will still have to send them to London and other places.
N.S. Khrushchev: Then we will do this jointly and will share responsibility and follies between ourselves.
Mao Zedong: Our criticism concerns only the Soviets from the military field and from the state security, not from the economic field.
N.S. Khrushchev: All among us make mistakes, and among yourselves—nobody. Nobody is guaranteed.
Mao Zedong: These are small mistakes. There is no harm that they give sometimes inappropriate recommendations or suggest unsuitable options for construction.
N.S. Khrushchev: Why do you need advisers on state security? As if you cannot secure things yourselves? You see, this is a political matter.
Mao Zedong: Even as far as military advisers are concerned, we are talking only and exclusively about specific persons, and primarily this concerns the fact that the advisers were replaced often without clearing it with us. Only very few share blame for this.
N.S. Khrushchev: We do not know who works with you and who replaces whom. We cannot bear responsibility for this, we cannot control this.
Mao Zedong: This not your fault. Perhaps the state security apparatus and the military staff should be blamed.
N.S. Khrushchev: But why do you need military advisers? You won such a war, acquired such an experience. Of what use are they to you? Our advisers have been brought up under different conditions.
Mao Zedong: We need specialists in technology.
N.S. Khrushchev: Come to the USSR and study.
Mao Zedong: We are using this form as well and are sending people to you, but it would also be useful to have some specialists come here.
I am talking about individual cases, not about the recall of all of them.
N.S. Khrushchev: We would suggest to discuss this issue together. We were very alarmed by your observation about our workers. We would not like it to cause you to worry.
Mao Zedong: I agree with your opinion. On specific measures in this direction we can talk. We probably should allow most advisers to stay. Some of them we do not need. We will provide you with a list.
N.S. Khrushchev: We would like to get a list of all, so that there are no misunderstandings, since today one can do stupid things, tomorrow it will be another.
Mao Zedong: We are asking [you] to leave them, and you would like to take the advisers.
N.S. Khrushchev: We will do nothing without you.
Mao Zedong: The difference between our workers and your workers is only in citizenship.
N.S. Khrushchev: [I] agree that [it] is a temporary difference. The main thing is to preserve communist ties.
Mao Zedong: Yes. There are contradictions even inside nations. For instance, our working people from the north are not much welcomed in the south of China.
N.S. Khrushchev: I heard that you mentioned in the conversation with Yudin one of our specialists who suggested a caisson-free way of building bridges and who did not find support in our country. I would tell you who did not support him. [Lazar] Kaganovich. What kind of specialist is he? I asked him, why they did not support you? He says—this method has not been used anywhere. But the new is precisely new because it has never been used before.

I have spoken out [and said] everything I wanted. Even a good housewife that keeps things tidy has from time to time to remove fine dust with a damp cloth. And we, too, have to meet from time to time, so that not too much dust accumulates.

Mao Zedong: Absolutely correct.

N.S. Khrushchev: Therefore, when you proposed a meeting, we thought it would be necessary. At first we answered that I cannot come, because we thought there would be a meeting in New York. But when we received the answer from the Westerners it became clear that they were dragging their feet. So we came here immediately. This is the best meeting—useful and pleasant.

Mao Zedong: [It is] very good that we had this conversation. We should not set issues aside. I am proposing to meet and talk without any agenda, if anything comes up or even if there is nothing [urgent]. We always can find something to talk about. There are issues relating to the international situation, what we can undertake in this direction, the situation in some countries; you could inform us about some countries, [and] we could tell you from our side about others. But the issue of a “cooperative” came up suddenly and is an absolutely temporary phenomenon, but because of it I lost my sleep, quarreled with Yudin, did not let you sleep. But at least we struck a balance.

As to Mikoyan, he is a good comrade. All that he has done in China is well done. We will express to him our discontent on some issues, and if he takes it well—good, if he does not—that is also his business. But I had to draw the line in this matter. As to the advisers, we do not have and will not have any problems here. I told both Yudin and all your comrades that the advisers have been doing enormous and useful work and they do it well. We often give instructions along party and administrative channels to local authorities how they should deal with Soviet advisers. We emphasize the need to keep solidarity with them, we point out that they were sent to assist us. 99.9% and perhaps even more of them who stayed here for the last 7 to 8 years are good people and only some individuals do not take up their duties such as they should have done. For instance, from the group of [Soviet military advise] Petrushevskii. But this was his fault, not the fault of his people.

N.S. Khrushchev: But can’t you see that I do not even know him[?]"
Regarding the time of our next meeting there could be a contradiction between us. You work during the day, and I sleep during the day. One could meet in the afternoon after 4.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes, this is a contradiction, but not a conflict.

Mao Zedong: Should we publish a communiqué about our meeting? Perhaps we should scare the imperialists just a bit?

N.S. Khrushchev: Not a bad idea. Let them guess what Khrushchev and Mao Zedong talked about in Beijing. From our side one could assign the work on the communiqué to comrades [Vassily] Kuznetsov, Ponomarev, Fedorenko.

Mao Zedong: From our side there will be comrades Wan Xia Sang and Hu Xiao Mu. We can frighten the imperialists, and they should be frightened.

N.S. Khrushchev: That’s right. Perhaps that is why Stalin did not want to reach a treaty with you, because he thought an attack on China was possible and did not want to get involved into this. We would have helped a little, but without full-scale involvement. But he did not tell anybody about this. We, for instance, had no treaty with Albania. During the discussion of the issue of the Warsaw Pact, Molotov suggested to exclude Albania. I asked Molotov why Albania should not be included. He said—would we fight for it? But if we do not defend [a country], they would capture it without fight.

Mao Zedong: Yes, this is a staunch, hard-boiled nation. They should be assisted.

N.S. Khrushchev: Molotov then objected also to covering the GDR. I believe we should discuss the issue about the reinforcement of Albania. It needs a fleet. On what basis we could do it—cooperation or some other, we will discuss it with [Albanian leader] Enver Xoxha. This is a complicated issue. Maybe some kind of cooperation will be necessary. Please do not blame us for it.

Mao Zedong: Yes, cooperation is needed with Albania, the GDR, Poland, Hungary, but hardly with Czechoslovakia. Do you have troops there?

N.S. Khrushchev: No. Only in Poland and Hungary. When I was in Hungary I offered [Janós] Kádár to withdraw the troops. He disagreed and only consented to the reduction of one division. They deployed our troops along the Austrian border, but the Austrians do not threaten us. I believe that the situation in Hungary is very good. Kádár is a good man.

Mao Zedong: In case of war we should definitely cooperate. Look how many military bases, how many nails are studded around us; in Japan, on Taiwan, in South Korea, [South] Vietnam, Malaya, etc.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes. And how many in Europe? Bases are all around.

[It is] good that we developed [the Soviet] economy, and our scientists helped us build missiles.

Mao Zedong: We all live because of your missiles.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes, to a certain extent this is so, one can say without false modesty. This deters the enemies.

I believe that the situation in the GDR is good.

Mao Zedong: I am of the same opinion. Cde. Dung Bi U characterized the situation there in a similar way.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes, we met with him in Bulgaria and in the GDR.

This was the end of the meeting.

The conversation was recorded by N. Fedorenko and A. Filev.

[Source: Archive of the President of the Russian Federation, fond 52, opis 1, delo 498, ll. 44-477, copy in Dmitry Volkogonov Collection, Manuscript Division, Library of Congress, Washington, DC. Translation from Russian for CWIHP by Vladislav M. Zubok, (National Security Archive).]
military bases are drawn up close to our borders. But their main bases are located far from us, in America. It is difficult for bombers to reach them. But now, with the availability of missile weapons, the correlation of forces has been equalized. We are currently going through difficulties in testing long-range missiles. For this our territory is insufficient.

Mao Zedong: Could you launch them in the direction of the North Pole?

N.S. Khrushchev: But this is exactly the short distance, and in case of war we will fire across the Pole. That is why the Americans offer inspections of the Arctic Zone, so they could detect our missile bases and secure themselves.

Mao Zedong: I read the reply by Eisenhower to your proposal on prevention of surprise attack. It seems to be a decent answer, he seems to be ready to convene a conference of experts on this issue. They are obviously afraid of a surprise attack.

N.S. Khrushchev: I have not seen this letter yet.

Mao Zedong: I would like to agree with you regarding the departure of the delegation. Perhaps we should change the farewell ceremony, to convene the public at the airport, line up the guard of honor, invite the diplomatic corps.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yesterday we seemed to have agreed to arrange the same kind of departure as the arrival. Let our agreement be firm. Thus we will give fewer pretexts for idle gossip [krivotolki]. Otherwise they will write in the West that the arrival was secret, because they did not expect the talks to be successful, that perhaps there were some contradictions between China and the Soviet Union, that then they met, reached agreement and decided to stage a pompous farewell ceremony. Let them better try to solve the riddle, let the very fact of the meeting have an effect.

Mao Zedong: I thought it necessary that your arrival would be in secret so that the imperialists could not use your absence for delivering a surprise attack.

N.S. Khrushchev: I do not think they would have dared to do this; the correlation of forces is not in their favor. Now they had to swallow another bitter pill—to recognize Iraq. But even if they had been prepared for war at 50 percent readiness, they would not have started it even then.

Mao Zedong: Yes, England, of course, would not have started it.

N.S. Khrushchev: Both France and Germany would not have dared it. They know that we can reduce them to dust. The British during the Second World War suffered from German “V-1” and “V-2,” but now these would be toys in comparison with [our] missiles. Everyone knows it.

Mao Zedong: But they have bases everywhere. In Turkey alone more than 100 bases.

N.S. Khrushchev: No, there are fewer bases in Turkey, and even they all are now in our cross-hairs [u nas podpritselom]. They intend to build bases in Greece, but there it is even easier: one can push the boulder from the mountain in Bulgaria—so much for the bases. Even America itself is now under threat of attack.

We should be grateful to our scientists for the creation of the transcontinental missile.51

Mao Zedong: And German scientists, too?

N.S. Khrushchev. No, they participated only in the very beginning. We could not entrust such an important matter to the Germans. Now they all returned to Germany and told their stories about what they had worked on. The Americans believed their stories and decided that we had no transcontinental rockets. When we announced that we tested it, they could not believe. But then we launched sputniks.52 Now Americans already say that Russians themselves built the transcontinental rocket. The newspapers wrote that there are Germans working in America as well, but America did not launch the first sputnik.

Mao Zedong: I still think that your trip abroad for the summit of heads of the states is dangerous. I would advise you to declare that you nominate a deputy in your absence. We all are concerned when you leave the country.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes, there is a certain risk there, particularly if the summit takes place in New York: there are many embittered Hungarians there, and other enemies. Conditions are better in Geneva. I recall an interesting story during the Geneva conference in [July] 1955.

According to the American Constitution, the President’s bodyguards should run ahead of him during his movement in the streets. But the Constitution was developed when people still moved in horse-drawn carriages. Therefore, when Eisenhower came to Geneva and sat in a car, and his bodyguards ran ahead, this made everyone who met him laugh. Then everyone guessed how Khrushchev and Bulganin would behave. And we came to Geneva, sat into an open car and drove across the city. This surprised everyone, because they believed we would be afraid and would move around only in the armor-plated car. True, then we drove in the armor-plated car [bronirovannaya mashina], because, as the Swiss police informed us, there was some kind of a terrorist group, which plotted an attack.

Americans also wrote that Khrushchev would not dare to show himself to people in Hungary. But it is well known what happened during our trip in Hungary. We had to lay a wreath to the monument near the American embassy. I then suggested to Kádár to go to the monument through the crowd, so that Americans could see how people would “tear Khrushchev to pieces.” After this they stopped writing that Hungarians were against the Soviet Union.

Mao Zedong: Stalin refused to go even to Geneva, but I had a different kind of danger in mind.

N.S. Khrushchev: It was a senile defect of mind.

We now do not consider possible the outbreak of war. From time to time we instruct our military to prepare, according to their data, an outline of the situation. Recently they reported that there were no grounds to believe in an
imminent threat of war.

Mao Zedong: Do you think [US Secretary of State John Foster] Dulles will remain in his position?

N.S. Khrushchev: No, he will probably go, although it is better for us if he stays. It is easier to deal with a fool than with a bright person.

Mao Zedong: In your opinion, will [Democratic presidential candidate Adlai] Stevenson become president?

N.S. Khrushchev: He is a more positive personality.

Mao Zedong: Most probably, if the Republican Party stays in power, then [Vice President Richard] Nixon will become President.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes, most probably so. He would be worse than Eisenhower. Eisenhower entered the national [political] arena as a national hero, as a result of the war. As a politician he is not among the best; he lacks political experience. And even as a military officer, he does not shine brightly. At the end of the war the Germans almost defeated him in the Ardennes. Then [Winston] Churchill asked Stalin to come to the assistance of the Western allies.

Mao Zedong: You should not have assisted them then. Maybe as a result there would not have been a West Berlin, and perhaps not even a Western Germany.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes, perhaps today we would have been guests of [French Communist Party leader Maurice] Thorez. But at that moment the situation was different. The Germans surrendered to the Americans without fighting, and offered strong resistance against us. The situation could have turned out in such a way that we would not have captured Berlin. Stalin then reached understanding with Eisenhower and he gave us an opportunity to capture Berlin. During the battle of Vienna, the Germans also ran away from us towards Eisenhower, but he did not accept them as prisoners. So, as you can see, Eisenhower was not devoid of a certain decency. But now he does everything that American monopolists recommend to him.

Mao Zedong says that everything is ready for signing of the communiqué.

N.S. Khrushchev: Good. Let’s sign it.

This was the end of the meeting.

The conversation was recorded by N. Fedorenko, A. Filev.

[Source: Archive of the President of the Russian Federation, f. 52, opis 1, delo 498, ll. 151-156, copy in Volkogonov Papers, Manuscript Division, Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. Translated from Russian for CWIHP by Vladislav M. Zubok (National Security Archive).]
be no war. We do not want war over Taiwan.

Mao Zedong: Taiwan is an internal PRC issue. We say that we will definitely liberate Taiwan. But the roads to liberation may be different—peaceful and military. Zhou Enlai declared at the Bandung conference in 1955 that China is ready to conduct negotiations with the US. In effect, since then there have been talks between Americans and us, first in Geneva, then in Warsaw. At first, the representatives at these talks met once a week, then once every two weeks, and recently once a month. Both sides do not want to derail the talks. For a while the Americans attempted to derail the talks. We declared that it was bad and set the terms for its resumption. The Americans declared that they were also in favor of continuing the talks, but they could not accept the “ultimatum” schedule. We disagreed. Then, after our shelling of the off-shore Chinese islands Quemoy and Matsu, the talks resumed. We Chinese always put forth the following idea at the talks: Americans, please, leave Taiwan, and after that there will not be any problems between us. We would then begin resolving the remaining issues with Jiang Jieshi [Chiang Kai-shek] on the basis of negotiations. Jiang Jieshi does not want the Americans to leave. The US, in turn, is afraid that Jiang Jieshi may establish ties with the PRC. There were military actions in this region but they did not constitute war. In our opinion, let Taiwan and other islands stay in the hands of the Jiang Jieshi-ists [Chiang Kai-shekists] for ten, twenty and even thirty years. We would tolerate it.

N.S. Khrushchev: I would like to say that at the first lunch meeting at the Soviet embassy in the USA, Eisenhower said that they, the Americans, had been negotiating with the PRC for a number of years and there were no results, and that the Chinese did not even agree to liberate five Americans that were in confinement in the PRC, and this complicated the situation and seriously irritated the American people. Moreover, Eisenhower told me, let all the Chinese that live in the US leave, if they like, we will not hold them back. Eisenhower also told me that there was no use for me to go to China.

Mao Zedong: China cannot be equaled with Germany, not only because the population of Taiwan is considerably smaller than the population on the Chinese mainland, but also because China was not a defeated country at the end of World War II, but among the victorious powers. Germany was divided into two states as a result of the Potsdam Agreement. In Korea, the 38th parallel was also established per agreement between Kim Il Sung and us, on one side, and Americans on the other. Vietnam was divided into North and South in accordance with the Geneva agreements. As for Taiwan is concerned, there was no decision on it at any international conference. The appearance of Americans on Taiwan arouses discontent not only in socialist countries, but also in England, in the US itself and other countries.

N.S. Khrushchev: Eisenhower understands this. But the problem is that he must first recognize the Chinese Revolution, and then the Chinese government. And recognize the Revolution is what he does not want.

Mao Zedong: Yes, this is true. The US understand[s] this, but they want to conduct talks in their direction. The US government hinted that the PRC should make a declaration on the non-use of violence in the Taiwan question. The Americans want to receive guarantees on the non-use of arms, but as for them, they intend to do there whatever they want.

N.S. Khrushchev: I did not even know that the PRC holds five Americans in captivity. Is this true? In the conversation with Eisenhower I only said that, as a matter of friendly advice, I could touch on this question in Beijing.

Zhou Enlai: On 1 August 1956, the Americans and we reached an agreement in Geneva according to which Americans who had long lived in the PRC (immigrants), could be returned to the US. However, we stipulated that if these people committed any crime, they could be arrested. Chinese law also stipulates that if a prisoner behaves well in prison, his sentence might be reduced. The second category of people on which agreement was reached to allow them the right of exit from the PRC were prisoners of war. A US plane shot down over China in the area of Andung, not in Korea. 18 US military personnel who were on this plane were taken prisoners. Subsequently we set them all free. You recall that the question of American prisoners of war was discussed by the United Nations, and that in 1955 UN General Secretary Dag Hammarskjold came to the PRC on this business. Following Hammarskjold, [French Prime Minister] Mendes-France also came [to discuss] the same question. Via the British, the Americans informed us that they would like to hold talks with the PRC. We agreed to it and the talks began. We took the initiative and released 13 American prisoners of war. Therefore at the conference in Geneva the Americans had no axe to grind with us. After this there were two more Americans, Fekto and Downey, who were in our prisons; they are the agents of the US Central Intelligence Agency and were caught red-handed. Their plane was shot down when they tried without landing to raise their spies onboard with a special rig. A Chinese court sentenced them to lengthy prison sentences: one to life in prison, the other to 20 years in prison. When Hammarskjold came to the PRC, he said that negotiations about the fate of these Americans was not part of his mission. The remaining three are people who lived permanently in China and were arrested for conducting espionage activities. We had overall something like 90 Americans. Most of them we released and now there are only five persons in prison in the PRC. All of them are spies, and, according to the Chinese law, they are subject to imprisonment. We believe that we, Chinese, let too many Americans go.

N.S. Khrushchev: This is the first time I am hearing about this. But if you want to hear my opinion, we, if we were you, would have acted differently. The Americans who are imprisoned in the PRC should, if you do not take the course on confrontation, either be expelled or traded for
countercultures. Lenin did it at his time and was correct. If one, so to say, would “tease geese,” then, of course, the Americans should be kept in detention. At some point we exchanged [Mattias] Rakosi for one of the Hungarian spies we detained. In a word, in our opinion, the Americans that you hold in prison should better be set free.

Mao Zedong (with obvious displeasure and testily): Of course, one can set them free or not, and we will not release Americans now, but we will do it at a more appropriate time. After all, the Americans sent a large number of our volunteers [who fought in] Korea to Taiwan, and a great deal of the fighters from the PDRK [People’s Democratic Republic of Korea] army they sent to South Korea.

N.S. Khrushchev: Good. This is your internal affair. We do not interfere. But your attitude and the fact that you probably took offense at us complicates the exchange of opinions. I would like to emphasize that I am not a representative of the US and not a mediator on behalf of the Americans. I am a representative of my own Soviet socialist state, the Communist Party of the Soviet Union. If I touched on this issue, I did it only because I wanted to sort it out and to lay before you our point of view, since this issue stirs up the international situation.

Mao Zedong: That means it complicates life for the Americans.

N.S. Khrushchev: This issue also complicates our life. We have more substantial grounds to present our claims to the US. After all, they detain a big number of the so-called displaced persons [peremeschennikh lits]. The weakness of our position stems from the fact that many of these people do not want to return to the USSR. Of course, we did not discuss with the Americans the issue of setting free the Americans who are imprisoned in the PRC. I only promised Eisenhower to raise this question in the form of a friendly advice during my stay in the PRC. And the Americans raised this question only indirectly.

Mao Zedong: The issue of Taiwan is clear, not only will we not touch Taiwan, but also the off-shore islands, for 10, 20 and perhaps 30 years.

N.S. Khrushchev: Taiwan is an inalienable part, a province, of China, and on this principled question we have no disagreements. As for the five Americans, we would resolve it differently. You are saying that you will live without Taiwan for 10, 20, and even 30 years. But here the main issue is about tactics. The Taiwan question creates difficulties not only for the Americans, but also for us. Between us, in a confidential way, we say that we will not fight over Taiwan, but for outside consumption, so to say, we state on the contrary, that in case of an aggravation of the situation because of Taiwan the USSR will defend the PRC. In its turn, the US declare that they will defend Taiwan. Therefore, a kind of pre-war situation emerges.

Mao Zedong: So what should we do then? Should we act as the US says, that is declare the non-use of force in the area of Taiwan and move towards turning this issue into an international issue?

Zhou Enlai: As far as the Taiwan question is concerned, we should draw a clear line between its two aspects: relations between the People’s Republic of China and Taiwan are an internal issue, and relations between China and America regarding the Taiwan issue this is the international aspect of this problem.

N.S. Khrushchev: This is clear, and this is how we spoke with Eisenhower, as you could see from the excerpt of the record of my conversation with the President. To be sure, every question has many sides to it. The main issue—what should be put in the beginning [kakoe poloshit nachalo]. A while ago Lenin created the Far Eastern Republic in the Far East of the Soviet Union, and Lenin recognized its [sovereignty]. Keep in mind that this republic was established on the territory of the Soviet Union. It was unbelievable, but Lenin temporarily put up with this. Later, as it ought to be, the Far Eastern Republic merged with the Soviet Union.

We do not have proposals regarding the Taiwan Question, but we would think you ought to look for ways to relax the situation. We, being your allies, knew about the measures you undertook on the Taiwan Question, and today I am hearing for the first time about some of the tenets of your position in this area. Should it be appropriate for us as allies to exchange opinions on all these questions that might involve not only you, but also your friends into events? We could search for ways to promote the relaxation of international tensions without causing damage to the prestige and sovereign rights of the PRC.

Mao Zedong: Our General Staff informed you about our intentions in the Taiwan Question through your chief military adviser whom we asked to relay everything to the USSR Ministry of Defense. I would like to clarify right away that we did not intend to undertake any large-scale military actions in the area of Taiwan, and only wanted to create complications for the United States considering that they got bogged down in Lebanon. And we believe that our campaign was successful.

N.S. Khrushchev: We hold a different opinion on this question.

Mao Zedong: Although we fire at the off-shore islands, we will not make attempts to liberate them. We also think that the United States will not go to war because of the off-shore islands and Taiwan.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes, Americans will not go to war because of Taiwan and the off-shore islands. We are familiar with the content of the instructions that were given to [John Foster] Dulles when he went to a meeting with Jiang Jieshi. 53 If you are interested to see this document, we can show it to you. As for the firing at the off-shore islands, if you shoot, then you ought to capture these islands, and if you do not consider necessary capturing these islands, then there is no use in firing. I do not understand this policy of yours. Frankly speaking, I thought you would take the islands and was upset when I learned that you did not take them. Of course, this is your
business, but I am speaking about it as an ally.

Mao Zedong: We informed you about our intentions regarding Taiwan a month ahead, before we began shelling the off-shore islands.

N.S. Khrushchev: He reported to us not about your policy on this issue, but about some separate measures. We expressed our position, and now it is your business, whether to agree with us or not. We do not quite understand your policy in international issues. The issues of international policy we must coordinate. You perhaps should think if it is necessary to exchange opinions through the channels of foreign ministries on major political issues where we have no agreement.

Mao Zedong: As I already said, we informed you about our intentions through your General Staff. However, I would like to know what is your opinion on what we ought to do.

N.S. Khrushchev: We stand for relaxation of tensions. We only wanted the people to understand that we stand for peace. It is not worth shelling the islands in order to tease cats.

Mao Zedong: This is our policy. Our relations with Jiang Jieshi and with the Americans—are two different things. With the United States we will seek to resolve issues by peaceful means. If the United States does not leave Taiwan, then we will negotiate with them until they go from there. The relationship with Jiang Jieshi is our internal question and we might resolve it not only by peaceful, but also other methods. As far as the creation of the Far Eastern republic is concerned, and also the fact that at some point Lithuania, Latvia and Estonia were separated from the Soviet Union, you should keep in mind that in these cases there was no foreign intervention.

N.S. Khrushchev: The issue of Lithuania, Latvia and Estonia, Poland, Georgia, Armenia - this is an issue of a completely different nature. This is an issue of national self-determination. As for the Far Eastern republic, it was part of Russia.

Mao Zedong: The Taiwan Question is very complex.

N.S. Khrushchev: We have a common understanding of the question of Taiwan. At the present time there is only a difference on the question of tactics. You always refuse to work out a policy on this question that we could understand. You might think that we interfere into your internal affairs, but we only express our considerations. In this regard I would remark that we do not know what kind of policy you will have on this issue tomorrow.

Mao Zedong: We do not want war with the United States.

N.S. Khrushchev: One should not pose the issue this way. Neither you nor I want war—this is well known. The problem is that not only does the world public opinion not know what you might undertake tomorrow, but also even we, your allies, do not know it.

Mao Zedong: There could be two ways here. The first of them—to do what the Americans demand, i.e. to provide a guarantee on the non-use of force regarding Taiwan. The Americans long ago posed the question and told us about it via Eden as early as March 1955. The second way is to draw a clear line between our relations with the United States and the relations with the Jiang-Jieshi-ists. As to the relations with Jiang Jieshi, here any means should be used, since the relations with Jiang Jieshi are our internal matter.

After a one-hour break the exchange of opinions resumed.

Mao Zedong: What should we do?
Zhou Enlai: We should continue.
Mao Zedong: To do what the Americans propose is not too good for us. And the Americans do not want to reciprocate, to do what we want.

N.S. Khrushchev: You are leaving us in an awkward position. You frame the question as if we support the position of Americans, while we stand on our Soviet communist position.

Mao Zedong: Perhaps we should postpone this question indefinitely. Everyone sees that we are not close to the United States and that the United States, not us, send[s] its fleet to our coast.

N.S. Khrushchev: One should keep in mind that we also are not without sin. It was we who drew the Americans to South Korea. We should undertake such steps that would allow the Americans to respond with their steps in the direction of a relaxation of the situation. We should seek ways of relaxing the situation, to seek ways to ameliorate the situation. You know that when the events in Hungary took place, our hand did not waver to deliver a decisive crack-down on the counterrevolution. Comrade Liu Shaoqi was then with us and we together resolved this question. If it becomes necessary again, then we will carry out one more time our internationalist communist duty, and you should have no doubts about it. We would think that one should work out a whole system, a staircase of measures, and in such a way that people would understand us. After Stalin’s death we achieved a lot. I could tell about a number of points on which I disagreed [with Stalin]. What did Stalin leave for us? There were [anti-aircraft] artillery around Moscow that was ready to open fire any moment. We expected an attack at any minute. We succeeded in liquidating such a situation and we are proud of this. Keep in mind that we achieved [the present-day] situation without giving up on any principled positions. We raised this issue also because we do not understand your position, do not understand in particular your conflict with India. We had a dispute with Persia on border issues for 150 years. 3-4 years ago we resolved this issue by transferring to Persia some part of our territory. We consider this issue as follows: five kilometers more land we have or five kilometers less—this is not important. I take Lenin’s example, and he gave to Turkey Kars, Ardahan and Ararat. And until today area a part of the population in the Caucasus are displeased by these measures by Lenin. But I believe that his actions were correct. I am telling about all this to show you that for us this territorial issue was not
insurmountable. You have had good relations with India for many years. Suddenly, here is a bloody incident, as result of which [Prime Minister of India Jawaharlal] Nehru found himself in a very difficult position. We may say that Nehru is a bourgeois statesman. But we know about it. If Nehru leaves, who would be better than him? The Dalai Lama fled from Tibet, he is a bourgeois figure. This issue is also not clear for us. When the events in Hungary took place, then Nehru was against us, and we did not take offense at him, because we did not expect anything from him as a bourgeois statesman. But although he was against it, this did not prevent us from preserving good relations with him. If you let me, I will tell you what a guest should not say—the events in Tibet are your fault. You ruled in Tibet, you should have had your intelligence [agencies] there and should have known about the plans and intentions of the Dalai Lama.

Mao Zedong: Nehru also says that the events in Tibet occurred on our fault. Besides, in the Soviet Union they published a TASS declaration on the issue of conflict with India.

N.S. Khrushchev: Do you really want us to approve of your conflict with India? It would be stupid on our part. The TASS declaration was necessary. You still seem to be able to see some difference between Nehru and me. If we had not issued the TASS declaration, there could have been an impression that there was a united front of socialist countries against Nehru. The TASS declaration turned this issue into one between you and India.

Mao Zedong: Our mistake was that we did not disarm the Dalai Lama right away. But at that time we had no contact with the popular masses of Tibet.

N.S. Khrushchev: You have no contact even now with the population of Tibet.

Mao Zedong: We have a different understanding of this issue.

N.S. Khrushchev: Of course, that is why we raised this issue. One could also say the following: both you and we have Koreans who fled from Kim Il Sung. But this does not give us ground to spoil relations with Kim II Sung, and we remain good friends. As to the escape of the Dalai Lama from Tibet, if we had been in your place, we would not have let him escape. It would be better if he was in a coffin. And now he is in India, and perhaps will go to the USA. Is this to the advantage of the socialist countries?

Mao Zedong: This is impossible; we could not arrest him then. We could not bar him from leaving, since the border with India is very extended, and he could cross it at any point.

N.S. Khrushchev: It’s not a matter of arrest; I am just saying that you were wrong to let him go. If you allow him an opportunity to flee to India, then what has Nehru to do with it? We believe that the events in Tibet are the fault of the Communist Party of China, not Nehru’s fault.

Mao Zedong: No, this is Nehru’s fault.

N.S. Khrushchev: Then the events in Hungary are not our fault, but the fault of the United States of America, if I understand you correctly. Please, look here, we had an army in Hungary, we supported that fool Rakosi—and this is our mistake, not the mistake of the United States.

Mao Zedong: How can you compare Rakosi to the Dalai Lama?

N.S. Khrushchev: If you like, you can to a certain degree.

Mao Zedong: The Hindus acted in Tibet as if it belonged to them.

N.S. Khrushchev: We know. As you know, Nepal wanted to have a Soviet ambassador, but we did not send there for a long time. You did the same. This is because Nehru did not want that Soviet and Chinese ambassadors were there. This should not come as a surprise—nothing else can be expected from Nehru. But this should not be a grounds for us for breaking off the relations.

Mao Zedong: We also support Nehru, but in the question of Tibet we should crush him.

N.S. Khrushchev: Why did you have to kill people on the border with India?

Mao Zedong: They attacked us first, crossed the border and continued firing for 12 hours.

Zhou Enlai: What data do you trust more—Indian or ours?

N.S. Khrushchev: Although the Hindus attacked first, nobody was killed among the Chinese, and only among the Hindus.

Zhou Enlai: But what we are supposed to do if they attack us first. We cannot fire in the air. The Hindus even crossed the McMahon line. Besides, in the nearest future [Indian] Vice President [Savarepalli] Radhakrishnan comes to China. This is to say that we are undertaking measures to resolve the issue peacefully, by negotiations. In my letter of 9 September to Nehru we provided detailed explanations of all that had occurred between India and us.

N.S. Khrushchev: Comrade Zhou Enlai. You have been Minister of Foreign Affairs of the PRC for many years and know better than me how one can resolve disputed issues without [spilling] blood. In this particular case I do not touch at all the issue of the border, for if the Chinese and the Hindus do not know where the borderline goes between them, it is not for me, a Russian, to meddle. I am only against the methods that have been used.

Zhou Enlai: We did not know until recently about the border incident, and local authorities undertook all the measures there, without authorization from the center. Besides, we are talking here about three disputed regions between China and India. The Hindus were the first to cross the McMahon line and were the first to open fire. No government of China ever recognized the McMahon line. If, for instance, the Finns attacked the borders of the USSR, wouldn’t you retaliate?

M.A. Suslov: We do not have claims against the Finnish government.

N.S. Khrushchev: That the center knew nothing about the incident is news to me. I would tell you, what I was against. On 22 June 1941 Germans began their assault
against the Soviet Union. Stalin forbade opening fire in response, and the instruction to open fire was sent only after some time. As Stalin explained, it might have been a provocation. Of course, it was Stalin’s mistake. He simply got cold feet [on strusil]. But this case is absolutely different.

Zhu De: Hindus crossed the McMahon line that tears away 90 thousand square kilometers from China.

Chen Yi: After the revolt in Tibet there were several anti-Chinese, anti-communist campaigns in India. There were demonstrations against our Embassy in Dehli and the consulate in Calcutta; their participants reviled the leaders of the PRC and shouted anti-Chinese slogans. We did nothing like that, and the Indian Ambassador in the PRC had not the slightest pretext to claim [that we] were unfriendly.

N.S. Khrushchev: Our Soviet representatives abroad had much more fallen on them than yours. Since the establishment of our state not a few of Soviet ambassadors were killed abroad. And in the Soviet Union only a German ambassador was killed in 1918. True, at some point the windows in the embassies of the United States and Federal Republic of Germany were broken, but we organized it ourselves.

Chen Yi: Speaking of the effectiveness of efforts to pull Nehru to our side, our method will be more efficient, and yours is time-serving [opportunism-prisposoblenchestvo].

N.S. Khrushchev: Chen Yi is Minister of Foreign Affairs and he can weigh his words. He did not say it at random. We have existed for 42 years, and for 30 years we existed alone [as a socialist country] and adjusted to nothing, but carried out our principled communist policy.

Chen Yi (in great agitation and hastily): The Chinese people evoked pity for a long time and during many decades lived under oppression of British, American, French and other imperialists. The Soviet comrades should understand this. We are now undertaking certain measures to resolve the conflict with India peacefully, and just one fact testifies to this, that perhaps Vice President of India Radhakrishnan will come to us in mid-October. We also have a certain element of time-serving. You should understand our policy correctly. Our line is firmer and more correct.

N.S. Khrushchev: Look at this lefty. Watch it, comrade Chen Yi, if you turn left, you may end up going to the right. The oak is also firm, but it breaks. I believe that we should leave this issue aside, for we have a different understanding of it.

Zhou Enlai: Comrade Khrushchev, even the Hindus themselves do not know what and how it occurred on the Indo-Chinese border.

Lin Biao: During the war between the Soviet Union and Fascist Germany, the Soviet Army routed the fascists and entered Berlin. This does not mean that the Soviet Union began the war.

N.S. Khrushchev: It is not for me, a lieutenant-general, to teach you, comrade Marshal.

M.A. Suslov: Comrade Lin Biao, you are trying to compare incomparable things. During the Patriotic War millions of people were killed, and here is a trivial incident.

Zhou Enlai: The Hindus did not withdraw their troops from where they had penetrated. We seek peaceful resolution of the conflict and suggested and do suggest to resolve it piece by piece.

N.S. Khrushchev: We agree with all that you are doing. It is what you have done before that we disagree with.

Zhou Enlai: The Hindus conducted large-scale anti-Chinese propaganda for 40 years until this provocation. They were the first to cross the border; they were the first to open fire. Could one still consider under these circumstances that we actually unleashed this incident?

N.S. Khrushchev: We are communists, and they are like Noah’s Ark. You, comrade Zhou Enlai, understand it as well as I do.

M.A. Suslov: Noah’s Ark in a sense that they have a pair of every creature.

Peng Zhen (in hasty agitation): Nasser has been abusing without reason the Soviet Union that delivers to him unconditional assistance. Here we should keep in mind the reactionary aspects of the national bourgeoisie. If you, Soviet comrades, can lash out at the national bourgeoisie, why we cannot do the same?

N.S. Khrushchev: Nobody says you cannot lash out—but shooting is not the same as criticism.

Peng Zhen: The McMahon line is a dirty line that was not recognized by any government in China.

N.S. Khrushchev: There are three of us here, and nine of you, and you keep repeating the same line. I think this is to no use. I only wanted to express our position. It is your business—to accept it or not.

Mao Zedong: The border conflict with India - this is only a marginal border issue, not a clash between the two governments. Nehru himself is not aware what happened there. As we found out, their patrols crossed the McMahon line. We learned about this much later, after the incident took place. All this was known neither to Nehru, nor even to our military district in Tibet. When Nehru learned that their patrols had crossed the MacMahon line, he issued the instruction for them to withdraw. We also carried out the work towards peaceful resolution of the issue.

N.S. Khrushchev: If this had been done immediately after the skirmish, the conflict would not have taken place. Besides, you failed to inform us for a rather long time about the border incident.

Liu Shaoqi: On 6 September I informed you through comrade [Soviet charge d’affaires in Beijing Sergei F.] Antonov about the situation on the border. Earlier we could not inform you, since we still had not figured it out ourselves.

Zhou Enlai: The TASS announcement was published before you received my letter to Nehru. It was passed to comrade Antonov on the afternoon of 9 September.
M.A. Suslov: It was probably done simultaneously, considering that the time difference between Moscow and Beijing is 5 hours.

A.A. Gromyko: The ambassador of India in the USSR told me that the Chinese letter not only fails to make things calmer, but also actually throws everything back.

M.A. Suslov: At the present moment the temperature has fallen and we can let this issue alone.

Mao Zedong: We could not keep the Dalai Lama, for we may not. There are even some members of the CC who have left also.

M.A. Suslov: Not only, but also thanks to the decision of your parliament.

Liu Shaoqi: On 6 September I passed a message to you via comrade Antonov that within a week [we] would deliver retaliation to the Hindus.

M.A. Suslov: The decision of your parliament was considerably softer than your Note.

Peng Zhen: The delegates of the All-Chinese Assembly of People’s Deputies asked me how one should understand the TASS announcement, was it that the senior brother, without finding out what was right and who was wrong, gave a beating to the PRC and India.

Wang Ixia-Sang: But the first who began to fire were the Hindus, not us.

N.S. Khrushchev: Yes, they began to shoot and they themselves fell dead. Our duty is to share with you our considerations on the incident, for nobody besides us would tell you about it.

Zhou Enlai: There could be disputes and unresolved issues between the CCP and the CPSU, but for the outside consumption we always underline unity with the Soviet Union.

Lin Biao: The Hindus began to shoot first and they fired for 12 hours, until they spent all their ammunition. There could be a different approach to this issue, one to which you expressed your observations to us in a confidential manner. And you this time expressed them in a more strictly confidential manner. And you this time expressed them in a still more strictly confidential manner. And you this time expressed them in a still more strictly confidential manner.

Mao Zedong (peevishly). The temperature has fallen considerably softer than your Note.

N.S. Khrushchev: This is good. But the issue is not about the line. We know nothing about this line and we do not even want to know.

Mao Zedong: The border issue with India will be decided through negotiations.

N.S. Khrushchev: We welcome this intention.

Zhou Enlai: On 22 January you suggested to Nehru to conduct talks on the border issues. Then he disagreed with this. Today he agrees.

Mao Zedong: You attached to us two labels—the conflict with India was our fault, and that the escape of the Dalai Lama was also our error. We, in turn, attached to you one label—time-servers. Please accept it.

N.S. Khrushchev: We do not accept it. We take a principled communist line.

Mao Zedong: The TASS announcement made all imperialists happy.

M.A. Suslov: Precisely on the contrary. This announcement and our recent measures promoted the relaxation of the situation. The imperialists would have been happy, had the relations between India and China been spoiled. We have the information that Americans approached Nehru and offered him their services regarding the conflict between India and China. Our steps cooled the hot expectations of the reactionaries.

Lin Biao: The whole issue is about who was first to shoot, not who was killed.

Zhou Enlai: It follows from your reasoning that, if burglars break into your house and you beat them up, then you are guilty.

N.S. Khrushchev: Why may you criticize us, and the senior brother may not censure you. At one meeting with cde. Yudin you, comrade Mao Zedong, very sharply criticized the CPSU, and we accepted this criticism. Moreover, you left the session at the 8th Congress of the CCP during the speech of comrade [Anastas] Mikoyan. This was a demonstrative gesture, and Mikoyan could have left also.

In fact, I can also pack my suitcases and leave, but I am not doing it. When the events in Hungary took place, comrade Zhou Enlai came to us and lectured us. He blamed us both for Bessarabia and for the Baltic countries. We received this lesson. It turns out that you may censure us, and we may not. There are even some members of the CC CPSU Presidium back home who say the following: there is a formula “the socialist camp headed by the Soviet Union,” but in reality one lacks even respect for observations of the CPSU. Aren’t you talking to us too haughtily?

Mao Zedong: We expressed our observations to you in a confidential manner. And you this time expressed them in the same order. This is good. This will serve the right cause. But when you took a public stand (I have in mind the TASS announcement) this was not good.
A.A. Gromyko: The TASS announcement did nothing to push India away from the People’s Republic of China (reads an excerpt).

Peng Zhen: We also must speak out. The Hindus were really the first ones to cross the border, to start shooting, they continued shooting for 12 hours. Comrade Mao Zedong has just said that nobody knew precisely what actually occurred on the Sino-Indian border.

N.S. Khrushchev: You do not tolerate objections, you believe you are orthodox, and this is where our haughtiness reveals itself. Chen Yi attached to us a label, and it is a political label. What ground does he have to do this?

Chen Yi: The TASS announcement was in support of India, in support of the bourgeoisie.

N.S. Khrushchev: You want to subjugate us to yourselves, but nothing will come out of it, we are also a party and we have our own way, and we are not time-servers towards anybody.

Mao Zedong: And what is then our way?

N.S. Khrushchev: We always believed and believe that you and we take one road and we regard you as our best friends.

Mao Zedong: I cannot understand what constitutes our mistake? Kerensky and Trotsky also escaped from you.

N.S. Khrushchev: The Dalai Lama escaped, and you are not guilty? Well, there were also similar mistakes and facts on our side. True, when we allowed Kerensky to escape from the USSR, it was our mistake, but one should keep in mind that this happened literally in the first days of the revolution. Lenin freed on parole generals Krasnov and Kaledin. As for Trotsky, it was Stalin who expelled him. Nehru may go over to the USA. He is among our fellow-travelers who go with us when it is to their advantage. When we delivered assistance to Nasser, we knew that he might turn against us. We gave him credits for construction of the high-altitude Aswan dam. This is tactics. Had we not given him this credit, Nasser would have ended up in America’s embrace.

Mao Zedong: You only see our “threatening gestures,” and fail to see the other side—our struggle to pull Nehru over to our side.

N.S. Khrushchev: We are not confident that Nasser will hold out with us for long. There is only a very fine thread connecting us and it can break off at any moment.

Chen Yi: I am outraged by your declaration that “the aggravation of relationship with India was our fault.”

N.S. Khrushchev: I am also outraged by your declaration that we are time-servers. We should support Nehru, to help him stay in power.

Mao Zedong: The events in Tibet and the border conflict—these are temporary developments. Better that we end here the discussion of these issues. Could we assess the relationship between us as follows, that on the whole we are united, and some differences do not stand in the way of our friendship?

N.S. Khrushchev: We took and do take this view.

Mao Zedong: I would like to introduce a clarification—I never attended the session at the 8th Congress when comrade Mikoyan spoke. I would like to speak to Mikoyan personally.

N.S. Khrushchev: You skipped that session precisely because Mikoyan spoke there. Zhou Enlai once delivered to us a fair lecture. He is a good lecturer, but I disagree with the content of his lecture.

Liu Shaoqi: We never told anybody about our disagreements, not to even any fraternal party.

N.S. Khrushchev: This is good, this is correct. You gave us the first lesson, we heard you, and you must now listen to us. Take back your political accusations; otherwise we spoil relations between our parties. We are your friends and speak the truth. We never acted as time-servers with regard to anybody, even our friends.

Chen Yi: But you also lay two political accusations at our door, by saying that both the aggravations of relations with India and the escape of Dalai Lama were our fault. I believe that you are still acting as time-servers.

N.S. Khrushchev: These are completely different matters. I drew your attention only to specific oversights and never hurled at you principled political accusations, and you put forth precisely a political accusation. If you consider us time-servers, comrade Chen Yi, then do not offer me your hand. I will not accept it.

Chen Yi: Neither will I. I must tell you I am not afraid of your fury.

N.S. Khrushchev: You should not spit from the height of your Marshal title. You do not have enough spit. We cannot be intimidated. What a pretty situation we have: on one side, you use the formula “headed by the Soviet Union,” on the other hand, you do not let me say a word. What kind of equality we can talk about? That is why we raised the question at the 21st Congress of the CPSU about the repeal of the formula “the socialist camp headed by the Soviet Union.” We do not want any Party to stand at the head. All communist parties are equal and independent. Otherwise one is in a false situation.

Mao Zedong (in a conciliatory manner): Chen Yi speaks about particulars, and you should not generalize.

Wang Jiaxiang: The whole matter is about wrong translation. Chen Yi did not speak of time-serving as some kind of doctrine.

N.S. Khrushchev: We shot down not only one American plane and always said that they crash by themselves. This you cannot brand as time-serving.

M.A. Suslov: Now you are moving toward negotiations between you and India. This is good.

A.A. Gromyko: Is there a need that the PRC makes a declaration that would promote a relaxation in the situation? I am making a reservation that I am saying this without a preliminary exchange of opinions with cde. Khrushchev.

Zhou Enlai: There is no need to make such a declaration. We informed the Hindus that Vice President Radhakrishnan might come to us at his convenience in the
period from 15 October until 1 December.

N.S. Khrushchev: I would also like to express an idea that has materialized just now with regard to the question of the visit of the Vice President. Would there be no bewilderment, if it were the Vice President, and not the President and Prime Minister [i.e., Nehru], to come to the PRC?

Zhou Enlai: The Hindus themselves offered the candidacy of Radhakrishnan. The President and Prime Minister of India sent us best wishes on the 10th anniversary of the PRC. In reply to the address we will remind them again about the invitation of Radhakrishnan to come to the PRC.

Mao Zedong: “Pravda” published only an abridged version of Zhou Enlai’s letter to Nehru, and the TASS announcement was published in full. Perhaps we now stop discussing this issue and shift to Laos?

N.S. Khrushchev: Good, let us do this, but I have not a slightest interest in this matter, for this is a very insignificant matter, and there is much noise around it. Today Ho Chi Minh came to see us and had a conversation with us about Laos. I sent him to you, for you should be more concerned with this. During the events in Hungary and Poland cdes. Liu Shaoqi and Zhou Enlai came to us. Cde. Liu Shaoqi and I held different, sometimes diametrically opposed positions. During several days we could not work out a common opinion. Our positions shifted, but then we reached agreement and resolved the matter well.

Mao Zedong: We are against an escalation of fire in Laos.

N.S. Khrushchev: We are also against it.

Liu Shaoqi: The Minister of Defense of the Democratic Republic of Vietnam has a plan to expand the struggle in Laos. Ho Chi Minh is against this plan, against an expansion of military activities. We support his stand.

N.S. Khrushchev: We should not expand military actions in Laos, for in this case the Americans will come. Then they will stand on the border with the Democratic Republic of Vietnam and will certainly undertake provocations against the DRV. Therefore, they will be located in the immediate vicinity of the DRV, while we are removed quite substantially from the DRV. If the situation gets complicated there, the Americans could very quickly crush the DRV and we would not have time to undertake anything. In our opinion, we should advise the Vietnamese comrades not to expand military actions in Laos.

Mao Zedong: Here we are in a complete agreement with you. We are in general against not only expansion of military actions in Laos, but also for preservation of the status quo in the area of Taiwan. I would like to repeat that in August 1958, when we began shelling the off-shore islands Jimmen [Quemoy] and Matsu, we did not intend at all to undertake any kind of large-scale military actions there.

Present at the conversation were Provisional Chargé d’Affaires of the USSR in the PRC, S.F. Antonov, Attaché of the Far Eastern Division of the Foreign Ministry of the USSR, R.Sh. Kudashev, and from the Chinese side—interpreters Yan Min Fu and Li Yue Zhen. The conversation was recorder by S.F Antonov and R.Sh. Kudashev.

Signature: S. Antonov, 3 October 1959
R. Kudashev, 3 October 1959

[Source: Archive of the President of the Russian Federation, f. 52, op. 1, d. 499, ll. 1-33, copy in Volkogonov Collection, Manuscript Division, Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. Translation from Russian for CWIHP by Vladislav M. Zubok (National Security Archive).]

Vladislav M. Zubok is a senior fellow at the National Security Archive.


3 Dmitri Volkogonov, Sem Vozhdei: Galereia liderov SSSR. Kniga 1 [Seven Leaders. The Gallery of the Leaders of the USSR. Volume 1] (Moscow: Novosti, 1995), pp. 412-


6 Jonathan D. Spence asserts that “the Soviets were making China pay dearly for aid in industrial development, and one reason China needed an even greater agricultural surplus was to meet the terms for repayment of Soviet loans,” The Search for Modern China (New York: Norton, 1990), p. 575 The Note of Yu.V. Andropov to the CC CPSU, 17 May 1958, Russian State Archive of Contemporary History [Rossiiskii Gosudarstvennyi Arkhiv Noveishoi Istoriyi] f.5 op. 49, d. 128, l. 60


9 Interview with Feodor V. Mochulsky, Moscow, 9 July 1992.

10 Interview with Feodor V. Mochulsky, Moscow, 9 July 1992.


15 In some ways this anti-Sovietism was as “natural” (or irrational, depending on the perspective) as the anti-Americanism of the French after the Second World War. As a historian comments on the latter, “the French, intellectuals especially, resented the very fact that they had been liberated by the Americans, resented their humiliated postwar status and more particularly the need to go cap in hand to Washington for assistance with French reconstructions.” Tony Judt, Past Imperfect: French Intellectuals, 1944-1956 (Berkeley, CA: University of California Press, 1992), p. 195.


25 Anastas Mikoyan, Tak bilo; razmishleniia o minuvshem [As It Was: Reflections on the Past] (Moscow: Vagrius, 1999), p. 598.


29 The text of the letter is cited by M.Y. Prozumenschikov, “The Sino-Indian Conflict,” p. 251, but the words cited in our text came from the report of Mikhail Suslov at the CC CPSU Plenum, 18 December 1959, RGANI, f. 2, op. 1, d. 415, l. 30.


33 From the diary of S.F. Antonov, “Record of conversation with Mao Zedong on 14 October 1959,” RGANI, f. 5, op. 49, d. 233, ll. 86-95.

34 RGANI, f. 2, op. 1, d. 415, ll. 43-44, translated and

44 Valentin Falin, Politische Erinnerungen (München: Droemer Knaur, 1993), p. 239, and the Russian-language version Bez skidki na obstoialetstva: politicheskie vospominaniia [Making no allowance for circumstances: political reminiscences] (Moscow: Respublika-

45 Pavel Yudin was Soviet ambassador to the PRC in 1950-1958.
46 For Chinese records of these conversations see Chen Jian and Shuguang Zhang, eds., Chinese Communist Foreign Policy and the Cold War in Asia: New Documentary Evidence, 1944-1950; with a preface by Warren I. Cohen (Chicago: Imprint Publications, 1996).
47 Reference to the Lebanon Crisis of 1958. One day after the violent overthrow of the pro-Western government of Nuri al Said in Iraq on 14 July, US President Eisenhower sent US marines to Beirut in support of the Government of President Camille Chamoun’s regime.
48 This was stipulated in secret agreements attached to the Sino-Soviet Treaty for Friendship and Cooperation signed in Moscow on 14 February 1950.
49 Yudin fell ill on 30 July.
50 Editor’s Note: Reference to the 1956 Soviet military suppression of the Hungarian Revolution.
51 Editor’s Note: Inter-continental ballistic missile, or ICBM, first tested by the USSR in 1957.
52 Editor’s Note: Artificial satellites, first launched by the USSR in October 1957.
Le Duan and the Break with China

Introduction by Stein Tønnesson

The decision of the Cold War International History Project to publish Christopher E. Goscha’s translation of Secretary General Le Duan’s long 1979 statement about Sino-Vietnamese relations is a significant event. Until now, few Vietnamese documents of this kind have been made available to scholars. The latter tend therefore to analyze the two Indochina Wars and their role in the Cold War as a power game between Western powers, the Soviet Union and China, and to overlook Vietnamese perspectives. Goscha’s translation brings one such perspective into the scholarly debate.

Goscha, a researcher with the Groupe d’Etudes sur le Vietnam contemporain (Sciences Politiques, Paris), consulted the document in the People’s Army Library in Hanoi, copied it by hand, and translated it into English. He did so with full authorization. The text is undated, and the author’s name is just given as “Comrade B.” The content implies, however, that it was written in 1979, most probably between the Chinese invasion of northern Vietnam in February 1979 and the publication of the Vietnamese White Book about Sino-Vietnamese relations on 4 October of the same year. It seems likely that the text was composed shortly after Deng Xiaoping’s decision on 15 March 1979 to withdraw the Chinese troops from their punitive expedition into northern Vietnam, but before the defection to China of the veteran Vietnamese communist leader Hoang Van Hoan in July 1979.

How can we know that the man behind the text is Le Duan? In it, “comrade B” reveals that during a Politburo meeting in the Vietnamese Workers’ Party (VWP, the name of the Vietnamese Communist Party from 1951 to 1976) he was referred to as Anh Ba (Brother Number Three), an alias we know was used by Le Duan. The document also refers frequently to high level meetings between Chinese and Vietnamese leaders where the author (referred to in the text as “I,” in Vietnamese toi) represented the Vietnamese side in an authoritative way that few others than he could have done. We know Le Duan did not write much himself, and the document has an oral style (a fact that has made its translation extremely difficult). It thus seems likely that the text is either a manuscript dictated by Le Duan to a secretary, or detailed minutes written by someone attending a high-level meeting where Le Duan made the statement.

The document can be used by the historian to analyze:

a) Le Duan’s ideas and attitudes, b) the situation within the socialist camp in 1979, c) the record of Le Duan’s relations with China in the period 1952–79.

From a scholarly point of view it is safest to use the text for the first and the second purposes since the document can then be exploited as an artifact, a textual residue from the past that the historian seeks to reconstruct. As such it illuminates the views and attitudes of Vietnam’s top leader in the crisis year 1979, and also some aspects of the situation within the socialist camp at that particular juncture. To use the text as a source to the earlier history of Le Duan’s relations with China (the topic addressed in the text) is more problematic, since what Le Duan had to say in 1979 was deeply colored by rage. Thus he is likely to have distorted facts, perhaps even made up stories. As a source to events in the period 1952–79, the document must therefore be treated with tremendous caution, and be held up against other available sources. Two similar sources, resulting from the same kind of outrage, are the official white books published by Vietnam and China towards the end of 1979. A third source, with a series of documents from the years 1964–77, is Working Paper No. 22, published by the Cold War International History Project in 1998, 77 Conversations Between Chinese and Foreign Leaders on the Wars in Indochina, 1964–1977, edited by an international group of historians: Odd Arne Westad, Chen Jian, Stein Tønnesson, Nguyen Vu Tung, and James G. Hershberg. This collection contains 77 minutes of conversations—or excerpts of such minutes—between Chinese, Vietnamese and other leaders in the period 1964–77 (presumably taken down during or shortly after each conversation, but compiled, excerpted and possibly edited at later stages). The collection includes several conversations in which Le Duan took part. The editors of the 77 Conversations write that the minutes have been compiled from “archival documents, internal Communist party documentation, and open and restricted publications from China and other countries” (emphasis here). The editors do not tell which of the minutes were written, excerpted and compiled in China and which in “other countries.” It would seem possible that some of these minutes were used as background material for the preparation of the white books in 1979, at least on the Chinese side. This would mean that the sources just mentioned are not altogether independent of each other. This fact and the obscure origin of the 77 minutes means that they too must be treated with caution. Their main function may be to offer clues to what the historian should look for when given access to the archives of the Chinese and Vietnamese Communist Parties.

Le Duan’s attitude

What does the text reveal about its originator, Le Duan? A striking feature of the text is its directness and the way in which the author comes across as an individual. This is not the normal kind of party document, where individual attitudes and emotions are shrouded in institutionalized rhetoric. Le Duan seems to have addressed himself to a small group of party leaders, with...
the purpose of justifying his own actions vis-à-vis China and ensuring support for maintaining a hard line towards Chinese pressures, possibly fighting another great war. Le Duan speaks of himself as “I,” (toi) identifies each of his interlocutors on the Chinese side by name, and expresses his emotions towards Mao Zedong, Zhou Enlai, Deng Xiaoping and other Chinese leaders. The author really likes the word “I,” and uses it even when referring to his talks with Ho Chi Minh. This is surprising since using toi in relation to conversations with the Uncle (Bac), would probably be considered arrogant, even for people who worked closely with him. The proper term in that connection would perhaps be “Chau.” Throughout the document, it is Le Duan who does everything. The style is oral. It seems possible that the one who wrote down the text later deposited the document in the Army Library.

Despite the refreshing directness of the text, there is one thing the author almost does not do. He does not speak openly about internal disagreements among the Vietnamese leaders. The only other leaders mentioned by name are Ho Chi Minh and Nguyen Chi Thanh, who had both passed away long before 1979. There is not a word about Vo Nguyen Giap, Pham Van Dong, Nguyen Duy Trinh, Xuan Thuy, Hoang Van Hoan, or any of the others who had played prominent roles in Hanoi’s tortuous relations with Beijing. Internal disagreements on the Vietnamese side are only mentioned on one occasion. Le Duan claims that everyone in the Politburo always was of the same mind, but that there had been one person who rose to question the Politburo, asking why Le Duan had talked about the need to not be afraid of the Chinese. On that occasion, says Le Duan, the one who stood up to support Anh Ba, was Nguyen Chi Thanh (the army commander in southern Vietnam, who had often been considered a supporter of Chinese viewpoints before his untimely death in 1967). The “comrade” asking the impertinent question was no doubt Hoang Van Hoan, and the fact that he is not mentioned by name may indicate that Le Duan’s statement was made before this party veteran defected to China in July 1979.

As a background to the analysis of the text, we should first establish what is generally known about Le Duan’s life (1907–86) and career. He came from Quang Tri in Central Vietnam, and based his party career on political work in the southern half of Vietnam. In the 1920s he became a railway worker, joined the Indochinese Communist Party (ICP) at its foundation in 1930, and spent the years 1931–36 in a French prison. During the Popular Front period in France, he was free again to work politically and in March 1938 became a member of the ICP Central Committee. In 1940 he was arrested once more, and belonged (with Pham Hung and Nguyen Duy Trinh) to the group of party leaders who spent the war years 1941–45 at the French prison island Poulo Condore. He was released in 1945 and during the First Indochina War he served as secretary of the Nam Bo (southern region) Party Committee (from 1951 the Central Office for South Vietnam; COSVN), with Le Duc Tho as his closest collaborator. After the Geneva agreement in 1954, which established the division of Vietnam along the 17th parallel, he is known to have sent a letter to the party leaders, objecting to the concessions made. In 1957, after Truong Chinh had stepped down as secretary general of the VWP and president Ho Chi Minh himself had taken over the party leadership, Le Duan was called to Hanoi where he became acting secretary general. He was the prime mover, in the years 1957–59, for resuming armed struggle in South Vietnam, and gaining Soviet and Chinese support for that policy. The decision of the 15th Central Committee Plenum in January 1959 to move to active struggle in the South was a clear victory for Le Duan, and at the VWP’s 3rd Congress in 1960 he was elected secretary general. It took more than 15 years before the next (4th) Party Congress was held in 1976, and Le Duan died in office, half a year before the 6th Congress in 1986.

Le Duan was clearly the second most powerful Vietnamese communist leader in the 20th century, after Ho Chi Minh, the founder of the Indochinese Communist Party in 1930 and President of the Democratic Republic of Vietnam from its foundation in 1945 to his death in 1969.

Le Duan must be characterized as an indigenous communist leader. He had not, like Ho Chi Minh, traveled around the world during his youth. He had not, like Pham Van Dong, Vo Nguyen Giap and Hoang Van Hoan, worked closely with Ho Chi Minh in building the Viet Minh front and the National Liberation Army in the border region to China during the Second World War. He also did not belong to the group around Truong Chinh, who constituted the ICP’s northern secretariat during the years from 1940 to the August Revolution of 1945. Ho Chi Minh’s decision to leave the party leadership Le Duan in the years 1957–1960, and to endorse his formal election in 1960, must be interpreted as a way to ensure national unity. At a time when Vietnam was divided in two, and many southern cadres had been regrouped to the north, the safest way to ensure that the VWP remain a party for all of Vietnam was probably to make the leader of the southern branch the leader of the whole party. Presumably this was the motive behind Ho Chi Minh’s choice. The relationship between Ho Chi Minh and Le Duan was never characterized by the same kind of warmth as that between the Uncle and other of his party nephews.

Le Duan’s text from 1979 shows that he combined an extremely strong national pride with an idea that the Vietnamese, as a particularly struggle-prone people, were playing a vanguard role in the world revolutionary struggle. The text does not reveal much admiration or respect for other nations than the Vietnamese, but it is deeply committed to the idea of national independence struggles, for all peoples, small and great. His pride comes out already in the first paragraph, where he says that after “we” had defeated the Americans, there was no imperialist power that would dare to fight “us” again. Only some Chinese reactionary figures “thought they could.” The terms “we” and “us” here denote the big national we.

Le Duan’s pride was of a moral nature, and the basic
dichotomy in his moral universe was that between fear and courage. He seems to have despised those who did not “dare” to fight. If it had not been for the Vietnamese, he claimed, there would not have been anyone to fight the Americans, because at the time the Vietnamese were fighting the US, the rest of the world were “afraid” of the Americans. The same kind of moral pride comes out in Le Duan’s account of a meeting he had with Zhou Enlai in Hanoi, just after the latter had received Kissinger in Beijing. Le Duan says he told Zhou that with the new Sino-American understanding, Nixon would attack “me” even harder, but “I am not at all afraid.” Later in the text, he comes back to the claim that “It was only Vietnam that was not afraid of the US.” He also identifies the fearful. The first person to fear the Americans was Mao, he claims. The famous statement about the “paper tiger” is not present in this text. Mao is the one who always feared the Americans, discouraged the Vietnamese from fighting, and refused to offer support if this could entail a risk of US retaliation against China. When China had intervened in Korea, it was not a sign of courage; this was just something China had to do to defend its power interests.

Le Duan’s admiration for courage reaches its crescendo in the following statement: “We are not afraid of anyone. We are not afraid because we are in the right. We don’t even fear our elder brother. We also do not fear our friends. Even our enemies we do not fear. We have fought them already. We are human beings. We are not afraid of anyone. We are independent. All the world knows we are independent.”

On the basis of his moral distinction between courage and fear, Le Duan claims there was also a basic difference between Mao’s military strategy and the strategy followed by the Vietnamese. The former was defensive, the latter offensive. The Vietnamese had not learned anything from the Chinese in terms of military strategy. The Chinese had always been very weak. They did little to fight the Japanese. After Le Duan’s first visit to China (which he claims occurred in 1952), Ho Chi Minh asked him what he had seen. Two things, he replied: “Vietnam is very brave, and they are not brave at all.” From that day on, Le Duan had sensed the basic difference between the Chinese and the Vietnamese: “We were entirely different from them. Within the Vietnamese person there is a very courageous spirit, and thus we have never had defensive tactics. Every person fights.”

There is little in the text to indicate that Le Duan felt more respect or sympathy for the Soviet Union than for China, although the Russians caused less worry. He complained about the Sino-Soviet split, but his reason for doing so was that it strengthened US leverage in Vietnam. He complained that he had to explain so many things in China, going there “twice a year.” Then he added that he had no such problem with the Soviets, since he just refrained from keeping them informed: “As for the Soviets, I did not say anything at all […] I only spoke in general terms.”

Another important aspect of Le Duan’s thinking is his ideologically motivated distinction between, on the one side, “the Chinese people,” and on the other reactionary Chinese figures. As has been seen he did not have much admiration for the Chinese in general, but he did not want to blame the whole Chinese people for the aggressive policies of their leaders: “We refer to them as a clique only. We do not refer to their nation. We did not say the Chinese people are bad towards us. We say that it is the reactionary Beijing clique.”

Le Duan also distinguishes between individuals on the Chinese side, and here the criterion for judging people is their degree of understanding Vietnam. The one who understood the least was Chairman Mao, whom Le Duan seems to have thoroughly disliked: “…the most uncompromising person, the one with the Greater Han heart and the one who wanted to take Southeast Asia, was mainly Mao.” He felt more sympathy both for Zhou Enlai and Deng Xiaoping. Le Duan claims that Zhou Enlai had agreed, in the 1960s, on the need for a united front of socialist countries to back the struggle in Vietnam, but that Mao had said it was not possible. Zhou had helped Le Duan to understand what was going on in China, and had arranged for much assistance to be given to Vietnam: “I am indebted to him.” Hua Guofeng had not understood Vietnam, but then again Deng Xiaoping had shown more understanding. This is somewhat surprising since we know from 77 Conversations that Deng was the one who most bluntly addressed the problems in the Sino-Vietnamese relationship in party-to-party conversations. Le Duan probably preferred Deng’s straight, hard talk to Hua’s evasiveness and Mao’s eccentric allegories, Le Duan’s admiration for Deng is confirmed by another source. In October 1977, he had told the Soviet ambassador in Hanoi that Hua Guofeng was one of those Chinese leaders who “does not understand us,” but that Deng Xiaoping “treats Vietnam with great understanding.” At that time Le Duan had predicted that Deng Xiaoping would win the Chinese power struggle and that this would lead Sino-Vietnamese relations to improve.

That Le Duan retained some of his positive attitude to Deng in 1979 is surprising in view of the fact that it was Deng who had ordered the invasion of northern Vietnam. Le Duan claims that Deng had sincerely congratulated the Vietnamese in 1975, when Vietnam won its struggle for national unification, while some other Chinese leaders had been grudging. And in 1977, Deng had agreed with Le Duan about the need to start negotiations concerning border issues. Le Duan thought Deng was under pressure from other, less understanding Chinese leaders, and that he had to show resolve in relation to Vietnam to avoid accusations of revisionism: “…now he is rash and foolish. Because he wants to show that he is not a revisionist, he has struck Vietnam even harder. He went ahead and let them attack Vietnam” [emphasis added—SJ].

The final aspect of Le Duan’s attitude to be addressed here is his staunch internationalism. This may seem strange in view of his almost parochially nationalist attitude, but he understood Vietnam as the vanguard in a world-wide
struggle for national liberation. This is not like the olden days, he says, when Vietnam stood alone against China. Now the whole world is closely knit together: “… this is a time where everyone wants independence and freedom. [Even] on small islands, people want independence and freedom. All of humankind is presently like this. … To harm Vietnam was [is] to harm humanity, an injury to independence and freedom. … Vietnam is a nation that symbolizes independence and freedom.”

1979

The next use that can be made of the document is for throwing light on the situation in the year when it was written. 1979 marks the main turning point in the history of the international communist movement. By 1977–78 it was at the apex of its power, with some thirty Marxist governments world-wide. In 1979–80, international socialism entered a period of crisis that would reduce, in a matter of twelve years, the number of Marxist governments to only five (China, North Korea, Laos, Vietnam and Cuba). The “disastrous” events of 1978–80 did not only include the Vietnamese invasion of Cambodia, the Chinese punitive expedition into Vietnam, and the commitment of the Soviet Navy to the South China Sea, but also the election of the cardinal-archbishop of Krakow to the papacy and the founding of the Solidarity movement in Poland, the dismantling of collectivist agriculture and introduction of market forces in China, the creation of a de facto US-Chinese alliance in East Asia, the establishment of an anti-communist Islamist regime in Iran, the crisis in Afghanistan leading to the Soviet invasion of December 1979, and the destabilization of several newly established Marxist regimes in Africa through anti-communist insurgencies. This meant notably that the guerrilla weapon was turned around to become “low intensity warfare,” directed against socialist regimes. “Inverse Vietnams” were created in Cambodia, Afghanistan, Angola, Ethiopia and elsewhere; Leonid Brezhnev’s Soviet regime took on so many international commitments that it went into a period of classic economic over-stretch.

As of 1979, of course, neither Le Duan nor any other communist leader could see the approaching disaster. They were accustomed to success, and still deeply imbued with the fundamental Marxist belief that socialism represented a more advanced stage in human development than capitalism. The White Book published by the Vietnamese Foreign Ministry in October 1979 claimed that “today the revolutionary forces have grown, and are in a most favorable position.” The victory of the Vietnamese Revolution was still fresh in their minds, and had been followed by the establishment of socialist regimes in the former Portuguese colonies in Africa and, most recently, in Central America. US imperialism, claimed the white book, was sinking deeper and deeper into an irremediable and general crisis and could not even maintain its position in its apparently secure strongholds in Asia, Africa and Latin America. The Soviet and Vietnamese communist leaders no doubt interpreted the trouble in Cambodia and Afghanistan, the introduction of market forces in China, and China’s alignment with the US, as temporary setbacks from the general course of global evolution, which was bound to further strengthen the socialist forces. It was not till the mid-eighties that socialist leaders began to realize that the trend had turned against socialism.

What does Le Duan’s text reveal about the Vietnamese leadership’s assessment of the general situation in 1979, and its expectations for the future? It shows that the Hanoi leaders were preparing for a larger war with China, and that Le Duan felt confident that Vietnam could survive such a war since the greater part of the Chinese army would be compelled to remain posted along the Soviet border. Le Duan prepared his comrades for a new drawn-out national resistance struggle, and saw Vietnam as playing a crucial role in defending all of Southeast Asia against Chinese expansionism. He intended to utilize the traditional strongholds of the Indochinese Communist Party in the north central provinces of Nghe An, Ha Tinh and Thanh Hoa (where a disproportionate number of Vietnamese communist leaders had come from) as rearguard bases for the struggle against the northern enemy: “In the near future we will fight China. We are determined to win,” Le Duan exclaimed, and this (most probably) was after the end of the Chinese punitive expedition. To bolster the determination of himself and his comrades, Le Duan resorted to his pride in his struggle-prone nation: “… the truth is that if a different country were to fight them, it is not clear that they would win like this…. we have never shirked from our historical responsibilities. … By guarding its own independence, Vietnam is also guarding the independence of Southeast Asian nations. Vietnam is resolved not to allow the Chinese to become an expansionist nation. The recent battle was one round only. … if they bring one or two million troops in to fight us, we will not be afraid of anything. We have just engaged 600,000 troops, and, if, in the near future, we have to fight two million, it will not be a problem at all. We are not afraid. We will make each district a fortress, every province a battlefield. We have enough people. We can fight them in many ways. We are capable of taking two to three army corps to fight them fiercely in order to surprise them; thereby making them waver, while we still defend our land. If this is so desired, then every soldier must [give rise to or produce a] soldier and every squad a squad.”

It seems that Deng Xiaoping made a clever calculation in March 1979, when he decided to withdraw the Chinese troops, so the fight against Vietnam could be left to the Khmer Rouge, and China could concentrate on economic achievements.

The record of Le Duan’s relations with China

The third, more difficult, utilization we can make of Le Duan’s document is as a source to the author’s relations with China and the Chinese leaders in the whole period from 1952 to 1979. In the absence of more reliable archival
sources, it is tempting to make an attempt, but one should have no illusions as to the accuracy of what Le Duan has to say.

Le Duan tells that he first visited China to gain better health in 1952. In his account he was struck by the fact that the region he visited (which would probably have been Guangxi or Guangdong) had not waged any guerrilla struggle against Japan during the Japanese occupation despite of its huge population. This fact is used in the text to draw the basic distinction between Vietnamese courage and Chinese pusillanimity. Le Duan claims that Ho Chi Minh confirmed the impression. This story probably has more to tell about Le Duan’s attitude as of 1979 than about what his real impressions were at the time. We don’t even know from other sources that he went to China at all in 1952.

What he tells about his reaction to the Geneva agreement in 1954 is more reliable. At that time he led the Central Office of South Vietnam (COSVN) in southern Vietnam, and there is little reason to doubt his disappointment at having to ask his comrades to refrain from any further struggle and resort to only political struggle or regroup north of the 17th parallel. In his 1979 text, he claims to have had an emotional outburst in front of Zhou Enlai (probably on 13 July 1971) when the latter came to Hanoi to explain the Sino-American honeymoon. Le Duan had then spoken about his feelings in 1954, when he had been in Hau Nghia (north-west of Saigon, where the famous Cu Chi tunnel system would later be dug out). And he says Zhou apologized, admitting his mistake.14

What is less certain, however, is if Le Duan blamed China already in 1954. At that time, China, the Soviet Union and the North Vietnamese leadership stood firmly behind the agreement, and Le Duan may well have blamed his own national leaders more than Beijing and Moscow. It probably took some time before Le Duan discovered the crucial role played by Zhou Enlai in persuading the DRV leaders to accept the 17th parallel as the dividing line between north and south Vietnam. The one most likely to have told him would be Pham Van Dong, who led the Vietnamese delegation in Geneva.15

The formative period for Le Duan’s negative attitude to China may well have been the late 1950s, when he led the effort to gain Soviet and Chinese support for the renewal of armed struggle in South Vietnam. At that time, Mao was launching his Great Leap Forward, which plunged the country into a crisis that was not conducive to fulfilling international obligations. Le Duan no doubt saw this.

In his 1979 text he returns several times to how Zhou Enlai and Mao tried to prevent the Vietnamese from resuming the armed struggle in South Vietnam. However, Le Duan does not mention the fact that the Soviet Union also believed in the Geneva agreement and discouraged the Vietnamese from doing anything that could make it easier for France and the South Vietnamese regime to disregard their obligations.16

Le Duan’s text is not devoid of contradictions. First he quotes Zhou as having said that whether or not the Vietnamese continued to fight was up to their own discretion. Then he accuses him of having “pressed us to stop fighting.” The first claim accords well with Chen Jian’s conclusion about China’s Policy: “the Beijing leadership neither hindered nor encouraged Hanoi’s efforts to “liberate” the South by military means until 1962.”17 The second assertion seems more dubious. Le Duan also claims that he defied Chinese advice and went ahead with building armed forces in South Vietnam: “…we were not of the same mind. We went ahead and clandestinely developed our forces.” It was only when “we had already begun fighting that they then allowed us to fight.” What Le Duan conveniently refrains from mentioning, is the difference between the views of the south-based cadre and some of the North Vietnamese leaders.

When coming to 1963–64, Le Duan turns the tables. The Chinese are no longer being accused of trying to temper the Vietnamese urge to fight, but instead of imposing themselves, building roads to facilitate the expansion of Chinese power into Southeast Asia, and sending troops to pave the way for controlling Vietnam. The main culprit is Mao.

We know of three occasions when Le Duan met Mao. The first was in 1963 in Wuhan, where Mao (according to the Vietnamese White Book) received a delegation from the VWP. During that meeting Le Duan claims to have understood Mao’s real intentions and to have warned him that Vietnam could well beat Chinese forces. Mao allegedly asked him: “Comrade, isn’t it true that your people have fought and defeated the Yuan army?” Le Duan said: “Correct.” “Isn’t it also true, comrade, that you defeated the Qing army?” Le Duan replied: “Correct.” Mao said: “And the Ming army as well?” It is then that Le Duan claims to have added boldly: “Yes, and you too. I have beaten you as well [or “and I’ll beat yours as well”]. Did you know that? … I spoke with Mao Zedong in that way,” Le Duan asserts, and Mao just said: “Yes, yes!”

This is a tricky conversation to interpret. On the one hand it seems plausible that Mao asked the questions mentioned. Mao liked to tease people in such a way. But it seems highly unlikely that Le Duan would have challenged Mao so openly. From the 77 Conversations it appears that Le Duan rather behaved like an obsequious servant in front of his master during his next two meetings with Mao (on 13 August 1964 and 11 May 1970).18 In 1964 he said that “support from China is indispensable,” and that “the Soviet revisionists want to make us a bargaining chip.” In 1970 he asked for Mao’s instructions, and ascribed Vietnam’s successes to the fact that “we have followed the three instructions Chairman Mao gave us in the past,’ the first of which was “no fear, we should not fear the enemy.”19 The Le Duan that appears in some of the 77 Conversations seems quite another person than the one who turns up in the 1979 account—but then the memory of one’s own actions normally differs from others’ perceptions at the time.

There is a big discrepancy between what Le Duan (and
the Vietnamese White Book) tells about Sino-Vietnamese relations in 1963–65, and what we know from Chinese sources. According to Le Duan’s account, it was Mao who wanted to build roads into Vietnam, and to send troops there, while he himself wished only for material assistance. In all accounts based on Chinese sources, the request for roads and volunteer troops came from the Vietnamese side, and was expressed by Le Duan and Ho Chi Minh. This is also confirmed by some of the 77 Conversations. Le Duan’s claim that “I only asked that they send personnel, but they brought guns and ammunition” does not seem to stand up to the evidence. After the Chinese engineer troops and anti-aircraft artillery units had arrived, however, tension soon emerged between the two sides, and after Premier Alexei Kosygin committed the Soviet Union to substantially aiding Vietnam during a visit to Hanoi in February 1965, Vietnam assumed a more independent posture. The tone in the 77 Conversations turns more sour from that time onwards. What Le Duan says about the late 1960s and the 1970s is more in line with what Chinese sources tell. By 1969, Le Duan claims to have summoned the military cadres to warn them that China had joined hands with the US imperialists, and that they had to study this problem, i.e., prepare themselves for future conflicts with China. Concerning Beijing’s new line towards the US, Le Duan makes the same accusation as the Vietnamese White Book: “During that time, China made the announcement [to the US]: ‘If you don’t attack me, I won’t attack you.’ Thus they left the US with greater leverage in Vietnam.” This, of course, makes sense. China really did emphasize its own great power interests to the detriment of North Vietnam.

The rhetorical highlight of Le Duan’s text is the conversation he claims to have had with Zhou Enlai in Hanoi (probably in November 1971). Before Nixon went to China, says Le Duan, his goal was to disentangle the US from Vietnam with the help of China, while enticing China over to the US side in world affairs. Zhou Enlai allegedly told Le Duan: “At this time, Nixon is coming to visit me principally to discuss the Vietnamese problem, thus I must come to meet you, comrade, in order to exchange views.”

Le Duan then claims to have answered: “Comrade, you can say whatever you like, but I still don’t follow. Comrade, you are Chinese; I am a Vietnamese. Vietnam is mine: not yours at all.” Le Duan again claims to have spoken harshly in the face of his Chinese interlocutor. This time the claim seems more reliable. It was much easier to speak harshly to Zhou Enlai in Hanoi in 1971 than to Mao in Wuhan in 1963. It would be interesting to see if Chinese reports about Zhou’s November 1971 meetings in Hanoi carry traces Le Duan’s nationalist credo.

A remark on the need for archival research

During the 1990s, the Sino–Vietnamese relationship improved tremendously. 1979 was the worst year, but China and Vietnam remained hostile throughout the 1980s, with troops massed on both sides of the border, no rails on the railways, no open roads. Relations gradually improved from the mid-1980s, and the Vietnamese withdrawal from Cambodia in 1989 marked a huge step forward, paving the way for the normalization of diplomatic relations in 1991. On New Year’s Eve 1999 (Western calendar), the two foreign ministers were able to sign a border treaty in Hanoi, and they renewed earlier promises to reach an agreement on the delineation of maritime zones in the Gulf of Tonkin before the end of 2000. This fulfils the tasks that Le Duan and Deng Xiaoping set for themselves in 1977, at that time without much hope of success. The railways are now open again, and border trade flourishes. Relations between the two countries, the two parties and the two armies have become more and more frequent, and the border provinces are playing a leading role in improving commercial and cultural ties. The Chinese and Vietnamese research communities also now communicate. This could be seen at the huge Vietnam Studies Conference in Hanoi 1998, where Chinese and Vietnamese social scientists discussed highly tendentious issues (such as ethnicity in the border region between the two countries) in the presence of researchers from other countries.

What will this mean for the study of the history of contemporary Sino-Vietnamese relations? When two countries improve their relationship, this normally entails studies of their difficulties in the past. How will Vietnamese and Chinese historians go about the study of their problematic historical relationship? One possibility is that each nation generates its own separate historical studies, that Chinese historians work in Chinese archives and write books in Chinese about China’s Vietnam policy, and that Vietnamese researchers gain access to Vietnamese archives and write Vietnamese books about Vietnam’s difficulties with the northern neighbor. A second possibility is a bilateral process, with groups of Chinese and Vietnamese historians working together to explore the history of their relationship, and issuing shared publications, preferably in both languages. This could be done in a highly formalized, closed manner, with trusted party historians on both sides forming a joint committee and gaining privileged access to sources screened by the two party leaderships, or it could be done more openly. The third possibility is an open intellectual process, where all interested scholars gain access to Chinese and Vietnamese source material, and a number of competing books and articles are being published in Chinese, Vietnamese, English and other languages.

All three possibilities are premised on the assumption that Chinese and Vietnamese authorities become more self-assured than in the past, that they show more courage in giving up their fear of independent research, and allow access to key historical sources. At present—in January 2001, the intellectual climate in both countries seems instead to be hardening. This may prolong the current paradoxical situation, where scholars based outside China and Vietnam can have access to better sources than their colleagues on the inside, and are more free to publish accounts arousing general interest. The only way to ensure that scholars based in China and Vietnam can play a significant role in research-
ing the history of their mutual relations, in an international context, is to allow a new, more open intellectual climate, with declassification of documents, joint conferences, and encouragement of independent scholarship.

**DOCUMENT**

**COMRADE B ON THE PLOT OF THE REACTIONARY CHINESE CLIQUE AGAINST VIETNAM**

Translated and annotated by Christopher E. Goscha

Generally speaking, after we had defeated the Americans, there was no imperialist that would dare to fight us again. The only persons who thought they could still fight us and dared to fight us were Chinese reactionaries. But the Chinese people did not want it like that at all. I do not know how much longer some of these Chinese reactionaries will continue to exist. However, as long as they do, then they will strike us as they have just recently done [meaning in early 1979]. If war comes from the north, then the [northern central] provinces of Nghe An, Ha Tinh and Thanh Hoa will become the bases for the entire country. They are unparalleled as the most efficient, the best and the strongest bases. For if the Delta [in the north] continued as an uninterrupted stretch, then the situation would be very complicated. Not at all a simple matter. If it had not been for the Vietnamese, there would not have been anyone to fight the USA, because at the time the Vietnamese were fighting the USA, the rest of the world was afraid of the USA …

Although the Chinese helped [North] Korea, it was only with the aim of protecting their own northern flank. After the fighting had finished [in Korea] and when the pressure was on Vietnam, he [this appears to be a reference to Zhou Enlai as the text soon seems to suggest] said that if the Vietnamese continued to fight they would have to fend for themselves. He would not help any longer and pressured us to stop fighting.

When we had signed the Geneva Accords, it was precisely Zhou Enlai who divided our country into two [parts]. After our country had been divided into northern and southern zones in this way, he once again pressured us into not doing anything in regard to southern Vietnam. They forbade us from rising up [against the US-backed Republic of Vietnam]. [But] they, [the Chinese] could do nothing to deter us.

When we were in the south and had made preparations to wage guerrilla warfare immediately after the signing of the Geneva Accords, Mao Zedong told our Party Congress that we had to force the Lao to transfer immediately their two liberated provinces to [the] Vientiane government. Otherwise the Americans would destroy them, a very dangerous situation [in the Chinese view]!

Vietnam had to work at once with the Americans [concerning this matter]. Mao forced us in this way and we had to do it. Then, after these two [Lao] provinces had been turned over to Vientiane, the [Lao] reactionaries immediately arrested Souphanouvong [President of Laos, 1975-86]. The Lao had two battalions which were surrounded at the time. Moreover, they were not yet combat ready. Later, one battalion was able to escape [encirclement]. At that time, I gave it as my opinion that the Lao must be permitted to wage guerrilla warfare. I invited the Chinese to come and discuss this matter with us. I told them, “Comrades, if you go ahead pressuring the Lao in this way, then their forces will completely disintegrate. They must now be permitted to conduct guerrilla warfare.”

Zhang Wentian, who was previously the Secretary General [of the Chinese Communist Party] and used the pen name Lac Phu, answered me: “Yes, comrades, what you say is right. Let us allow that Lao battalion to take up guerrilla war.”

I immediately asked Zhang Wentian: “Comrades, if you allow the Lao to take up guerrilla war, then there is nothing to fear about launching guerrilla war in south Vietnam. What is it that frightens you so much so that you still block such action?”

He [Zhang Wentian] said: “There is nothing to be afraid of!”

That was what Zhang Wentian said. However, Ho Wei, the Chinese ambassador to Vietnam at that time, [and] who was seated there, was listening to what was being said. He immediately cabled back to China [reporting what had been said between Le Duan and Zhang Wentian]. Mao replied at once: “Vietnam cannot do that [taking up guerrilla war in the south]. Vietnam must lie in wait for a protracted period of time!” We were so poor. How could we fight the Americans if we did not have China as a rearguard base? [Thus], we had to listen to them, correct?

However, we did not agree. We secretly went ahead in developing our forces. When [Ngo Dinh] Diem dragged his guillotine machine throughout much of southern Vietnam, we issued the order to form mass forces to oppose the established order and to take power [from the Diem government]. We did not care [about the Chinese]. When the uprising to seize power had begun, we went to China to meet with both Zhou Enlai and Deng Xiaoping. Deng Xiaoping told me: “Comrade, now that your mistake has become an accomplished fact, you should only fight at the level of one platoon downward.” That was the kind of pressure they exerted on us.

I said to the Chinese: “Yes, yes! I will do that. I will only fight at the level of one platoon downwards.” After we had fought and China realized that we could fight efficiently, Mao suddenly had a new line of thinking. He said that as the Americans were fighting us, he would bring in [Chinese] troops to help us build roads. His essential aim was to find out about the situation in our country so...
that later he could strike us, and thereby expand into Southeast Asia. There was no other reason. We were aware of this matter, but had to allow it [the entry of Chinese troops]. But that was OK. They decided to send in their soldiers. I only asked that they send personnel, but these troops came with guns and ammunition. I also had to countenance this.

Later, he [Mao Zedong] forced us to permit 20,000 of his troops to come and build a road from Nghe Tinh into Nam Bo [the Vietnamese term for southern Vietnam]. I refused. They kept proposing, but I would not budge. They pressured me into permitting them to come, but I did not accept it. They kept on pressuring, but I did not agree. I provide you with these examples, comrades, so that you can see their long-standing plot to steal our country, and how wicked their plot is.

—After the Americans had introduced several hundred thousand troops into southern Vietnam, we launched a general offensive in 1968 to force them to de-escalate. In order to defeat the US, one had to know how to bring them to de-escalate gradually. That was our strategy. We were fighting a big enemy, one with a population of 200 million people and who dominated the world. If we could not bring them to de-escalate step-by-step, then we would have floundered and would have been unable to destroy the enemy. We had to fight to sap their will in order to force them to come to the negotiating table with us, yet without allowing them to introduce more troops.

When it came to the time when they wanted to negotiate with us, Ho Wei wrote a letter to us saying: “You cannot sit down to negotiate with the US. You must bring US troops into northern Vietnam to fight them.” He pressured us in this way, making us extremely puzzled. This was not at all a simple matter. It was very gruesome every time these situations arose [with the Chinese].

We decided that it could not be done in that way [referring to Ho Wei’s advice not to negotiate with the US]. We had to sit back down in Paris. We had to bring them [the US] to de-escalate in order to defeat them. During that time, China made the announcement [to the US]: “If you don’t attack me, I won’t attack you. However many troops you want to bring into Vietnam, it’s up to you.” China, of its own accord, did this and pressured us in this way.

They [the Chinese] vigorously traded with the Americans and compelled us to serve as a bargaining chip in this way. When the Americans realized that they had lost, they immediately used China [to facilitate] their withdrawal [from southern Vietnam]. Nixon and Kissinger went to China in order to discuss this matter.

—Before Nixon went to China, [the goal of his trip being] to solve the Vietnamese problem in such a way as to serve US interests and to lessen the US defeat, as well as to simultaneously allow him to entice China over to the US [side] even more, Zhou Enlai came to visit me. Zhou told me: “At this time, Nixon is coming to visit me principally to discuss the Vietnamese problem, thus I must come to meet you, comrade, in order to discuss [it with you].”

I answered: “Comrade, you can say whatever you like, but I still don’t follow. Comrade, you are Chinese; I am a Vietnamese. Vietnam is mine [my nation]; not yours at all. You have no right to speak [about Vietnam’s affairs], and you have no right to discuss [them with the Americans].”

Today, comrades, I will personally tell you something which I have not even told our Politburo, for, comrade, you have brought up a serious matter, and hence I must speak:

—In 1954, when we won victory at Dien Bien Phu, I was in Hau Nghia [province]. Bac [Uncle] Ho cabled to tell me that I had to go to southern Vietnam to regroup [the forces there] and to speak to the southern Vietnamese compatriots [about this matter]. I traveled by wagon to the south. Along the way, compatriots came out to greet me, for they thought we had won victory. It was so painful! Looking at my southern compatriots, I cried. Because after this [later], the US would come and massacre [the population] in a terrible way.

Upon reaching the south, I immediately cabled Bac Ho to ask to remain [in the south] and not to return to the north, so that I could fight for another ten years or more. [To Zhou Enlai]: “Comrade, you caused me hardship such as this [meaning Zhou’s role in the division of Vietnam at Geneva in 1954]. Did you know that, comrade?”

Zhou Enlai said: “I apologize before you, comrade. I was wrong. I was wrong about that [meaning the division of Vietnam at Geneva].” After Nixon had already gone to China, he [Zhou Enlai] once again came to Vietnam in order to ask me about a number of problems concerning the fighting in southern Vietnam.

However, I immediately told Zhou Enlai: “Nixon has met with you already, comrade. Soon they [the US] will attack me even harder.” I am not at all afraid. Both sides [the US and China] had negotiated with each other in order to fight me harder. He [Zhou Enlai] did not as yet reject this [view] as unfounded, and only said that “I will send additional guns and ammunition to you comrades.”

Then he [Zhou Enlai] said [concerning fears of a secret US-Chinese plot]: “There was no such thing.” However, the two had discussed how to hit us harder, including B-52 bombing raids and the blocking of Haiphong [harbor]. This was clearly the case.

—If the Soviet Union and China had not been at odds with each other, then the US could not have struck us as fiercely as they did. As the two [powers of China and the Soviet Union] were in conflict, the Americans were unhampered [by united socialist bloc opposition]. Although Vietnam was able to have unity and solidarity both with China and the USSR, to achieve this was very complicated, for at that time we had to rely on China for many things. At that time, China annually provided assistance of 500,000 tons of foodstuffs, as well as guns, ammunition, money, not to mention dollar aid. The Soviet Union also helped in this way. If we could not do that [preserve unity and solidarity with China and the USSR], things would have been very dangerous. Every year I had
to go to China twice to talk with them [the Chinese leadership] about [the course of events] in southern Vietnam. As for the Soviets, I did not say anything at all [about the situation in southern Vietnam]. I only spoke in general terms. When dealing with the Chinese, I had to say that both were fighting the US. Alone I went. I had to attend to this matter. I had to go there and talk with them many times in this way, with the main intention to build closer relations between the two sides [meaning Chinese and Vietnamese]. It was precisely at this time that China pressured us to move away from the USSR, forbidding us from going from the USSR’s [side] any longer.33

They made it very tense. Deng Xiaoping, together with Kang Sheng,34 came and told me: “Comrade, I will assist you with several billion [presumably yuan] every year. You cannot accept anything from the Soviet Union.”

I could not allow this. I said: “No, we must have solidarity and unity with the whole [socialist] camp.”35

In 1963, when Khrushchev erred, [the Chinese] immediately issued a 25-point declaration and invited our Party to come and give our opinion.36 Brother Truong Chinh and I went together with a number of other brothers. In discussions, they [the Chinese] listened to us for ten or so points, but when it came to the point of “there is no abandonment of the socialist camp,”37 they did not listen … Deng Xiaoping said, “I am in charge of my own document. I seek your opinion but I do not accept this point of yours.”

Before we were to leave, Mao met with Brother Truong Chinh and myself. Mao sat down to chat with us, and in the end he announced: “Comrades, I would like you to know this. I will be president of 500 million land-hungry peasants, and I will bring an army to strike downwards into Southeast Asia.”38 Also seated there, Deng Xiaoping added: “It is mainly because the poor peasants are in such dire straits!”

Once we were outside, I told Brother Truong Chinh: “There you have it, the plot to take our country and Southeast Asia. It is clear now.” They dared to announce it in such a way. They thought we would not understand. It is true that not a minute goes by that they do not think of fighting Vietnam!

I will say more to you comrades so that you may see more of the military importance of this matter. Mao asked me:

—In Laos, how many square kilometers [of land] are there?
I answered:
  —About 200,000 [sq. km.].
—What is its population? [Mao asked]:
  —[I answered]: Around 3 million!
—[Mao responded:] That’s not very much! I’ll bring my people there, indeed!
—[Mao asked:] How many square kilometers [of land] are there in Thailand?
—[I responded]: About 500,000 [sq. km.].
—And how many people? [Mao asked].
—About 40 million! [I answered].
—My God! [Mao said], Szechwan province of China has 500,000 sq. km., but has 90 million people. I’ll take some more of my people there, too [to Thailand]!

As for Vietnam, they did not dare to speak about moving in people this way. However, he [Mao] told me: “Comrade, isn’t it true that your people have fought and defeated the Yuan army?” I said: “Correct.” “Isn’t it also true, comrade, that you defeated the Qing army?” I said: “Correct.” He said: “And the Ming army as well?” I said: “Yes, and you too. I have beaten you as well.” Did you know that? I spoke with Mao Zedong in that way. He said: “Yes, yes!” He wanted to take Laos, all of Thailand … as well as wanting to take all of Southeast Asia. Bringing people to live there. It was complicated [to that point].

—in the past [referring to possible problems stemming from the Chinese threat during these times], we had made intense preparations; it is not that we were unprepared. If we had not made preparations, the recent situation would have been very dangerous. It was not a simple matter. Ten years ago, I summoned together our brothers in the military to meet with me. I told them that the Soviet Union and the US were at odds with each other. As for China, they had joined hands with the US imperialists. In this tense situation, you must study this problem immediately. I was afraid that the military did not understand me, so I told them that there was no other way to understand the matter. But they found it very difficult to understand. It was not easy at all. But I could not speak in any other way. And I did not allow others to grab me.39

—When I went to the Soviet Union, the Soviets were also tough with me about China. The Soviet Union had convened a conference of 80 [communist] Parties in support of Vietnam, but Vietnam did not attend this conference, for [this gathering] was not simply aimed at helping Vietnam, but it was also designed to condemn China. Thus Vietnam did not go. The Soviets said: “Have you now abandoned internationalism [or] what? Why have you done this?” I said: “I have not abandoned internationalism at all. I have never done this. However, to be internationalist, the Americans must be defeated first. And if one wants to defeat the Americans, then there must be unity and solidarity with China. If I had gone to this conference, then the Chinese would have created very severe difficulties for us. Comrades, please understand me.”

—in China there were also many different and contending opinions. Zhou Enlai agreed on forming a front with the Soviet Union in order to oppose the Americans. Once, when I went to the USSR to participate in a national day celebration, I was able to read a Chinese cable sent to the Soviet Union saying that “whenever someone attacks the USSR, then the Chinese will stand by your side.”[41] [This was] because there was a treaty of friendship between the USSR and China dating from earlier times
Standing army] would have been unnecessary. Having
If there had not been [such a threat], then this [large
standing army was because of China’s threat to Vietnam].
You will understand.” The only reason we had kept such a
large army in place in Vietnam even harder. He let them go ahead in attacking
a country that was not afraid of the US.

—Although Zhou Enlai held a number of those
opinions, he nonetheless agreed on building a front and
[he] helped Vietnam a lot. It was thanks to him that I could
understand [much of what was going on in China].
Otherwise it would have been very dangerous. He once
told me: “I am doing my best to survive here, to use Li
Chiang45 to accumulate and provide assistance for you,
comrades.” And that there was [meaning that Zhou was
able to use Li Chiang in order to help the Vietnamese]. My
understanding is that without Zhou Enlai this would not
have been possible at all. I am indebted to him.

However, it is not correct to say that other Chinese
leaders shared Zhou Enlai’s view at all. They differed in
many ways. It must be said that the most uncompromising
person, the one with the Greater Han mentality, and the one
who wanted to take Southeast Asia, was mainly Mao. All
of [China’s] policies were in his hands.

The same applies to the current leaders of China. We
do not know how things will turn out in the future,
however, [the fact of the matter is that] they have already
attacked us. In the past, Deng Xiaoping did two things
which have now been reversed. That is, when we won in
southern Vietnam, there were many [leaders] in China who
were unhappy. However, Deng Xiaoping nonetheless
congratulated us. As a result of this, he was immediately
considered a revisionist by the others.

When I went to China for the last time,44 I was the
leader of the delegation, and I met with the Chinese
diplomation led by Deng Xiaoping. In speaking of territorial
problems, including discussion of several islands, I said:
“Our two nations are near each other. There are several
areas of our territory which have not been clearly defined.
Both sides should establish bodies to consider the matter.
Comrades, please agree with me [on this]. He [Deng]
agreed, but after doing so he was immediately considered a
revisionist by the other group of leaders.

But now he [Deng] is crazy. Because he wants to
show that he is not a revisionist, therefore he has struck
Vietnam even harder. He let them go ahead in attacking
Vietnam.—After defeating the Americans we kept in place
over one million troops, leading Soviet comrades to ask us:
“Comrades, whom do you intend to fight that you keep
such a large [standing] army?” I said: “Later, comrades,
you will understand.” The only reason we had kept such a
standing army was because of China’s threat to Vietnam.
If there had not been [such a threat], then this [large
standing army] would have been unnecessary. Having
been attacked recently on two fronts, [we can see that] it
would have been very dangerous if we had not maintained
a large army.

(B) [The meaning of this “B” in the original text is
unclear]—In the wake of WWII, everyone held the
international gendarme to be American imperialism. They
could take over and bully all of the world. Everyone,
including the big powers, were afraid of the US. It was
only Vietnam that was not afraid of the US.

I understand this matter for my line of work has taught
me it. The first person to fear [the Americans] was Mao
Zedong. He told me, that is, the Vietnamese and Lao,
that: “You must immediately turn over the two liberated
provinces of Laos to the [Vietnamese] [government]. If you
do not do so, then the US will use it as a pretext to launch
an attack. That is a great danger.” As for Vietnam, we said:
“We have to fight the Americans in order to liberate
southern Vietnam must lie in wait for a long period, for one
time, 5-10 or even 20 lifetimes from now. You cannot
fight the Americans. Fighting the US is dangerous”. Mao
Zedong was scared of the US to that extent …

But Vietnam was not scared. Vietnam went ahead and
fought. If Vietnam had not fought the US, then southern
Vietnam would not have been liberated. A country which
is not yet liberated will remain a dependent one. No one is
independent if only one-half of the country is free. It was
not until 1975 that our country finally achieved its full
independence. With independence would come freedom.
Freedom should be freedom for the whole of the Vietnam-
ese nation …

—Engels had already spoken on people’s war. Later
the Soviet Union, China, and ourselves also spoke [on this
matter]. However, these three countries differ a lot on the
content [of people’s war]. It is not true that just because
you have millions of people you can do whatever you like.
China also spoke on people’s war, however, [they held that]
“when the enemy advances, we must retreat.” In other
words, defense is the main feature, and war is divided into
three stages with the countryside used to surround the
cities, while [the main forces] remain in the forests and
mountains only … The Chinese were on the defensive and
very weak [during World War II]. Even with 400 million
people pitted against a Japanese army of 300,000 to 400,000
troops, the Chinese still could not defeat them.45

I have to repeat it like that, for before China had sent
advisers to us [some of our Vietnamese] brothers did not
understand. They thought the [Chinese] were very
capable. But they are not so skilled, and thus we did not
follow [the Chinese advice].46

In 1952, I left northern Vietnam for China, because I
was sick and needed treatment. This was my first time
abroad.47 I put questions to them [the Chinese] and saw
many very strange things. There were areas [which had
been] occupied by Japanese troops, each with a population
of 50 million people, but which had not [had] a single
guerrilla fighter …

[February 1950]. Sitting next to Zhou Enlai, I asked him:
“In this cable recently sent to the USSR, you have agreed,
comrade, to establish a front with the Soviet Union, but
why won’t you form a front to oppose the US?” Zhou
Enlai said: “We can. I share that view. Comrades, I will
form a front with you [on Vietnam]”. Peng Zhen,42 who was
also seated there, added: “This opinion is extremely
correct!” But when the matter was discussed in Shanghai,
Mao said it was not possible, cancel it. You see how
complicated it was.

When I went to China for the last time,44 I was the
leader of the delegation, and I met with the Chinese
diplomation led by Deng Xiaoping. In speaking of territorial
problems, including discussion of several islands, I said:
“Our two nations are near each other. There are several
areas of our territory which have not been clearly defined.
Both sides should establish bodies to consider the matter.
Comrades, please agree with me [on this]. He [Deng]
agreed, but after doing so he was immediately considered a
revisionist by the other group of leaders.

But now he [Deng] is crazy. Because he wants to
show that he is not a revisionist, therefore he has struck
Vietnam even harder. He let them go ahead in attacking
Vietnam.—After defeating the Americans we kept in place
over one million troops, leading Soviet comrades to ask us:
“Comrades, whom do you intend to fight that you keep
such a large [standing] army?” I said: “Later, comrades,
you will understand.” The only reason we had kept such a
standing army was because of China’s threat to Vietnam.
If there had not been [such a threat], then this [large
standing army] would have been unnecessary. Having
When I returned from China, I met Uncle [Ho]. He asked me:

— This was your first time to go abroad, isn’t that right?
— Yes, I went abroad for the first time.
— What did you see?
— I saw two things: Vietnam is very brave and they [the Chinese] are not brave at all.

I understood this from that day on. We [the Vietnamese] were entirely different from them. Courage is inherent in the Vietnamese person, and thus we have never had a defensive strategy. Every inhabitant fights.

Recently, they [the Chinese] have brought several hundred thousand troops in to invade our country. For the most part, we have used our militia and regional troops to attack them. We were not on the defensive, and thus they suffered a setback. They were not able to wipe out a single Vietnamese platoon, while we wiped out several of their regiments and several dozen of their battalions. That is so because of our offensive strategy.

The American imperialists fought us in a protracted war. They were so powerful, yet they lost. But there was a special element, that is the acute contradictions between the Chinese and the Soviets. [Because of this,] they have attacked us hard like this.

— Vietnam fought the Americans, and fought them very fiercely, but we know that the US was an extremely large country, more than capable of amassing 10 million troops and bringing all of its considerably powerful weapons in to fight us. Therefore we had to fight over a long period of time in order to bring them to de-escalation. We were the ones who could do this; the Chinese could not.

When the American army attacked Quong Tre, the Politburo ordered troops to be brought in to fight at once. We were not afraid. After that I went to China to meet Zhou Enlai. He told me: “It [the attack in Queng Tre] is probably unparalleled, unique. In life there is only one [chance,] not two. No one has ever dared to do what you, comrades, have done.”

… Zhou Enlai was the Chief of the General Staff. He dared to speak, he was more frank. He told me: “If I had known before the ways which you comrades employ, we would not have needed the Long March.” What was the Long March for? At the beginning of the march there were 300,000 troops; and at the end of the Long March there were only 30,000 remaining. 270,000 people were lost. It was truly idiotic to have done it in this way … [I] speak as such so that you, comrades, know how much we are ahead of them. In the near future, if we are to fight against China, we will certainly win … However, the truth is that if a different country [other than Vietnam] were to fight against China, it is not clear that they would win like this [like Vietnam].

… If China and the USSR had been united with each other, then it is not certain that the US would have dared to fight us. If the two had been united and joined together to help us, it is not certain that the US would have dared to have fought us in the way in which they did. They would have balked from the very beginning. They would have balked in the same way during the Kennedy period. Vietnam, China, and the USSR all helped Laos and the US immediately signed a treaty with Laos. They did not dare to send American troops to Laos, they let the Lao [People’s Revolutionary] Party participate in the government right away. They did not dare to attack Laos any more.

Later, as the two countries [the USSR and China] were at odds with each other, the Americans were informed [by the Chinese] that they could go ahead and attack Vietnam without any fear. Don’t be afraid [of Chinese retaliation]. Zhou Enlai and Mao Zedong told the Americans: “If you don’t attack me, then I won’t attack you. You can bring in as many troops into southern Vietnam as you like. It’s up to you.”

… We are [presently] bordering on a very strong nation, one with expansionist intentions which, if they are to be implemented, must start with an invasion of Vietnam. Thus, we have to shoulder yet another, different historical role. However, we have never shirked from our historical tasks. Previously, Vietnam did carry out its tasks, and this time Vietnam is determined not to allow them to expand. Vietnam preserves its own independence, and by doing so is also safeguarding the independence of Southeast Asian nations. Vietnam is resolved not to allow the Chinese to carry out their expansionist scheme. The recent battle [with China] was one round only. Presently, they are still making preparations in many fields. However, whatever the level of their preparations, Vietnam will still win …

Waging war is no leisurely walk in the woods. Sending one million troops to wage war against a foreign country involves countless difficulties. Just recently they brought in 500,000 to 600,000 troops to fight us, yet they had no adequate transport equipment to supply food to their troops. China is presently preparing 3.5 million troops, but they have to leave half of them on the [Sino-Soviet] border to deter the Soviets. For that reason, if they bring 1 or 2 million troops in to fight us, we will not be afraid of anything. We have just engaged 600,000 troops, and, if, in the near future, we have to fight 2 million, it will not be a problem at all. We are not afraid.

We are not afraid because we already know the way to fight. If they bring in 1 million troops, they will only gain a foothold in the north. Descending into the mid-lands, the deltas, and into Hanoi and even further downwards would be difficult. Comrades, as you know, Hitler’s clique struck fiercely in this way, yet when they [the German Nazis] arrived in Leningrad they could not enter. With the cities, the people, and defense works, it is impossible to carry out effective attacks against each and every inhabitant. Even fighting for two, three, or four years they will still not be able to enter. Every village there [in the north] is like this. Our guidelines are: Each district is a fortress, each province a battlefield. We will fight and they will not be
able to enter at all.

However, it is never enough just to fight an enemy at the frontline. One must have a strong direct rearguard. After the recent fighting ended, we assessed that, in the near future, we must add several million more people to the northern front. But as the enemy comes from the north, the direct rearguard for the whole country must be Thanh Hoa, Nghe An, Ha Tinh ... The direct rearguard to protect the capital must be Thanh Hoa and Nghe Tinh. We have enough people. We can fight them in many ways ... We can use 2 to 3 army corps to inflict a strong blow on them that will make them stagger, while we continue to hold our land. To this end, each soldier must be a real soldier and each squad a real squad.

—Having now fought one battle already, we should not be subjective. Subjectivism and underestimation of the enemy are incorrect, but a lack of self-confidence is also wrong. We are not subjective, we do not underestimate the enemy. But we are also confident and firmly believe in our victory. We should have both these things.

—The Chinese now have a plot to attack [us] in order to expand southwards. But in the present era nothing can be done and then wrapped up tidily. China has just fought Vietnam for a few days, yet the whole world has shouted: ["Leave Vietnam alone!!"] The present era is not like the olden times. In those days, it was only us and them [meaning the Chinese]. Now the whole world is fastened closely together. The human species has not yet entered the socialist phase at all; instead this is a time where everyone wants independence and freedom. [Even] on small islands, people want independence and freedom. All of humankind is presently like this. That is very different than it was in olden times. In those days, people were not yet very aware of these things. Thus the sentence of Uncle Hô: “There is nothing more precious than independence and freedom” is an idea of the present era. To lay hands on Vietnam is to lay hands on humanity and infringe on independence and freedom ... Vietnam is a nation that symbolizes independence and freedom.

—When it came to fighting the US, our brothers in the Politburo had to discuss together this matter to consider whether we dared to fight the US or not. All were agreed to fight. The Politburo expressed its resolve: In order to fight the Americans, we must not fear the USA. All were of the same mind. As all agreed to fight the US, to have no fear of the USA, we must also not fear the USSR. All agreed. We must also not fear China. All agreed. If we don’t fear these three things, we can fight the US. This was how we did things in our Politburo at that time.

Although the Politburo met and held discussions like this and everyone was of the same mind, there was later one person who told a comrade what I said. That comrade rose to question the Politburo, asking for what reason does Anh Ba once again say that if we want to fight the Americans then we should not fear the Chinese? Why does he have to put it this way again?

At that time, Brother Nguyen Chi Thanh, who thus far was suspected of being sympathetic to the Chinese, stood up and said: “Respected Politburo and respected Uncle Hô, the statement of Anh Ba was correct. It must be said that way [referring to the need not to fear the Chinese], for they [the Chinese] give us trouble on many matters. They blocked us here, then forced our hands there. They do not let us fight ...”

While we were fighting in southern Vietnam, Deng Xiaoping stipulated that I (toi) could only fight at the level of one platoon downward, and must not fight at a higher level. He [Deng Xiaoping] said: “In the south, since you have made the mistake of starting the fighting already, you should only fight at the level of one platoon downward, not at a higher level.” That is how they brought pressure to bear on us.

—We are not afraid of anyone. We are not afraid because we are in the right. We do not fear our elder brother. We also do not fear our friends. Of course, we do not fear our enemies. We have fought them already. We are human beings; we are not afraid of anyone. We are independent. All the world knows we are independent.

We must have a strong army, because our nation is under threat and being bullied . . . It cannot be otherwise. If not, then it will be extremely dangerous, but our country is poor.

—We have a strong army, but that does not in any way weaken us. The Chinese have several policies towards us: To invade and to occupy our country; to seek to weaken us economically and to make our living conditions difficult. For these reasons, in opposing China we must, first of all, not only fight, but also make ourselves stronger. To this end, in my view, our army should not be a force that wastes the resources of the state, but should also be a strong productive force. When the enemies come, they [the soldiers] grab their guns at once. When no enemy is coming, then they will produce grandly. They will be the best and highest symbol in production, producing more than anyone else. Of course, that is not a new story ...

—At present, our army shoulders an historical task: to defend our independence and freedom, while simultaneously protecting the peace and independence of the whole world. If the expansionist policy of the reactionary Chinese clique cannot be implemented any longer, that would be in the interest of the whole world. Vietnam can do this. Vietnam has 50 million people already. Vietnam has Lao and Cambodian friends and has secure terrain. Vietnam has our camp and all of mankind on its side. It is clear that we can do this.

... Do our comrades know of anyone in our Party, among our people, who suspects that we will lose to China? No one, of course. But we must maintain our friendly relations. We do not want national hatred. I repeat: I say this because I have never felt hatred for China. I do not feel this way. It is they who fight us. Today I also want you comrades to know that in this world, the one who has defended China is myself! That is true.
Why so? Because during the June 1960 conference in Bucharest, 60 Parties rose to oppose China, but it was only I who defended China. 54 Our Vietnamese people is like that. I will go ahead and repeat this: However badly they behave, we know that their people are our friends. As for our side, we have no evil feelings towards China. Yet the plot of several [Chinese] leaders is a different matter. We refer to them as a clique only. We do not refer to their nation. We did not say the Chinese people are bad towards us. We say that it is the reactionary Beijing clique. I again say it strictly like this.

Thus, let us keep the situation under firm control, remain ready for combat, and never relax in our vigilance. It is the same with respect to China. I am confident that in 50 years, or even in 100 years, socialism may succeed; and then we will not have this problem any longer. But it will take such a [long] time. Therefore, we must prepare and stand ready in all respects.

At present, no one certainly has doubts any more. But five years ago I was sure there [were no] comrades who doubted] that China could strike us. But there were. That as the case because [these] comrades had no knowledge about this matter.55 But that was not the case with us [Le Duan and the leadership].56 We knew that China had been attacking us for some ten years or more. Therefore we were not surprised [by the January 1979 Chinese attack].

[Source: People’s Army Library, Hanoi. Document obtained and translated for CWIHP by Christopher Goscha (Groupe d’Etudes sur le Vietnam Contemporain, Sciences Politique, Paris.).]

Dr. Stein Tonnesson is the director of the International Peace Research Institute, Oslo (PRIO).

Christopher Goscha currently teaches history at the American University and the International School of Paris. He is also co-director of the Group d’Etudes sur le Viet Nam contemporain, SciencesPo, Paris. He has recently published ‘The Borders of Vietnam’s Early Wartime Trade with Southern China (Asian Survey, 2000) and submitted his thesis on the “Le Contexte Asiatique de la guerre franco-vietnamienne,” Ecole Pratique des Hautes Etudes. La Sorbonne.

1 The Truth Concerning Vietnamese-Chinese Relations over the Past 30 Years, (Hanoi: Ministry of Foreign Affairs, 1979). The White Book was published also in foreign languages, and in the following we shall refer to the French version: La vérité sur les relations Vietnam-Chinoises durant les trente dernières années (Hanoi: Ministère des Affaires Etrangères, 1979)

2 The Vietnamese White Book was countered by a similar Chinese publication: On the Vietnamese Foreign Ministry’s White Book Concerning Viet Nam-China Relations, (Beijing: Foreign Languages Press, 1979.) According to the Chinese reply, the Vietnamese white book was an attempt to “distort, tamper with and fabricate history in an effort to convert the history between the two countries in the 30 years which was interwoven mainly with friendship and co-operation into one in which China tried to take control of Viet Nam” (pp. 2–3). Unfortunately, the Chinese found that the Vietnamese “lies” were “not worth refuting one by one.” Thus the Chinese white book is less detailed and less interesting for the historian than the Vietnamese one.


4 A useful, meticulous study of Vietnamese official rhetoric, including Le Duan’s official publications can be found in Eero Palmujoki, Revolutionary Pragmatism and Formal Marxism-Leninism: An Analysis of Vietnam’s Foreign-Policy Argumentation from the Fall of Saigon to the Collapse of the Socialist World System (Tampere: PhD dissertation, 1995). The study includes a number of documents also from before 1975.

5 This is based on Christopher Goscha’s observation to the author that it would be surprising if Le Duan actually used the word “tui” when speaking to Ho Chi Minh. Goscha points to the fact that Ho had long established a revolutionary and hierarchical family in which each member had (or did not have) his place (anh hai, ba, etc.) as part of a special cast.

6 The arrogance displayed by Le Duan seems to confirm some of Bui Tin’s allegations in his Following Ho Chi Minh. Memoirs of a North Vietnamese Colonel (London: Hurst, 1995). esp. p. 66. Bui Tin also says that “Le Duan scarcely ever seemed to write anything down. He just said what he thought on the spur of the moment. He also stammered a lot and was difficult to listen to. That was what everybody felt. They all became weary trying to understand what he was saying because he also spoke ungrammatically” (p. 105).


9 On Ho Chi Minh, see Williams F. Duiker, Ho Chi Minh (New York: Hyperion, 2000)

10 Ralph B. Smith goes as far as to claim that Ho Chi Minh and Le Duan were rivals. R.B. Smith, An International History of the Vietnam War, vol. 1, p. 129. Pierre Asselin makes the same claim, asserting that by 1965,
Ho Chi Minh had (due also to his rapidly deteriorating health) “for all intents and purposes been sidelined.” Pierre Asselin, “Le Duan and the Creation of an Independent Vietnamese State”, unpublished paper presented at the International Conference on Vietnamese Studies in Hanoi, July 1998, p. 2. Bui Tin (whose hero is General Giap) claims that Le Duc Tho, Le Duan and Pham Hung “progressively tried to neutralise Ho Chi Minh” as well as Pham Van Dong in their struggle to downgrade the role and reputation of Giap. Bui Tin, Following Ho Chi Minh, p. 32.

11 Pierre Asselin claims that Le Duan “epitomized Vietnamese disrespect for the lordship of both those countries” (the Soviet Union and China), and that his death in 1986 opened the door for improving Vietnam’s relationship not only with China, but with the Soviet Union as well. Pierre Asselin, “Le Duan and the Creation . . .”, p. 8. This seems an exaggeration in view of Vietnam’s heavy dependence on the USSR between 1978 and 1986, but there may be a grain of truth in it. Soviet archives will show.


13 There may be some truth in Le Duan’s impression. Although Deng Xiaoping had personally ordered the Chinese “self-defensive counterattack” against Vietnam, it was also he who called off the operation in March, after the Chinese had suffered more than 30,000 casualties. And Deng came under criticism afterwards for not having broken the fingers of the Vietnamese, but merely hurt them. See Richard Baum, Burying Mao. Chinese Politics in the Age of Deng Xiaoping (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1994), p. 80.

14 “Aujourd’hui, les forces révolutionnaires ont grandi et occupent une position des plus favorables.” La vérité sur les relations Vietnam-Chinoises, p. 58.

15 Ibid.

16 In the 77 Conversations there are short excerpts of minutes from three meetings between Zhou Enlai and Le Duan in 1971 (7 March in Hanoi, 13 July in Hanoi, and November in Beijing). None of the excerpts include references to Geneva, but both Mao and Zhou had allegedly admitted earlier, when talking with Ho Chi Minh and Pham Van Dong, that a mistake had been made in their struggle to downgrade the role and reputation of Giap. Bui Tin, Following Ho Chi Minh, p. 32.


19 However, according to Bui Tin, Le Duan told his official biographers in an interview in 1983 that he had been better than Uncle Ho. Ho always said “Yes” to what Stalin and Mao told him. “As for me, I dared to argue with Khrushchev and Mao.” Bui Tin, Following Ho Chi Minh, p. 43.

20 77 Conversations, pp. 74 (note 117), 163–164.

21 Chen Jian, “China’s Involvement in the Vietnam War,” pp. 368–369. See also 77 Conversations, p. 85, where Le Duan tells Liu Shaoqi on 8 April 1965: “We want some volunteer pilots, volunteer soldiers . . . and other volunteers, including road and bridge engineering units.”

22 The comparison may perhaps be far-fetched, but an open kind of co-operation between Norwegian and Swedish historians has been initiated in preparing for the 100 years’ anniversary in 2005 of the break-up of the Swedish-Norwegian Union.

23 This document is a translation of a copy of the extracts of the original. It was copied by hand in the Library of the People’s Army, Hanoi. The translator of this document, Christopher E. Goscha, had full authorization to do so. The text is attributed to “comrade B.” It can either have been written by comrade B himself, or (much more likely) it is the typed notes of someone who listened to an oral presentation by comrade B. In the text, comrade B reveals that during a Politburo meeting he was referred to as Anh Ba (Brother Number Three), the alias we know was used by Secretary General Le Duan within the Vietnam Workers’ Party (from 1976 “Vietnamese Communist Party”).

24 Although the document is undated, it is clear from the text that it was written sometime in 1979, in the wake of the Chinese invasion of Vietnam. This is supported by another highly charged document, published in 1979 at the behest of the Vietnamese Communist Party, which chronicles Chinese perfidy and, not entirely surprisingly, mentions many of the same incidents which Le Duan describes in this document. See, The Truth concerning Vietnamese-Chinese Relations over the Past 30 Years (Hanoi: Nha Xuat Ban in Thet, 1979) [hereafter cited as The Truth concerning Vietnamese-Chinese]. The endnotes includes references to the page numbers of the French version of the same document: La vérité sur les relations Vietnam-Chinoises durant les trente dernières années (Hanoi, Ministère des Affaires Etrangères, 1979). The translator would like to thank Thomas Engelbert, Stein Tønnesson for their invaluable suggestions and corrections. The translator is responsible for all errors.

25 All ellipses indicated as such are in the original; translator’s ellipses and comments are in brackets: […]

26 The Geneva Accords of 1954 allowed the Pathet Lao, closely allied with the DRV, to maintain a provisional presence in the two Lao provinces of Phongsaly and Sam Neua. No similar concession was made to Khmers allied with the Vietnamese during the resistance against the French.

27 The Truth concerning Vietnamese-Chinese Relations puts these high-level discussions on Laos in
August 1961. (*La vérité sur les relations Vietnamo-Chinoises*, p. 34.)

28 Zhang Wentian was one of the members of the Chinese delegation who was present when comrade B made this remark. He was also then Deputy Foreign Minister, as well as a longtime member of the Politburo of the Chinese Communist Party. During the 1950s, he had been an alternate member of the Politburo in charge of relations with socialist countries.

29 The Truth concerning Vietnamese-Chinese Relations puts the meeting, this way: “In an exchange of opinions with the Vietnamese leadership, the Deputy Chinese Foreign Minister, Zhang Wentian expressed his view that one could carry on with guerrilla warfare in southern Vietnam. But afterwards, in accordance with a directive from Beijing, the Chinese Ambassador to Hanoi informed the Vietnamese side that this had not been the official opinion of the Central Committee of the Chinese Communist Party, but rather a personal view.” *The Truth concerning Vietnamese-Chinese Relations*, p. 40. (*La vérité sur les relations Vietnamo-Chinoises*, p. 31.)

30 See The Truth concerning Vietnamese-Chinese, p. 60. (*La vérité sur les relations Vietnamo-Chinoises*, p. 47.)

31 Le Duan is referring to the task of explaining the repatriation of southern cadres to the north. Le Duan forgets conveniently to mention that the Chinese helped the Vietnamese to win at Dien Bien Phu in 1954.

32 See The Truth concerning Vietnamese-Chinese Relations, p. 60, where the Vietnamese reportedly told the Chinese in November 1972: “Vietnam is our country, you comrades, are not to negotiate with the US about Vietnam. You have already admitted your mistake of 1954, now you should not commit the same mistake again”. (*La vérité sur les relations Vietnamo-Chinoises*, p. 47.)

33 One of Le Duan’s close advisors, Tran Quyen, has recently circulated his memoirs in Vietnam, providing interesting details on Le Du An’s policy towards the Sino-Soviet split and the divisions within the Vietnamese Worker’s Party on this issue in the 1960s. Tran Quyen, *Souvenirs of Le Duan (Excerpts)*, undated, privately published, copy in the translator’s possession.

34 Kang Sheng (1903-1975), one of the PRC’s top national security experts. He had been trained by the Soviet NKVD in the 1930s, and had become Mao’s closest advisor on the problem of interpreting Soviet policies. Kang Sheng was Secretary of the Central Committee of the CCP in 1962, a member of the CCP Politburo from 1969; between 1973 and 1975 he was member of the Standing Committee of the Politburo.

35 See: The Truth concerning Vietnamese-Chinese Relations, p. 43, in which the Vietnamese claimed that in exchange for renouncing all aid from the Soviet Union, Deng Xiaoping promised to make Vietnam China’s number one priority in foreign aid. (*La vérité sur les relations Vietnamo-Chinoises*, p. 33.)

36 See, The Truth concerning Vietnamese-Chinese, p. 43. (*La vérité sur les relations Vietnamo-Chinoises*, p. 33.)

and also Tran Quyen, *Souvenirs of Le Duan (Excerpts)*.

37 In November 1966, the Soviets charged the Chinese with having abandoned the world Communist line adopted at the 1957 and 1960 Moscow Conferences. See also Tran Quyen, *Souvenirs of Le Duan (Excerpts)*.

38 The Truth concerning Vietnamese-Chinese Relations has Mao making this statement to a delegation of the Vietnamese Worker’s Party in Wuhan in 1963. Mao is quoted by the Vietnamese as saying: “I will be the Chairman of 500 million poor peasants and I will send troops down into Southeast Asia.” (*La vérité sur les relations Vietnamo-Chinoises*, p. 9.)

39 This could also translate as “and I’ll beat yours as well” or “I could beat your’s as well.”

40 It is not exactly clear to the translator to whom Le Duan is referring by the “military.”

41 This appears to be a reference to the words relayed to the Soviets by the Chinese Ambassador to Moscow, on 14 February 1965, on the occasion of the 15th anniversary of the Sino-Soviet Treaty of Friendship, Alliance, and Mutual Assistance. As Ambassador Pan Tzu-li told the Soviets: “…if the imperialists dare to attack the Soviet Union, the Chinese people, without the least hesitation, will fulfill their treaty obligations and together with the great Soviet people […] will fight shoulder to shoulder until the final victory...” Quoted by Donald S. Zagoria, *Moscow, Peking, Hanoi* (New York: Pegasus, 1967), pp. 139-140.

42 Peng Zhen was member of the Politburo of the Central Committee of the CCP from 1951 to 1969.

43 Li Chiang was Vice-Chairman of the Committee for Economic Relations with Foreign Countries within the Chinese State Council from 1965 to 1967. Between 1968 and 1973, he was Vice-Minister of Foreign Trade and from 1973 served as Minister of Foreign Trade.

44 A reference to Le Duan’s trip in November 1977.

45 Le Duan forgets the fact that even fewer French had been able to rule Vietnam without too much trouble until March 1940.


47 While Le Duan traveled often to northern Vietnam during the war against the French, he is normally assumed to have stayed in southern Vietnam at this time, at the head of the southern branch of the party which became COSVN in the early 1950s. The translator doubts that Le Duan traveled to China in 1952. Ho Chi Minh did, but not Le Duan.


49 This confirms that comrade “B” is the same person.
as “Anh Ba.” With the knowledge that Anh Ba is another name for Le Duan, comrade B, by extension, is Le Duan. From the events described in the text, this is certain and Tran Quyen, *Souvenirs of Le Duan (Excerpts)*, confirms it.

50 This may be a reference to Hoang Van Hoan. For a contending view, one must consult *A Drop in the Ocean (Memoirs of Revolution)* (Beijing: NXB Tin Viet Nam, 1986).

51 See also Tran Quyen, *Souvenirs of Le Duan (Excerpts)*.

52 Perhaps an allusion to the Soviet Union.

53 This type of warfare had existed in China as well. And elsewhere in the world of guerilla warfare.

54 This took place in June 1960. For more on Le Duan’s position on this matter, see Tran Quyen, *Souvenirs of Le Duan (Excerpts)*. After the Party Congress of the


55 This seems to be a stab at Hoang Van Hoan and no doubt others.

56 This is probably a reference to the group of leaders listening to Le Duan’s talk, and can be taken as an indication that the pro-Chinese comrades referred to above, were not part of the group listening. See also Tran Quyen, *Souvenirs of Le Duan (Excerpts)*.

---

**NOW IN PAPERBACK!**

**BROTHERS IN ARMS**  
THE RISE AND FALL OF THE SINO-SOVIET ALLIANCE, 1945-1963  

*Edited by Odd Arne Westad*

This volume brings together young scholars from China, Russia, the United States, and Western Europe who, drawing on much newly available documentation, analyze the complicated history of the Sino-Soviet relationship. It is offered as a first assessment of massive amounts of new information, providing new insights and many reevaluations of various aspects of the alliance between China and the Soviet Union—its creation, aims, and instruments, its strains and conflicts, and its final collapse. Revising earlier views, the contributors emphasize the role of ideology and cultural aspects of interaction, the links between alliance policies and domestic politics, and the way the partners’ differing perceptions of the United States influenced the fate of the alliance.

**Reviews**

“These first-rate essays inform the reader about the outpouring of primary source materials on the early Cold War from Russian and Chinese archives during the past decade. . . . The essays are written by a superb group of international scholars . . . who have contributed in recent years to reshaping understanding of the Cold War era. Westad’s excellent introduction provides a framework for the volume. . . . As an added bonus, the editor has included the most important documents in an appendix that further enhances the volume’s usefulness.”

—Choice

“Westad has assembled an unusually important collection. . . . This volume is essential reading for anyone interested in the highly dynamic and increasingly international field of Cold War studies.”

—Michael H. Hunt, University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill

*Cold War International History Project Series*  
*A co-publication of Stanford University Press and the Woodrow Wilson Center Press, Washington, D.C.*

Odd Arne Westad is Reader in International History at the London School of Economics and Political Science.
Planning for Nuclear War:  
The Czechoslovak War Plan of 1964

By Petr Luňák

The 1964 operational plan for the Czechoslovak People’s Army (Československá Lidová Armada, or ČSLA), an English translation of which follows, is the first war plan from the era of the NATO-Warsaw Pact confrontation that has emerged from the archives of either side. It is “the real thing”—the actual blueprint for war at the height of the nuclear era,” detailing the assignments of the “Czechoslovak Front” of forces of the Warsaw Pact.¹ The plan was the result of the reevaluation of Soviet bloc military strategy after Stalin’s death. Unlike the recently discovered 1951 Polish war plan (the only pre-Warsaw Pact war plan to surface thus far from the Soviet side), which reflected plainly defensive thinking;² the ČSLA plan a decade and a half later, according to the ambitious imagination of the Czechoslovak and Soviet military planners, envisioned the ČSLA operating on the territory of southeastern France within a few days of the outbreak of war, turning Western Europe into a nuclear battlefield.

The principles on which the Polish and Czechoslovak armies based their strategies in the 1950s and 1960s mirrored Soviet thinking of the time. When did the change in military thinking in the Eastern bloc occur, and why? Further, it is necessary to ask when exactly did it take on the characteristics contained in the plan of 1964? Naturally, precise and definitive answers cannot be given until the military archives of the former Soviet Union are made accessible. In the meantime, material from East-Central European sources can at least hint at some of the answers.

The advent of nuclear weapons

During the first years after the formation of the East bloc, the Czechoslovak People’s Army concentrated on planning the defense of Czechoslovak territory. The designs for military exercises held in the first half of the 1950s reflect this priority. While plans and troop exercises occasionally included offensive operations, they almost never took place outside of Czechoslovak soil. Advancing into foreign territory was taken into consideration, but only in the case of a successful repulsion of an enemy offensive and the subsequent breach of their defense.³

The vagueness of Czechoslovak thinking vis-à-vis operations abroad is also apparent in the military cartographic work of this period. The first mapping of territory on the basic scale of 1:50,000, begun in 1951, covered Czechoslovak territory only. But, as late as the end of the 1950s, the Czechoslovak cartographers were expected to have also mapped parts of southern Germany and all of Austria. During the following years, the mapping was indeed based on this schedule.⁴

The change from defensive to offensive thinking,
which occurred after Stalin’s death, is connected with a reevaluation of the role of nuclear arms. While Stalin himself did not overlook the importance of nuclear weapons and made a tremendous effort to obtain them in the second half of the 1940s, he did not consider them to be an important strategic element due to their small number in the Soviet arsenal. As a consequence, his so-called “permanent operating factors” (stability of the rear, morale of the army, quantity and quality of divisions, armament of the army and the organizational ability of army commanders), which were, in his view, to decide the next war (if not any war), remained the official dogma until his death. This rather simple concept ignored other factors. First and foremost, it did not take into account the element of surprise and the importance of taking the initiative.

Only after the dictator died was there room for discussion among Soviet strategists on the implications of nuclear weapons which, in the meantime, had become the cornerstone of the US massive retaliation doctrine. Nuclear weapons were gradually included in the plans of the Soviet army and its satellite countries. In the 1952 combat directives of the Soviet Army, for instance, nuclear weapons had still been almost entirely left out. When these directives were adopted by CSLA in 1954 and translated word for word, a special supplement on the effects of nuclear weapons had to be quickly created and added.7

The extent to which the Czechoslovak leadership was informed of Soviet operational plans remains an open question. In any case, its members were in no way deterred by the prospect of massive retaliation by the West. Alexej Čepička, the Czechoslovak Minister of National Defense and later one of the few “victims” of Czechoslovak de-Stalinization, viewed nuclear weapons like any others, only having greater destructive powers. In 1954, he stated that “nuclear weapons alone will not be the deciding factor in achieving victory. Although the use of atomic weapons will strongly affect the way in which battles and operations are conducted as well as life in the depths of combat, the significance of all types of armies [...] remains valid. On the contrary, their importance is gaining significance.”8

Given the nuclear inferiority of the East, such casual thinking about the importance of nuclear weapons was tantamount to making a virtue out of necessity. However, it should be noted, that although Western leaders frequently stressed the radical difference between nuclear and conventional weapons, military planners in both the East and West did their job in preparing for the same scenario—a massive conflict that included the use of all means at their disposal.

There were, however, fundamental differences in the understanding of nuclear conflict and its potential consequences. In the thinking of the Czechoslovak and probably the Soviet military leadership of the time, nuclear weapons would determine the pace of war (forcing a more offensive strategy), but not its essential character. Since nuclear weapons considerably shortened the stages of war, according to the prevailing logic, it became necessary to try to gain the decisive initiative with a powerful surprise strike against enemy forces. Contrary to the US doctrine of massive retaliation, the Soviet bloc’s response would have made use not only of nuclear weapons but, in view of Soviet conventional superiority, also of conventional weapons. Massive retaliation did not make planning beyond it irrelevant. Contrary to many Western thinkers, Soviet strategists assumed that a massive strike would only create the conditions for winning the war by the classic method of seizing enemy territory.

The idea that in the nuclear era offense is the best defense quickly found its way into Czechoslovak plans for building and training the country’s armed forces. From 1954-55 on, the “use of offensive operations [...] with the use of nuclear and chemical weapons” became one of the main training principles, and the ČSLA prepared itself almost exclusively for offensive operations. Defensive operations were now supposed to change quickly to surprise counter-offensive operations at any price. Not surprisingly, from 1955 on, military mapping now included southeastern Germany all the way to the Franco-German border, on a scale of 1:100,000—a scale that was considered adequate for this kind of operation.

It should be noted that the Czechoslovak military staff proved reluctant to engage in the risky planning of operations involving the use of nuclear weapons on the first day of conflict. But complaints along these lines to the highest representatives of the Ministry of National Defense were irrelevant since in the 1950s Czechoslovakia neither had access to nuclear weapons nor nuclear weapons placed on its territory.12

Deep into enemy territory

The introduction of nuclear weapons into East bloc military plans and the resulting emphasis on achieving an element of surprise had a tremendous effect on the role of ground operations. Now the main task of ground forces was to quickly penetrate enemy territory and to destroy the enemy’s nuclear and conventional forces on his soil. Thus the idea of advancing towards Lyons by the 9th day of the conflict, as outlined in the 1964 plan, did not develop overnight. Until the late 1950s, exercises of ČSLA offensive operations ended around the 10th day, fighting no further west than the Nuremberg-Ingolstadt line.13 These exercise designs show that the so-called Prague–Saarland line (Prague-Nuremberg-Saarbrücken) was clearly preferred to the Alpine line Brno-Vienna-Munich-Basel.14

With the aim of enhancing the mobility of the army, the Czechoslovak military staff, upon orders from the Soviet military headquarters, began a relocation of military forces in 1958, which concentrated the maximum number of highly mobile tank divisions in the western part of the country.15 As a result of the 1958-62 Berlin Crisis, the military institutionalization of the Warsaw Pact led to the creation of individual fronts. Within this new framework, the ČSLA was responsible for one entire front with its own command and tasks as set forth by the Soviet military headquarters.16
Even before these organizational changes were officially implemented, they had been applied in military exercises, during which the newly created fronts were to be synchronized. While the plans of the exercises and the tasks set for the participants cannot be considered an exact reflection of operational planning, they show that the time periods by which certain lines on the western battlefield were to be reached had gradually been reduced and the depth reached by Czechoslovak troops had been enlarged. In one of the first front exercises in 1960, the CSLA was supposed to operate on the Stuttgart–Dachau line by the 4th day of conflict. The operational front exercise of March 1961 went even further in assuming that the Dijon-Lyon line would be reached on the 6th–7th day of the conflict. During the operational front exercise in September 1961, the Czechoslovak front practiced supporting an offensive by Soviet and East German forces. The line Bonn-Metz-Strasbourg was to be reached on the 7th and 8th day. An exercise conducted in December 1961 gave the Czechoslovak front the task of reaching the Besancon–Belfort line on the 7th day of operations. From the early 1960s onward, massive war games with similar designs took place in Legnica, Poland, in the presence of the commands of the individual fronts. The assumed schedule and territory covered in these exercises already reflected the vision of the 1964 plan.

In Warsaw Pact plans, Czechoslovakia did not play the main strategic role in the Central European battlefield—that fell to the Warsaw-Berlin axis. For instance, during the joint front exercise VÍTR (Wind), the Czechoslovak front, besides taking Nancy (France), was “to be prepared to secure the left wing of the Eastern forces [the Warsaw Pact–P.L.] against the neutral state [Austria–P.L.] in case its neutrality was broken.”

With a greater number of nuclear weapons in their possession by the late 1950s, the Soviets began to appreciate nuclear weapons not merely as “normal” weapons. For Soviet leader Nikita S. Khrushchev, nuclear weapons were both a tool to exert political pressure and a measure of military deterrent. To him, further demilitarization of the Cold War could be achieved through cuts in ground forces. Nuclear weapons in turn acquired an even more prominent role in planning for massive retaliation. The Czechoslovak military leadership hinted at this as follows: “For the countries of the Warsaw Treaty and specifically of ČSSR, it is important not to allow the enemy to make a joint attack and not to allow him to gain advantageous conditions or the development of ground force operations, and thus gain strategic dominance. Basically, this means that our means for an atomic strike must be in such a state of military readiness that they would be able to deal with the task of carrying out a nuclear counter-strike with a time lag of only seconds or tenths of seconds.”

**Flexible response à la Warsaw Pact**

The US move from massive retaliation to flexible response during the early 1960s did not go unnoticed by the Warsaw Pact. According to its 1964 training directives, the ČSLA was supposed to carry out training for the early stages of war not only with the use of nuclear weapons but, for the first time since mid-1950s, also without them. At a major joint exercise of the Warsaw Pact in the summer of 1964, the early phase of war was envisaged without nuclear weapons.

However, flexible response as conceived by the Warsaw Pact was not a mere mirror image of the Western version. The US attempt to enhance the credibility of its deterrent by acquiring the capacity to limit conflict to a manageable level by introducing “thresholds” and “pauses” resulted from an agreement between political leaders and the military, who assumed to know how to prevent war from escalating into a nuclear nightmare. In the East, by contrast, the concept was based only on a military—and perhaps more realistic—assessment that a conflict was, sooner or later, going to expand into a global nuclear war. In the words of the CSSR Minister of National Defense Bohumír Loms ký:

“All of these speculative theories of Western strategists about limiting the use of nuclear arms and about the spiral effect of the increase of their power have one goal: in any given situation to stay in the advantageous position for the best timing of a massive nuclear strike in order to start a global nuclear war. We reject these false speculative theories, and every use of nuclear arms by an aggressor will be answered with a massive nuclear offensive using all the means of the Warsaw Treaty countries, on the whole depth and aiming at all targets of the enemy coalition. We have no intention to be the first to resort to the use of nuclear weapons. Although we do not believe in the truthfulness and the reality of these Western theories, we cannot disregard the fact that the imperialists could try to start a war without the immediate use of nuclear arms … That is why we must also be prepared for this possibility.”

In line with this crude thinking, the Czechoslovak, and most probably the Soviet military conceived of only one threshold, i.e. that between conventional and nuclear war. The Warsaw Pact hence stood somewhere between massive retaliation and flexible response.

According to some contemporary accounts, it was in this period that the term “preemptive nuclear strike” appeared in Warsaw Pact deliberations. A massive nuclear strike was supposed to be used only if three sources had confirmed that the enemy was about to employ nuclear weapons. Nevertheless, all exercises carried out in the following years made it clear that the use of nuclear weapons was expected no later than the third day of operations. Exercises that counted on the use of nuclear arms from the very beginning of the fighting were common.
The 1964 Czechoslovak war plan is therefore especially important. It shows how little the East-bloc planners believed in the relevance of Western-style flexible response. Not only did the plan not consider the possibility of a non-nuclear war in Europe, but it assumed that the war would start with a massive nuclear strike by the West.

**The Czechoslovak war plan of 1964**

Considering the high degree of secrecy surrounding these documents, only a few people in the 1960s had direct knowledge of the 1964 Czechoslovak war plan. However, several sporadic accounts make at least some conclusions possible. The plan was the first to have been drawn up by the ČSLA in the aftermath of the 1958-62 Berlin Crisis. According to the late Václav Vitanovský, then ČSLA Chief of Operations, the plan came about as a result of directives from Moscow. These directives were then worked into operational plans by the individual armies. As Vitanovský explained, “When we had finished, we took it back to Moscow, where they looked it over, endorsed it, and said yes, we agree. Or they changed it. Changes were made right there on the spot.” The orders for the Czechoslovak Front stated that the valleys in the Vosges mountains were to be reached by the end of the operation. Undoubtedly, this was meant to prepare the way for troops of the second echelon made up of Soviet forces.

The 1964 plan remained valid until at least 1968 and probably for quite some time after. As early as the mid-1960s, however, a number of revisions were made. According to contemporary accounts, the Soviet leadership feared that the Czechoslovak Front would not be capable of fulfilling its tasks and, accordingly, reduced the territory assigned to the ČSLA. To support the objectives of the 1964 plan, Moscow tried to impose the stationing of a number of Soviet divisions on Czechoslovak territory in 1965-66. In December 1965, the Soviets forced the Czechoslovak government to sign an agreement on the storage of nuclear warheads on Czechoslovak soil. Implementation of both measures only became feasible after the Soviet invasion in 1968.

---

**DOCUMENT**

**Plan of Actions of the Czechoslovak People’s Army for War Period**

“Approved”

Single Copy

Supreme Commander

of the Armed Forces of the USSR

---

Antonín Novotný

1964

1. Conclusions from the assessment of the enemy

The enemy could use up to 12 general military units in the Central European military theater for advancing in the area of the Czechoslovak Front from D[ay] 1 to D[ay] 7-8.

—The 2nd Army Corps of the FRG [Federal Republic of Germany] including: 4th and 10th mechanized divisions, 12th tank division, 1st airborne division and 1st mountain division,
—The 7th Army Corps of the USA including: the 24th mechanized division and 4th armored tank division;
—The 1st Army of France including: 3rd mechanized division, the 1st and 7th tank divisions, and up to two newly deployed units, including 6 launchers of tactical missiles, up to 130 theater launchers and artillery, and up to 2800 tanks.

Operations of the ground troops could be supported by part of the 40th Air Force, with up to 900 aircraft, including 250 bombers and up to 40 airborne missile launchers.

Judging by the composition of the group of NATO troops and our assessment of the exercises undertaken by the NATO command, one could anticipate the design of the enemy’s actions with the following goals.

To disorganize the leadership of the state and to undermine mobilization of armed forces by surprise nuclear strikes against the main political and economic centers of the country.

To critically change the correlation of forces in its own favor by strikes against the troops, airfields and communication centers.

To destroy the border troops of the Czechoslovak People’s Army in border battles, and to destroy the main group of our troops in the Western and Central Czech Lands by building upon the initial attack.

To disrupt the arrival of strategic reserves in the regions of Krkonoše, Jeseníky, and Moravská Brána by nuclear strikes against targets deep in our territory and by sending airborne assault troops; to create conditions for a successful attainment of the goals of the operation.

Judging by the enemy’s approximate operative design, the combat actions of both sides in the initial period of the war will have a character of forward contact battles.

The operative group of the enemy in the southern part of the FRG will force the NATO command to gradually engage a number of their units in the battle, which will create an opportunity for the Czechoslovak Front to defeat NATO forces unit by unit. At the same time, that would require building a powerful first echelon in the operative structure of the Front; and to achieve success it would require building up reserves that would be capable of mobilizing very quickly and move into the area of military action in a very short time.
2. Upon receiving special instructions from the Supreme Commander of the Unified Armed Forces, the Czechoslovak People’s Army will deploy to the Czechoslovak Front with the following tasks:

To be ready to start advancing toward Nuremberg, Stuttgart and Munich with part of forces immediately after the nuclear strike. Nuclear strikes against the troops of the enemy should be targeted at the depth of the line Würzburg, Erlangen, Regensburg, Landschut.

The immediate task is to defeat the main forces of the Central Group of the West German Army in the southern part of the FRG, in cooperation with the [Soviet] 8th Guards Army of the 1st Western Front; by the end of the first day—reach the line Bayreuth, Regensburg, Passau; and by the end of the second day—move to the line Höchstadt, Schwabach, Ingolstadt, Mühldorf, and by the fourth day of the attack—reach the line Mosbach, Nürtingen, Memmingen, Kaufbeuren.

In the future, building upon the advance in the direction of Strasbourg, Epinal, Dijon, to finalize the defeat of the enemy in the territory of the FRG, to force a crossing of the river Rhine, and on the seventh or eighth day of the operation to take hold of the line Langres, Besançon.

Afterward develop the advance toward Lyon.

To have in the combat disposition of the Czechoslovak Front the following units:

— the 1st and 4th Armies, 10th Air Army, 331st front missile brigade, 11th, 21st and the 31st mobile missile support base in the state of combat alert.

— the reserve center of the Army, the 3rd, 18th, 26th, and 32nd mechanized rifle divisions, 14th and 17th tank divisions, 22nd airborne brigade, 205th antitank brigade, 303rd air defense division, 201st and 202nd air defense regiments with mobilization timetable from M 1 to M 3.

— the formations, units and facilities of the support and service system.

The 57th Air Army, arriving on D 1 from the Carpathian military district before the fifth or sixth day of the operation, will be operatively subordinated to the Czechoslovak Front.

If Austria keeps its neutrality on the third day of the war, one mechanized rifle division of the Southern Group of Forces will arrive in the area of České Budějovice and join the Czechoslovak Front.

The following forces will remain at the disposal of the Ministry of National Defense: the 7th air defense army, 24th mechanized rifle division and 16th tank division with readiness M 20, reconnaissance units, and also units and facilities of the support and service system.

Under favorable conditions two missile brigades and one mobile missile support base will arrive some time in advance in the territory of the ČSSR from the Carpathian military district:

— 35th missile brigade—excluding Český Brod, excluding Ričany, Zásmuky,

— 36th missile brigade—excluding Pacov, excluding Pelhřimov, excluding Humpolec,

— 3486th mobile missile support base—woods 5 kilometers to the East of Světlá.

Formations and units of the Czechoslovak People’s Army, on permanent alert, upon the announcement of combat alarm should leave their permanent location in no more than 30 minutes, move to designated areas within 3 hours, and deploy there ready to carry out their combat tasks.

Formations, units and headquarters that do not have set mobilization dates, leave their locations of permanent deployment and take up the identified areas of concentration in the time and in the order determined by the plan of mobilization and deployment.

The following disposition of forces is possible in the area of operations of the Czechoslovak Front for the entire depth of the operation:

— in divisions—1.1 to 1.0

— in tanks and mobile artillery launchers–1.0 to 1.0

— in artillery and mine-launchers–1.0 to 1.0

— in military aircraft—1.1 to 1.0, all in favor of the Czechoslovak Front.

In the first massive nuclear strike by the troops of the Missile Forces of the Czechoslovak Front, the front aviation and long-range aviation added to the front must destroy the main group of troops of the first operations echelon of the 7th US Army, its means of nuclear attack, and the centers of command and control of the aviation.

During the development of the operation, the troops of the Missile Forces and aviation must destroy the approaching deep operative reserves, the newly discovered means of nuclear attack, and the enemy aviation.

Altogether the operation will require the use of 131 nuclear missiles and nuclear bombs; specifically 96 missiles and 35 nuclear bombs. The first nuclear strike will use 41 missiles and nuclear bombs. The immediate task will require using 29 missiles and nuclear bombs. The subsequent task could use 49 missiles and nuclear bombs. 12 missiles and nuclear bombs should remain in the reserve of the Front.

Building on the results of the first nuclear strike, the troops of the Front, in coordination with units of the 1st Western Front must destroy the main group of troops of the 7th US Army and the 1st French Army in cooperation with airborne assault troops, force the rivers Neckar and Rhine in crossing, and defeat the advancing deep strategic reserves of the enemy in advancing battle, and by D[ay] 7-8 take control of the areas of Langres, Besançon, and Epinal.

Upon completion of the tasks of the operation the troops must be ready to develop further advances in the direction of Lyon.

The main strike should be concentrated in the direction of Nuremberg, Stuttgart, Strasbourg, Epinal, Dijon; part of the forces should be used on the direction of
Straubing and Munich.

The operative structure of the troops of the Czechoslovak Front is to be in one echelon with separation of two tank and five mechanized rifle divisions for the reserve as they arrive and are deployed.

The first echelon shall consist of the 1st and 4th armies and the 331st front missile brigade.

The reserve of the front includes: Headquarters of the 2nd Army (reserve), mechanized rifle division of the Southern Group of Forces by D 3, 14th tank division by D 3, 17th tank division by D 4, 3rd mechanized rifle division by D 3, 26th mechanized rifle division by D 4, 18th mechanized rifle division by D 5, and 32nd mechanized rifle division by D 6.

Special reserves include: 22nd airborne brigade by D 2, 103rd chemical warfare battalion by D 2, 6th engineering brigade by D 3, and 205th antitank artillery by D 4.

3. On the right—the 8th Guards Army of the 1st Western Front advances in the direction of Suhl, Bad Kissingen, and Worms and with part of its forces to Bamberg.

The separation line with the Army is the USSR-GDR border as far as As, then Bayreuth, Mosbach, and Sarrebourg, Chaumont (all points exclusively for the Czechoslovak Front). The meeting point with the 8th Guards Army should be supported by the forces and means of the Czechoslovak Front.

On the left—the Southern Group of Forces and the Hungarian People’s Army will cover the state borders of Hungary.

The dividing line with them: state border of the USSR with the Hungarian People’s Republic, and then the northern borders of Austria, Switzerland, and Italy.

4. The 1st Army (19th and 20th mechanized rifle divisions, 1st and 13th tank divisions, 311st artillery missile brigade) with 312nd heavy artillery brigade, 33rd antitank artillery brigade without 7th antitank artillery regiment, the 2nd bridge-building brigade without the 71st bridge-building battalion, the 351st and 352nd engineering battalions of the 52nd engineering brigade.

The immediate task is to defeat the enemy group of the 2nd Army Corps of the FRG and the 7th US Army in conjunction with the 8th Guards Army of the 1st Western Front, and to develop advance in the direction of Neustadt, Nuremberg, Ansbach, and with part of forces in conjunction with units of the 8th Guards Army in the direction of Bamberg, by D 1 to take control of the line Bayreuth, Amberg, Schmidmühlen; and by the end of D 2 to arrive on the line Höchstadt, Schwabach, Heiden.

The further task is to advance in the direction of Ansbach, Crailsheim, Stuttgart; to defeat the advancing offensive reserves of the enemy, and by the end of D 4 take control of the line excluding Mosbach, Bietigheim, Nürtingen.

Subsequently to be ready to develop the advance in the direction of Stüttgart, Strasbourg, Epinal.

The dividing line on the left is Podžovice, Schwandorf, Weisensburg, Heidenheim, Reutlingen (all the points except Heidenheim, are inclusive for the 1st Army).

Heads— in the forest 1 kilometer south of Stříbro.

The axis of the movement is Stříbro, Grafenwöhr, Ansbach, Schwäbisch Hall.

5. The 4th Army (2nd and 15th mechanized rifle divisions, 4th and 9th tank divisions, 321st artillery missile brigade) with 7th antitank artillery brigade and 33rd antitank artillery brigade, 71st bridge-building battalion of the 2nd bridge-building brigade, 92nd bridge-building battalion and 353rd engineering battalion.

The immediate task is to defeat the enemy group of the 2nd Army Corps of the FRG in cooperation with the troops of the 1st Army and to develop advance in the direction of Regensburg, Ingolstadt, Donauwörth, and with part of forces in the direction Straubing, Munich; and by the end of D[ay] 1 to take control of the line Schmidmühlen, Regensburg, Passau; by the end of D[ay] 2—Eichstatt, Moosburg, Mühldorf.

The subsequent task is to advance in the direction of Donauwörth, Ulm, to defeat the advancing formations of the 1st French Army and by the end of D[ay] 4 to take control of the line Metzingen, Memmingen, Kaufbeuren.

Subsequently to be ready to develop advance in the direction of Ulm, Mulhouse, Besançon.

Heads—6 kilometers northwest of Strakonice.

The axis of movement is— Strakonice, Klatovy, Falkenstein, Kelheim, Rennertshofen, Burgau.

6. The Missile Forces of the Front must in the first nuclear strike destroy the group of forces of the 7th US Army, part of forces of the 2nd Army Corps of the FRG, and part of the air defense forces of the enemy.

Subsequently, the main efforts should be concentrated on defeating the advancing offensive and strategic reserves and also the newly discovered means of nuclear attack of the enemy.

In order to fulfill the tasks set to the front, the following ammunition shall be used:
— for the immediate task—44 operative-tactical and tactical missiles with nuclear warheads;
— for the subsequent task—42 operative-tactical and tactical missiles with nuclear warheads;
— for unexpectedly arising tasks—10 operative-tactical and tactical missiles with nuclear warheads shall be left in the Front’s reserve.

The commander of Missile Forces shall receive special assembly brigades with special ammunition, which shall be transferred to the Czechoslovak Front in the following areas: 2 kilometers to the East of Jablonec, and 3 kilometers to the East of Michalovče.

The use of special ammunition—only with permission of the Supreme Commander of the Unified Armed Forces.
The Army has determined the limit of: combat sets of air bombs—3, combat sets of air-to-air missiles—2, combat sets of aviation cartridges—2, and fuel—3 rounds of army

Combat tasks:

With the first nuclear strike to destroy part of forces of the 2nd Army Corps of the FRG, two command and targeting centers, and part of the air defense forces of the enemy.

Upon the beginning of combat actions to suppress part of air defense forces of the enemy in the following regions: Roding, Kirchroth, Hohenfels, Amberg, Pfreimd, Nagel, and Erbendorf.

To uncover and destroy operative and tactical means of nuclear attack, command and control aviation forces in the following regions: Weiden, Nabburg, Amberg, Grafenwöhr, Hohenfels, Regensburg, and Erlangen.

During the operation to give intensive support to combat actions of the troops of the front: on D[ay] 1—6 group sorties of fighter bombers, from D[ay] 2 to D[ay] 5—8 group sorties of fighter bombers and bombers daily; and from D[ay] 6 to D[ay] 8—6 group sorties of fighter bombers and bombers daily. The main effort should be concentrated on supporting the troops of the 1st Army.

In cooperation with forces and means of the air defense of the country, fronts and neighbors—to cover the main group of forces of the Front from air strikes by the enemy.

To ensure the landing of reconnaissance troops and general airborne forces on D[ay] 1 and D[ay] 2 in the rear of the enemy.

To ensure airborne landing of the 22nd airborne brigade on D[ay] 4 in the area north of Stuttgart, or on D[ay] 5 in the area of Rastatt, or on D 6 in the area to the east of Mulhouse.

To carry out air reconnaissance with concentration of main effort on the direction of Nuremberg, Stuttgart, and Strasbourg with the goal of locating means of nuclear attack, and in order to determine in time the beginning of operations and the direction of the advancing operative reserves of the enemy.

In order to fulfill the tasks set for the front, it will be required to use the following weapons:

— for the immediate task—10 nuclear bombs;
— for subsequent tasks—7 nuclear bombs;
— for resolving unexpectedly arising tasks—2 nuclear bombs shall be left in the Front’s reserve.

The 57th Air Force, consisting of the 131st fighter division, 289th fighter-bomber regiment, 230th and 733rd bomber regiment and 48th air reconnaissance regiment, arriving by D[ay] 1 from the Carpathian military district, is to remain under operative subordination to the Czechoslovak Front until the fifth to sixth day for 5 army sorties.

The Army has a determined the limit of: combat sets of air bombs—3, combat sets of air-to-air missiles—2, combat sets of aviation cartridges—2, and fuel—3 rounds of army
system of the Warsaw Treaty countries with all forces and resources to cover the main group of the Front’s troops.
—During the operation, in cooperation with the 7th Air Defense Army, units of 10th and 57th Air Force and the air defense of the 1st Western Front, to cover the troops of the front from the air strikes of the enemy in the process of their passing over the border mountains, and also during the crossing of the rivers Neckar and Rhine to cover the missile forces and command and control centers.

9. The 22nd airborne brigade is to be ready to be deployed from the region of Prostějov, Niva, Brodek to the region north of Stuttgart on Day 4 or to the region of Rastatt on Day 5, or to the region to the east of Mulhouse on Day 6 with the task of capturing and holding river crossings on Neckar or Rhine until the arrival of our troops.

10. Reserves of the Front.
The 3rd, 18th, 26th, and 32nd mechanized rifle divisions of the Southern Group of Forces, the 14th and 17th tank divisions are to concentrate in the regions designated on the decision map in the period from Day 3 to Day 5.
The 6th engineering brigade by Day 3 is to be concentrated in the region of Panenský Týnec, and Bor, excluding Slaný, to be ready to ensure force crossing of the rivers Neckar and Rhine by the troops of the Front.
The 103rd chemical warfare battalion from Day 2 to be stationed in the region of Hluboš, excluding Příbram, excluding Dobříš. The main effort of radiation reconnaissance should be concentrated in the region of Hořovice, Blvovic, and Sedlčany.

Objects of special treatment should be deployed in the areas of deployment of command and control centers of the Front, the 331st front brigade, and also in the regions of concentration of the reserve divisions of the Front.

11. Material Maintenance of the Rear
The main effort in the material maintenance of the rear of the troops of the Front should be concentrated throughout the entire depth of the operation in the area of the 4th Army’s advance.

To support the troops of the 1st Army, the 10th and 57th Air Forces should deploy to the forward front base number 1 and the base of the 10th Air Force in the region to the West of Plzeň by the end of Day 2; troops of the 4th Army should deploy the forward front base number 2 in the region to the south of Plzen.

Field pipeline is to be deployed in the direction of Roudnice, Plzeň, Nuremberg, and Karlsruhe and used for provision of aircraft fuel.

Rebuilding of railroads should be planned on the directions Cheb-Nuremberg or Domäne-Schwandorf-Regensburg-Donaúwörth.
Two roads should be built following the 1st Army, and one front road throughout the entire depth of the operation following the 4th Army.

The Ministry of National Defense of the USSR will assign material resources, including full replacement of the ammunition used during the operation for the troops of the Czechoslovak Front.

Support for the 57th Air Force should be planned taking into account the material resources located in the territory of the USSR for the Unified Command.

Use of material resources should be planned as follows:

—ammunition—45,000 tons
—combustible-lubricating oil—93,000 tons
—including aircraft fuel—40,000 tons
—missile fuel:
—oxidizer—220 tons
—missile fuel—70 tons

Automobile transportation of the Front should be able to supply the troops with 70,000 tons of cargo during the operation.

Transportation of the troops should be able to carry 58,000 tons of cargo.

By the end of the operation the troops should have 80% of mobile reserves available.

In Day 1 and Day 2 hospital bed network for 10 to 12 thousand sick and wounded personnel is to be deployed. By the end of the operation the hospital bed network should cover 18% of the hospital losses of the Front.

12. Headquarters of the Front should be deployed from the time “X” plus 6 hours—5 kilometers to the east of Strašice. The axis of movement—Heilbronn, Horb, Epinal.

Reserve Command Post—forest, to the north of Brezová

Advanced Command Post—forest 5 kilometers to the east of Dobreň

Rear Command Post—Jince-Obecnice

Reserve Rear Command Post—excluding Dobreň

Headquarters of MNO—object K-116, Prague.

Minister of National Defense of the ČSSR

General of the Army [signed] Bohumír Lomský

Head of the General Staff of Czechoslovak People’s Army
Colonel General [signed] Otakar Rytíř

Head of the Operations Department of the General Staff
Major General [signed] Václav Vitanovský

11 October 1964

[Rectangular seal:] Ministry of National Defense
General Staff—Operations Department

Section: Operations Room
Herbert S. Dinerstein, journal discussions among Soviet strategists, taking place in the UP, 1994).

David Holloway, 97/2, c.j. 2131. territory, VHA VUA, MNO/Operations, 1952, box 369, sig.

Planned outlook of cartographic works at 1:50,000 foreign summary of maps of the 1:50,000 scale in the 1946 system. river valleys and other major rivers in West Germany. See

difficult areas in Western Europe, i.e. the Rhine and Main?


According to these theoretical considerations, the ČSLA was to reach the Alps 17 days after rebuffing an enemy attack. See the exercises of the ČSLA air force command of July 1952" on the topic "Air support for striking operations of the army," Vojenský historický archiv Vojenského ústredního archivu (Military Historical Archive of the Central Military Archive, Prague, Czech Republic—VHA VUA), fond Ministerstvo národní obrany (MNO—Ministry of National Defense), 1952, box 280, sig. 83/1–14, c.j. 46577.

During the entire existence of the East bloc, the ČSLA used the largest scale of 1:25,000 exclusively to map the territory of Czechoslovakia and some operationally difficult areas in Western Europe, i.e. the Rhine and Main river valleys and other major rivers in West Germany. See summary of maps of the 1:50,000 scale in the 1946 system. Planned outlook of cartographic works at 1:50,000 foreign territory, VHA VUA, MNO/Operations, 1952, box 369, sig. 97/2, c.j. 2131.

On Stalin’s view of nuclear weapons generally see David Holloway, Stalin and the Bomb (New Haven: Yale UP, 1994).


Guidelines for the operational preparation of generals, officers and the staff of all types of services for the training period of 1955/56, VUA, MNO, box 596, sig. 83, c.j. 5800.


Guidelines for operational–tactical preparations of the generals, officers and staff of all types of forces,” VHA VUA, MNO, 1958, box 310, sig. 17/3–8, c.j. 5000–08/1958.—With regard to the stationing of Soviet nuclear weapons in Czechoslovakia, not until August 1961 and February 1962 were two preliminary Soviet-Czech agreements were entitling the Soviet Union to dispatch nuclear warheads immediately to Czechoslovakia in the event of an emergency. After the Cuban Missile Crisis of 1962, those two agreements were supplanted by a much more far-reaching “Treaty Between the Governments of the USSR and CSSR on Measures to Increase the Combat Readiness of Missle Forces,” which was signed by Soviet Defense Minister Marshal Rodion Malinovsky and his Czechoslovak counterpart, Army-General Bohumír Lomský, in December 1965. See Mark Kramer, “The “Lessons” of the Cuban Missile Crisis for Warsaw Pact Nuclear Operations,” CWIHP Bulletin 8-9 (Winter 1996-1997), pp. 348-354.


This is also reflected in the recommendations of the Czechoslovak military cartographers and strategists in 1959. See “Zapadnyi teatr vojennych dejstvij,” VHA VUA, MNO, 1959, box 300, sig. 17/7-9, c.j. 8576–OS/59.

The generals, officers and the staff of all types of services were entitling the Soviet Union to dispatch nuclear warheads immediately to Czechoslovakia in the event of an emergency. After the Cuban Missile Crisis of 1962, those two agreements were supplanted by a much more far-reaching “Treaty Between the Governments of the USSR and CSSR on Measures to Increase the Combat Readiness of Missle Forces,” which was signed by Soviet Defense Minister Marshal Rodion Malinovsky and his Czechoslovak counterpart, Army-General Bohumír Lomský, in December 1965. See Mark Kramer, “The “Lessons” of the Cuban Missile Crisis for Warsaw Pact Nuclear Operations,” CWIHP Bulletin 8-9 (Winter 1996-1997), pp. 348-354.

The formation of the front included almost all Czechoslovak ground troops: 15 mobilized divisions arranged into 3 armies, the air force, an airborne brigade and the accompanying technical and rear equipment. The command was given to the general staff of the ČSLA; the chief-of-staff became the commander of this front.


“Lecture On the Character of Present-day War,” VUA, MNO, 1961, sig. 41–6, c.j. 16196–NGS.

Based on experiences with the Sputnik exercises, one of the main tasks for the exercise season of 1965/66 was set to be the training of operations without the use of weapons of mass destruction. See “Guidelines for the preparation of generals, officers and warrant–officers of the Ministry of National Defense in 1965,” VUA, MNO, 1964, box 269, sig. 17/1-5, c.j. 1400/19.


In the 1960s, Václav Vitanovský was considered a guru of Czechoslovak military thinking. In 1964 he published a textbook on the theory of strategy and doctrine. He was deposed already in 1967 for coming into conflict with the Soviet generals, who pressed the Czechoslovak military headquarters to raise military expenditures and number of troops.

Interview with General Major Václav Vitanovský of 20 November 1990, Institute of Modern History, Prague, Collection of the “ČSFR’s Government Commission for the Analysis of the Years 1967-70,” R–105. Unfortunately, half of the interview has been lost. Colonel Karel Štepánek, Chief of the Operations Room at the General Staff at the time and another participant in the preparation of the 1964 plan, also confirmed this procedure in an interview with the author.

The mapping of Western Europe during the 1970s and 1980s also seems to confirm that the 1964 plan was valid until the second half of the 1980s. It is apparent from the plan of map renewal in the 70s and 80s for individual Warsaw Pact countries, that the ČSLA was still responsible for the same area as during the 1960s. The same goes for the scale of 1:100,000. See plan “Utocnenija sovmestnych rabot geograficeskich sluzb armij gosudarstv-uscastnikov Varsavskogo dogovora po obnovlenii topograficeskich kart na 1972–1975 gody,” VHA VUA, fond Varsavska smlouva (VS), Topo, c.j. 004/75–12; also see plan “Utocnenija ucastnikov Varsavskogo dogovora po obnovlenii topograficeskich kart na 1976–1980 gody,” VUA, VS, Topo, c.j. 5643/4.

“Operation Atom”
The Soviet Union’s Stationing of Nuclear Missiles in the German Democratic Republic, 1959

By Matthias Uhl and Vladimir I. Ivkin

On 26 March 1955, Nikita S. Khrushchev, First Secretary of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union (CPSU) and Nikolai A. Bulganin, Chairman of the Soviet Union’s Council of Ministers, signed government decree no. 589-365. Their signatures set in motion one of the most secret military actions of the Cold War—the stationing of strategic nuclear missiles on the territory of the German Democratic Republic (GDR).1

Recently declassified documents and internal materials from the Russian Federation’s Strategic Missile Command now reveal that the first stationing of Soviet strategic missiles outside the borders of the USSR did not occur—as previously assumed by most historians and observers—in Cuba in 1962, but in the GDR nearly three years earlier. While the stationing of the missiles in Cuba provoked a global crisis, the Western governments, in their official statements in 1959, acted as if unaware of the developments in East Germany. Documents from the West German foreign intelligence service (Bundesnachrichtendienst—BND), now available in the German Federal Archives in Koblenz, show that at least the intelligence agencies of the Federal Republic of Germany (FRG), the United States, Great Britain, and France knew about the missile stationing. Both blocs apparently succeeded in addressing the tense military situation outside the public eye through a combination of secret diplomacy and calibrated pressure.

This essay provides an overview of the most important events and presents aspects of this military episode that have received little attention to date. Many of the relevant documents are still classified in Russian, German and US archives, or are considered to be lost, so the following is only a tentative assessment. It is difficult to put these events in the context of larger political developments because the internal deliberations about the operation are not yet known.

By 1955, more than 300 of the German missile specialists who had been brought to the USSR in the early postwar years had left the Soviet Union. They had been included in the missile building program that had existed since 1946 as a vital part of the Soviet Union’s effort to develop and produce long-range ballistic missiles using German technology. The German scientists’ legacy was the production of a Soviet version of the German V-2, which the Soviets called R-1.2 The entire Soviet missile program was subsequently built on the success of the R-1 series. The next step in its development, the R-2, already had a range of 600 kilometers. The first missile of genuinely Soviet production was the R-5, which was successfully tested in March 1953. It had a range of 1,200 kilometers and carried a warhead weighing 1.42 tons.3

It was necessary to equip the missile with an atomic warhead in order to make it a new strategic weapon. On 10 April 1954, the Soviet government gave its military-industrial complex the assignment of developing just such a weapons system. Given that the atomic bombs available at the time were too heavy to be delivered by a missile, the first step was to reduce the weight of the warhead. A special department of the Nuclear Weapons Development Center “Arzamas-16” headed by Samuel G. Kocarjanc took the lead in this aspect of the project. The nuclear warhead was to be delivered by a modified version of the R-5. The draft construction plan of the new R-5 was drawn up by the “Special Construction Office No. 1” (OKB-1) of the Scientific Research Institute No. 88 (NII-88), which, at that time, was the only Soviet research institution that developed long-range ballistic missiles. The well-known missile builder Sergei P. Korolev headed the scientific aspects of the project, and D. I. Kozlov was charged to head the construction of what was officially called “Production 8K51.” The project progressed rapidly, and in January 1955, the first flight tests took place at the Soviet Ministry of Defense’s central testing site in Kapustin Yar.4 The tests revealed several technical adjustments still necessary to make the R-5M a reliable carrier of nuclear weapons.

The second phase of the testing began in January 1956. By that time, Soviet technicians had succeeded in delivering atomic warheads on missiles. The operation had been code-named “Baikal.” Initially, the troops responsible for testing the new weapon launched four missiles equipped with complete warheads, except for the components necessary to start a nuclear chain reaction. On 2 February 1956, the Soviets successfully completed the world’s first launching of a battle-ready nuclear missile. After a flight of 1,200 kilometers, the missile reached its planned target area in the Aral region’s Karakum Desert [Priaral’skie karakumy]. The detonation device for starting the chain reaction functioned properly, causing the first explosion of a missile equipped with a nuclear warhead. The strength of the detonation was measured at the equivalent of 0.4 kilotons (KT) of TNT. Soon thereafter, the engineers and technicians increased this strength to 300 KT, more than twenty times the power of the bomb dropped on Hiroshima. At that point, the missile and the warhead comprised a new weapons system that allowed the destruction of strategic objectives. The Soviet Ministry of Defense added the R-5M to its missile arsenal as early as
21 June 1956.5

The new weapon, officially called a first-generation mid-range strategic missile, had a length of 20.8 meters, a diameter of 1.65 meters, and a weight of 28 tons. The missile was driven by a liquid propulsion system that used liquid oxygen and alcohol, which created a thrust of 44 tons and was therefore able to carry the 1,400 kilogram warhead up to a maximum distance of 1,200 kilometers. The missile would hit its target after a maximum flying time of 637 seconds. The navigational system of the missile functioned on the basis of inertial navigation and was guided by radio transmission to correct deviations from the missile’s proper flight path. The average margin of error of 1.5 kilometers was considered to be sufficiently accurate. It allowed the destruction of important political and economic centers as well as larger “soft” military targets.6

Even before the successful conclusion of the tests, the Soviets began working on designs for a deployment of the weapon. The planners in the Soviet Ministry of Defense responsible for the project were aware that the R-5, with a range limited to 1,200 kilometers, still had to be stationed outside the territory of the Soviet Union if the most important political, military, and economic centers of Western Europe were to be in reach. Between 1953 and 1955, special groups from the Soviet Ministry of Defense gathered information on potential deployment locations for R-1, R-2 and R-5 missiles during reconnaissance trips to Romania, Bulgaria and the GDR. Due to the limited effectiveness of these weapon prototypes in a conflict situation, the military leaders decided against implementing these plans. The plans were, however, the starting point for the planned stationing of the R-5M missile outside the Soviet Union.7

In March 1955, the Soviet Ministry of Defense presented draft decree no. 589-365 for the USSR Council of Ministers’ decision. The draft called for stationing battle-ready missile brigades of the Supreme High Command Reserve (RVGK) in the Trans-Caucasian Military Zone, the Far Eastern Military Zone, in the GDR and in Bulgaria. While the Soviet Foreign Ministry was instructed to obtain the agreement of the Bulgarian government for stationing missiles on its territory, this procedure was not followed in the GDR. There the missile brigade was apparently to be integrated into the Group of Soviet Forces in Germany, which were considered to have extraterritorial status. The Soviet Union therefore saw no reason to consult with its ally about the intended stationing.8 In fact, as far as can be documented, the Soviet military apparently kept the stationing of the R-5M in the GDR a secret from their East German ally.9

Although Khrushchev and Bulganin signed the decree on 26 March 1955, its implementation was delayed repeatedly. The most important causes for this delay were repeated problems in producing the R-5M in sufficient

---

Announcing

The Machiavelli Center (CIMA)

After many years of close but informal cooperation, last year a group of Italian Cold War historians decided to set up a formal arrangement in order to coordinate their research projects and link their efforts to the international programs studying the same historical period. This led to the creation of an inter-university center, The Machiavelli Center (CIMA), which unites a number of departments from the Universities of Florence, Padua, Pavia, Perugia, Roma Tre, and Urbino. The project centers around the activities of the Dipartimento di Studi sullo Stato of the University of Florence. Planned activities include conferences, publications and internships. Those interested to know more about its activities can write to dinolfo@unifi.it, leonuti@etr.it, guderzo@unifi.it. See also the CIMA website at http://www.machiavellicenter.net.
numbers, which made it impossible to equip the troops as planned. It was not until 1957 that the first strategic nuclear missile was actually introduced to the Soviet armed forces. By that time, plans for stationing the R-5M in the GDR had solidified. In addition to the Operations Division of the General Staff of the Soviet Army, the Staff of the Missile Troops also took part in preparing the operation. In early 1957, Maj.-Gen. P. P. Puzik, acting head of the Operations Division of the Missile Troops, received the order from the head of the Main Operations Administration of the General Staff, Lt.-Gen. A. O. Pavlovski, to choose proper stationing locations for the R-5M in the GDR. A few days later, Puzik traveled to the staff of the Group of the Soviet Forces in Germany, near Wünsdorf. From there he began his search for the best locations. These locations would ideally be in thinly populated areas, be easy to guard, and, if possible, have a good railway connection for unloading the equipment necessary for the operation. In the end, he chose the towns of Fürstenberg on the Havel and Vogelsang. Planning proceeded under the utmost secrecy. Puzik, for example, was not allowed to make any drawings during his inspection tour. The exact map of the planned sites was only developed after his return to the Operations Division of the Soviet General Staff.

The troops chosen for the stationing—the 72nd RVGK Engineer Brigade of the Soviet Army—were considered to be elite troops with experience in Germany. The 72nd RVGK Engineer Brigade had been formed in 1946 in Thuringia. On Stalin’s orders, the core of the future Soviet missile troops practiced launching V-2s at Berka, near Sonderhausen. The goal of the exercises was the practical testing of six V-2 rockets in Peenemünde in October 1946. Because Stalin feared diplomatic problems due to this obvious violation of the 1945 Potsdam Accords, the first launch of the rocket took place in Kapustin Yar in 1947.

In the ensuing years, the unit tested not only a steady stream of new models of missiles but also practiced the first tactical variations of the use of missile weapons. The unit alternated between simulating the destruction of industrial areas and political centers. The brigade was still primarily a testing unit since the inaccuracy and low levels of explosive power of conventional warheads made their effective use in battle unlikely. The experience gathered from the tests was used primarily to analyze the most applicable methods for missile attacks and to develop the necessary command and troop structures.

Once the 72nd Engineer Brigade had been designated for stationing in the GDR, the military preparation for the operation began immediately. From March 1957 on, the first of the brigade’s three artillery units was equipped with the R-5M weapons system. Just one month later, the special unit responsible for the construction and use of atomic warheads, the 23rd Field Construction Brigade, was formed within this division. The other two artillery units continued to deploy the outdated R-1 and R-2 missiles. The entire brigade took part in an exercise in the summer of 1957, in the course of which the troops were ordered to show actions of an engineer brigade during the attack of an army group. During the exercises, the brigade’s 650th Missile Unit launched two R-5M missiles.

During the following year, the 72nd Engineer Brigade underwent a number of restructuring measures. At that point, the 635th and 638th Artillery Units, designated for stationing in the GDR, received new nuclear missiles. At the same time, the construction brigade necessary for the use of the warheads, soon renamed the Mobile Missile Technical Base, was established. In addition, the brigade developed a strenuous training schedule in order to master the awe-inspiring weapons system. By the end of 1958, the 72nd Engineer Brigade had launched a total of eight R-5M missiles in preparing for the stationing. At this point, the missiles were equipped with nuclear warheads that could carry the equivalent of 300 kilotons of TNT to any type of strategic target in an attack.

In early summer 1958, the USSR to build storage and housing areas for the warheads, missile technology, and the soldiers, while preparing the troops for their transfer. These preparations were carried out in extreme secrecy. Only Soviet soldiers worked on the construction sites—German construction companies did not participate in the project. Rumors were spread that the new facilities were being constructed to train East German army troops with the Soviet troops stationed in Germany. In spite of the caution exercised, the Soviets made a fatal mistake in the beginning phase of the project. The trucks used to transport construction materials bore the marking “ATOM” prominently displayed on the rear. By the time that the Soviet troops noticed the mistake, it was already too late. The West German intelligence service (BND) learned of the unusual events taking place in the Fürstenberg/Vogelsang area from its agents, mostly civilians working in the Soviet garrisons as well as agricultural workers and foresters who had access to the restricted area.

In fact, the secrecy employed by the Soviets came back to haunt them. The local population, including those that were working for BND, became suspicious about the exclusive use of Red Army construction crews and the unusual practice of strictly separating the Soviet garrisons. In September 1958, an agent code-named “V-16800” reported that the large-scale transport of construction material “is connected with the construction of a rocket launching base in the region around Vogelsang, Templin, and Groß Dölln.” The BND’s evaluation of this report rated it a C-3, meaning “dependable source/probably true information.” Although this report shows signs of having been processed, no further clues are available as to the impact of this information, because the relevant documents are still classified in Bonn and Pullach. Nevertheless, the report provided Western intelligence services with information about the Soviet deployment plans before the first missiles had even reached the GDR.

The Soviet military continued its preparations, however, since it still assumed the operation to be a secret. By the end of 1958, the construction work necessary for
stationing the missiles and their crews was nearing completion, and in November-December 1958, the 72nd Engineer Brigade prepared for its transfer to the GDR. Since only enough space existed thus far for two divisions, the third division was transferred to Gvardeysk in the Königsberg region. The remaining staff of the brigade, the 635th and 638th Missile Units as well as the 349th and 432nd Mobile Missile Technical Bases, began their secret transport of soldiers and equipment to the GDR.19

Efforts to maintain secrecy, such as firing all German workers in the Vogelsang and Fürstenberg garrisons, were increased.20 Nonetheless, at the end of January 1959, agent V-9771 reported to his contact in the BND the arrival of parts of the 635th Missile Unit. He reported that a transport of the Soviet Army had arrived at the train route between Lychen and Fürstenberg. At the center of the transport, soldiers had moved “very large bombs” with the help of caterpillar tractors. It seems clear that this was the movement of R-5M components. Avoiding the main roads, the equipment, now covered in tarpaulin, was then taken to the back side of the Kastaven Lake military base near Fürstenberg.21

The staff of the brigade as well as the 349th Mobile Missile Technical Base were stationed with the 635th Division in Fürstenberg, in the immediate vicinity of the command center of the Second Soviet Tank Guard Army. The 638th Division and its accompanying 432nd Mobile Missile Technical Base were stationed twenty kilometers away, in the neighboring village of Vogelsang.22 Each of the two missile divisions controlled two artillery battalions, outfitted with a launching ramp for firing the R-5M, including the necessary ground equipment. Each launching ramp was equipped for three missiles at that time; in total four launching units and 12 missiles were ready for deployment in the GDR. In addition to the aforementioned equipment, each division had a transport battalion, a unit to fuel the missiles, and a guidance battalion. This last group had the task of increasing the accuracy of the missile through the use of radio control. To this end, the guidance battalion employed a guidance device designed to reduce the missile’s tendency to veer to one side or the other.23

The missiles, however, were not fully ready for battle. They still lacked the necessary nuclear warheads, which arrived in the GDR only in mid-April 1959. The warheads, officially labeled “generators” for the trip, were brought by train under heavy guard to the military airport at Templin. In the nights thereafter, they divided the Mobile Missile Technical Bases among the bunkers designed for them in the area around Vogelsang and Fürstenberg. On 29 April, an incident occurred that is not described in any detail in the material available at the time this article was written. But it is clear that during the transport of the nuclear weapons, the head of the 432nd Mobile Missile Technical Base, Lt.-Maj. S. I. Nesterov was demoted and relieved of command on the spot by Lt.-Gen. M. K. Nikolski, the head engineer for the 12th Central Division, responsible for the warheads.24

Once the nuclear warheads had arrived, the 72nd RVGK Reserve Brigade was finally ready for battle. At the beginning of May 1959, the Commander of the Group of Soviet Forces in Germany, M. V. Zakharov, personally told Khrushchev that the missiles were ready for use.25 At that point, the brigade, which reported directly to Khrushchev and the General Staff, was in position to report that it was ready to “assume the planned launching position and fulfill the designated tasks.”26

Since the relevant documents are not accessible, one can only speculate as to the possible targets assigned to the missile brigade. It seems likely, however, that four missiles were aimed at the UK. The US-British “Thor” missiles stationed in Yorkshire and Suffolk were to be destroyed by the Soviet nuclear missiles in the case of a crisis. For the first time, moreover, the most important US air bases in Western Europe were also within range of the Soviets’ weapons. The bombers stationed in Western Europe carrying US nuclear weapons, the most important element in the strategy of massive retaliation, were thus in
danger of a surprise attack. A third military option was also conceivable: Western Europe could be cut off from its US protector in the event of war by the destruction of the Atlantic harbors. It is also certain that missiles were aimed at population centers in Western Europe, such as London, Paris, Bonn and the Ruhr, and Brussels. The establishment of another Soviet missile base in Albania could have completed the Soviet’s strategy. From this base in the harbor city of Vlorë, Rome and NATO’s Southern European Headquarters in Naples could be targeted.

Although a formidable number of the Soviet Union’s battle-ready nuclear missiles were located in GDR territory at the time, this fact alone should not be viewed as an aggressive move on Khrushchev’s part. His central interest was to improve the Soviets’ strategic position in the case of a potential conflict. At the time of the Suez Crisis, Soviet politicians and military planners had to recognize that they did not have the military capacity to threaten Western Europe in order to exert pressure in the case of a crisis. This strategic disadvantage, which the Soviets considered decisive, was to be eliminated through the stationing of R-5M nuclear missiles in the GDR. At the same time, it can be assumed that the nuclear forward guard of the USSR was supposed to reduce the US nuclear advantage that had existed up to that point. Since the Soviet Union was not in a position militarily to match the alleged threat of the Strategic Air Command, it responded by stationing nuclear missiles.

Meanwhile, the brigade in the GDR perfected its readiness through repeated launch drills. For security reasons, training took place only at night. Since the unit was very motivated politically and also enjoyed comparatively comfortable material conditions, they succeeded in reducing the preparation time for a launch from thirty to five hours. This increased performance guaranteed a high state of readiness, but technical problems repeatedly emerged. The substitute used for the highly volatile fuel component liquid oxygen continued to cause problems. Without refueling, the missiles were not mission-ready for longer than thirty days.

After the BND had gathered the first bits of information about the unusual activities in the Fürstenberg/Vogelsang region. Despite this concentration of intelligence agents from NATO countries on such limited territory, the documentary evidence thus far available suggests that information on the nuclear missile deployments may not have reached top-level policymakers in the US until late 1960. It was not until then that US intelligence agencies had even reached firm conclusions on the GDR deployment. Indeed, the CIA believed that Soviet missiles were still in the GDR as of early 1961.

The Soviet missile base in the GDR provided Khrushchev with an important means to back up his Berlin ultimatum—whether or not its deployment was known among Western policymakers. The Soviet leader reiterated this threat in a conversation in Moscow on 23 June 1959 with W. Averell Harriman: “It would take only a few Soviet missiles to destroy Europe: One bomb was sufficient for Bonn and three to five would knock out France, England, Spain and Italy. The United States would be in no position to retaliate because its missiles could carry a warhead of only ten kilograms whereas Russian missiles could carry 1,300 kilograms.”

The Western military alliance hence had to make it clear to the Soviets that there would be no compromise on the status of Berlin. The core of this tactic was NATO’s 1959 contingency plan “Live Oak,” designed to assure Western Allied rights in Berlin. The crisis scenario developed in the context of “Live Oak” foresaw a continual escalation of military force applied in Berlin in the case of a military conflict. The possibilities ranged from an armed invasion of the GDR by US military units to reach Berlin to nuclear retaliatory strikes.

Unfortunately, it is impossible to determine at this time whether the presence of the battle-ready Soviet missiles in the GDR played any role in this contingency planning of the Western plans and tactics in the Geneva negotiations that began in May 1959. Uncertainty about Soviet missile deployments (whether Intercontinental or Intermediate-range ballistic missiles) heightened Western concerns that a political crisis over Berlin that turned into a military confrontation could put the UK and Western Europe at risk. Certainly that problem made negotiations seem more urgent. But that uncertainty had been in the air for months before the completion of the GDR deployment. It seems highly doubtful that IRBM deployments in the GDR had an impact on decisions on the Berlin negotiations, especially when one considers that the intelligence community did not complete its assessment of the data on the GDR until the last days of the Eisenhower administration.

Khrushchev, however, probably did not intend an escalation of the crisis to reach the point of a war. The Soviet premier’s tactics in the Berlin Crisis were much more bluff-oriented. For Khrushchev, the nuclear missiles in the GDR might have served as a special “trump” in the game of power poker. At no point, however, was the Soviet leader prepared to risk a World War III over Berlin. When he recognized that a military conflict would develop in the
case of continued confrontation, Khrushchev moved to pull back his missiles stationed in the Soviets’ front guard—perhaps intended (but not noticed) as a visible symbol of a relaxation of tensions.

In August 1959, the missile unit left its positions in the GDR in great haste. The officers and the soldiers of the unit, many of whom had hoped to be stationed in the GDR for a long term and had already begun to develop plans for a life in East Germany, were taken completely by surprise by the order to relocate. Within the span of a few weeks, the missiles were moved to the area around Kaliningrad on the Baltic coast. Paris and London were once again outside the range of the R-5M.39

Even today, most of the officers and soldiers of the 72nd Engineer Brigade who took part in the stationing and withdrawal are unable to explain the hasty retreat of the missile unit. They suspect, however, that the retreat to the Soviet territory was based on political motives.40 In fact, the withdrawal occurred just as Eisenhower and Khrushchev announced their decision to exchange visits, with Khrushchev to visit the US in September. With détente in the air, the Soviet leader may have worried that it would be awkward for Soviet policy if the US discovered the missiles in Germany. Given that two years later the Soviet leader launched “Operation Anadyr,” the stationing of Soviet nuclear weapons on Cuba, Khrushchev’s motives in deploying and removing nuclear missiles in the GDR raises intriguing questions—which only further access to the relevant archives will help to answer. Was “Operation Atom” a prelude to “Operation Anadyr”?

---

**DOCUMENT**


**Top Secret**

Return to Group Number 1 of the Special Division of the Administrative Section of the Council of Ministers of the Soviet Union within 24 hours required

Central Committee of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union and Council of Ministers of the USSR

Decision of 26 March 1955
Top Secret
Moscow, The Kremlin

---

About Measures to Increase the Battle-Readiness of the Engineer Brigades of the Supreme Command Reserve Units.

With the goal of increasing the battle-readiness of the engineer brigades of the Supreme Command’s Reserve Units, the Central Committee of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union and the Council of Ministers of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics have decided that:

The Defense Ministry of the Soviet Union (Comrade Zhukov) is assigned with carrying out the following measures:

1. From 1955 to 1956, four engineer brigades of the Supreme Command Reserve Units are to be transferred to areas that correspond with the plans for their battle deployment:

   A. The 72nd RVGK [Rezerv Verchovnogo Glavnokomandovania—Reserve of the High Command] Engineer Brigade is to be transferred to the territory of the GDR and is to be incorporated into the troops of the Soviet military forces in Germany;

   B. The 73rd RVGK Engineer Brigade is to be transferred to the territory of the People’s Republic of Bulgaria, and the Foreign Ministry of the USSR (Comrade Molotov) is to gain the agreement of the Bulgarian government to this stationing;41

   C. The 90th RVGK Engineer Brigade is to be transferred to the territory of the Trans-Caucasian Military Zone;

   D. The 85th RVGK Engineer Brigade is to be transferred to the Far Eastern Military Zone

2. The 72nd, 73rd, 85th, 90th and 233rd Engineer Brigades of the RVGK are to be brought up to full strength and are to be fully staffed, and armed with the necessary special weaponry and technology.

3. The 80th RVGK Engineer Brigade is to be transformed into a training unit for engineer brigades RVGK, and will be responsible for training the new non-commissioned officers and soldiers for all engineer brigades, as a substitute for those released to the reserves.

   It is to be guaranteed that the training unit for RVGK engineer brigades can be transformed into battle-ready engineer brigades RVGK. In this instance, the specialists necessary for training the replacements coming from the reserves are to be left out of the transformation process. The training unit for RVGK engineer brigades is to be stationed on the territory of the Central State Artillery Range.42

4. The size of the Soviet Army is to be increased by 5,500 men in order to guarantee that the measures listed in points 2 and 3 are carried out.

5. In the period 1955-56, the Ministry of Defense of the USSR is allowed to use 30 R-1 and 18 R-2 missiles that have passed their maximum guaranteed storage life in the reserve of the Ministry of Defense to
improve the battle training of the 7 engineer brigades.

The Secretary of the Central Committee
The Chairman of the of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union, Council of Ministers of the USSR,

N. Khrushchev
N. Bulganin

[Source: Archive of the President of the Russian Federation (AP FR), Moscow, Register 93 (Documents with Decisions of the Council of Ministers of the USSR for the Year 1955) as printed in Pervoe raketnoe soedinenie vooružennych sil strany: Voennno-istoriceskij ocerk (Moscow: CIPK, 1996), pp. 208-209. Translated from Russian for the CWIHP by Matthias Uhl.]

Dr. Matthias Uhl recently defended his dissertation on “Stalin’s V-2: The Transfer of German Missile Technology to the USSR and the Development of the Soviet Missile Production, 1945-49.” He is currently a research fellow at the Berlin office of the Institute for Contemporary History (Munich), working on a larger documentation project on the 1958/62 Berlin Crisis.

Dr. Vladimir I. Ivkin is a Russian historian.


2 During my interview with General Heinz Kessler, who was the Defense Minister for the GDR from 1985 to 1989, on 24 October 1999, Kessler stated: “The Soviet Army leadership did not give the GDR military leadership any information about the stationing of missiles in Vogelsang and Fürstenberg. In my position at the time as head of the GDR air force, I had no knowledge of any action of that type. Neither the GDR Defense Minister at the time, Willi Stoph, nor his first assistant, Lieutenant-General Heinz Hoffmann had received any information, as far as I know. In addition, in my later position as Defense Minister, this 1959 event was never mentioned in any way by the commander of the Group of Soviet Forces in Germany or the Supreme Command of the Warsaw Pact. This type of behavior matches my later experiences. The Soviet military, for example, never told us which Soviet installations in the GDR had nuclear weapons in storage during my time in that position.”


10 See Pervoe raketnoe, p. 124-125

11 See Draft Decision for the Council of Ministers of the USSR, “About the Production of a Trial Series of Long-Range Missiles V-2 and Measures to Their Further Improvement,” not dated (probably August 1946), Russian State Archive for Economics [RGAE], Moscow, Register 8157, Section 1, document 1149, sheet 126-128.

February–June 1959


See information sent to the author by the BND on 22 April 1998 and 4 May 2000.


Ibid., sheet 6. The Soviets’ procedures for unloading their cargo, which corresponded exactly to the instructions for transporting missiles of the R-5M category, also indicates that it was actually missiles being delivered at that time. See “Security Instruction to the Troop Section of the 73rd Engineer Brigade RVGK in Bulgaria.

The Bulgarians may have refused to grant their permission, because there are no references to a stationing of the 73rd Engineer Brigade RVGK in Bulgaria.

See Pervoe raketnoe, pp. 11-13, see also M. A. Pervov, Mezkontinental’nye ballistickei rakety SSSR i Rossi: Kratkij istoriceskij ocerk (Moscow: [publisher not identified], 1998), p. 29–30.


See information sent to the author by the BND on 22 April 1998 and 4 May 2000.


See Pervoe raketnoe, p. 13.

See Pervov, Raketnoe oruzie, p. 51; also see Slovar RVSN, p. 204-5.

See Pervoe raketnoe, p. 133-34.

See Bondarenko, “Osobaja tajna Vtoroj armii” p. 25.


See Raketnyj scit otechestva (Moscow: CIPK, 1999), p. 68. In 1959, the missile troops of the Soviet Union had only 32 battle-ready atomic missiles at their disposal. All of them were R-5M model types. By 1960, they had two intercontinental missiles, model R-7A, as well as 36 medium-range missiles, model R-5M, and 172 R-12 missiles.

See Bondarenko, “Osobaja tajna Vtoroj armii” p. 26; Pervoe raketnoe, p. 120–22.


See Standortkartei der Militärischen Auswertung des BND: Allgemeine Beobachtungen in Fürstenberg, Meldung von USAEUR (United States Army in Europe), April 1959, BA Koblenz, collection B 206/109, sheet 6; “Meldung von Astern,” ibid; Standortkartei der Militärischen Auswertung des BND: Allgemeine Beobachtungen Baustelle VOGELSANG - BURGWALL, Meldung von Narzisse, September 1959, BA Koblenz, collection B 206/114, sheet 1. ASTER is the BND’s code name for the British intelligence agency, and the information delivered to the BND by the French Foreign Intelligence Service was classified under the codename NARZISSE. In addition, there are the code names DIANA and BSSO, which have not yet been positively linked to a particular foreign intelligence service.

Editor’s Note: See “Intelligence Note: Deployment of Soviet Medium Range Missiles in East Germany,” Memorandum from Hugh S. Cumming Jr (INR) to the Secretary of State, 4 January 1961, National Archives, Record Group 59, Lot 6SD478: Records of the Special Assistant to the Secretary of State for Atomic Energy/Country and Subject Files Relating to Atomic Energy Matters, 1950-1962, box 5, 1961/USSR/Intelligence Reports.—I would like to thank William Burr (National Security Archive) for bringing this document to my attention.


Whatever data the West might have had on Soviet deployment in East Germany did not lead to a clear clamor among the Western European NATO members for corresponding MRBMs—only Turkey and Italy responded favorably to Eisenhower’s offer for them. See Phil Nash, The Other Missiles of October (Chapel Hill: The University of North Carolina Press, 1997).

See footnote 33.


See Pervoe raketnoe, pp. 122, 135; see also Slovar RVSN, p. 440.

Ibid., pp. 126, 135.

The Bulgarians may have refused to grant their permission, because there are no references to a stationing of the 73rd Engineer Brigade RVGK in Bulgaria.
Our country is undergoing a truly revolutionary upsurge. The process of restructuring is gaining pace; we started by elaborating the theoretical concepts of restructuring; we had to assess the nature and scope of the problems, to interpret the lessons of the past, and to express this in the form of political conclusions and programs. This was done. The theoretical work, the re-interpretation of what had happened, the final elaboration, enrichment, and correction of political stances have not ended. They continue. However, it was fundamentally important to start from an overall concept, which is already now being confirmed by the experience of past years, which has turned out to be generally correct and to which there is no alternative. […]

We intend to expand the Soviet Union’s participation in the monitoring mechanism on human rights in the United Nations and within the framework of the pan-European process. We consider that the jurisdiction of the International Court in The Hague with respect to interpreting and applying agreements in the field of human rights should be obligatory for all states.

Within the Helsinki process, we are also examining an end to jamming of all the foreign radio broadcasts to the Soviet Union. On the whole, our credo is as follows: Political problems should be solved only by political means, and human problems only in a humane way. [..]

Now about the most important topic, without which no problem of the coming century can be resolved: disarmament. […]

Today I can inform you of the following: The Soviet Union has made a decision on reducing its armed forces. In the next two years, their numerical strength will be reduced by 500,000 persons, and the volume of conventional arms will also be cut considerably. These reductions will be made on a unilateral basis, unconnected with negotiations on the mandate for the Vienna meeting. By agreement with our allies in the Warsaw Pact, we have made the decision to withdraw six tank divisions from the GDR, Czechoslovakia, and Hungary, and to disband them by 1991. Assault landing formations and units, and a number of others, including assault river-crossing forces, with their armaments and combat equipment, will also be withdrawn from the groups of Soviet forces situated in those countries. The Soviet forces situated in those countries will be cut by 50,000 persons, and their arms by 5,000 tanks. All remaining Soviet divisions on the territory of our allies will be reorganized. They will be given a different structure from today’s which will become unambiguously defensive, after the removal of a large number of their tanks. […]

By this act, just as by all our actions aimed at the demilitarization of international relations, we would also like to draw the attention of the world community to another topical problem, the problem of changing over from an economy of armament to an economy of disarmament. Is the conversion of military production realistic? I have already had occasion to speak about this. We believe that it is, indeed, realistic. For its part, the Soviet Union is ready to do the following. Within the framework of the economic reform we are ready to draw up and submit our internal plan for conversion, to prepare in the course of 1989, as an experiment, the plans for the conversion of two or three defense enterprises, to publish our experience of job relocation of specialists from the military industry, and also of using its equipment, buildings, and works in civilian industry. It is desirable that all states, primarily the major military powers, submit their national plans on this issue to the United Nations. […]

Finally, being on U.S. soil, but also for other, understandable reasons, I cannot but turn to the subject of our relations with this great country. […] Relations between the Soviet Union and the United States of America span 5 1/2 decades. The world has changed, and so have the nature, role, and place of these relations in world politics. For too long they were built under the banner of confrontation, and sometimes of hostility, either open or concealed. But in the last few years, throughout the world people were able to heave a sigh of relief, thanks to the changes for the better in the substance and atmosphere of the relations between Moscow and Washington. […]

We acknowledge and value the contribution of President Ronald Reagan and the members of his administration, above all Mr. George Shultz. All this is capital that has been invested in a joint undertaking of historic importance. It must not be wasted or left out of circulation. The future U.S. administration headed by newly elected President George Bush will find in us a partner, ready—without long pauses and backward movements—to continue the dialogue in a spirit of realism, openness, and goodwill, and with a striving for concrete results, over an agenda encompassing the key issues of Soviet-U.S. relations and international politics.

We are talking first and foremost about consistent progress toward concluding a treaty on a 50 percent reduction in strategic offensive weapons, while retaining the ABM Treaty; about elaborating a convention on the elimination of chemical weapons—here, it seems to us, we have the preconditions for making 1989 the decisive year, and about talks on reducing conventional weapons and armed forces in Europe. We are also talking about economic, ecological and humanitarian problems in the widest possible sense. […]

We are not inclined to oversimplify the situation in the world. Yes, the tendency toward disarmament has received a strong impetus, and this process is gaining its own momentum, but it has not become irreversible. Yes, the striving to give up confrontation in favor of dialogue and cooperation has made itself strongly felt, but it has by no means secured its position forever in the practice of international relations. Yes, the movement toward a nuclear-free and nonviolent world is capable of fundamentally transforming the political and spiritual face of the planet, but only the very first steps have been taken. Moreover, in certain influential circles, they have been greeted with mistrust, and they are meeting resistance. […]

[Source: CNN.com]
Lee Harvey Oswald’s Letter Requesting USSR Citizenship

[Editor’s Note: At the 1999 Cologne summit, Russian President Boris Yeltsin presented US President Bill Clinton with some 40 documents pertaining to the November 1963 assassination of President John F. Kennedy. The document printed below—Lee Harvey Oswald’s handwritten 16 October 1959 letter requesting Soviet citizenship—and the other documents were made accessible to the public later that year. Engaging in “archival diplomacy,” the Russian president had selectively released historical documents on other occasions, such as in the mid-1990s when he brought top secret Politburo documents on the 1956 Soviet invasion of Hungary to Budapest or provided the South Korean government with high-level Soviet documents on the Korean War. The documents on the JFK assassination include Soviet envoy Anastas Mikoyan’s emotional cable on his meeting with Jacqueline Kennedy at the funeral of the slain president; and a personal letter from Jacqueline Kennedy to Soviet leader Nikita Khrushchev, dated 1 December 1963, in which Mrs. Kennedy emphasized “how much my husband was concerned about peace and how important the relations between you and him were to him in this concern.” Much of the documentation deals with Moscow’s and Washington’s concern over the political fall-out of the assassination for Soviet-American relations in light of allegations that Oswald had had a Soviet connection, though his request for citizenship was denied in 1959. (“Judging from everything,” Mikoyan cabled to Moscow, “the US government does not want to involve us in this matter, but neither does it want to get into a fight with the extreme rightists.”) The documents are available at the National Archives (College Park, MD). CWIHP has published the documents (and translations) on its website at http://cwihp.si.edu.—Christian F. Ostermann]
New Evidence on the Iran Crisis 1945-46

From the Baku Archives

(The following documents were provided to CWIHP by Dr. Jamil Hasanli (Baku State University). Hasanli, who has conducted extensive research on Soviet policies with regard to Iranian Azerbaijan in the early Cold War, obtained these documents from the State Archive of Political Parties and Social Movements of the Republic of Azerbaijan in Baku. Only a sample of a much larger collection to be published in future issues of the CWIHP Bulletin and CWIHP Working Papers, these documents allow unprecedented insight into Stalin’s systematic efforts to sponsor a separatist movement in Northern Iran. Some of the documents have also been consulted by Dr. Fernande Scheid (Yale University), who presented her findings for the first time at the September 1999 CWIHP Conference on “Stalin and the Cold War” at Yale University and who is the author of a forthcoming CWIHP Working Paper. Previous CWIHP publications on the subject, based on Russian archival materials, include Natalia Egorova, The ‘Iran Crisis’ of 1945-1946: A View from the Russian Archives (CWIHP Working Paper No. 15, Washington D.C.: Woodrow Wilson Center, 1997).

Hasanli contributed the documents in the framework of a new initiative on “The Caucasus in the Cold War,” co-sponsored by the National Security Archive and CWIHP. The initiative aims at unearthing new evidence from archives in the Southern Caucasus on important Cold War issues, such as Stalin’s plans for territorial expansion in 1945-46 with regard to Turkey and Iran; ethnic cleansing in the Caucasus in the context of Stalin’s imperial calculations; “flashpoints” in the Southern Caucasus during de-Stalinization (e.g., Tbilisi, March 1956); and the collapse of the USSR (irredentist movements in Nagorno-Karabakh and Abkhazia, and clashes between Soviet troops and nationalist protesters in April 1989 in Tbilisi and in January 1990 in Baku).

In a first step towards planning collaborative exploration of the archives, the “The Caucasus in the Cold War” initiative brought together some thirty Georgian, Armenian, Azeri, US and Russian scholars and archivists for a workshop in Tbilisi in October 2000 to discuss archival holdings and research agendas. Among the most noteworthy issues brought out by the discussion was the significance of inter-ethnic tensions in the immediate post-World War II period (which later exploded as the Soviet Union collapsed). Workshop participants also made clear that in Cold War historiography on topics such as the territorial disputes and war scares between Iran and Soviet Azerbaijan (1945-46) and between Turkey and Soviet Georgia and Armenia (1945-47), concurrent tensions within and among the Soviet Caucasus Republics during that period have often been overlooked. Placing regional ethnic and inter-republic tensions within the larger Cold War context will likely be a major theme of the new initiative. For further information on the Caucasus Initiative, contact CWIHP or Dr. Svetlana Savranskaya at the National Security Archive (phone: 202-994-7000).

Hasanli’s work in the Azeri archives on the 1945-46 crisis first came to CWIHP’s attention in connection with a National Security Archive project on “Iran and the Cold War.” Together with the Iranian Foreign Ministry’s Institute for Political and International Studies (IPIS), it was agreed to organize a series of workshops to gather sources and perspectives from various countries on the subject of “Iran, the Great Powers, and the Cold War.” In September 1999, the National Security Archive organized a panel on the 1945-46 crisis at an Iranian studies conference in Tehran. This was followed in June 2000 by a major international conference in Tehran on the oil crisis of 1951-54, hosted by a new Iranian institute affiliated with the Foreign Ministry, the “Center for Documents and Diplomatic History.” The conference agenda included the controversial overthrow (with U.S. and British intelligence support) of Prime Minister Mohammad Mossadegh and the reinstallment of the Shah in August 1953. The meeting, which received wide media publicity in Iran, coincided with the leaked publication of a classified CIA history of the coup. It was at the June 2000 session that Hasanli presented his findings from the Azeri archives on the earlier crisis, and agreed to cooperate with the Archive and CWIHP on both the Iran and Caucasus projects. CWIHP is planning to publish Iranian documentation (translated from Farsi) on the 1945-46 Azerbaijan crisis obtained in Tehran, as well as further materials from the Baku archives, in future issues of the Bulletin. For further information on the Iran project, contact its director, Malcolm Byrne, by e-mail at mbyrne@gwu.edu or by telephone at 202-994-7000. –Christian F. Ostermann.]
DOCUMENT No. 1  
Decree of the [USSR] State Defense Committee No. 9168 SS,  
Regarding Geological Prospecting Work  
for Oil in Northern Iran,  
21 June 1945

COPY

TOP SECRET

The State Defense Committee  
Decree of the GOKO [State Defense Committee] No. 9168SS  
of 21 June 1945  
Moscow, the Kremlin

Geological Prospecting Work for Oil in Northern Iran

With the objective of geological prospecting and drilling work for oil in northern Iran, the State Defense Committee DECREES:

1. Organize within the “Azneft’” [Azerbaijani Oil] Association of the Narkomneft’ [the People’s Commissariat for Oil] a Hydrogeological Directorate and entrust to this organization the supervision of geological prospecting for oil deposits in northern Iran.

2. To conduct this prospecting work in northern Iran hold Narkomneft’ (Cde. Baybakov) and Azneft’ (Cde. Vezirov) responsible for supplying the necessary quantity of workers from the oil industry for drilling and prospecting teams and sending them to the place of work in the form of a hydrogeological detachment created in the staff of the Soviet troops in Iran (Qazvin).

3. Establish a mission for the hydrogeological detachment to conduct the following work in northern Iran:

   a) Drilling

      10 pumps in 7 areas, including 3 stationary pumps (deep rotary drilling) in the areas of Shakhi, Bandar-Shah, and Mianeh;

      4 stationary pumps (deep structural search drilling) in the areas of Shah, Bolgar-Chay, and Khoy;

      3 mobile drilling units for structural search drilling in the areas of Bandar-Shah, Shaha-Babol’ser, and Pahlavi;

   b) Geological Survey – one expedition comprising 10 teams in the areas of: the Gorgan Steppe, Mazanderan and Rasht lowlands, and along entire southern shore of the Caspian Sea from the border with the Turkmen SSR to the border with the Azerbaijan SSR.

      Hold the Narkomnef’ (Cde. Baybakov) and Azneft’ (Cde. Vezirov) responsible for transferring the required drilling and prospecting equipment by 1 September 1945 to conduct the work to the required degree and for beginning drilling and prospecting work in September of 1945.

4. Hold the Narkomnef’ (Cde. Baybakov) responsible for organizing and dispatching by 1 August 1945: a geological survey expedition of 10 teams; a well-logging and electrometer team; a geophysical expedition of 3 teams (gravimetric “Issing”, variometric (2 instruments) and resistivity prospecting) by removing these teams from the following regions: the gravimetric “Issing” [team] from Baku; the variometric [team] (2 instruments) from the Middle Volga Branch of the Narkomnef’ Geophysical Trust; the resistivity [team] from the area of Krasnodar.

5. With the objective of equipping the hydrogeological detachment with the necessary equipment, instruments, and material hold [the following] responsible:

   a) the Narkomneft’ (Cde. Baybakov) is to allocate and ship to the Hydrogeological Directorate in August 1945: 5 sets of pumps, drilling equipment, and a rotary drilling instrument; 4 sets of ZV-750 frames, drilling equipment, and the instrument for them; 3 sets of rods (1200 meters) and an instrument for KA-300 pumps, and other necessary equipment and materials for the work of the hydrogeological detachment;

   b) the Narkomvneshtorg [People’s Commissariat for Foreign Trade] (Cde. Mikoyan) is to allocate to the hydrogeological detachment in June-July 1945 15 truck-tractors and 120 trucks from imports from the unassembled ones in Iran;

   c) the Commanding General of the Transcaucasus Front, Cde. Tyulenev, is to allocate to the hydrogeological detachment the necessary office space and living quarters in Qazvin and at work locations, and also render aid with personnel from military units in assembling the 120 vehicles allocated to the hydrogeological detachment;

   d) the USSR NKO [People’s Commissariat of Defense] (Cde. Vorob’yev [Marshal of Engineer Troops, M. P., Chief of Engineer Troops of the Soviet Army]) is, by 1 August 1945, to transfer to the disposition of the hydrogeological detachment in Iran two complete AVB-2-100 mobile drilling units in working order: a drilling machine AVB-2-100, a ZIS-5 water tanker, a 1.5 ton vehicle with an instrument and one
e) the USSR NKO (General of the Army, Chief of the Rear of the Soviet Army] Cde. Khrulev) is to send to the hydrogeological detachment in working order 5 MAK 12-ton vehicles, 7 logging truck trailers, and 15 Willys vehicles, and also provide for the repair of drilling equipment and automotive transport in repair shops of the Soviet transport directorate in Iran.

6. Hold the Commanding General of the Transcaucasus Front, Cde. Tyulenev, responsible for rendering aid to the hydrogeological detachment in drilling and geological prospecting work [by] providing a guard force, an escort for the expeditions, providing cartographic materials, and also providing personnel of the hydrogeological detachment with clothing and appropriate documents.

7. Hold the Narkomfin [People’s Commissariat of Finance] (Cde. Zverev) responsible in the 3rd and 4th quarters of 1945 with allocating to the Narkomneft’ 8 million rubles, including 2,400,000 in rials for the Hydrogeological Directorate of the Azneft’ Association to obtain transport equipment and materials and for the maintenance of personnel.

8. Permit the NKVD of the Azerbaijan SSR to issue permission for entry into Iran of personnel sent by the Narkomneft’ and the Azneft’ Association for the business of the Hydrogeological Directorate.

9. Confirm as Chief of the Hydrogeological Directorate Cde. Melik-Pashayev, V. S.; Chief of the Hydrogeological Directorate in the staff of the Soviet troops in Iran; Cde. Geydarov, N. G.; and as Deputy Chief of the Hydrogeological Directorate Cde. Kornev, A. N.

10. Hold Narkomneft’ (Cde. Baybakov) and the Azneft Association (Cde. Vezirov) responsible for personally exercising control over the supply of the hydrogeological detachment with personnel, engineering and technical workers, and provisioning with equipment and materials to carry out drilling and geological prospecting work in northern Iran.

11. Hold the Secretary of the CP(b) CC of Azerbaijan, Cde. Bagirov, responsible for rendering the Hydrogeological Directorate of the Azneft’ Association all possible aid and observing the geological prospecting work for oil in northern Iran.

Chairman of the State Defense Committee
I. Stalin

Attested: [not signed]

[Source: State Archive of Political Parties and Social Movements of the Republic of Azerbaijan, Baku (GAPPOD AzR), f.1, op. 89. d.104. Obtained by Jamil Hasanli. Translated for CWIHP by Gary Goldberg.]

---

**DOCUMENT No. 2**

Decree of the Politburo of the Central Committee (CC) of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union (CPSU) to Mir Bagirov, CC Secretary of the Communist Party of Azerbaijan, on “Measures to Organize a Separatist Movement in Southern Azerbaijan and Other Provinces of Northern Iran,” 6 July 1945

TOP SECRET

To Cde. Bagirov

Measures to Organize a Separatist Movement in Southern Azerbaijan and Other Provinces in Northern Iran

1. Consider it advisable to begin preparatory work to form a national autonomous Azerbaijan district [oblast’] with broad powers within the Iranian state.

At the same time develop a separatist movement in the provinces of Gilyan, Mazandaran, Gorgan, and Khorasan.

2. Establish a democratic party in Southern Azerbaijan under the name “Azerbaijan Democratic Party” with the objective of guiding the separatist movement. The creation of the Democratic Party in Southern Azerbaijan is to be done by a corresponding reorganization of the Azerbaijani branch of the People’s Party of Iran and drawing into it supporters of the separatist movement from all strata of the population.

3. Conduct suitable work among the Kurds of northern Iran to draw them into the separatist movement to form a national autonomous Kurdish district.

4. Establish in Tabriz a group of responsible workers to guide the separatist movement, charging them with coordinating [kontaktirovat’] their work with the USSR General Consulate in Tabriz.

Overall supervision of this group is entrusted to Bagirov and Yakubov.

5. Entrust the Azerbaijan CP(b) CC (Bagirov and Ibragimov) with developing preparatory work to hold
elections in Southern Azerbaijan to the 15th Convocation of the Iranian Majlis, ensuring the election of deputies who are supporters of the separatist movement on the basis of the following slogans:

a) Allotment of land to the peasants from state and large landowning holdings and awarding long-term monetary credit to the peasants;

b) Elimination of unemployment by the restoration and expansion of work at enterprises and also by developing road construction and other public works;

c) Improvement of the organization of public amenities of cities and the public water supply;

d) Improvement in public health;

e) Use of no less than 50% of state taxes for local needs;

f) Equal rights for national minorities and tribes: opening schools and publication of newspapers and books in the Azerbaijani, Kurdish, Armenian, and Assyrian languages; court proceedings and official communications in local institutions in their native language; creating a provincial administration, including the gendarmerie and police, from local national elements; formation of regional, district, and city enjumens [and] local self-governing bodies.

g) Radical improvement in Soviet-Iranian relations.

6. Combat groups armed with weapons of foreign manufacture are to be created with the objective of self-defense for pro-Soviet people [and] activists of the separatist movement of democratic and Party organizations.

Entrust Cde. [Nicolai] Bulganin together with Cde. Bagirov with carrying out this point.

7. Organize a Society for Cultural Relations Between Iran and the Azerbaijani SSR to strengthen cultural and propaganda work in Southern Azerbaijan.

8. To draw the broad masses into the separatist movement, [we] consider it necessary to create a “Society of Friends of Soviet Azerbaijan” in Tabriz with branches in all regions of Southern Azerbaijan and Gilyan.

9. Entrust the CC CP(b) of Azerbaijan with organizing publication of an illustrated magazine in Baku for distribution in Iran and also three new newspapers in Southern Azerbaijan.

10. Commit the OGIZ [State Publishing House](Yudin) to allocating three flat-bed printing presses for the use of the CC CP(b) of Azerbaijan to create printing resources [tipografskaya baza] for the Democratic Party of Southern Azerbaijan.

11. Commit the Narkomvneshstorg [People’s Commisariat for Foreign Trade] (Cde. [Anastas] Mikoyan) with providing good paper for the publication of the illustrated magazine in Baku and also the three new daily newspapers in Southern Azerbaijan; the total press run is to be no less than 30,000 copies.

12. Permit the NKVD of the Azerbaijan SSR, under the observation of Cde. Bagirov, to issue permission for departure to Iran and return from Iran of persons being sent on business connected with putting these measures into effect.

13. To finance the separatist movement in Southern Azerbaijan and also to hold elections to the 15th Convocation of the Iranian Majlis; to create in the CC CP(b) of Azerbaijan a special fund of one million foreign-currency rubles (“for conversion into tumans”).

6 July 1945
CC VKP(b) Politburo

[Source: GAPPOD AzR, f. 1, op. 89, d. 90, ll. 4-5. Obtained by Jamil Hasanli. Translated for CWIHP by Gary Goldberg.]

DOCUMENT No. 3

Secret Soviet Instructions on Measures to Carry out Special Assignments throughout Southern Azerbaijan and the Northern Provinces of Iran, 14 July 1945

Strictly Secret

Measures to carry out special assignments throughout Southern Azerbaijan and the northern provinces of Iran

I. The Question of Creating the Azerbaijani Democratic Party

1. Immediately organize [the] transport of Pishevari and Kombakhsh to Baku for talks. Depending on the results of the talks keep in mind [the] transport to Baku of Padegan [sic! “Padegan” in other documents], the Chairman of the District Committee of the People’s Party of Azerbaijan.
2. To create organizing committees in the center (Tabriz) and elsewhere [na mesta\v{c}i\v{r}], within a month select candidates from authoritative democratic elements from the intelligentsia, middle-class merchants, small and average landowners, and the clergy in various democratic parties, and also from non-party members and bring them into the organizing committees of the Azerbaijan Democratic Party.

The first priority is to create an organizing committee in Tabriz which, via the existing democratic press Khavar Nou, Azhir, Dzhodat and others, will publish an appeal to organize an Azerbaijani Democratic Party and print leaflets.

3. With the appearance of the appeal, initiative groups elsewhere will speak out in the press in its support and create Azerbaijani Democratic Party committees from the most active organizations of the People’s Party and other democratic organizations and elements.

Do not permit a mechanical renaming of organizations of the People’s Party to committees of the Azerbaijan Democratic Party. Recommend that the Tabriz district committee and its local organizations of the People’s Party discuss the appeal of the Azerbaijani Democratic Party, decide to disband the organizations of the People’s Party and enter its members in the Azerbaijani Democratic Party.

4. After establishing the organizing committee of the Azerbaijani Democratic Party in Tabriz the first priority is to create local committees of the Azerbaijani Democratic Party in the following cities: Ardebil’, Rezaye, Khoy, Mianeh, Zanjan, Maraghe, Marand, Mahabad, Maku, Qazvin, Rasht, Pahlavi, Sari, Shakh, Gorgan, and Mashhad.

Send representatives of the central organizing committee to organize the committees in these cities. Systematically place positive responses and calls to join the Azerbaijani Democratic Party in the democratic press.

5. Create a press agency in the organizing committee of the Azerbaijan Democratic Party in Tabriz under the name “Voice of Azerbaijan”.

6. Organize the drafting of programs and a charter for the Tabriz organizing committee.

II. Ensuring the Election of Deputies to the 15th Convocation of the Majlis

1. Begin talks with deputies of the Majlis who are supporting them during the elections to the Majlis for this convocation with the object of nominating these deputies to the 15th Convocation under the condition that they fight for the implementation of the slogans of the Azerbaijani Democratic Party.

2. Begin work to nominate candidates for deputy to the Majlis from democratic elements who would fight for the implementation of the slogans of the Azerbaijani Democratic Party.

3. Review the list of deputies recommended by the Embassy in light of [these] new tasks.

4. Organize a broad popularization of the selected candidates for election to the Majlis in the press and their contacts [and] meetings with voters.

5. Support meetings, demonstrations, strikes, and the disbanding [razgon] of electoral commissions unsuitable for us with the objective of ensuring our interests in the elections.

6. In the process of preparing for the elections, compromise and expel from the electoral districts of northern Iran candidates nominated by reactionary circles [who are] actively operating against the candidates of the democratic movement.

7. Demand the replacement of unsuitable reactionary-minded leaders of local bodies [vlasti].

III. Creation of the “Society of Friends of Soviet Azerbaijan”

1. In the matter of organizing the “Society of Friends of Soviet Azerbaijan”, use the delegates participating in the jubilee celebration of the 25th anniversary of the Azerbaijan SSR.

2. Recruit the workers of our consulates, military commandants, and their active [Party] members into the organization of the Society.

3. The organizing group of the “Society of Friends of Soviet Azerbaijan” in Tabriz is to draw up the charter of the Society.

4. To widely attract the population to the “Society of Friends of Soviet Azerbaijan”, use the press to systematically illustrate the achievements of the economy, culture, and art of Soviet Azerbaijan and the historical friendship of the peoples of Southern Azerbaijan and the peoples of Soviet Azerbaijan.

IV. The Organization of the Separatist Movement

1. Organize work to develop a separatist movement to create: an Azerbaijani Autonomous District [and] a Kurdish Autonomous District with broad powers.

In Gorgan, Gilyan, Mazandaran, and Khorasan provinces organize the separatist movement along local [korennyye] questions, in particular:
in Gilyan Province:

The organization of public services and amenities in the cities of Rasht and Pahlavi, leaving no less than 50% of the tax proceeds collected from the province for this purpose;

in Gorgan Province:

Study in the native Turkmen language in the schools; replacement of the local organization, gendarmerie, and police with Turkomans, leaving no less than 50% of the tax proceeds collected from the province for public services, amenities, and health in Gonbad-e-Kavus, Gorgan, and Bandar Shah.

in Mazandaran and Khorasan Provinces:

1. Return of land to small and average landowners taken by Reza Shah (amlyak lands).
2. Leaving no less than 50% of tax proceeds collected from the province for public services and amenities of the cities of Sari, Shah, Mashhad, and New Quchan.

Additionally, bring to light locally such questions so as to organize a separatist movement in the above provinces.

Raise the demand to conduct land reform not only in Southern Azerbaijan but in [regions] regions of the northern provinces of Iran.

V. Organization of Enjumens

1. After creating the organizing committees of the Azerbaijan Democratic Party at the same time as work is conducted to elect deputies to the 15th Convocation of the Majlis, develop a campaign to organize enjumens, using the electoral enthusiasm of the population for this purpose.

VI. Organization of Press Organs

1. To organize all the agitation work via the press, establish a publishing house for new magazines in the cities of Rasht, Rezaye, and Mahabad in addition to the existing newspapers.

[illegible signatures]

14.7.45

[Source: GAPPOD AzR), f. 1, op. 89, d. 90, II 9-15. Obtained by Jamil Hasanli. Translated for CWIHP by Gary Goldberg.]

1 See also the top secret 11 June 1945 draft decree of the CC CPSU for “Measures to Organize a Separatist Movement in Southern Azerbaijan and Other Provinces of Northern Iran.” Handwritten across the upper left-hand corner: “One copy for Yemel’yánov.” Distribution: 1-2 Cde. Molotov; 3-4 Cde. Bagirov; 5- Cde. Kavtaradze.
New Evidence from the Former Yugoslav Archives

[The following set of documents, the 1954 exchange of letters between the Soviet leader Nikita S. Khrushchev and Yugoslav leader Josip Broz Tito, obtained from the Yugoslav National Archives in Belgrade and introduced for CWIHP by Svetozar Rajak, are the first result of a new “Former Yugoslavia Initiative” sponsored by the Cold War International History Project in collaboration with the Department of International History of the London School of Economics (Odd Arne Westad) and archives in the former Yugoslavia. The initiative, launched in the wake of the collapse of the Milosovic regime in and the recent re-opening of the National Archives of Yugoslavia, aims at integrating the wealth of the archives of the former Yugoslavia as well as the research of Yugoslav historians into the international scholarship on the Cold War. CWIHP is planning to publish additional materials from Serbian, Croatian, Bosnian, Slovenian and Macedonian archives as they become available.—Christian F. Ostermann]

THE TITO-KHRUSHCHEV CORRESPONDENCE, 1954

Introduced by Svetozar Rajak

The Tito-Khrushchev letters printed below represented a first contact between leaderships of two countries since the spectacular break-up of their relations in 1948 that created the first rift in the post-World War II Communist bloc. The communication occurred in utmost secrecy. The letters demonstrated deep mistrust that existed between the two countries, especially on the Yugoslav side. The timing was crucial to Khrushchev’s initiative. It is highly possible that the motive behind it was to prevent a closer military alliance of Yugoslavia and the West, ahead of the planned signing of the Balkan Pact in July 1954.

The Tito-Khrushchev correspondience had far-reaching implications. It established a Yugoslav-Soviet dialogue that would lead to normalization of relations and a historic visit by Khrushchev to Belgrade in May 1955. It also defused a conflict, which existed since 1948 and threatened the fragile balance of power between the two blocs in one of the strategically most important regions of the Cold War—Southeast Europe. The exchange of letters of the two leaders and the ensuing normalization was also to have important implications on the process of liberalization in Eastern Europe and on the developments that led to the creation of the Non-Aligned Movement.

***

The three letters and one cable by Soviet leader Nikita S. Khrushchev and the one letter by Yugoslav leader Josip Broz Tito exchanged between 22 June and 27 September 1954 represented a first contact between leaderships of the two countries since the break-up of their relations in 1948. Initiated by Khrushchev with his first letter of 22 June, the correspondence occurred in highest possible secrecy. Members of the Central Committee (CC) of the League of Communists of Yugoslavia were first informed of its existence in November. The importance of this correspondence can only be understood within the context of relations that existed between the two countries at the time. The 1948 Yugoslav-Soviet split was total, and the ideological, political, and military hostility in the subsequent years comprehensive. Between 1948 and the time of the arrival of Khrushchev’s first letter, Yugoslavia was under a real threat of a military invasion from the Soviets and their satellite states. Border incidents and armed clashes were an everyday occurrence. On 29 April 1953 Soviet Foreign Minister Vyacheslav Molotov had received the Yugoslav chargé d’affaires in Moscow, Dragoje Djuric—for the first time since 1948. The meeting lasted merely ten minutes, and only very formal diplomatic niceties were exchanged. Two months later, again at Molotov’s initiative, diplomatic relations between the two countries were restored to the ambassadorial level. Although unprecedented and positive steps, these initiatives of the new Soviet leadership remained isolated. Official Soviet and satellite propaganda still branded Yugoslavia as a “traitor and enemy of Marxism-Leninism” and its leadership around Tito as a “fascist clique.” Under these circumstances, normalization of Yugoslav-Soviet diplomatic relations was understood by Yugoslavs merely as a return to common diplomatic decency and part of the new image that the post-Stalin leadership was eager to promote. It was impossible to envision direct communication between the Yugoslav and Soviet leaders. The arrival of Khrushchev’s first letter shocked Tito and the very few top Yugoslav leaders who were privy to its existence. Not surprisingly, Tito at first considered it to be another Soviet propaganda ploy against Yugoslavia.

The Tito-Khrushchev letters offer a unique insight into the extent to which an ideological rift had existed between the two countries since 1948 and the high stakes involved in their reconciliation. Both leaders were well aware of the implications that the nature of their relations had and could have for their countries’ respective strategic positions, for the cohesion of the global Communist movement, and for developments in Eastern Europe. Thus both sides exercised extreme caution, evident throughout the correspondence. The new Soviet leaders emerging out of Stalin’s shadow were victims of their own propaganda against Yugoslavia. As a result, their knowledge about Tito and the situation in Yugoslavia was surprisingly limited and distorted. They were unsure of the Yugoslav response to their initiative. There was a huge risk of humiliation...
should the Yugoslavs chose not to respond but instead make public Khrushchev’s offer of reconciliation. Furthermore, the fact that Khrushchev alone signed letters of such significance provides a glimpse into the existing balance of power within the Kremlin. It reflected both Khrushchev’s ascendance and the fragility of his position. Part of the Soviet leadership that initiated the new approach towards Yugoslavia, notably Khrushchev, Nikolai Bulganin and Anastas Mikoyan, were under close scrutiny from the more conservative members of the Politburo. Relations with Yugoslavia were of highest ideological significance, and any miscalculation could provide competitors in the ongoing leadership struggle, most notably Molotov and Georgy Malenkov, with valuable ammunition.

The Yugoslavs were, if anything, even more guarded and distrustful of the Soviets. In the first few weeks after receiving the letter, Tito seriously considered the possibility that Khrushchev’s initiative was a Soviet maneuver aimed at undermining Yugoslavia’s position. By making an enthusiastic Yugoslav response public, Khrushchev could either humiliate Tito in the Communist world or undermine Yugoslavia’s strategic position vis-à-vis the West. Certainly the timing of Khrushchev’s letter was most inopportune for Tito. The crisis over Trieste required Yugoslavia’s close cooperation with the West in order to counter Italy’s actions. For this reason, Tito chose not to respond with a letter. To keep his options open, however, he needed to acknowledge the initiative, should it prove to be genuine, and yet, in case of it being a Soviet ploy, to maintain the ability of plausible denial by keeping himself at distance. Tito thus chose Yugoslav Deputy Prime Minister Edvard Kardelj, his closest associate, to inform Khrushchev in mid-July via the Soviet ambassador in Belgrade that Yugoslavia had received the initiative favorably, but was in no position to respond for the time being. As an excuse, Kardelj cited considerations arising from the Trieste Crisis and the effect a possible breach of secrecy of Yugoslav-Soviet dialogue might have on its outcome. Tito’s tactics proved to be correct, judging from Khrushchev’s reaction in his second communication of 24 July. Indeed, Tito’s full response came almost three months later, in his first letter to Khrushchev on 11 August.

Critical to an understanding of Khrushchev’s initiative was its timing. Since May 1954, Yugoslavia had been engaged in final negotiations with Greece and Turkey regarding the creation of a “Balkan Pact.” The formal signing of the pact was scheduled for 17 July, in Bled, Yugoslavia. One can reasonably assume that the Soviet leadership viewed the signing of the Balkan Pact as Yugoslavia’s final slide into a closer alliance with NATO. (Both Greece and Turkey were full members of NATO.) Yugoslav-Soviet reconciliation, in the Soviet assessment, could potentially pull Belgrade away from the Western alliance. Moreover, the impending signing of the Balkan Pact was probably the necessary catalyst that ensured support for new tactics towards Yugoslavia even from staunchest conservatives and “anti-Yugoslavs” within the CPSU Politburo. It provided those favoring of a fresh approach to the “Yugoslav problem,” notably Khrushchev, with the necessary strategic motive in pursuit of the initiative, while shielding them, at least for the time being, from possible attack by Molotov and other conservatives. In Moscow’s calculations, finally, normalization of relations with Yugoslavia could also give a huge boost to the image of a peaceful Soviet foreign policy, vigorously pursued at the time by the new Soviet leadership.

The letters also suggest that both Tito and Khrushchev were eager, even at this early stage of their communication, to promote and force upon each other their own approach to the resolution of the conflict and normalization of their relations. In an attempt to evade responsibility for the 1948 break, the Soviets adhered to Stalin’s formula of placing blame on an expelled, preferably dead, member of the leadership. The Beria affair provided an ideal opportunity. In the Yugoslav camp, longtime Tito associate Milovan Djilas, expelled from the Yugoslav Politburo in January 1954, seemed to the Soviets to be the obvious choice. Conveniently, both men had also been among the closest associates of their respective leaders in 1948. All past wrongdoings could thus be blamed on these two scapegoats, and the image of infallibility of the Communist Party and its leaders could be preserved. From the Soviet perspective, the existence of “culprits” in both countries would also allow responsibility for the conflict to be distributed evenly between Yugoslavia and the USSR.

The Soviets also insisted from the outset that normalization meant the reestablishment of inter-party relations. Hence, the Soviet letters were written on behalf of the CPSU Central Committee. This served at least three purposes. First, given Western sensitivity to closer party relations between the two countries, their normalization would fulfill the goal of estranging, if not isolating Yugoslavia from the West. Second, Tito’s agreement to reconciliation between the parties would confirm that the 1948 break was nothing but a family quarrel, and that Yugoslavia was returning to the fold. Third, prompt normalization of party relations would reinforce the leading role of the Soviet Party and diminish Yugoslavia’s corrosive ideological influence on the satellites.

Clearly aware of these dangerous implications, Tito resolutely resisted the path to normalization suggested by Moscow. Compared to 1948, Yugoslavia’s strategic position had changed irrevocably and to the country’s advantage. In addition, current foreign policy considerations, the pursuit of the Balkan Pact and accommodation with Italy over Trieste, demanded extreme caution. Stung by the experience of 1948, Tito was reluctant to relinquish the hard-won distance from the “Russian bear.” In his first letter to Khrushchev, Tito hence insisted on the necessity of small positive steps that would confirm Soviet sincerity, and a gradual pace of the normalization. He was also adamant that the scope of normalization should, for the time being, be limited to government-to-government relations only. Party relations, according to Tito, could be
normalized only after the confidence between the two countries had been fully restored. Nevertheless, Tito quickly seized the opportunity provided by the Soviet approach. He recognized the potential for an ideological victory in a conflict that cost him dearly since 1948 and had banished him and his regime from the Communist community. In his letter, he therefore dismissed the relevance of Djilas to the Yugoslav decision-making in 1948. In a masterfully ambiguous sentence, he then added, ‘As with regard to the extent of Beria’s guilt, you know best his role in the whole affair and we have no reason to repudiate your assertions.’ Tito clearly suggested that the current Soviet leadership had sat together with Beria in the politburo and thus shared responsibility for the break. It also implicated the one person who was never mentioned in the letters but had unquestionably been in charge in 1948—Joseph Stalin. Consequently, the conflict could only be blamed on the Soviet Union.

The correspondence is remarkable for the extreme care in the choice of ideologically “correct” formulations. This can be attributed to the highly ideological character that the conflict between the two countries had acquired immediately after the rift in 1948. Both the Yugoslav and the Soviet leaders descended from a Stalinist heritage that commanded strict adherence to pamphlet-like formulations. Any divergence from truths declared in “correct” and rigid linguistic frameworks was looked upon as a betrayal of the “cause.” Neither Tito nor Khrushchev could afford to neglect this aspect. At stake were the prestige of both parties within the Communist movement and the responsibility for the great schism. The fear that the other side might make letters public, certainly contributed to the abundant use of ideologically “correct” proclamations. Khrushchev’s fourth letter in particular underlined the importance of the ideological context. The sole purpose of this letter was to inform Tito of disciplinary actions taken against editors who “allowed” accusations against Yugoslavia, a staple of official Soviet policy ever since 1948, to be reprinted in the latest edition of the publication “The Historical Materialism.” This gesture was an offer of truce in the ideological confrontation, an ultimate sacrifice in the existing Communist paradigm. As such, it was expected to serve as the final proof of Soviet sincerity.

The letters are also striking for the complexity of the language used by the two leaders. An abundant use of indirect speech and complicated syntax served to conceal the true meanings, as demonstrated by the above-quoted statement on Beria in Tito’s letter. Very often, however, a multi-faceted syntax helped to brush over essential disagreements. Undoubtedly, both Tito and Khrushchev were well aware of the huge gulf that still existed between them. In an effort to reach some basic common understanding, necessary for the reestablishment of communication between them, both leaders had to be careful to avoid confrontational language as much as possible. Take for example the statement in Tito’s letter on the character of normalization between the two countries: “With regard to contacts between the CC of the Communist Party of Soviet Union and the CC of the League of Communists of Yugoslavia, in principle, we are not against them. The League of Communists of Yugoslavia never discards cooperation with all those organizations and movements that wish to fight for peace in the world and cooperation between nations, in particular not with socialist movements and parties. However, before some progress in normalization of government relations is achieved, the meeting you are suggesting would not prove efficient in eliminating everything that instigates material and political damage to both countries.” In a response, Khrushchev’s formulation was equally multi-faceted: “Expressing our agreement with your proposal that normalization of our relations should start with the government relations, at the same time we believe that fundamental interests of our countries, interests of the international workers’ movement, and the great cause of peace and socialism obligate our parties to invest all efforts so that established friendly relations are not limited to government relations only.”

More importantly, however, the complex language resulted from efforts by both sides to avoid admission of the initiative for the normalization. In the eyes of the Communist fraternity, such an admission would mean acknowledging responsibility for the conflict. In Khrushchev’s first letter—which, after all, initiated the correspondence—statements of a position were often preceded by formulations such as, “…there exist some conditions for the improvement of relations…” or “…unfriendly relations developed between our countries create certain damage … to the interests of the peoples of our countries…” Most illuminating, perhaps, is a phrase meant to be above suspicion: “In light of new facts that have emerged…” Expressions, such as “…proceeding from your statement…” were used extensively. Both Tito and Khrushchev thus articulated their positions as responding to other side’s initiative or statement. In his first letter, Khrushchev cleverly preceded his proposal with this sentence: “President of Yugoslavia Tito and other leaders of the League of Communists of Yugoslavia and the Government of FNRJ have in their speeches on numerous occasions expressed their desire for improved relations between Yugoslavia and the Soviet Union.” That was followed by the phrase, “With the existence of these shared ambitions…” Linguistic complexities as found in these letters are therefore critically important for understanding the atmosphere, motivations, and the true meaning of the exchanges between Khrushchev and Tito. In an effort to present these complexities in full, the translation of the letters (below) veers conscientiously, from time to time, away from the correct English language syntax.

The Tito-Khrushchev letters had important implications: First, the letters established a dialogue between the Soviet and Yugoslav leaderships for the first time since the break-up of their relations in 1948. Second, this initial
The Tito-Khrushchev correspondence was, moreover, an important first signal that those within the new Soviet leadership, led by Khrushchev, intent on deconstructing Stalin’s foreign policy heritage, were gaining the upper hand in Moscow. Once started, this “deconstruction” process would lead to the questioning of the foundations of Stalin’s domestic policies and his role in the history of the Soviet state. Just a year and a half after this exchange of letters, and merely nine months after Khrushchev’s visit to Belgrade, this process culminated in Khrushchev’s secret de-Stalinization speech in February 1956.

***

The Tito-Khrushchev correspondence of 1954 is of major importance for the study of the Cold War. The exchange of letters between the two leaders initiated a process of Yugoslav-Soviet reconciliation. As much as the break-up of the Yugoslav-Soviet relations in 1948 introduced a new reality in the formative phase of the Cold War, the re-establishment of relations between the two countries in 1955 and 1956 had equally far-reaching implications. It prevented the redrawing of the European line of confrontation between the two blocs with Yugoslavia within the Western alliance. Furthermore, Yugoslav-Soviet reconciliation signaled the beginning of the process of de-Stalinization in the Soviet Union and in the Eastern Bloc. Yugoslav-Soviet normalization preceded Khrushchev’s denouncing of Stalin in February 1956 and had great influence on the liberalization processes within the countries of the Eastern Europe that peaked with the Hungarian Revolution of October/November 1956. Finally, Tito-Khrushchev correspondence and the ensuing normalization between the two countries, decidedly helped Tito create a new strategic position of equidistance between the two blocs. This new phenomenon in the fifties would decisively change the Cold War world. Together with leaders from newly liberated countries of Asia and Africa, in particular [Indian prime minister] Nehru and [Egyptian president] Nasser, Tito would, seven years later, create a “Third World” in the bipolar Cold War world—the non-aligned movement.

The Tito-Khrushchev letters are of primary historical significance as they provide insight into the ideological framework of Communist leaders in the first decades of the Cold War. Unlike any other correspondence between Soviet leaders and foreign Communist leaders, ideological precepts are freely confronted in the letters due to the lack of subordination. The fact that this exchange of letters occurred at the time of the post-Stalin leadership struggle within Kremlin and during the early stages of the dismantling of Stalin’s heritage is of particular importance. The language of the letters is thus of extraordinary analytical value.

Presented here for the first time, the Tito-Khrushchev letters show the importance of Yugoslav archives for the study of the Cold War: to provide valuable new insights.
into many aspects of the Cold War. This underlines the importance of projects, such as the Yugoslavia Initiative, aimed at reintegrating the wealth of Yugoslav archives and Yugoslav historiography into the international scholarship of the Cold War.

DOCUMEN No. 1
Letter from Nikita S. Khrushchev,
First Secretary of the Central Committee of the
Communist Party of the Soviet Union, to
Josip Broz Tito and the Central Committee
of the League of Communists of Yugoslavia, 22
June 1954

To the Central Committee,
League of Communists of Yugoslavia
To Comrade Tito

The Central Committee [CC] of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union [CPSU] discussed questions on the relations between the USSR and Yugoslavia, and additionally analyzed the circumstances that brought about the break between the CPSU and the CPY [Communist Party of Yugoslavia] and the rapid deterioration of relations between our countries.

As a result, the CC CPSU concluded that there exist some conditions for the improvement of relations between our countries and for the establishment of contacts between the CC of the Communist Party of Soviet Union and the leadership of the League of Communists of Yugoslavia [LCY].

The CC CPSU proceeds from the fact that unfriendly relations that developed between our countries create certain damage both to the interests of Yugoslavia and to those of the Soviet Union, and to the interests of the peoples of our countries, linked by centuries of friendship and joint struggle for liberation. However, from the point of view of essential interests of both countries, it is evident that there exist no serious contradictions that could become a source of hostility and constant acrimony between our countries and peoples.

The CC CPSU proceeds also from the fact that the governments of the Soviet Union and Yugoslavia have recently undertaken certain steps towards normalization of relations between our countries. President of Yugoslavia Tito and other leaders of the League of Communists of Yugoslavia and the government of FNRJ [Federal People’s Republic of Yugoslavia] have in their speeches on numerous occasions expressed their desire for improved relations between Yugoslavia and the Soviet Union. This fully coincides with the wishes of the Soviet leaders.

With the existence of these shared ambitions, not only diplomatic relations but also balanced economic and cultural ties between our countries could be improved, based on full equality and mutual gain.

In light of new facts that have emerged, the CC of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union considers it feasible for us to reconsider also the issue of relations between our Parties.

From our side, we deem regrettable the circumstance that at the time, both sides did not use all available opportunities in an effort to regulate all contentious issues and grievances that emerged in 1948, all the more so as some facts, which were the immediate causes for the break between the CC CPSU and the CC CPY, now look different.

For example, as it is now exposed with regard to the position of Soviet advisors in Yugoslavia and the availability to them of various pieces of information, there were no valid foundations for the resulting dispute and accusations against Yugoslavia.

As the investigation against the agent of international imperialism, [former secret police chief Lavrenty] Beria, demonstrated, it is important to accentuate explicitly that his associates from the intelligence apparatus, without the knowledge of the CC and the government of the USSR, and for the purpose of provoking, have allowed themselves [to perform] inexcusable acts of recruiting individual citizens of Yugoslavia for intelligence purposes. Such a provocation of the enemy, now uncovered, inflicted huge damage to relations between our parties and countries.

On the other side, the CC CPSU is of the opinion that the leadership of the Communist Party of Yugoslavia did not take advantage of all opportunities to avoid conflict with the CC CPSU either. Thus, for example, non-Marxist statements and anti-Soviet outbursts by [Milovan] Djilas did not, at the time, meet with resistance from the leadership of the CC CPY. Djilas, this pseudo-Marxist, a man estranged from the cause of Communism, who propagated the liquidation of the party, has abundantly contributed to the deterioration of Yugoslav-Soviet relations. The exclusion of Djilas from the CC LCY and condemnation of his views hostile to Marxism-Leninism facilitate the improvement of relations between the CC CPSU and the CC LCY.

The CC CPSU takes into account the fact that leaders of the League of Communists of Yugoslavia have stated and continue to assert that communists of Yugoslavia are guided by teachings of Marxism-Leninism, that they are intent on continuing the building of socialism in their country, and regard preservation and strengthening of peace as indispensable. In light of this, there can be no excuse for the existence of a state of rift and acrimony between parties whose endeavors must be based on principles of Marxism-Leninism and the principle of non-interference into the affairs of others.

In such case, there truly exist objective conditions, not only for the improvement of political, economic, and cultural relations between our governments, but also for
the establishment of contacts between the CC of the Communist Party of Soviet Union and the CC of the League of Communists of Yugoslavia.

It is thoroughly understandable that elements of mistrust and prejudice, accumulated in previous years, cannot disappear overnight. Time will be needed, as well as patience and mutual good will, for an understanding to be reached. However, the shared fundamental interests of our countries, our peoples, and of the grand cause of peace and socialism must overcome various subjective moments and opinions.

We would like to know the opinion of the CC of the League of Communists of Yugoslavia on the above-addressed issues.

From its side, the CC CPSU is ready to hear and discuss the view of the CC of the League of Communists of Yugoslavia on issues regarding relations between our governments, as well as those regarding relations between the CPSU and the LCY.

To this end, we would regard as constructive a meeting of leading representatives of the CC CPSU and the CC LCY aimed at exchanging views on the above-mentioned issues. If you are in agreement with this proposal, the meeting could take place in the nearest future either in Moscow or in Yugoslavia, according to your convenience.

Secretary of the CC CPSU
N. Khrushchev
22 June 1954


DOCUMENT No. 2
Letter (Cable) from the Central Committee of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union to Tito and Central Committee of the League Of Communists Of Yugoslavia, 24 July 1954

To the Central Committee of the League of Communists of Yugoslavia
To Comrade Tito

The CC CPSU has received with satisfaction the communication from Comrade Kardelj stating that the leadership of the CC LCY looks positively on suggestions proposed in the letter from the CC CPSU of 22 June 1954. We are confident that this road corresponds to the vital interests of our peoples and our Communist Parties. We acknowledge that the Yugoslav comrades could be in a position to respond to our letter in the nearest future.

The CC CPSU is aware of the great importance of the question of Trieste to Yugoslavia. We too consider it propitious that it be resolved in accordance with justified interests of Yugoslavia. Should, for Yugoslavia, there exist a possibility of a resolution of this question in the nearest future then it is perfectly obvious and understandable to us that it must not be encumbered by premature publication of our negotiations.

24 July 1954
CC CPSU


DOCUMENT No.3
First Letter from Tito and the Executive Committee [Politburo] of the CC LCY to Nikita Khrushchev and Central Committee of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union, 11 August 1954

To the Central Committee of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union
To Comrade Khrushchev

A session of the extended Executive Committee of the League of Communists of Yugoslavia has deliberated the letter from the CC CPSU on the need for normalization of relations between our governments. In principle, we agree with most of its contents, in particular with the statement on the damage being done to both countries from the existence of the present abnormal state of relations and continuous tension between us.

We, too, nourish a desire for the necessity for elimination of elements that obstruct normalization between our governments and poison the atmosphere between our peoples, which ultimately contributes to the worsening of already tense situation not only in this part of Europe, but also in the world in general.

The very slow progress of normalization, to date, demonstrates the need for serious efforts in bringing clarity into our relations, and persistence in gradually removing negative elements that have accumulated since 1948, which continue to aggravate our relations thus creating an even bigger rift between our two countries.
We agree with the particular position in your letter, which asserts that improvement and normalization of our relations will benefit not only our countries, but also the consolidation of peace in the world in general. To this we add our belief that improvement of the relations between Yugoslavia and the USSR should also influence improvement of the relations between Yugoslavia and those countries that have also cut off relations with us in 1948, and with which our present relations cannot be called normal, much less friendly.

All this requires ample time and good will because it would be unrealistic to think that a quick and short process is possible for the creation of the necessary trust between our governments and peoples. We wish here to underline that we who are responsible before the people of our country cannot but emphasize that this normalization and improvement of our relations must be of such character and direction as to be in accordance with our policy of international cooperation, and not to jeopardize our country’s position in the world or to create new internal strife, whether political or economic.

We have noticed with satisfaction that you write in the letter about respect for the principle of non-interference into affairs of other countries. This will certainly be favorably received by our peoples and thus facilitate the proper development of our relations.

We are resolute in preserving our principles of a socialist country, in our internal development as well as in our foreign policy, in particular with regard to the avoidance of the threat of war and preservation of peace in the world, to the defense of our independence, and to our readiness to cooperate with all countries that respect the principle of equality among states. It is this outlook on international relations that originates our faith not only in the prospect but also in the necessity of cooperation between states with different systems, and in a realistic possibility of coexistence. We do not see another alternative today, if we wish to preserve humanity from the biggest catastrophe in its history.

We should not subordinate normalization and improvement of our relations to an unrealistic expectation of uniformity of views on all international problems and on ways of resolving them. It should equally be unrealistic to allow our domestic issues, their progress and ways in how we solve them, to condition the development of our relations. It would only obstruct our cooperation in areas of mutual interest, such as economic, cultural, and other.

With regard to the position in your letter which examines the question of who is responsible for the break of our relations, we would not wish to discuss this in this letter. It is of no significance to normalization and improvement of relations between our governments if we proceed from the assumption that the present relations bring damage to both countries. But, as far as we are concerned, we need to say openly that an individual, for example Djilas, was not the cause of this conflict, regardless of his lack of balanced approach and his outbursts from one extreme to another. It is precisely because of these traits that he had never played a decisive role in our leadership. We recognize other reasons behind the conflict and break of 1948, and the Fifth [1948] and later the Sixth [1952] Congress of our Party have expressed them. As with regard to the extent of Beria’s guilt, you know best his role in the whole affair and we have no reason to repudiate your assertions.

With regard to contacts between the CC of the Communist Party of Soviet Union and the CC of the League of Communists of Yugoslavia, in principle we are not against them. The League of Communists of Yugoslavia never rejects cooperation with any organizations and movement that wish to fight for peace in the world and cooperation among nations, in particular not with socialist movements and parties. However, before some progress in normalization of government relations is achieved, the meeting you are suggesting, would not prove efficient in eliminating everything that instigates material and political damage to both countries.

We believe that the above approach to the eradication of elements that contaminate our relations would be most advantageous to both countries.

11 August 1954
Belgrade
Executive Committee,
CCLCY

Tito


DOCUMENT No 4.
Third Letter from Nikita S. Khrushchev, First Secretary of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union, to Tito and the Executive Committee of the Central Committee of the League of Communists of Yugoslavia, 23 September 1954

To the Executive Committee,
Central Committee of League of Communists of Yugoslavia
To Comrade Tito

The CC of the CPSU discussed the letter from the Executive Committee of the Central Committee of the League of Communists of Yugoslavia of 11 August, and notes with satisfaction the agreement expressed in it with
the proposal for improvement of relations between Yugoslavia and the USSR, presented in the letter from the CC CPSU of 22 June.

Your opinion regarding the necessity of investing greater effort towards full clarification of our relations and elimination of negative elements still spoiling those relations is receiving full support from our side.

We agree that normalization and improvement of relations between the USSR and Yugoslavia should not be conditioned upon [consensus regarding] issues of internal development and ways of resolving them. We also agree that development of these relations should support the enhancement of the international positions of our countries. We underline with satisfaction the existence of unanimity of views on a variety of foreign policy issues, such as: equality and non-interference into affairs of other countries, acceptance of the possibility of peaceful coexistence and cooperation between countries with different political systems, struggle for prevention of war and consolidation of peace. As is well known, the policy of the Soviet Union is aimed at the consolidation of peace in Europe and the whole world. We do not doubt that Yugoslavia will contribute towards the goal of the consolidation of peace.

As there now emerges a unity of outlook recognizing the necessity of radical improvement of relations between our countries, based on the exchange of views between us, we believe it possible also to proceed toward mutual, practical elimination of negative occurrences that obstruct rapprochement between Yugoslavia and the USSR. We are ready, in every way, to ensure that every proposal from your side, aimed at strengthening friendship and cooperation between the USSR and Yugoslavia receives due attention from Soviet government organs. From our side, in the interest of normalization of relations between Yugoslavia and the USSR, we have explicitly confronted the Association of Yugoslav Patriots with the question of the appropriateness of the continuation of their activity.

We hope that rapprochement between the USSR and Yugoslavia will reflect favorably on relations between Yugoslavia and countries with which Yugoslav relations deteriorated after 1948. The CC CPSU will inform the leaderships of the fraternal parties of your expressed wish to openly state our opinion. We believe that decisions of the CPSU and the LCY are not limited to government relations only.

In its foreign policy, the Soviet Union aspires toward establishing and maintaining normal relations with all countries, including the capitalist ones, irrespective of their socioeconomic system. By sending you a proposal for the renewal of our relations, we considered it self-evident that in the course of their harmonization a full normalization of relations between our governments would be achieved. But, we have always believed and believe that normalization of relations between governments should only be taken as a beginning, and that there exist objective conditions not only for the improvement of bonds between Yugoslavia and the USSR, in accordance with universally accepted norms of relations between states, but for achieving mutual understanding and cooperation between the CPSU and the LCY.

The resolve to protect the socialist character of the Yugoslav state, expressed in your letter, represents an important prerequisite for establishment of mutual understanding and sincere cooperation between our parties. Unlike all other parties, the struggle for the victory of socialism and the building of a communist society are the ultimate goals of true Marxist parties. To reach these great goals, they could and should attain mutual understanding. Cooperation of our parties, based on the principles of Marxism-Leninism, is vital not only to the interests of the Soviet Union and Yugoslavia, but in the interest of consolidating the international workers' movement and unifying all forces fighting for the victory of socialism. The Communist Party of the Soviet Union, created by great Lenin, considers these principles to be above all else.

Relating to your opinion with regard to those responsible for the break-up in 1948, we too believe that this question is not important if both you and we have agreed that we should aspire towards the improvement of political, economic, and other relations between our countries. In regard to the mention in your letter of decisions of the Fifth and the Sixth Congresses of the LCY, we deem it important to openly state our opinion. We believe that decisions of the Fifth Congress reflected mostly the relations between our parties as they were then constituted, and confirm our regret, as expressed in our letter of 22 June, that all opportunities available have not always been used to avoid misunderstandings. With regard to the decisions of
the Sixth Congress, they appeared in different circum-
stances, and one cannot deny that they had the imprint of
then existing hostility and grave, often unjust, mutual
accusations to which the logic of confrontation in those
years had led both sides. One should admit that, unfortu-
nately, such accusations still appear from time to time in
both the Yugoslav and the Soviet press, as an already
known result of relations between our countries in those
years. From our side, we are taking measures to ensure the
needed clarification of questions related to Yugoslavia in
the Soviet press, journals, and books.

We are fully aware that elements of mistrust and
prejudice, accumulated in previous years, cannot disappear
at once. But, at the same time, we are firmly convinced that
now that the existence of mutual good will and aspirations
towards improvement of our relations based on equality
and mutual advantage has been manifested, the cause of
the Soviet and Yugoslav peoples coming together is
moving forward because thus demand the interests of both
countries and interests of peace and socialism.

The Secretary
Central Committee of the Communist Party of Soviet Union
Moscow, 23 September 1954
N. Khrushchev

Obtained and translated for CWIHP by Svetozar Rajak.]

DOCUMENT No. 5
Fourth Letter from Nikita S. Khrushchev,
First Secretary of the Central Committee of the
Communist Party of the Soviet Union,
to Tito and the Executive Committee
of the Central Committee of the League of
Communists of Yugoslavia,
27 September 1954

To the Executive Committee,
Central Committee of the League of Communists of
Yugoslavia
To Comrade Tito

We consider it important to inform you of an inappro-
priate formulation, which is at the same time contradictory
to directives from the CC CPSU, that was allowed to pass
through in the book “Historical Materialism” (Second edition),
published by GOSPOLITIZDAT in June 1954. In this book,
contrary to our intentions, and as a result of an oversight by
the author and GOSPOLITIZDAT, a disturbing provocation
appeared aimed against the leadership of Yugoslavia.

The CC CPSU has discussed the question of this
gross error, allowed in the book “Historical Materialism,”
and has made an appropriate decision by harshly punish-
ing those responsible for the violation of directives of the
CC CPSU on the character of material on Yugoslavia that is
published in the USSR. Enclosed please find the transcript
of that decision.

We hope that from your side the case of the book
“Historical Materialism” will be correctly understood and
judged as an irrelevant misunderstanding.

The Secretary,
Central Committee of the Communist Party of Soviet Union
N. Khrushchev
Moscow, 27 September 1954


Svetozar Rajak (London School of Economics) has done
extensive research in The National Archives of Yugoslavia.

1 This article is a result of research conducted by the
author for his doctoral thesis on “Yugoslav-Soviet
relations between 1953 and 1958” at the Department of
International History of the London School of Economics
and Political Science (LSE). The author wishes to express
gratitude to Odd Arne Westad (LSE), the staff of the
National Archives of Yugoslavia in Belgrade, and the
Archives of the Federal Ministry of Foreign Affairs of
Yugoslavia for exceptional collaboration and assistance
during difficult times of political turmoil. At the same time,
he is indebted to a number of scholars in Belgrade, above
all to Ljubodrag Dimic (Department of History, University
of Belgrade).

2 Communist Party of Yugoslavia, renamed as League
of Communists of Yugoslavia, at its Sixth Congress in 1952.

3 In summer and autumn 1953, the USSR and Yugosla-
via exchanged ambassadors.

4 FNRJ—Federativna Narodna Republika Jugoslavija
[Federal Peoples Republic of Yugoslavia], the official name
of Yugoslavia at the time.

5 For reasons of authenticity, the author has pre-
sented this Soviet-Yugoslav exchange of communication as
first, second, etc. letter according to the depiction
given by Tito himself when presenting them in November
1954 to the Central Committee of the League of Commu-
nists of Yugoslavia. Each document is annotated on top
of the first page accordingly, in Tito’s handwriting.) The
presentation of the Khrushchev letters is based on their
Serbo-Croatian translation

6 Moscow-based association of Yugoslavs who
Teachers Become Students at Summer Institute

The 2001 National History Day Summer Institute brought twenty-five teachers from across the nation to the University of Maryland to examine New Directions In Cold War History. The teachers came from very diverse backgrounds and schools, but they all came to develop their teaching skills and share their knowledge with their peers. Judging from the participants’ tremendously positive response, the institute confirmed both the need for, as well as National History Day’s ability to provide, assistance and training to teachers. “In terms of content, accessibility of speakers, practical applications for the classroom, and excitement, this is the best workshop I’ve ever attended!” said one participant. The institute was produced in association with The Cold War International History Project and was graciously supported by the Annenberg/CPB Channel, funder of A Biography of America and the Vietnam Veterans Memorial Fund.

Many times the focus of learning is concentrated on student rather than teacher development, but National History Day is working to reform history education by developing the skills of both teachers and students. The objectives of the institute were two-fold: to provide teachers with the latest in historical scholarship to bring them up to speed on the literature; and to provide teachers with practical applications for the classroom, particularly instruction regarding the importance and use of primary sources. To accomplish these goals National History Day worked closely with scholars from across the country to provide a hands-on learning experience for the teachers. “The institute really exceeded my expectations and I’m grateful to have had this unique experience, said a 2001 participant. “I’m significantly more knowledgeable now about the 20th century and Cold War history than I had been. Now, I can enhance my good teaching methods with a deeper knowledge of the Cold War and primary sources.”

Prominent scholars and collections specialists such as Robert Hutchings of Princeton University (formerly Director for European Affairs, National Security Council, 1989-1992; Special Adviser to the Secretary of State, 1992-1993), Bill Brands of Texas A&M University and Christian Ostermann of the Cold War International History Project introduced participants to the latest in historical scholarship and imaginative approaches for engaging students in the study of the history of the Cold War. In addition, the teachers visited historic sites and agencies. At the National Archives the teachers looked at the original Marshall Act and the most requested document in the archives – a picture of President Nixon and Elvis Presley in the Oval office. Teachers spoke with archivists and educators about the multitude of presidential documents and lesson plans available on line at the National Archive’s website (www.nara.gov/education). Jan Scruggs, Founder and President of the Vietnam Veterans Memorial Fund, gave a special tour of the Vietnam Veterans Memorial.

The most important part about the workshop is that the teachers’ work has just begun. In addition to including new ideas and methods into their own teaching, those who participated in the program are committed to conducting workshops for teachers in their own states. Thus, teachers nationwide will benefit from the institute and National History Day’s commitment to education reform.

[Reprinted from the NHD Newsletter (Summer 2001), pp.1-2, with permission of the National History Day.]
Research Notes and Conference Reports

The Moldovan Communist Party Archives

By Jim Hershberg

In a development that could assist research into the history of nationalism in the former Soviet Union, communist party archives in the Republic of Moldova—until 1991 known as Moldavia, one of the fifteen constituent republics of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR)—have partially opened to researchers. On 20-22 July 1997, I visited the capital city of Chișinău (formerly Kishinev) as part of a visit to archives in several former Soviet republics, including Ukraine, Lithuania, and Latvia, undertaken by a delegation consisting of former CWIHP Director David Wolff, Mark Kramer of Harvard University’s Davis Center for Russian Studies, Vladislav Zubok of the National Security Archive, and myself, organized by CWIHP and the National Security Archive.

Arriving by train from Moscow with no advance notice or arrangements, I was able to conduct research in the “Archive of Social-Political Organizations in the Moldovan Republic” (Arhiva Organizatiilor Social-Politice a Republicii Moldova), the repository containing the records of the former Moldavian Communist Party Central Committee (MCP CC) and other party organs. In contrast to the often cumbersome procedures in Russian archives, I was also permitted to order, pay for (at a rate of roughly $0.25/page), and receive photocopies (despite a shortage of toner in the only available machine, alas) within the space of a few hours. Most documents are in Russian, although most of the population also speaks Romanian/Moldavan, which became the republic’s official language in 1994. Below are printed two MCP CC documents (translated and introduced by Mark Kramer) on party concerns about the circulation in Moldavia of Romanian publications containing criticisms of the 21 August 1968 Soviet-led invasion of Czechoslovakia to crush the reformist “Prague Spring”; further materials obtained on the trip, including records on the rise of Moldovan nationalism in 1989, are slated for publication in future CWIHP publications.

Nevertheless, some restrictions apply. According to archival authorities, Moldovan legislation provides for a 10-year restriction on documents labelled “secret”, a 25-year restriction on documents with higher secrecy classifications such as “osobaya papka” or “special dossier”, and a 75-year closure on materials considered “personal”—a term which unfortunately was interpreted as applying to the “lichne” or “personal” collections (fondy) of MCP leaders and other officials. (I worked mostly in Fond 51, which contains the MCP CC records.) In addition, before being permitted to conduct research in the archive, I was required to obtain a letter of endorsement from the Insitute of History of the Academy of Science of the Republic of Moldova (Institutul de Istorie al Academiei de Stiinte a Republicii Moldova), located in an upper floor of the same building as the archive, at 82, str. 31 August 1989. The Institute was kind enough to provide a letter endorsing my research on the broad topic of “Moldavia and the Cold War, 1945-1991,” despite my pigeon Russian and lack of advance notice, but researchers would be advised to write or fax ahead to make prior arrangements and ensure that the archives will be open and accessible on the dates and topics desired. In particular, I was assisted by the director, Demir Dragnev, and Ion Siscana, Institutul de Istorie, str. 31 August [1989], 82, Chișinău, Republica MOLDOVA 2012, tel. (3732) 23-73-27; fax: (3732) 23-45-90. (For additional assistance in arranging a visit to Chișinău— I was able to hire an English-language translator here— researchers may also wish to contact the Soros Foundation-associated Independent Journalism Center at the Open World House, 20 Armeneasca St., 2012, Chișinău, MOLDOVA, tel. (3732) 264225, 222507, fax: (3732) 228691, e-mail: prog.jc@owhmoldnet.md)

The Institutul de Istorie also publishes a quarterly journal, the Revista de Istorie a Moldovei, founded in 1990. According to the masthead of issue 4, 1996, the publication’s chief editor is Dr. Dragnev, and Dr. Siscana belongs to the editorial collegium as well as serving as the chief editor of ArenaAPoliticii, a monthly publication of culture and political science. Revista de Istorie is in Moldovan (Romanian) with English summaries and tables of contents; however, Dr. Siscana co-edited an English-language collection of translated documents from various archives on the August 1939 Nazi-Soviet pact’s secret protocol, particularly the provisions which led to the incorporation of Bessarabia (later Moldavia) into the Soviet Union (along with the Baltic states and other territories): see I. Shishcanu and V. Varatec, eds., V. Matei, intro., The Pact Molotov-Ribbentrop and its Consequences for Bessarabia (Chisinau: “Universitas” Publishing House, 1991).

Former CWIHP Director Jim Hershberg is Associate Professor of History and International Affairs at George Washington University.
Moldova, Romania, and the Soviet Invasion of Czechoslovakia

Introduction, translation, and annotation by Mark Kramer

Until recently, nothing was known about the impact of the 1968 Soviet-Czechoslovak crisis on Soviet Moldavia, a small republic located in the far west of the USSR along eastern Romania and southwestern Ukraine. At the end of 1991, Soviet Moldavia became the independent country of Moldova. A few Western scholars in the 1970s and 1980s were able to trace the extensive “spillover” of ferment from the sweeping reforms in Czechoslovakia into Soviet Ukraine, but no comparable studies existed of the other Soviet republics. In an analysis of Moldavia’s role in Soviet foreign policy published in 1976, Stephen Fischer-Galati refrained from discussing the impact of the Soviet-Czechoslovak crisis. Instead, he simply noted that “reports in the foreign press immediately after the military crisis of the summer of 1968 make no mention of the attitude of the Romanian inhabitants of Moldavia when Soviet tanks and troops were moving toward the Romanian frontier.” The lack of concrete information, Fischer-Galati added, meant that any comments about the effect of the crisis on Moldavia would be purely “a matter of conjecture.”

The state of knowledge about the spillover from the 1968 crisis into the Soviet Union remained extremely limited until the USSR was dissolved at the end of 1991. The subsequent opening of archives in countries that were formerly part of the Soviet Union (as well as the archives in East-Central Europe) has enabled scholars to gain a much better sense of the impact of the Prague Spring and the Soviet-led invasion of Czechoslovakia in August 1968 on the western Soviet republics. It is now clear that the degree of ferment in the Soviet Union connected with the events in Czechoslovakia was much greater than previously assumed. Abundant evidence of this exists in the Russian archives (including a document pertaining to Moldavia that I published in Issue No. 11 of the CWIHP Bulletin), and equally valuable documentation is available in the archives of the other former Soviet republics, including Moldova.

The two documents below from the “Archive of Social-Political Organizations in the Moldovan Republic” (AOSPRM), the former repository of the Communist Party (CP) of Soviet Moldavia, highlight the efforts that Moldavian officials made in late August and September 1968 to prevent the local population from learning about Romania’s “hostile,” “irrational,” and “chauvinist” assessment of the Soviet invasion of Czechoslovakia. The two documents are among many items in the AOSPRM that shed interesting light on Soviet-Romanian relations, Soviet foreign policy-making, and internal Soviet politics. (See the accompanying report on the Moldovan archive by James G. Hershberg, who obtained these two documents during a visit to Chișinău in July 1997.)

The first document, prepared in early October 1968 by the head of the Department for Propaganda and Agitation of the Moldavian CP Central Committee (CC), Anton Sidorovich Konstantinov, criticized the Moldavian minister of communications, Vasili (Vasile) Petrovich Russu, for his “blatant violation of party discipline.” Russu had failed to instruct the Moldavian postal service to withhold all Romanian newspapers and journals beginning on 21 August 1968. Not until 28 September did Russu belatedly order the head of the Kishinev branch of the postal service, P. P. Grigorashchenko, to prevent any Romanian publications from being distributed within Moldavia.

The second document, a stenographic account of a meeting of the highest organ of the Moldavian Communist Party (known as the Bureau of the Central Committee) on 11 October 1968, contains Russu’s explanation of his behavior as well as further details about problems within the Moldavian ministry of communications. Russu insisted that he had been absent from his office for several days immediately after the invasion because he was serving in a reserve military communications battalion that was mobilized and sent to Czechoslovakia. He faulted two of his subordinates—the first deputy minister, Mikhail (Mihai) Nikolaevich Severinov, and the head of the ministry’s foreign communications section, Konstantin (Constantin) Aleksandrovich Kucia—for having failed to carry out essential tasks while he was gone. The document makes clear that although the members of the Moldavian CP Bureau wanted to condemn Russu’s behavior, they were unwilling to impose a severe punishment. Russu received a “stern warning” but was permitted to retain his ministerial post, a job he continued to perform for many years afterward.

It is not surprising that Romanian publications were at the center of this controversy. The emergence of a rift between the Soviet Union and Romania in the mid-1960s had sparked concern among Moldavian CP officials about the possible effects on the “Moldavian” (ethnic Romanian) inhabitants of Moldavia, who made up roughly two-thirds of the republic’s total population. In November 1965, the First Secretary of the Moldavian CP, Ivan (Ioan) Ivanovich Bodiu, accused the Romanian authorities of spreading “lies” and “distortions” about Moldavia. A few months later, at the 12th Congress of the Moldavian CP, he launched a stronger attack on the “hostile remarks” and “nationalist propaganda” that were being broadcast into Moldavia on Romanian television and radio. As tensions between Moscow and Bucharest continued to mount in 1967 and 1968 on a number of foreign policy issues, especially the question of Czechoslovakia, Moldavian CP leaders became all the more concerned about the spread of Romanian influence into their republic. Bodiu was one of
several republic party first secretaries who spoke at a Central Committee plenum of the Soviet Communist Party (CPSU) in April 1968, which was specially convened to assess the implications of recent developments in Czechoslovakia. Bodiu expressed anxiety there about Romania’s enthusiastic support of the Prague Spring.8 Bucharest’s subsequent opposition to the invasion of Czechoslovakia stirred deep unease in both Kishinev and Moscow about the possible spread of “unsavory” influences into Moldavia.

The risk of “contagion” from Romania loomed especially large during the first few days after the invasion, which marked the high point of Bucharest’s defiance of the Soviet Union.9 A recent book by the Romanian scholar Mihai Retegan, drawing on newly declassified materials from the Romanian foreign ministry and Communist party archives, underscores how tense the Soviet-Romanian relationship became during the period immediately after the invasion.10 In a famous speech from the balcony of the CC headquarters of the Romanian Communist Party (RCP) in Bucharest on 21 August, just hours after Soviet troops had begun moving en masse into Czechoslovakia, the leader of the RCP, Nicolae Ceaușescu, denounced the Soviet Union for having “flagrantly violated the freedom and independence of another state.” Speaking before a vast crowd of ordinary citizens as well as party loyalists, he described the invasion as “a colossal error and a grave danger to peace in Europe and to the fate of socialism around the world.” Ceaușescu vowed that Romania would take all necessary steps to defend its own sovereignty and territorial integrity:

It has been said that in Czechoslovakia there was a danger of counterrevolution. Perhaps tomorrow they will claim that our meeting here has reflected counterrevolutionary trends. If that should be the case, we warn all of them that the entire Romanian people will never permit anyone to infringe on the territory of our homeland.11

Shortly after Ceaușescu finished his speech, the RCP Central Committee and the Romanian government met in an emergency session and adopted a joint communique expressing “great alarm” at the “flagrant violation of the national sovereignty of a fraternal, socialist, free, and independent state, an action that contravenes all the principles on which relations between socialist countries are based as well as universally recognized norms of international law.”12 The joint statement called for the immediate withdrawal of the Soviet and East European troops to “allow the Czechoslovak people to handle their internal affairs themselves, without any outside interference.”

Romania’s bold opposition to the Soviet invasion caused a brief but ominous escalation of the crisis, prompting fears in Bucharest (and elsewhere) that Soviet and allied troops might soon be dispatched to Romania. Romanian leaders were well aware that a military clash with the Soviet Union would entail grave, and potentially catastrophic, consequences for Romania. Faced with that prospect, they sought to defuse the confrontation. Although Ceaușescu and his colleagues did their best to avoid any steps that would appear to legitimize the invasion, their change of tone was quickly perceptible. Throughout the last week of August, they steadily curtailed their criticisms of the invasion, and they even began downplaying other issues that had provoked tensions with Moscow in recent years.13 In particular, Romanian officials temporarily eschewed any further polemics over Bessarabia and Northern Bukovina, two former Romanian territories that had been allocated to the Soviet Union under the 1939 Nazi-Soviet Pact and then incorporated into Soviet Moldavia and Soviet Ukraine at the end of World War II.14 This marked the first major lull in the territorial dispute since the early 1960s.

Important though these efforts to ease tensions and avert a military conflict proved to be, they did not signify a complete reversal of Romania’s stance toward the invasion. The Romanian authorities never explicitly disavowed Ceaușescu’s balcony speech or the joint resolution adopted on 21 August. Although Ceaușescu ceased most of his public criticisms, he maintained a negative view of the intervention—a view that inevitably continued to be reflected in RCP periodicals and newspapers. Soviet leaders therefore were anxious to prevent Romanian publications from being disseminated within the Soviet Union, especially in Moldavia, where a substantial majority of the population could understand the language.

The documents here show that efforts to halt the influx of Romanian materials into Soviet Moldavia were by no means always successful. For one reason or another—the precise culprit is difficult to pin down—Romanian newspapers replete with comments by Ceaușescu and other senior RCP officials were circulated relatively widely in Moldavia in late August and September 1968. These papers enabled some residents of Moldavia to obtain much more detailed and much harsher information about the invasion than they ever could have received from the official Soviet media.

One small point should be noted about the translations. Both documents below, especially the stenographic account, are fairly rough and, in certain places, ungrammatical in the original. The translation seeks to replicate the style of the original, but without sacrificing comprehensibility. For the sake of clarity, the translation in a few places is slightly smoother than the original stenogram, and some minor typographical errors in the original have been corrected.
DOCUMENT No. 1
To the First Secretary of the CC of the Communist Party of Moldavia, 4 October 1968

Cde. I.I. BODIUL

Insofar as the Romanian leadership adopted a special and harmful position on a whole range of important issues pertaining to the international Communist and workers’ movement, and expressed sharp opposition to the measures taken by the five socialist states to halt the counterrevolution in Czechoslovakia, and insofar as the Romanian press published materials and statements by Romanian and foreign authors that were hostile to the Soviet Union and the other socialist countries, and republished anti-Soviet materials from foreign press organs, the Bureau of the CC of the Communist Party of Moldavia gave instructions to the minister of communications of the Moldavian SSR, Cde. V. P. Russu, that, beginning on 21 August 1968, he should prevent Romanian periodicals from being distributed within the republic until special instructions were received.

After checking information that flowed into the CC Department of Propaganda and Agitation of the Moldavian Communist Party, it was established that Cde. V. P. Russu did not carry out the instructions of the Bureau of the Moldavian Communist Party CC. The Kishinev branch of the postal delivery system (headed by Cde. P. P. Grigorashchenko) withheld and destroyed, in accordance with the order, only the Romanian newspapers for 22-28 and 30 August and for 1, 28, and 29 September. The remaining journals and newspapers were sent to subscribers, often for retail sale.

By way of explanation, Cde. P. P. Grigorashchenko reported that the processing and forwarding of Romanian periodicals and other publications from 21 August to 28 September were handled on the basis of a written directive from the USSR Ministry of Communications and from the Moldavian SSR Ministry of Communications, according to which all incoming Romanian newspapers should be stored in the mail delivery branch’s facilities for two days and journals should be stored for four days. If during this time, no further directive arrived by telegram from the Moscow International Post Office to continue holding back the items in questions, they should be sent out to the subscribers. Until 28 September, no other sorts of instructions about this matter were received at the postal delivery branch. Only on 28 September did Cde. V. P. Russu transmit an instruction that all Romanian newspapers and journals should be held back. This was promptly carried out.

In the meantime, the subscribers received Romanian newspapers containing items of disinformation that misled readers and damaged efforts to promote a Communist outlook among the republic’s population. They received copies of “Șcînteia,” “România Liberă,” “Muncă,” “Șcînteia Țineretului,” and other papers for 31 August containing the speech by J. Smrkovský, in which he provided an ominous account of the Soviet-Czechoslovak negotiations in Moscow on 23-26 August and described the entry of troops into Czechoslovakia as the most trying moment in his own life and in the life of the Czechoslovak nation.

The subscribers also received copies of “Șcînteia” and other newspapers for 29 August with a statement by the Executive Committee of the Romanian Communist Party CC, which demanded that all troops of the five socialist states be withdrawn immediately from Czechoslovakia.

This same issue of “Șcînteia” features Ceaușescu’s speech in Cluj, in which he compared “certain theoreticians of Marxism” with Louis XIV and claimed, among other things, that these theoreticians are trying to affirm the principle of “Marxisme c’est moi.” The subscribers received not only the newspapers featuring speeches by Ceaușescu and other Romanian leaders, which are filled with venomous nationalism and which attempt to prove the correctness of Romania’s policy toward the events in Czechoslovakia, but also a number of items highlighting the positions of other [Communist] parties that share the Romanians’ point of view about the unity of the socialist countries and the Communist movement and about the date for convening a new conference of Communist and workers’ parties.

The CC Propaganda Department of the Moldavian Communist Party believes that this blatant violation of party discipline by Cde. V. P. Russu and other officials of the Ministry of Communications on such an important political issue deserves condemnation by the Bureau of the Moldavian Communist Party CC.

Head of the Department for Propaganda and Agitation of the CC of the Moldavian Communist Party

A. Konstantinov

[SOURCE: Arhiva Organizatiilor Social-Politice a Republicii Moldova (AOSPRM), Fond (F.) 51, Inventar (I.) 29, Dosar (D.) 49, Foaie (ff.) 41-42. Translated by Mark Kramer.]
DOCUMENT No. 2
Stenogram of a Session of the Bureau of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of Moldavia, 11 October 1968

TAKING PART:

CC Bureau Members Cdes. Antosiak, Bodiu, Diordica, Il’yashchenko, Steshov, Voronin

CC Bureau Candidate Member Cde. Sidorenko

Cde. Volosiuk
Cde. Konstantinov
Cde. Stepanov — department heads of the CP CC
Cde. Savochko
Cde. Pasikovskii
Cde. Malakhov
Cde. Gorsa — deputy department heads of the CP CC
Cde. Kondrat’ev

5. On the Violation of Party Discipline by the Minister of Communications of the Moldavian SSR, Cde. V. P. Russu

Cde. BODIUL: The decision of the CPSU CC says that insofar as materials of an anti-Soviet character are being published in Romanian newspapers and journals, USSR Glavlit is ordered to monitor Romanian publications and, if anti-Soviet materials should appear, to remove them from circulation. As you know, we decided to limit the circulation of Romanian newspapers in which undesirable materials are published, but unfortunately the Ministry of Communications did not uphold this decision.

(Report of Cde. Konstantinov)

Cde. BODIUL: Up to that point, communications officials had both propagated and distributed Romanian literature. It was then brought to your attention, Cde. Russu, that too much Romanian literature was being circulated. And this year a huge number [of people] had begun subscribing to Romanian newspapers! You were given an instruction to halt the circulation of Romanian newspapers. There’s a journalist law in Moscow, and do you really think the CC is not empowered? Are you somehow above it? Why are you not controlling the ministry?

Cde. RUSSU: This was in fact done from the time of the first conversation in 1966, when the circulation of Romanian periodicals and publications was widespread. In 1967 the volume of subscriptions to Romanian newspapers and journals was sharply reduced. The greatest possible reduction was carried out. The circulation was coordinated with the CC department. We reduced the number of issues to a fifteenth of what it had been at the time of the first conversation.

I traveled to the Ministry of Communications in Moscow. They did not want to apply this huge reduction. I linked up with the CPSU CC department, and, with the department of propaganda and agitation, I called the all-union Ministry of Communications.

Cde. BODIUL: There’s a USSR Minister [of Communications], Cde. Psurtsev, and you should have resolved all matters with him. How many issues of the newspapers are entering Moldavia?

Cde. RUSSU: 388 copies for professional purposes—“Scînteia”—48 copies and by retail trade some 90 copies. 5 copies to Ungeny, 2-3 copies to a camping-site, and several copies to the Soyuzpechat kiosk in the CC.

In August and September all issues of the newspapers were held back except for 20 copies designated for border points.

Cde. KONSTANTINOV: But the newspapers showed up in our hotel and at the airport, and they were selling them at the kiosks and in the Intourist hotel.

Cde. RUSSU: In connection with the long-anticipated events in Czechoslovakia, I was mobilized. We were in a difficult situation. We had no experience in this sort of thing. Since the end of the Great Patriotic War, we had never once conducted a training exercise. Several months before August, the designation of the battalion was changed. As a result, the battalion was deprived of its most important and vital asset. I was not in my office at the Ministry, since I conducted the work directly there. There was nowhere to deploy the equipment. I was in contact with Minsk, Moscow, and Kyiv. On 23 August the battalion was brought up to combat readiness. On the 24th, it was sent to Czechoslovakia to reestablish communications. I was preoccupied with the creation of this military formation.

On the 22nd, the first department reported to me that there was an urgent instruction from Moscow. I rode over there and received a ciphered telegram, which said that all [Czechoslovak] newspapers must be held back for two days and all journals for four days until a directive is received from Moscow. This was brought on by the events in Czechoslovakia.

On 22 August, when I was in my military unit, some soldiers said to me that a meeting was under way in Romania, and I listened in to a bit of the meeting where Ceausescu delivered his speech. I then told D. S. Cornovan that we must also hold back all Romanian newspapers. Events unfolded that way in the future. The deputy minister, Severinov, assumed leadership of the ministry. He reported that there was an instruction from the CC ordering newspapers and journals to be held back for two days.

But Severinov and Kucia decided to act in accordance with the instructions from Moscow, in accordance with the instructions of the USSR Ministry of Communications, which are issued at the behest of the CPSU CC.
During the first two to three days when the newspapers were held back, we accepted the participation of Glavlit. And then they said: “You have instructions from Moscow; you should act in accordance with these instructions.”

Cde. BODIUL: Who in the USSR Ministry of Communications reads Romanian newspapers? They issue their regulations on the basis of general instructions. With regard to Czechoslovakia, they perhaps gave a directive from the CPSU CC. But in Moldavia itself it was clearer which newspapers must be held back.

Cde. RUSSU: On 26 August, I received instructions to do the same with Romanian newspapers as I had been doing with Czechoslovak publications.

Cde. BODIUL: You report to your ministry how their actions are in conformity with our actions, which must be in accordance with instructions from the CPSU CC. We received consent and even instructions from the CPSU CC not to distribute Romanian newspapers on the 21st. If the all-union Ministry is interested and is following the materials, let them consult with the CPSU CC and the CC of the Moldavian Communist Party. What happened was a lack of coordination. And this happened because in the [all-union] ministry they don’t read Romanian newspapers.

Cde. IL’YASHCHENKO: You received instructions from the [Moldavian] CC, and even if you did not agree with them, you can disregard them only if you check with the CPSU CC. You received instructions from the CC of the Moldavian Communist Party and did not fulfill them. You instead acted on your own. You did not come and say that this is not in accord with the instructions of the CC of the Moldavian Communist party and the USSR Ministry of Communications. You say that people there are well-versed in politics. This is a very dangerous approach. This is a very dangerous approach when you place party organs against one another. This did enormous political damage.

Cde. RUSSU: I would like to say that I am very much guilty of this, but it was not through any design.

Cde. IL’YASHCHENKO: You distributed counterrevolutionary propaganda against the will of the CC of the Moldavian Communist Party. You distributed harmful propaganda, even though you must realize that it is forbidden to distribute it. Irrespective of the fact that you did a lot on this matter, you committed a serious political mistake in the process.

Cde. BODIUL: It is extremely easy to give a correct assessment of this matter. You disregarded the instructions you were given. The assessment by K. F. Il’yashchenko is completely correct.

Cde. STESHOV: I would say that this is due not only to a lack of control, but to a lack of supervision over your employees. They began distributing things, but the minister did not know about it; it was done without his knowledge.

Cde. BODIUL: You informed us about the penalties imposed against everyone, including the first deputy minister, and informed us about the sorts of measures you adopted. What’s at issue here are the interests of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union and our policy. The Romanian press features hostile items, but you approach it just as you would any old thing.

Cde. RUSSU: There are more than 400,000 radio receivers in the republic and nearly half a million televisions. The broadcasts are in all the major languages: Ukrainian, Moldavian, and Russian. We must take urgent measures for the accelerated creation of technical means to carry out counterpropaganda. Construction of the radio relay station from Kishinev to Kagul is going very poorly. It seems to me that help must be provided to the builders, who do not regard the project as an important matter.

Cde. BODIUL: The main thing is not the builders, but the project planners. Everything possible must now be done so that these facilities can be built. We must consider and adopt measures to this end. We must act more quickly in creating a zone and beginning construction of the facility.

Cde. RUSSU: We have to expedite the construction of the Kishinev-Kagul radio relay station. We need to have powerful means of communication.

Cde. BODIUL: To do that, we’ll have to come up with the money.

The formulation should be left as “for violations of party discipline, either to reprimand or to give a stern warning.”

Cde. IL’YASHCHENKO: This isn’t the first incident with Kucia. I’ve known him for many years.

Cde. KONSTANTINOV: He behaved outrageously when they began to explain it to him.

Cde. BODIUL: Kucia and others let Russu down. The proposal is to issue a stern warning to Russu.

Mark Kramer, a frequent contributor to the Bulletin, is the director of the Harvard Project on Cold War Studies and a senior associate at the Davis Center for Russian Studies, Harvard University.

1 The Soviet republic of Moldavia (and now the independent country of Moldova) should not be confused with the region of eastern Romania that is also known as Moldova. From 1945 on, the western border of Soviet Moldavia lay along the Prut River, and the eastern border lay along the Dniester River. The Romanian region of Moldova is bordered on the east by the Prut River and extends westward to the southern Carpathian mountains, covering the provinces of Botoşani, Iaşi, Vaslui, and Galaţi (from north to south).

2 See, in particular, Grey Hodnett and Peter J. Potichnyj,


Soviet perceptions of Romania’s opposition to the invasion can be discerned in a large number of documents, including “O pozitsii Rumunii k sobytiyam v Chekhoslovakii,” Report No. MB-4809/65 (Top Secret), 16 October 1968, from Vladimir Makashev, Deputy Secretary General of the Soviet foreign ministry, to the CPSU Secretariat, in RGANI, F. 5, Op. 339, Ll. 188-194; “Ob otnoshenii Rumunii k sobytiyam v Chekhoslovakii,” Report No. 1000 (Top Secret), 20 September 1968, from A. V. Basov, Soviet ambassador in Romania, to the CPSU Secretariat, in RGANI, F. 5, Op. 60, D. 339, Ll. 130-154; and “O nekotoryx problemakh v sovetsko-rumyiskix otnosheniakh v svete pozitsii zanyatych rukovodstvom RKP k sobytiyam v Chekhoslovakii,” Report No. 686 (Top Secret), 23 September 1968, from A. V. Basov, Soviet ambassador in Romania, in RGANI, F. 5, Op. 60, D. 339, Ll. 106-121. These three documents and many others in the Russian archives pertaining to Romania’s role during the 1968 crisis were “reclassified” (i.e., once again made secret) in April 1993 and are no longer accessible, but I translated all three (and several others) in early 1993 when I was poring over thousands of pages of documents about Soviet-Romanian relations in the 1960s. I plan to publish an annotated version of them along with a commentary in the next issue of the CWIHP Bulletin.

Mihai Retegan, 1968: Din primăvară pana în toamnă (Bucharest: Editura RAO, 1998), which also includes transcriptions of four key documents in an appendix. An English edition was recently published by the Center for Romanian Studies, based in Portland, Oregon. Valuable as Retegan’s book is, his analysis of a few crucial matters is severely limited by the unwillingness of the Romanian military and intelligence archives to declassify any documents pertaining to the military situation that confronted Romania on 21-24 August 1968 and the specific steps implemented by the Romanian authorities (as opposed to steps that were mentioned in public but were not actually carried out) to deal with the situation. When discussing these issues, Retegan had to rely exclusively on a paper prepared more than 25 years after the fact by the former chief of the Romanian General Staff, General Ion Gheorghe. Although Gheorghe was in an excellent position to know what was going on in August 1968, it is unclear how carefully his paper distinguishes between measures that were proposed and those that were actually implemented. It is also unclear how well his paper conveys the military situation that was actually confronting Romania at the time. In the absence of declassified military and intelligence documents from 1968, uncertainty about these matters will persist.


Romania’s decision to curb its attacks on the Soviet-led invasion was immediately picked up and welcomed by Soviet officials; see, for example, the sources adduced in footnote 8 supra.

Nicholas Dima, From Moldavía to Moldova: The Soviet-Romanian Territorial Dispute, 2nd ed. (Boulder: East European Quarterly Monographs, 1991), pp. 149-150. In 1940, the Soviet government annexed Bessarabia and Northern Bukovina and placed both of them under the jurisdiction of Soviet Moldavia. At the end of World War II, however, Northern Bukovina was incorporated into Soviet Ukraine, which also received smaller portions of territory from northern and southern Bessarabia (around Chernivtsi in the north and Izmail in the south) that were inhabited mainly by Ukrainians. The rest of Bessarabia was incorporated into Soviet Moldavia.

Translator’s Note: Ivan (Ioan) Ivanovich Bodiol was the First Secretary of the Moldavian CP CC.

Translator’s Note: Vasili (Vasile) Petrovich Russu had been serving as minister of communications in Moldavia since January 1966.

Translator’s Note: The reference here is to a speech delivered by Josef Smrkovsky, a senior member of the Presidium of the Czechoslovak Communist Party (KSČ), on 29 August 1968, two days after he and other senior KSČ officials had returned from Moscow. Smrkovsky had joined the KSČ First Secretary, Alexander Dubček, the Czechoslo-
vák prime minister, Oldřich Černík, and the Czechoslovak president, Ludvík Svoboda, in issuing a statement on the 27th appealing for public calm and pleading with Czechoslovak citizens to avoid steps that might precipitate a “national catastrophe.” That same day, Svoboda and Dubček delivered radio addresses to the nation, and on the 28th Černík did the same. Smrkovský’s speech to the nation on 29 August was more detailed and more candid than the addresses by Svoboda, Dubček, and Černík in conveying the harshness of the Moscow agreements and the severity of the constraints imposed by the “cruel reality of the Warsaw Pact’s military occupation of our country.” Although Smrkovský, like the others, made no mention of the Moscow Protocol (the secret agreement requiring the Czechoslovak leaders to abandon key reforms), he did explicitly cite many of the steps that the Czechoslovak leadership would have to take to comply with the Protocol. The somber and even downcast tone of his speech dispelled any illusions people might have had that things would eventually return to the way they had been before 20 August. The full text of Smrkovský’s speech, as well as the speeches by Svoboda, Dubček, and Černík, are all in the Institute for History, Sedm prázdných dnů: 21.-27. srpen 1968: Dokumentace (Prague: ČSAD, September 1968), pp. 380-407.


Translator’s Note: Actually, Ceaușescu did not deliver his speech in Cluj until 30 August. The text therefore could not have been published in Scînteia on 29 August. It appeared instead in the 31 August issue. See “Cuvîntarea tovarîșului Nicolae Ceaușescu la marea adunare popula ră din orășul Cluj.” Scînteia (Bucharest), 31 August 1968, p. 5. The speech, delivered at a gathering of Romanian intellectuals, had been scheduled well before the invasion, but it took on much greater significance in light of the military action.

Translator’s Note: This last point refers to an International Communist Conference scheduled for November 1968, which was designed as a follow-up to the World Communist Conference of November 1960. Preparations for the 1968 conference had been under way for many months, but the invasion of Czechoslovakia provoked widespread objections by non-ruling Communist parties, which induced Soviet leaders to postpone the world gathering of Communist parties for seven months. The conference was finally convened in June 1969, with 78 parties in attendance.

Translator’s Note: In addition to Bodiul, these officials included Georgii (Gheorghe) Fedorovich Antosiap, the first deputy chairman of the Moldavian Council of Ministers (responsible for economic affairs); Aleksandr (Alexandru) Filippovich Diordica, chairman of the Moldavian Council of Ministers; Kirill’’ Fyodorovich Il’ yashchenko, chairman of the Presidium of the Moldavian Supreme Soviet; Boris Aleksandrovich Steshov, Moldavian CP CC Secretary (responsible for industry); and Pyotr (Petre) Vasil’ evich Voronin.

Translator’s Note: Sergei Stepanovich Sidorenko was the chairman of the official Moldavian trade unions.

Translator’s Note: The officials listed here were: Vasilii (Vasile) Mikhailovich Volosu, head of the Moldavian CP CC Administrative Organs Department; Anton Sidorovich Konstantinov, head of the Moldavian CP CC Propaganda and Agitation Department; Georgii (Gheorghe) Afanas’evich Stepanov, head of the Moldavian CC Agriculture Department; Boris Nikolaevich Savochko, head of the Moldavian CP CC Department for Industry and Transportation; and Aleksandr (Alexandru) Ignat’evich Pasikovskii, head of the Moldavian CP CC General Department.

Translator’s Note: The officials listed here were: Vladimir Nikolaevich Malakhov, deputy head of the Moldavian CP CC Propaganda and Agitation Department; Georgii (Gheorghe) Ivanovich Gorsa, deputy head of the Moldavian CP CC Organizational-Party Work Department; and Vasilii (Vasile) Fedorovich Kondrat’ev, deputy head of the Moldavian CP CC Department for Industry and Transportation.

Translator’s Note: Glavlit was the widely-used nickname of the main organ responsible for enforcing censorship in the Soviet Union, the State Directorate for the Protection of State Secrets in the Press, which was reestablished in August 1966 as a body directly accountable to the USSR Council of Ministers. Glavlit was originally set up by the Bolsheviks in 1922 and existed under various names thereafter. From August 1963 to August 1966, the agency (then known as the State Directorate for the Protection of Military and State Secrets in the Press) was subordinated to the USSR Committee on the Press. A decree issued by the USSR Council of Ministers on 18 August 1966 restored Glavlit to its previous status as a constituent body of the Council of Ministers. See “Postanovlenie Soveta Ministrov SSSR o Glavnom upravleni po okhrane gosudarstvennykh tain v pechati pri Sovete Ministrov SSSR (Glavlit),” 18 August 1966, in Gosudarstvennyi Arkhiv Rossiiiskii Federatsii (GARF), F. R-9425, Op. 2, D. 432, L. 1.

Translator’s Note: See the Document No. 1 above.

Translator’s Note: The reference to a “journalist law in Moscow” is somewhat peculiar. There was no comprehensive press law in the Soviet Union until June 1990: “Zakon SSSR o pechat’ i drugikh sredstvakh massovoi informatsii,” 12 June 1990, in Vedomosti Verkhovnogo Soveta SSSR (Moscow), No. 26 (1990), pp. 492-508. Earlier on, several laws and provisions of the Soviet constitution relating to the press were enforced by Glavlit, the Committee on the Press, and other agencies, but a comprehensive law on the press was never adopted, despite considerable discussion of the idea in 1966 and 1967. The monthly journal Zhurnalista, edited by E. V. Yakovlev, which began publication in January 1967 after its predecessor, Sovetskaya pechat’, fell into official disfavor, was
especially active in 1967 in promoting consideration of the possibility of a press law. On this point, see Mark W. Hopkins, *Mass Media in the Soviet Union* (New York: Pegasus, 1970), p. 133. The proposal for a press law ran into difficulty, however, after the Soviet Committee on State Security (KGB) forcibly cracked down on a group of over 100 intellectuals and scholars in November 1967 for allegedly preparing a draft press law that would have abolished censorship. Soon thereafter, in April 1968, E. V. Yakovlev was removed as editor-in-chief of Zhurnalizist and accused of “committing serious mistakes,” “exercising unsatisfactory leadership,” and “frequently publishing ideologically weak material.” For declassified materials about these events, see “TsK KPSS,” 14 November 1967 (Secret), from Yu. V. Andropov, head of the KGB, plus the accompanying draft “Proekt zakona o rasprostranenii otyaskani i poluchenii informati,” in Arkhiv Prezidenta Rossiisloki Federatsii (APRF), F. 3, Op. 78, D. 8, Ll. 46-56; and “Postanovlenie Sekretariata TsK KPSS: O sereznikh nedostatkakh v rabote zhurnala ‘Zhurnalizist,’” St No. 50/5s (Top Secret), 26 April 1968, in RGANI, F. 4, Op. 19, D. 101, L. 11. The idea of a press law was thus largely stillborn. In the absence of such a law, Glavlit, the Committee on the Press, the KGB, and other bodies responsible for overseeing the press acted in accordance with guidelines set forth by the CPSU Politburo, the CPSU Secretariat, and the USSR Council of Ministers. Various problems that arose in 1967 and especially 1968 (in part because of ferment connected with the Prague Spring) led to the adoption in January 1969 of stringent, new guidelines laid out in a CPSU Secretariat directive: “Postanovlenie Sekretariata TsK KPSS: O povyshenii otvetsvennosti rukovoditelei organov, pechati, radio, televizii, kinematografii, uchrezhdenii kul’tury i iskusstva za ideino-politicheskii uroven’ publikuemymykh materialov i repertuara,” St No. 64/1s (Top Secret), 7 January 1969, in RGANI, F. 4, Op. 19, D. 131, Ll. 2-6. For published materials bearing on control of the press during this period, see A. Z. Okorokov et al., ed., *O partiinoi i sovetskoj pechati, radioveshchanii i televizii: Sbornik dokumentov i materialov* (Moscow: Mysl’, 1972), esp. pp. 357-372.

29 Translator’s Note: The phrase “CC department” is shorthand for the “CPSU CC Department Liaison with Communist and Workers’ Parties of Socialist Countries” (Otdeł TsK KPSS po svyazym s kommunisticheskimi i rabochimi partiym sotsialisticheskikh stran), which oversaw relations among Communist states. Because of the department’s long and unwieldy name, it was often referred to as simply the “CPSU CC department” or the ‘CC department.’

30 Translator’s Note: Bodiu is referring here to Nikolai Demyanovich Psurtsev, who had been serving as Soviet minister of communications since March 1948.

31 Translator’s Note: Ungenia is a Moldovan city roughly 75-80 kilometers to the west of Kishinev (Chișinău), along the Romanian border.

32 Translator’s Note: Russu’s comments here are interesting insofar as they show how many reservists were being mobilized in the leadup to the invasion.

33 Translator’s Note: Severinov was the Moldavian first deputy minister of communications.

34 Translator’s Note: Severinov was identified in the previous footnote. Konstantin (Constantin) Aleksandrovich Kucia was head of the foreign communications section of the Moldavian ministry of communications.

35 Translator’s Note: The population of Soviet Moldavia at this time, according to official Soviet census data, consisted of roughly 16 percent Ukrainians, 10-11 percent Russians, 66 percent “Moldavians” (ethnic Romanians), and small percentages of other ethnic groups (officially referred to as “cohabiting nationalities”). Russian was the most widely used language in the republic, especially in urban areas, but Ukrainian and so-called Moldavian were also permitted. The supposedly distinct language of “Moldavian” was purely a Soviet artifact. It was identical to Romanian except that it used the Cyrillic alphabet instead of the Latin.

36 Translator’s Note: The comments here about the lack of progress in countering Romanian radio and television broadcasts are especially important in light of the concerns that Bodiu had been expressing since 1965-66 about “hostile” Romanian broadcasts.

37 Translator’s Note: Kagul is a small city in the far southwest of Moldova along the Romanian border, roughly 200 kilometers south of Kishinev (Chișinău).

---

**CWIHP SEMINARS**

**15 March 2001** “Reassessing Tet,” with Don Oberdorfer (SAIS), Harry McPherson (former senior White House staff member under President Johnson); Bui Diem (former South Vietnamese ambassador to the United States); John Prados (National Security Archive).
The end of the Cold War has released a flood of new archival materials and memoirs both in the former Communist world and in Western countries. Declassified documentation and new first-hand accounts have enabled scholars to gain a much better understanding of some of the key events of the past century.

The Journal of Cold War Studies, now in its second year, is the only peer-reviewed journal that exclusively features research based on these new sources. Some articles appearing in the journal reevaluate historical events and themes in light of new documentary evidence. Others apply rigorous empirical analysis to current theoretical debates about decision-making, deterrence, bureaucratic politics, institutional formation, bargaining, diplomacy, foreign policy conduct, and international relations.

Edited at the Harvard Project on Cold War Studies, and featuring a distinguished editorial board, the Journal of Cold War Studies is an essential resource for historians, political scientists, international relations specialists, and others seeking a better understanding of the Cold War.

Articles Featured in the First Six Issues

Politics, Power and U.S. Policy in Iran, 1950-53
Francis J. Glavin

A few Unrevealed Mysteries about Stalin and the Cold War in Europe: A Modest Agenda for Research
Adam B. Ulam

Mobilizing Europe’s Stateless: America’s Plan for a Cold War Army
James Jay Carafano

Rollback, Liberation, Containment or Inaction? U.S. Policy and Eastern Europe in the 1950s
László Borhi

Could More Force Have Saved the Soviet System?
Walter C. Clemens, Jr.

“To Resolve the Ukrainian Problem Once and for All”: The Ethnic Cleansing of Ukrainians in Poland, 1943-1947
Timothy Snyder

The Road to the Austrian State Treaty
Warren W. Williams

Eisenhower and the Berlin Problem, 1953-54
David G. Coleman

Sino-Soviet Relations and the Origins of the Korean War: Stalin’s Strategic Goals in the Far East
Shen Zhihua

Western Cold War Broadcasting
James Critchlow

Further Information on the Journal Can Be Obtained from:
The Editors
1737 Cambridge Street, Harvard University
Cambridge, MA 02138
http://www.fas.harvard.edu

For Subscription Information:
MIT Press Journals
Five Cambridge Center
Cambridge, MA 02138
Tel: (617) 253-2889
Fax: (617) 577-1545
E-mail: journals-orders@mit.edu
The Sino-Soviet Alliance: New Publications

By David Wolff

The hottest conflicts of the Cold War took place in Asia and CWIHP has played an important role in revealing the internal dynamics of the Communist camp in that region. Whether Stalin’s decision to give Kim Il Sung the green light for aggressive unification in Korea or the Chinese foot-dragging that weighed against Soviet-American efforts to negotiate peace in Vietnam, the Sino-Soviet military relationship remains a core issue. The first volume in the CWIHP Book Series, *Brothers in Arms* gathered together essays by a team of international historians to evaluate the evidence declassified from Russian and Chinese archives since the late 1980s and to pinpoint the remaining lacunae in our knowledge of this crucial relationship. Two years later, a new publication adds both significant fresh documentation and analysis.

Tatiana Zazerskaia makes use of previously unexamined materials from the Central Committee of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union (CC CPSU), the Soviet Foreign Ministry, the Comintern successor institutions and others to write the most comprehensive study to date of Soviet specialists in China and their contribution to the development of the Chinese military. Both in its extensive use of Russian archival sources and supplementary use of Chinese published document and memoir collections, *Soviet Specialists* represents a very significant step forward in our knowledge of this issue as previously covered in Sergei Goncharenko’s and Deborah Kaple’s contributions to the *Brothers in Arms* collection. Although the MIG wing that accompanied Mao back from Moscow might be seen as a symbolic gesture, Stalin’s way of saving the Chairman’s “face” after a bruising summit, the continuing high percentages (80%) of Soviet aid to China that were spent on military-related imports, advice and factories make clear the centrality of the military dimension.

Although until 1953 this was largely about the Korean war (making it difficult to separate aid to China from aid to Korea), thereafter it reflected the PRC’s January 1955 decision to become self-reliant in high-technology, including nuclear matters. Zazerskaia’s book is especially strong on the pivotal years of the post-Stalin interregnum, when the Chinese played the tensions in the Russian leadership to obtain state-of-the-art technology. Li Fuchun’s 15 January 1956 request to Khrushchev for Soviet aid in nuclear physics is our earliest detailed documentation from Soviet archives on the fraternal development of nuclear technology. It seems likely that it was the product of a meeting of over 200 Chinese scientists held in Beijing in December 1955. Interestingly (and probably not coincidentally), this was the first anniversary of the PRC Central Secretariat meeting at which Chinese Politburo members “jubilantly” played with a Geiger counter and a uranium sample, top scientists inducted powerful comrades into the hall of atomic secrets, and the Chairman himself raised a glass of fiery *maotai* to announce “that China would immediately devote major efforts to developing atomic energy research.”

Zazerskaia’s monograph also argues persuasively against the ideological view that Soviet aid was “given” to China. She presents considerable evidence of the economic calculations behind each Soviet act of “generosity.” For example, the $300 million credit authorized by Stalin during Mao’s visit to Moscow was applied retroactively to the goods and weapons used by the Chinese Communists in the 1940s to win their civil war and everything was calculated at “world market prices,” a distinct disadvantage for the Chinese. The lists of strategic commodities to be extracted from the PRC in return for deliveries of military goods leave little room to wonder why Chinese Communist Party (CCP) leaders considered the relationship neo-colonial in nature. The discussion of the infamous withdrawal of Soviet experts from China by Khrushchev adds documentary detail to our previous knowledge of this key moment. It is less clear why the USSR stepped up aid to China’s missile program at the same time that nuclear cooperation was being terminated. Possibly, this was meant as a consolation of sorts. Or maybe the Soviets still thought they could still learn something useful from Chinese returnees previously employed in US laboratories.

**DOCUMENT**

To CC CPSU SECRETARY
Com. N.S. KHRUSHCHEV

Per instructions of the CC CCP, I am reporting to You regarding the expected completion of the first five-year plan and the preliminarily formulation of the basic tasks and indicators (*pokazatel’*) for the projects of the second and third five-year economic development plans of the People’s Republic of China.

We are requesting that the CC CPSU study our preliminary projections.

After the final elaboration of the draft of the PRC’s second five-year economic development plan this April, we will present our plan to the CC CPSU and will request that the CC CPSU look over and comment on this plan.

We are also requesting that the CC CPSU examine our requests and provide appropriate aid on the matters presented in the attached report.
With communist greetings,
Li Fuchun

15 January 1956

[The memorandum is followed by four attachments. The first is a list of installations being built with Soviet aid. The second is a list of top secret (sovershennno sekretno) installations. The third is a memo on the coal industry and the fourth follows in full.]

Top Secret

Attachment No. 4

PRELIMINARY PROGRAM FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF AN ATOMIC ENERGY INDUSTRY

In order to quickly and efficiently organize and develop an atomic energy industry in the People’s Republic of China, in order to further develop nuclear physics research, and also in order to apply atomic energy broadly in the economy, we are asking the CC CPSU to discuss the possibility of helping China to organize an atomic energy industry and elaborate a long-term development plan for the production of nuclear energy and to provide us with the following aid in this area:

1. We ask [you] to discuss the possibility of helping China in the construction of one or two modern atomic industry installations, providing us with comprehensive aid in preparing plans, supplying equipment, construction-assembly and provision of raw material [i.e., nuclear fuel, trans.].

2. Assuming that the atomic industry installations mentioned above will be considered, we ask [you] to discuss whether it is possible in 1956 to send a group of Soviet specialists-advisors in nuclear technology to lead and aid China in the elaboration of a comprehensive plan for the development of an atomic energy industry.

3. We ask [you] to accept three groups of Chinese scientific and technical workers for short-term study in the Soviet Union in 1956:
   a. to accept various technical workers corresponding to needs generated by the tasks in point one [above] for study in the Soviet Union of various technical areas of the atomic energy industry. We ask the appropriate Soviet organization to help us to designate concretely the number of people and their specialties;
   b. to accept fifty or more Chinese scientific-technical workers for studies in the Soviet Union regarding the use of radioactive isotopes (including their use for industry, agriculture, defense, biology, medicine, etc.)

   c. to accept a team of scientific-technical specialists sent by China for study and participation in project development (proektnaia rabota) for a powerful focused accelerator (fokistrovannyi uskortel’). We also ask permission to send from China one or two specialists to the Moscow scientific-research institute for the physics of warm nuclei (teplovye iadra) in order to take part in scientific research.

   1. We ask the Soviet government to help our country:
      to create a central laboratory for radioactive isotopes in the physics institute of the Chinese Academy of Sciences; to create two laboratories [each] (po dve laboratorii) for radioactive isotopes within the Ministry of Heavy Industry and the Ministry of Health; to create one laboratory [each] for radioactive isotopes in the first and second Ministries of Machine-Building and in the Ministry of Agriculture; We ask the Soviet Union to provide multi-faceted aid in planning the above-mentioned eight laboratories, their provision with equipment and necessary instruments as well as the appropriate radioactive isotopes and scientific-technical materials, [i.e., documentation]. We also ask that specialists be sent to guide the research in these laboratories.

   [Source: TsKhSD (Center for the Storage of Contemporary Documentation), f.5, op.30, d.164, ll. 7a, 48-9; obtained by Tatiana Zazerskaia and translated from Russian by David Wolff]

David Wolff is a former CWIHP Director and is currently as well as Visiting Professor of East Asian History at the University of Chicago. He is the author of To the Harbin Station: The Liberal Alternative in Russian Manchuria, 1898-1914 (Stanford, 1999).
Policymakers and the Cold War’s End: Micro and Macro Assessments of Contingency

By Richard K. Herrman and Richard Ned Lebow

The Mershon Center (Ohio University) hosted a conference on the “End of the Cold War” on 15-17 October 1999. This conference was made possible by a generous grant from the Carnegie Corporation of New York. Participants addressed important decisions and events leading to the end of the Cold War that transpired between 1988-1992. Special attention was devoted to arms control negotiations and regional conflicts in the recognition that arms control agreements and Soviet disengagement from Afghanistan were concrete turning points in the Cold War’s end. The conference brought together important policy-makers from the Gorbachev and Bush administrations (in particular the heads of Soviet and American arms control delegations and senior advisors on regional conflicts) as well as interested scholars1. The National Security Archive prepared a briefing book of newly-released documents germane to the discussion.

The October conference was a follow-on to the conference the Mershon Center organized in Moscow in June which focused on domestic opposition to Gorbachev’s foreign policy. This conference in turn, built on an earlier conference held at Brown University, co-sponsored by the Watson Institute and the Mershon Center in May 1998. That meeting had featured senior policy-makers from the Reagan administration and the Gorbachev administration who played central roles in the 1983-1988 period.

The conference in Columbus began with a discussion of the relationship between military security and foreign policy strategy. Introductory comments by Raymond Garthoff (The Brookings Institution) were followed by testimonies by Vitaly Kataev (former secretary of Gorbachev’s Big Five), and Robert Blackwell (former U.S. National Intelligence Officer for the Soviet Union). The discussion outlined the leading role arms control was seen to play in negotiations between the United States and the Soviet Union in the mid-1980s. Both American and Russian participants agreed that arms control was considered a central arena in which to pursue East-West détente, and, at the same time, as an issue that mobilized large and powerful vested interests on both sides, making progress in this arena difficult. The discussion turned rather quickly to the broader questions of confidence-building measures in Europe and the CSBM talks in Stockholm. Ambassador Lynn Hansen (former Head of the U.S. delegation to the CSBM talks) and Ambassador Oleg Grinevsky (former Head of the USSR’s CSBM delegation) reported in some detail both their initial suspicions about the purpose of the endeavor and described the evolution in their thinking as they came to see prospects for meaningful agreements.

Much of the early discussion in the meeting concentrated on the motives behind Soviet and American interest in arms control and confidence-building measures. Several Russian participants addressed in the detail the argument that Moscow was anxious to travel down these avenues in order to lower the budgetary burden or redirect resources. They argued that economic motives were, in fact, secondary, and that in important cases disarmament cost more than the continued acquisition of arms. The participants then spent considerable time analyzing the domestic political maneuvering inside the Kremlin and White House as heads of the delegations worked to build consensus, or at least prevailing political support, in favor of agreeing to positions that the other side would accept. Particularly interesting in this regard was the crucial role attributed to Gorbachev in overcoming objections from the Soviet military and his decision to have senior Soviet military leaders, like Marshal Akhromeev, make key proposals to the West themselves, both as a signal to the West and, more importantly, as a signal to domestic Soviet audiences.

Most of the first afternoon of the conference was occupied with discussing the importance of regional conflicts in general and the Gulf War in particular. Ambassador Dennis Ross opened the discussion by reporting that there had been an important evolution in American thinking about regional conflicts. In the Reagan period, Ross reported, the prevailing American notion was to make it clear to Moscow that the Soviet Union’s involvement in regional conflicts would have real costs. With the changes Gorbachev was calling for, the Soviet withdrawal from Afghanistan, and the development of a positive working relationship between U.S. Secretary of State James Baker and Soviet Foreign Minister Edward Shevardnadze, Ross recalled, thinking about regional conflicts in Washington began to change, at least among the group closest to Baker. In essence, the change was to use regional conflicts as the leading edge to test what was possible in the emerging new period. Regional conflicts were not burdened with the same bureaucratic constraints as arms control and had been at the forefront of issues leading to the demise of the previous era of détente. According to Ross, Baker making progress on making regional conflicts a key area in which to see whether the Soviet “new thinking” would translate into concrete achievements, a role traditionally played by arms control.

Although no single regional conflict became a make-or-break turning point, the Gulf War came very close to this. Ross related in detail the U.S.-Soviet negotiations...
regarding the Gulf War, including both his own and Baker’s talks in Moscow as well as their meetings with Soviet Foreign Minister (and later premier) Yevgeny Primakov and other Soviet officials as the crisis wore on and the war ensued. Ambassador Anatoly Adamishin (former Soviet Deputy Foreign Minister responsible for regional conflicts) in turn captured the change in thinking that was underway in Moscow with regard to regional conflicts in general and to the Gulf War in particular. In his view, the process of change had reasonably deep roots and involved as much a change in personnel, or at least in who was being listened to, as it involved a change in thinking of any particular person. Adamishin, and several other Russian participants, argued that Moscow’s relationship with Iraq had been much more complex than often thought in the West and did not accept the characterization of Iraq as a Soviet ally in the traditional sense.

On the second day of the conference discussions returned to the issue of arms control and dealt with both the nuclear arms and conventional forces negotiations. Ambassador Richard Burt (head of the U.S. delegation to the Strategic Arms Reduction Talks - START) began by describing the evolution in American thinking about nuclear arms control that occurred between the middle Reagan years and the middle Bush years. Burt explained that nuclear arms control in the early period of the Bush administration was constrained by an ongoing policy review and important bureaucratic divisions. He explained how this was eventually overcome and progress made.

Yuri Nazarkin (former Head of the Soviet delegation to START) recounted the Soviet side of the negotiation and emphasized the importance of his relationship with Burt and the determination of Shevardnadze to go forward. Nazarkin spend considerable time, as did Vitaly Kataev, described the political opposition within the Kremlin to the concessions Moscow was making. They also noted the importance of the shifting domestic balance in this regard and the significance of Shevardnadze’s resignation.

Ambassador James Woolsey (former head of the U.S. delegation to Conventional Forces Europe (CFE) negotiations in Vienna and former Director of Central Intelligence) explained how he had entered the Conventional Force Talks negotiations with what he perceived to be a mandate from the president to make progress quickly if possible. Woolsey discussed how potential bureaucratic obstacles on the U.S. side were overcome, in part by his decision to include in the U.S. delegation key military representatives and in part by a set of personal contacts with the four key administration decision-makers on this issue. Oleg Grinevsky (head of the Soviet delegation to the CFE talks) explained why the Soviet military wanted to exclude certain forces by designating them as naval forces. Woolsey recounted his confrontation with Soviet Defense Minister Dmitri Yazov regarding this matter, and both Woolsey and Grinevsky explained how the agreement was eventually put back on track.

The final two sessions involved discussing possible counterfactual pasts that could have occurred or almost occurred and what happened to prevent history from unfolding in that other direction. We spent considerable time using the posing of counterfactual questions to highlight underlying causal assumptions and to test through thought experiments the plausibility of the explanations we were accepting.

Following the Mershon Center conference, the fourth and final conference took place in the Bavarian Alps, at the former Wittelsbach spa in Wildbad Kreuth. Organized by the Geschwister-Scholl-Institut of the University of Munich in cooperation with the Mershon Center and the Watson Institute, this meeting examined the European role in ending the Cold War. It featured former German, French, British, and Soviet policy-makers along with the Mershon project scholars and experts affiliated with German universities. The discussion centered on the decisions within NATO leading up to German unification and the extent to which other outcomes were possible.

Perhaps the most striking finding of the Mershon and Munich conferences is in the realm of psychological dynamics, and the support the retrospective judgment of policy-makers provides for the “certainty of hindsight” bias. Baruch Fischhoff has demonstrated that “outcome knowledge” affects our understanding of the past by making it difficult for us to recall that we were once unsure about what was going to happen. Events deemed improbable by experts (e.g., peace between Egypt and Israel, the end of the Cold War), are often considered “over-determined” and all but inevitable after they have occurred.²

Looking back on events, most of the policymakers, independently of their country or ideology, see the end of the Cold War, the unification of Germany, and the collapse of the Soviet Union as more or less inevitable. But almost all of them confessed that they were surprised by these events as they unfolded, even incredulous. The contradiction in their belief systems was also made apparent by almost every policymaker’s insistence that the outcome of any decision or negotiation in which they personally participated was highly contingent. In the conference discussions and over drinks or coffee, they told amusing stories of how clever tactics, the nature of the personal relationship between them and their opposites, or just sheer coincidence, frequently played a decisive role in shaping the outcome of negotiations. Some policymakers—including a few who characterized the end of the Cold War, the unification of Germany and the dissolution of the Soviet Union as inevitable—were nevertheless responsive to suggestions that components of the process might have been different. There was widespread agreement at the Wildbad Kreuth conference that there was nothing foreordained about the Two-plus-Four format for negotiations over the future of Germany. When pushed, some of the Russian, American and German policymakers present at this conference agreed that a different format, say one that involved more European
countries as participants, might well have resulted in a different outcome given the widespread opposition to unification by Germany’s neighbors. While there was general agreement that Gorbachev had little freedom to maneuver on the German question at the time of the Two- plus-Four talks, several Soviet officials suggested that he might have been able to negotiate a better deal if he broached the issue in 1987.

The experimental literature in psychology indicates that counterfactual scenarios can be used to increase receptivity to contingency. Counterfactuals can assist people in retrieving and making explicit their massive but largely latent uncertainty about historical junctures, that is to recognize that they once thought, perhaps correctly, that events could easily have taken a different turn. The proposed correctives hence uses one cognitive bias to reduce the effect of another. Ross, Lepper, Strack and Steinmetz exploited the tendency of people to inflate the perceived likelihood of vivid scenarios to make them more responsive to contingency. People they presented with scenarios describing possible life histories of post-therapy patients evaluated these possibilities as more likely than did members of the control group who were not given the scenarios. This effect persisted even when all the participants in the experiment were told that the post-therapy scenarios were entirely hypothetical.1 Philip E. Tetlock and one of the authors conducted a series of experiments to test the extent to which counterfactual “unpacking” leads foreign policy experts to upgrade the contingency of international crises. In the first experiment, one group of experts was asked to assess the inevitability of the Cuban Missile Crisis. A second group was asked the same questions, but given three junctures at which the course of the crisis might have taken a different turn. A third group was given the same three junctures, and three arguments for why each of them was plausible. Judgments of contingency varied in proportion to the degree of counterfactual unpacking.2 The discussions in Columbus and Bavaria provide anecdotal support for these findings, and suggest the value of conducting more focused, scientific experiments with policymakers as participants.

Are there any provisional conclusions we might draw about the certainty of hindsight bias and the Cold War? First, the discovery of the bias should come as no surprise. Policymakers and scholars routinely upgrade the probability of major events once they have occurred. World War I and the Middle East peace accord are cases in point.3 Second, we would expect policy-makers to stress the contingency of events in which they were personally involved. By showing how they made a difference, they buttress their self-esteem. Further research might make policy-makers face this contradiction between their micro and macro beliefs. Would they invoke complicated arguments to attempt to reconcile the contradiction? Or, would they alter one component of their belief system to bring it in line with the other? And if so, which belief will the change? Will there be systematic differences in how policy-makers respond as a function of their personalities, political beliefs, nationalities or past and present positions? These are fascinating subjects for future research. In the interim, one thing is certain: we must be wary of accepting at face value the judgments and reconstructions policymakers offer of the past.

Richard K. Herrmann is associate director of the Mershon Center at The Ohio State University. Richard N. Lebow is the director of the Mershon Center.

1 Although the conference revolved around the oral history provided by the former policy-makers, each discussion was framed by a scholar engaged in doing research on the end of the Cold War. Policy-makers were not asked to give speeches; to the contrary, they were asked to react to opening questions and to engage in an open discussion with the scholars who had been doing archival and analytical research. The scholars participating in the discussion included: George Breslauer (University of California, Berkeley), Matthew Evangelista (Cornell University), Raymond Garthoff (The Brookings Institute), Richard Herrmann and Ned Lebow (Ohio State), Jacques Levesque (Université de Laval), Janice Stein (University of Toronto), and William Wohlfforth (Georgetown University). William Burr (National Security Archive) and Christian Ostermann (Cold War International History Project) took part in the conference. The briefing book of documents is available through the NSA. The Russian and English language transcripts for both the Moscow and Columbus conferences are posted on the Mershon home page (http://www.mershon.ohio-state.edu/) and are also available from the National Security Archive.


4 The first of these experiments, involving alternative outcomes for the Cuban Missile Crisis, is described in an as yet unpublished paper, Philip E. Tetlock and Richard Ned Lebow, “Poking Counterfactual Holes in Covering Laws: Alternative Histories of the Cuban Missile Crisis.”

5 This point is made by Steven Weber, “Prediction and the Middle East Peace Process,” *Security Studies* 6 (Summer 1997), p. 196.

**New Cold War Group at George Washington University**

We are pleased to announce the creation of a new group, based at George Washington University, to promote research and scholarship on the Cold War. GWCW will encourage multi-lingual, multi-disciplinary, multi-national explorations of the Cold War experience and hopes to serve as a meeting place for scholars working in fields ranging from US diplomatic history to various area studies fields to political science, sociology, journalism, economics, and security and cultural studies. With close ties to the Cold War International History Project and the National Security Archive as well as proximity to U.S. national archives and the Library of Congress, GWCW will organize activities to foster the growth of an intellectual community at GWU and in the Washington, DC, area dedicated to studying various aspects of the Cold War. This will include gathering not only faculty and interested scholars from various departments at GWU and Washington-area universities and think-tanks, but also graduate students pursuing research topics relevant to the Cold War, for regular and special symposia, workshops, and conferences. In addition to working closely with CWIHP and the National Security Archive, GWCW also seeks to cooperate and collaborate with like-minded organizations and efforts beyond the Washington-area—such as Cold War-studies groups formed in recent years at the University of California at Santa Barbara, Harvard University, the London School of Economics, and in Beijing, Budapest, and Moscow—to pool resources and expertise in order to organize activities.

We welcome ideas and suggestions for activities and collaboration, as well as your names and contact information (both e-mail and surface) for mailing list purposes. Core members of the group include GWU Profs. Jim Goldgeier (Director, Institute for European, Russian, and Eurasian Studies) of the Political Science Department, and Jim Hershberg and Hope Harrison at the History Department; Tom Blanton, Malcolm Byrne, and Vlad Zubok at the National Security Archive; and Christian Ostermann at the Cold War International History Project. We look forward to hearing from you and working with you in the future.

James Goldgeier (jimg@gwu.edu), James Hershberg (jhershb@gwu.edu), and Hope Harrison (hopeharr@gwu.edu)
Conference on Cold War Endgame

[Editor’s Note: The following is a brief description of the Conference, “Cold War Endgame,” held at Princeton University’s Woodrow Wilson School on 29-30 March, 1996. The conference was sponsored by the John Foster Dulles Program for the Study of Leadership in International Affairs, Princeton University, and the James A. Baker III Institute for Public Policy, Rice University. Excerpts from the conference transcript were published as “Cold War Endgame,” Fred I. Greenstein and William C. Wohlforth eds., (Princeton, N.J.: Center of International Studies Monograph Number 10, 1997). A book based on the conference transcript is under review. For information, contact William C. Wohlforth, School of Foreign Service, Georgetown University (tel: 202-687-5071; fax: 202-687-5116; e-mail: wohlforw@gunet.georgetown.edu).]

By Fred I. Greenstein and William C. Wohlforth

On 29-30 March 1996, Princeton University’s Woodrow Wilson School hosted nine former top officials of the US and Soviet governments who played critical roles in the tumultuous diplomacy at the end of the Cold War. The conference on the “Cold War Endgame” followed an earlier Princeton conference on the period from 1983 to 1989 (the transcript of which was published in Witnesses to the End of the Cold War, ed. W. C. Wohlforth [Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1996]). Led by former US Secretary of State James A. Baker III and former Soviet Foreign Minister Alexander Bessmertnykh, the conferees spent two days analyzing and “reliving” the major events affecting world politics from 1989 to 1992: the forging of a new political relationship between the incoming Bush administration and the Gorbachev team in the winter and spring of 1989; the collapse of Communism in Europe in the fall of that year; the new relationship that developed between Bush and Gorbachev at the shipboard summit in Malta in December; the genesis and management of the “two-plus-four” talks on Germany in early 1990; collaboration between the superpowers against Iraq’s occupation of Kuwait, which was cemented by the two leaders at the Helsinki summit in September 1990; and the dramatic domestic developments in the Soviet Union that culminated in the August 1991 coup and the collapse of the Soviet state four months later.

On the American side, Secretary Baker was accompanied by National Security Advisor Gen. Brent Scowcroft; Counselor of the State Department Robert Zoellick; Ambassador to the Soviet Union Jack F. Matlock, Jr.; and National Security Council staffer Phillip Zelikow. Minister Bessmertnykh was joined by Anatoly S. Chernyaev, personal advisor on foreign affairs to Gorbachev; Sergei Tarasenko, principal foreign policy assistant to Foreign Minister Eduard Shevardnadze; and Pavel Palazchenko, special assistant and interpreter to Gorbachev. Journalist and author Don Oberdorfer—who covered the events under consideration as chief diplomatic correspondent of the Washington Post and chronicled them in From the Cold War to a New Era—moderated the discussion.

The National Security Archive’s Vladislav Zubok prepared a briefing book for the conference that featured a number of noteworthy documents, including Ambassador Matlock’s “long telegrams” from Moscow in February 1989, declassified CIA intelligence assessments of Gorbachev’s domestic situation and Soviet stability (September 1989) and the Soviet Union’s prospects for survival in the face of the nationalist challenge (April 1991); and previously unpublished extracts from Anatoly Chernyaev’s diary (courtesy of the Gorbachev Foundation) concerning the critical politburo discussion in January 1990 of the “4+2” formula on German unification. In addition, Chernyaev read extensive diary extracts that recorded Gorbachev’s remarks on Saddam Hussein and the last minute negotiations to avert a US-led ground assault on Iraqi forces in Kuwait.

The discussions were extraordinarily frank. While many of these policy veterans have written memoirs, at the conference they were able to argue with each other, prod each other’s memories, compare recollections, and debate policy options and possible “missed opportunities” as they relived the most important years of their careers. The conferees discussed both domestic politics and grand strategy; they debated underlying causes of events as well as the details of statecraft; they recalled specific meetings and decisions as well as the general perceptions that underlay decision-making on both sides. And the conference covered the critical years that bridged the end of the Cold War and the new post-Cold War epoch. The transcript of the conference—which will be published in a forthcoming book—thus provides important context for the memoirs that have already been published and for documents that have yet to be released.

James Baker and Anatoly Chernyaev opened the conference with brief presentations on the causes of the Cold War’s end and the Soviet collapse. The opening remarks were followed by four roundtable discussions. The first session examined the recasting of the US-Soviet relationship following the Bush Administration’s inauguration and Gorbachev’s acceleration of reforms in Soviet domestic and foreign policy. It illustrated both the perceptual gap between the two sides that still existed in this period and the complex relationship between international interactions and domestic coalitions. The fundamental question was, why were the Americans so
much more uncertain of Soviet intentions than vice versa? Scowcroft “plead guilty” to having been the administration’s chief skeptic while Chernyeav explained why the Gorbachev team maintained its “trust” in the Americans even as Washington stalled the relationship in early 1989 with a prolonged “strategic review.”

The perceptual gap and the complex links between domestic and foreign policy were dramatically illustrated by the two sides’ different reactions to Gorbachev’s offer of a “third zero” on short-range nuclear forces, which he conveyed to Baker during the secretary of state’s visit to Moscow in May 1989. The former Soviet officials insisted that this offer was not intended to sow discord in the NATO alliance, while the Americans assumed that it was precisely such a classic Cold War ploy. It temporarily set back Baker’s efforts to reengage with Moscow and strengthened the administration’s harder-line wing. The perception in Washington was that the administration’s chief advocate of improved relations had gone to Moscow only to be duped by the wily Gorbachev. “I loved it!” Scowcroft admitted.

The collapse of communism in Eastern Europe and the reunification of Germany were discussed in the second session. The participants debated the extent to which unification-in-NATO was a consequence of superior Western statecraft or the unintended outcome of a chaotic and uncontrolled process, with the former Soviet officials tending to argue in favor of the latter view. Chernyaev detailed the reasoning behind Gorbachev’s acquiescence to American and German terms while Tarasenko explained Shevardnadze’s resistance to the “2+4” formula. Palazchenko and Bessmertnykh described the assessments and expectations that lay behind Moscow’s decision not to form a coalition with Paris and London to prevent or slow unification. The Soviet policy veterans also offered numerous glimpses into the details of the Soviet decision-making process in this period. They contended that Gorbachev and Shevardnadze played a complex strategic game designed to stave off the polarization of Soviet domestic politics—a game that required unorthodox decision-making procedures. According to Tarasenko, for example, a major problem confronting Shevardnadze was the ingrained conservatism of the foreign ministry’s German experts. As a result, bureaucratic strategems had to be employed to circumvent them and present them with faits accomplis. Such tactics help account for the erratic character of Soviet policy during this period.

The third session dealing with US-Soviet cooperation in countering Iraq’s aggression against Kuwait and restarting the peace process in the Middle East generated the most new information. We learned how Shevardnadze—against the views of most of his ministry and with only partial advance approval from Gorbachev—agreed to a joint statement with Baker that condemned Iraq’s occupation of Kuwait and endorsed an arms embargo: how Moscow came to support UN Security Council resolutions on Iraq; how Iraq special envoy Yevgeny Primakov and Shevardinadze battled for Gorbachev’s allegiance; and how Bessmertnykh single-handedly revised a Soviet plan presented to Iraqi foreign minister Tariq Aziz by Gorbachev and Primakov that might have derailed US-Soviet cooperation. Chernyaev detailed Gorbachev’s frenetic efforts to negotiate a diplomatic solution, quoting extensively from transcripts of Gorbachev’s talks with Aziz. It is quite clear from the conference discussions that US-Soviet cooperation was fragile and contradictory. Gorbachev desperately wanted to avoid the bombardment of Iraq and the eventual ground assault on Iraqi-occupied Kuwait. Primakov continually kept alive in Gorbachev the hope that he could elicit concessions from Saddam Hussein. Had Primakov succeeded, the conference discussions leave little doubt that a major rift in US-Soviet relations would have followed.

The final session directly addressed the crucial backdrop to all the preceding diplomacy of the Cold War’s end: Soviet domestic politics and the mounting dual crises of the communist system and the Soviet empire. The conferees discussed efforts by Bush, Baker and Matlock to warn Gorbachev of an impending coup. Since many of the principals were present, the conference provided an opportunity to clarify the flow and eventual fate of information during this unusual episode. The discussants also explored the collapse of Gorbachev’s support and the final crisis and dissolution of the Soviet Union. They discussed the extent to which the policies and actions of the United States and its allies played a part in these events. There was a sharp debate on the question of whether the Soviet Union could have been saved in some form, and whether US policy could have done more to support Soviet reforms. Baker made a strong case for the US policy of supporting Gorbachev to the end, but responding conservatively to the Soviet leader’s pleas for financial support. By contrast, even Moscow’s most ardent Westernizers were disappointed by the extent of the aid the United States and its allies were able or willing to extend. As Chernyaev noted, “my feeling is that eventually the Group of 7 did not come through and it did not help Gorbachev the way it could have helped Gorbachev at a crucial moment.”

As the Cold War recedes into memory it is all too easy to forget how potentially apocalyptic it was. It stagers the imagination that a conflict that could have ended civilized life on the planet rapidly drew to a close in the second half of the 1980s and the two years leading up to the implosion of the Soviet Union in December 1991. How that transpired is very much a human story of leaders engaged in the responsible pursuit of conflict resolution. The testimony of the participants in the Princeton conference not only adds to the historical record, but also provides instructive insights into conflict resolution in general.
Fred I. Greenstein is Professor of Politics and Director of the John Foster Dulles Program for the Study of Leadership in International Affairs at Princeton University.

William Wohlforth is Assistant Professor of International Affairs in the Edmund A. Walsh School of Foreign Service, Georgetown University.


CPUSA Records Microfilm: The Russian State Archive of Social and Political History (RGASPI) has delivered to Library of Congress representatives in Moscow the final set of microfilm of its Communist Party USA (CPUSA) records, fond 515. The first set, delivered last fall, contained 177,098 frames spanning the origins of the American Communist movement to 1929. This final set contains 258,067 frames and covers the period from 1929 to 1944 (fond 515 has no post-1944 material). Most of the total of 435,165 frames contain a single page from the original RGASPI collection. After the film reaches the Library of Congress a positive copy will be made for research use and the negative original retained for preservation. The positive copy of the first set, organized on 144 reels, is already available for research in the Manuscript Reading Room of the Library of Congress. John Earl Haynes, the Manuscript Division’s 20th century political historian, said that it is hoped that the positive copy of the final set will be available in fall 2001. It will be several years before a detailed finding aid is available, but Haynes is preparing a temporary finding aid that will provide the date (year) and a limited indication of the type of material (political bureau minutes, trade union secretariat, district and local party reports, agit-prop department records, foreign language and ethnic affiliate reports, and so forth) found on each reel. The microfilming costs, in excess of $100,000, were paid for by the Library of Congress’s James B. Wilbur Fund for Foreign Copying and by a gift from John W. Kluge.

Library of Congress Joins Incomka: The Library of Congress has become a partner in the International Computerization of the Comintern Archives (Incomka) Project. Incomka is a project of the International Council on Archives and its partners are the Russian State Archive of Social and Political History (RGASPI), the Russian Archival Service (Rosarchive), the federal archives of Germany, the national archives of France, the federal archives of Switzerland, and the ministry of culture of Spain. Although not a full partner, the Soros Foundation has provided some financial support for the project. (Incomka is currently seeking additional partners to assist with the cost of the project.) John Van Oudenaren, chief of the Library of Congress’s European Division, is the Library’s representative on the Incomka governing board while John Earl Haynes of the Library’s Manuscript Division serves on Incomka’s historians committee.

Incomka has two parts. First, Incomka will digitize the finding aids (more than 25,000 pages) to Communist International collections at RGASPI into a text-searchable data base. When completed, a researcher will be able to make a rapid computer search of all of the Comintern finding aids (the opisi) for specific persons, organizations, and topics under a variety of search options in either Russian or English. Second, Incomka will digitize as images 5% (one million pages) of the most used and historically significant documents of the Comintern. The project will scan entire sections (opisi) of Comintern documents, not selected individual items. The opisi to be scanned in their entirety, chosen by a committee of historians, include the records of the Comintern’s political secretariat, the secretariats of individual members of the Executive Committee of the Comintern (ECCI), all of its regional (lander) secretariats (Anglo-American, Latin American, Balkan, Polish-Baltic, Scandinavian, Central European, and Eastern), as well as the records of various Comintern commissions and affiliates. When the project is finished, each partner will receive a complete set of the software, the data base, and the digitized images for placement at an institution in their home country. The software is a version of “ArchiDOC,” an electronic archival descriptive system first developed for the archive of Spain’s Council on the Indies. Among the scanned documents researchers will be able to call up a particular folder or file (delo) of a particular collection (opis) and examine the images of all of the documents in that file.

Phone: 202-707-1089, Fax: 202-707-6336, E-mail: jhay@loc.gov
INTERNATIONAL CONFERENCE

COLD WAR IN THE BALKANS:
HISTORY AND CONSEQUENCES

18 - 20 MAY 2000
PLOVDIV
BULGARIA

PROGRAM

SPONSORS:


ORGANIZERS

Cold War Research Group - Bulgaria
(Bulgarian Association of Military History)
Sofia

Cold War International History Project
(Woodrow Wilson International Center)
Washington D.C.

18 May 2000

9:30-11:00 a.m. Panel 1: The Superpowers and the Balkans in the Early Cold War Years
11.30 a.m.-1:30 p.m. Panel 2: Balkan Diplomacy
3:00-5:00 p.m. Panel 3: The Balkans and the Cold War: The Military Issues

19 May 2000

9:00 a.m.-12:30 p.m. Panel 4: Intelligence Issues: A Critical Oral History Roundtable
2–5:30 p.m. Panel 5: The Cold War in the Balkans: Ethnic and Religious Factors

20 May 2000

9:00-10:15 a.m. Panel 6: Repression and Opposition
10.30–12.30 Panel 7: Critical Oral History Roundtable “Repression and Opposition”
2-5 p.m. Panel 8: The Year 1989 in the Balkans: The Transition to Democracy
New Evidence on China, Southeast Asia and the Vietnam War: Conference Report

By Priscilla Roberts

On 11-12 January 2000, the University of Hong Kong and the Cold War International History Project held the second in a planned series of collaborative international meetings on the Cold War. A first conference, organized by the Cold War International History Project and the University of Hong Kong, on “The Cold War in Asia” had been held in January 1996. Over two dozen scholars from China, Vietnam, Russia, the United States, Israel, and Europe gathered at the University of Hong Kong to present and discuss their most recent research findings on “China, Southeast Asia, and the Vietnam War.” Within the University of Hong Kong, the organizers were the Centre of Asian Studies, the Centre of American Studies, and the Department of History. Financial sponsorship was provided by the John D. and Catherine T. MacArthur Foundation (Chicago); the Smith Richardson Foundation (Westport, CT); and the Louis Cha Fund for East-West Studies of the University of Hong Kong.

An overriding theme of the conference was the diversity which characterized the Communist camp during the Vietnam war period, a marked break with the old Western stereotype, so prominent during the war itself, of a monolithic Communist bloc. In the final session, Chen Jian (University of Virginia) commented specifically on the degree to which intra-Communist bloc relations and alliance dynamics thematically dominated the conference. The conference was marked by papers, based on archival evidence from Chinese, American, British, Russian, and Central and East European archives which brought out the existence of major divisions within the People’s Republic of China and between Chinese Communist leaders and their counterparts in other Southeast Asian countries. With sometimes heated and passionate debates between Chinese and Vietnamese scholars as to the merits of various decisions on Vietnam, the discussion was highly stimulating. Two leading Vietnamese scholars, Luu Doan Huynh and Doan Van Thang, (Institute of International Relations, Hanoi) who acted as commentators added a genuine Vietnamese perspective to the discussions which would otherwise have been lacking. The presence of prominent Chinese scholars, one of whom was privy to many Foreign Office deliberations during the later part of the Vietnam War, also gave discussions an immediacy and personal flavor.

A stimulating roundtable discussion of sources, archives, and methodology, featuring European and mainland Chinese scholars, some based in the People’s Republic of China and some at U.S. academic institutions, began the conference. Notable was the ingenuity with which Chinese scholars, often still denied access to central records, are utilizing provincial archives, railway administration archives, and similar materials in the quest to illuminate their own country’s past. The juxtaposition of these sources with American, British, and Soviet-bloc records, and Vietnamese oral histories, is enabling historians to begin to reach a far richer and deeper understanding of the Vietnam war’s internal and international dynamics and context, and of the often conflicting pressures that ideology and the pursuit of individual countries’ perceived national interests exerted.

The initial session, “The Path to Confrontation,” focused largely upon what is sometimes called “The First Indochina War” from 1945 to 1954. Ilya Gaiduk (Institute of World History, Russian Academy of Science, Moscow) and Tao Wenzhao (Institute of American Studies, Chinese Academy of Social Sciences, Beijing [CASS]) focused on their countries’ respective policies at the 1954 Geneva conference. Both brought out the degree to which Ho Chi Minh’s two major Communist patrons pressured him to accept a solution partitioning Vietnam and to leave Cambodia and Laos under separate, non-communist governments. Charles Cogan (Harvard University) concentrated on the growing United States identification with the government of South Vietnam from 1954 to 1956. Fredrik Logevall (University of California, Santa Barbara) argued that Charles de Gaulle’s recognition of and negotiations with the People’s Republic of China in 1964 suggested the possibility existed of reaching a settlement which would have neutralized Vietnam.

The second and third sessions, “China and the Escalation of the Vietnam War” and “Chinese Aid to Vietnam,” dealt particularly with Chinese policy during the war years, drawing heavily on a variety of Chinese sources. Yang Kuising (Institute of Modern History, CASS) provided an overview of Mao Zedong’s changing views on the Vietnam conflict, and their relationship to China’s own domestic and international concerns, the Sino-Soviet split, and to Mao’s personal preoccupation with revolution. Li Xiangqian (CCP’s Central Committee Party History Research Center) suggested that, even before the Tonkin Gulf Incident, the Sino-Soviet split and fears of Soviet hostility had led Mao to shift the national emphasis from economic development to defense. Niu Jun (Institute of American Studies, CASS) charted China’s growing concern with the American threat in the post-Tonkin Gulf period, how the 1968 Soviet invasion of Czechoslovakia finally convinced Chinese leaders that the Soviets posed a greater threat to them than the Americans did. Noam Kochavi’s paper concentrated on United States policy during the period, especially on the vexed question as to whether in the early 1960s President John F. Kennedy contemplated a
rapprochement with China. Kochavi argued that, though the evidence on Kennedy’s intentions is decidedly inconclusive, it must in any case be doubted whether at this particular juncture an ideology-conscious Mao would have sanctioned such a move.

Three papers dealt in detail with Chinese aid to Vietnam during the war, including the controversial issue of whether China deliberately delayed the trans-shipping of Soviet aid shipments to Vietnam. Drawing on Railway Administration archives, Li Danhui (Contemporary China Institute, CASS) suggested that any such delays were bureaucratic rather than political in nature. She also pointed out that, although China pressured Vietnam to make a peace settlement in the 1969-1973 period, Chinese aid to Vietnam simultaneously increased, in the expectation that this would facilitate a later North Vietnamese takeover of the south. Qu Aiguo (Academy of Military History) provided an overview of Chinese military assistance from 1958 to 1973, arguing that the contribution of both supplies and military “volunteer” personnel was substantial. Zhang Shuguang (University of Maryland) suggested that the Chinese contribution to Vietnam was relatively limited and, in a theme taken up in later papers, that Chinese policy was relatively cautious and designed to avoid any full-scale war with the United States.

The session “Negotiations and Missed Opportunities” dealt with the often tortuous mediation and peace negotiation efforts of the mid-1960s. James Hershberg (George Washington University) presented a lengthy account of the abortive “Marigold” peace initiative of 1966, an East-bloc effort to end the war, brokered by Poland, which may have been derailed by a crucial miscommunication among the various negotiators. Robert Brigham (Vassar College) described the 1967 Pennsylvania peace initiative, whose failure helped to precipitate next year’s Tet offensive, by convincing the North Vietnamese that it would take further military pressure to persuade the United States to offer terms acceptable to them. Qu Xing (Beijing Foreign Affairs College) made it clear that Chinese leaders shared this perspective, and were in fact disappointed and skeptical when in May 1968—giving them only two hours’ notice—the North Vietnamese opened peace negotiations with the United States. In further revelations as to intra-Communist bloc divisions, he also mentioned that in 1971 the North Vietnamese were less than happy when Kissinger visited Beijing and the Chinese began to pressure them to reach a peace settlement.

A session on “The Vietnam War in Its Regional Context” gave rise to some of the most animated discussion of an always lively conference. Stein Toennesson (University of Oslo) and Christopher Goscha (Paris) presented a translation of a memoir written in 1979, just before the Sino-Vietnamese War, by the leading North Vietnamese Communist party official Le Duan. Often highly critical of his one-time fraternal Chinese communist allies, the manuscript provoked strong reactions from both Chinese and Vietnamese scholars as to its reliability and accuracy and the light it threw on Sino-Vietnamese relations. Mark Bradley (University of Wisconsin) made extensive use of both film and Vietnamese archives to provide fascinating insights into Vietnamese memories of the war and its impact. As with other wars in other countries, it seems that many Vietnamese are now eager either simply to forget the war or to derive whatever collateral benefits or advantages may accrue to them from it. Qiang Zhai (Auburn University) presented an overview of Sino-Cambodian relations, suggesting that, when dealing with Cambodia, Chinese officials were prepared to subordinate ideological loyalties to their desire to maintain a Cambodian government of any complexion so long as it was not dominated by Vietnam.

A final session, “The Vietnam War and Triangular Relations,” put the war in the broader context of international great power relations. Giving a revisionist view of Lyndon B. Johnson, Thomas A. Schwartz (Vanderbilt University) suggested that the president’s major foreign policy preoccupation was to accomplish an arms control agreement with the Soviet Union, which defeat in Vietnam might have jeopardized. Chen Jian and James Hershberg gave a stimulating account of secret Chinese signalling to the United States in 1965, deliberately designed to limit the war’s scope and thereby prevent the Vietnam war from escalating into a major superpower confrontation, as had occurred with the Korean war in 1950. Drawing on a wide variety of archival sources, Jeffrey Kimball (Miami University of Ohio) suggested that Chinese initiatives were as important as those of the United States in the reopening of Sino-American relations, and that while the United States played the China card against the Soviet Union, China likewise played the U.S. card against the Soviet Union, and the North Vietnamese played all three big powers against each other for their own benefit. In the conference’s final paper, Shen Zhihua (Beijing Center for Oriental History Research) directly raised the question of whether China, in its eagerness for rapprochement with the United States, betrayed North Vietnamese interests. He suggested that, although the United States was eager to persuade China to pressure North Vietnam to make peace, in fact China also exerted pressure on Saigon and the United States to do so and to accept terms which would facilitate an eventual North Vietnamese takeover of the south.

Intense discussions, reportedly continuing into the small hours in the University of Hong Kong’s guesthouse, marked the entire conference, making it clear that numerous issues relating to the Vietnam war remain as controversial among Chinese and Vietnamese scholars as they are to their American and European counterparts.

This conference and its January 1996 predecessor will be only the first and second of a series of such gatherings. Several themes for potential future meetings have already been suggested, among them: Southeast Asian communism during the Cold War; Sino-Indian relations in the 1950s and 1960s; and the United States opening to China,
1969-1973. Efforts to build on various intra-university initiatives and establish an Asian branch of the Cold War International History Project at the University of Hong Kong are also currently under way. It is hoped that these will include, among other things, the establishment of an Asian Cold War website and the provision of Cold War fellowships for scholars from around the region.

Priscilla Roberts is a Lecturer in History and Director of the Centre of American Studies of the University of Hong Kong. She received her undergraduate and doctoral degrees from King’s College, Cambridge. She has published numerous articles on twentieth-century international diplomacy and is the author of The Cold War (2000), has edited Sino-American Relations Since 1900 (1991) and The Chinese Diaries of David K. E. Bruce (forthcoming), and is assistant editor of An Encyclopedia of the Korean War.


Stay Updated on Cold War History with the CWIHP Website

http://cwihp.si.edu

Visit the CWIHP website for:

- CWIHP Bulletin and Working Papers—download at no charge 24-7
- Upcoming CWIHP events—Washington seminars; working groups; international conferences
- Hundreds of translated former Communist world documents—search the “Virtual Archive”
- CWIHP e-dossiers—special document accessions to the CWIHP Archive
- CWIHP press releases
- CWIHP conference reports
- Information on new CWIHP documentation initiatives
- Interviews with Cold War historians
- Registering for the CWIHP mailing list and listserv
- Information on CWIHP links, internship, fellowships, advisory committee and staff


Update on the Stasi Archives

By Gary Bruce

I. Background

In expectation of vast amounts of documentation, East Germany’s Ministry for State Security (Ministerium für Staatssicherheit) built its central archive in East Berlin out of reinforced concrete.\(^1\) Within the walls of this archive, and the regional MfS archives, lie over 102 miles of documents.\(^2\) Although the amount of archival material is enormous, it would have been even greater had the MfS’ successor, the Office for National Security (Amt für Nationale Sicherheit - AfNS), not destroyed considerable amounts of the holdings in the fall of 1989. Ironically, the order by Wolfgang Schwanitz, the last head of the AfNS, on 7 December 1989 to systematically destroy incriminating material hastened the demise of the secret police.\(^3\) Smoke billowing out of the chimneys of MfS regional offices incited citizens to storm the buildings and secure the documents.\(^4\) The security of the archival material was also a primary motivation for the several thousand citizens who stormed the MfS headquarters in East Berlin on 15 January 1990.\(^5\)

On the same day of the storming of the headquarters, a “citizens’ committee” was created to oversee the dismantling of the AfNS.\(^6\) Present right of access to the MfS documents is primarily a result of pressure from this committee, and other East German grass roots movements, for full access to the files. This pressure forced the East German parliament, which had been freely elected in March 1990, to pass a law on 24 August 1990 requiring that MfS records remain on the territory of the GDR, rather than be transferred to the West German federal archives in Koblenz, as foreseen in the draft unification treaty, where they would have been subject to stricter West German classification rules.\(^7\) The draft unification treaty was subsequently adjusted to reflect that MfS files would remain on GDR territory. Furthermore, an addendum to the treaty stated that a future all-German parliament would address other issues concerning the files, such as the conditions of access to MfS files for the victims of the secret police, and the ban on file use by the new German secret service.\(^8\) The German Unification Treaty of 1990 created a special body to administer the MfS files called the “Special Commissioner of the Federal Government for the Files of the former State Security Service” (Sonderbeauftragte für die Unterlagen des ehemaligen Staatssicherheitsdienstes) under the leadership of Rostock pastor Joachim Gauck.\(^9\) The use of MfS files was codified in the “Law on the Files of the State Security Service of the former German Democratic Republic” (Gesetz über die Unterlagen des Staatssicherheitsdienstes der ehemaligen Deutschen Demokratischen Republik, or simply Stasi-Unterlagen-Gesetz) of 20 December 1991. This law came into force on 1 January 1992.

II. Holdings

The central MfS archives contain two broad categories of documents: personal files, and files relating to the administration of the MfS (Sachachten). The personal files, which make up 80 percent of the archival holdings, consist of records on approximately four million East Germans and two million West Germans.\(^10\) Due to privacy considerations, these documents are only accessible to those individuals personally affected, or to researchers who have obtained permission from those affected for use of their files.\(^11\) In general, these files deal solely with the conduct of certain individuals. The remaining 20 percent of MfS files will be of greater interest to historians of the GDR, for these documents provide more information on GDR society, the functioning of the MfS, and its place within the state apparatus.\(^12\)

The documents of three record groups of the Sachachten are particularly noteworthy: the “documentation section” (Dokumentenstelle), the Secretariat of the Minister (Sekretariat des Ministers - SdM), and the Central Evaluation and Information Group (Zentrale Auswertungs- und Informationsgruppe -ZAIG.) The “documentation section” contains a collection of instructions, directives, guidelines and other similar orders from the MfS leadership, as well as a series of documents from the Ministry of the Interior and the Ministry for National Defense.\(^13\) These documents provide detail on the operational conduct of the MfS and insight into its internal divisions and organization. Documents in this group cover a wide range of topics, from relatively straightforward orders for securing May Day festivities in the GDR, to detailed instructions regarding the recruitment of informants, to often 40-50 page long directives outlining operations against particular targets.

The documents in the “Secretariat of the Minister” record group are critical to the understanding of the hierarchy of the MfS and shifting priorities for the organization. These documents cover the period from 1945 to 1989 and contain, among other items, the protocols of conferences of the MfS leadership, the Kollegium sessions from 1954 to 1989, and other meetings of the MfS leadership.\(^14\) Because of the lack of information on the foreign espionage branch of the MfS, this record group will be of considerable interest to researchers dealing with the GDR’s foreign espionage, for Markus Wolf’s comments occupy a prominent position in the discussions of the MfS leadership. These documents are also important for tracing the careers of the leading figures in the MfS. They do not, however, contain much information relating to developments within the Socialist Unity Party.\(^15\)
The “Secretariat of the Minister” documents often provide insight into GDR society through the speeches of the various department heads on the situation in their jurisdiction, but they do not provide the detail found in documents of the Central Evaluation and Information Group. The ZAIG collected and evaluated information from unofficial informants from the general population on the situation in the GDR, and prepared a summary and analysis for the leadership of the MfS, the Party, and the government. Furthermore, this branch was responsible for ensuring that the leadership plans were carried out at the lower levels of the MfS. This record group contains enormous documentation on popular opinion towards developments in the GDR, especially for the 1970s and 1980s. Because the ZAIG was not founded until the mid-1950s, researchers who are interested in MfS evaluation of the popular mood prior to that date will have to turn to the files of the ZAIG predecessor, the Central Information Group (Zentrale Informationsgruppe.) The reports on the population on which the Central Information Group based its analysis are contained in a general record group called the Allgemeine Sachablage. The files of the ZAIG and its forerunner are especially useful in determining the popular perception of the SED and its politics, and therefore researchers dealing with opposition and resistance in East Germany will have to consider these sources.

III. Limitations

It is, of course, the responsibility of each researcher to judge the value of MfS documents for their own topics. A few general words about the limitations of the documents, and the archives themselves, are nevertheless in order. The extent to which the MfS documents were deficient in reflecting actual developments in GDR society should be kept in mind. On the citizens’ movement (Bürgerbewegung) of the 1980s, for example, the MfS documents are important because the movement itself did not leave much written material and there is little information on the movement in the archives of the SED. Yet one would be unwise to accept MfS documents as an accurate reflection of opposition in the 1980s. In the spring of 1989, the MfS reported approximately 150 oppositional groups with an active membership of 2,500 and a further 5,000 who were sympathetic to the groups or passive supporters. However, present estimates suggest that there were at least 325 oppositional groups, and between 10,000 and 15,000 people who were actively involved with the groups. Historians interested in gaining insight into GDR society would be advised to consult other sources in addition to the MfS files, such as the police records, files of the non-Marxist parties, SED reports, church files, or the records of the Free German Trade Union.

There are certain subjects for which, due to several reasons, MfS files are unavailable. There is little documentation on the foreign espionage branch of the MfS because of the widespread destruction of documents that took place in the fall of 1989. It should be noted, however, that it is by no means clear how much of this documentation survived, be it in eastern Germany or Washington. The recent discovery of a data base of HVA informants and a catalogue of their reports (the so-called “Sira” data base for System, Information, Recherche der Aufklärung), and the corresponding revelation that CIA-held Stasi files acquired after 1989 hold a key to deciphering the code names, are testimony to the above points. There is also little material on the role of the KGB in the MfS in the 1950s. Due to classification, there are a number of files that remain closed to researchers, including files relating to supranational organizations and foreign countries, counter-intelligence, terrorism, and secret West German matters. Much material still remains inaccessible because of the chaotic state in which the archives were left. Roughly one third of archival material has yet to be catalogued.

The “unofficial classification” taking place in the archive also poses a barrier to researchers. External researchers are not guaranteed the same complete access to non-classified materials as the researchers of the internal research branch (Abteilung Bildung und Forschung). What is worse, external researchers are usually unaware of this practice because they are not informed that information is being withheld and, because of the manner in which the archive operates (outlined below), are not able to verify for themselves what documentation should be available. This unacceptable practice likely has its roots in the territorialism of the internal research division. A much-needed breakdown of the early organization of the MfS which has been produced by the BStU, for example, is for the exclusive use of the in-house researchers.

Apart from limitations of the holdings, the procedure for processing a research application also poses certain limitations for researchers. After a researcher has applied and received permission to use the archives—which is presently a process of between 1 1/2 and 2 years—the researcher is invited to the archives to discuss his/her topic with a Sachbearbeiter. The Sachbearbeiter then commissions a search for relevant material. Once material has been located, the researcher is invited back to the archives to see the material. Because there are no finding aids, the researcher is entirely dependent on the Sachbearbeiter and their instructions to the locators for retrieval of information. The dependence on the Sachbearbeiter is a drawback for researchers, as Sachbearbeiter often have little knowledge of the topic at hand, nor are they always aware of the most important archival holdings on the subject. This deficiency in the archives is largely due to the inefficient manner in which research applications are assigned to Sachbearbeiter. Topics are assigned to Sachbearbeiter based on the Sachbearbeiter’s general area of responsibility, such as “Border Issues,” with little regard for periodization. As a result, each Sachbearbeiter handles an enormous range of topics from all eras of the MfS that fall loosely under their jurisdiction, and, to be fair, they cannot be expected to...
provide a thorough treatment of the application. This problem is compounded by the clear lack of cooperation between the division of the archives responsible for external researchers, and the internal research division. Sachbearbeiter are too often unaware of the research projects being carried out by their colleagues in the research division and thus are unable to take advantage of their colleagues’ knowledge of archival holdings. There is, however, usually little difficulty in retrieving material if the researcher already has the archival call number.

IV. Present research

The research division of the archives has already published a series of valuable documentation on and analyses of the MfS.29 At present, the research division continues to research its main project, the MfS-Handbuch, which will provide a detailed history of the institution from its beginning until 1990 once completed. Several installments of the MfS-Handbuch have already been published.30 Other projects underway include “Women in the MfS,” “The prison system of the GDR under the influence of the Ministry for State Security,” and “The Influence of the MfS on the Human Rights Debate in the GDR.” Researchers interested in the latest research projects being carried out by the internal research division should consult Aktuelles aus der DDR-Forschung, available on-line at http://www.mzes.uni-mannheim.de/ddr-forschung/Projekt.html. The forth official update produced by the BStU (4. Tätigkeitsbericht) appeared in 1999.

Gary Bruce teaches history at St. Thomas University. His book, Resistance with the People: Resistance in Eastern Germany 1945-55 is due out in July 2001 from Westview Press.

NEW RUSSIAN, CHINESE, KOREAN AND EUROPEAN EVIDENCE ON THE KOREAN WAR

21 June 2000

Woodrow Wilson International Center for Scholars
Washington, D.C.

Sponsored by
The Cold War International History Project
(Woodrow Wilson International Center for Scholars),
The Korea Society (New York),
and the
Asia Program
(Woodrow Wilson International Center for Scholars)

9:00 AM Breakfast and Registration
9:30 AM Opening and Welcome Remarks (Warren Cohen, Robert Hathaway)
9:45 AM New Russian and Eastern European Evidence on the Korean War

CHAIR: Nicholas Eberstadt (American Enterprise Institute)

PRESENTATIONS:
Kathryn Weathersby (CWIHP): “New Evidence on Stalin and the Korean War”
Mark O’Neill (Florida State University): “The Soviet Air Force in the Korean War”

Discussion

11:15 AM New Chinese and Korean Evidence on the Korean War

CHAIR: Warren Cohen (University of Maryland—Baltimore)

PRESENTATIONS:
Zhai Qiang (Auburn University): “Mao Zedong and the Korean War”
William Stueck (University of Georgia): “Moving Beyond Origins: Korean War Revisionism and the New Evidence from Russian and Chinese Archives”
Fred Beck (Falls Church, VA): “A North Korean War Memoir”

COMMENT: Hyuh In-Taek (Korea University, Seoul)

Discussion
Western Intelligence Gathering and the Division of German Science

By Paul Maddrell

The three documents below shed light on two neglected themes of Cold War history: first, how scientists returning to the German Democratic Republic (GDR) in the 1950s were bribed and flattered to become members of its privileged nomenklatura, and second, which of the scientists who refused these privileges and became valuable to Western intelligence services, particularly those of the United States and Britain. The reports depict one aspect of the division of Germany in the 1950s: the division of its scientific community, and its significant consequences for intelligence-gathering in the two Germanies. Scientists who returned to East Germany in the years 1950-58 from compulsory work in the Soviet Union promised to be of value to the GDR authorities for the contribution they could make to its scientific progress; they were of great interest to the intelligence services of Britain and the United States because they could provide much sought-after information on the military-industrial complex of the USSR. Some fled to the West soon after their return to East Germany, either by arrangement with a Western intelligence service or on their own initiative; some, for one reason or another, threw in their lot with the Socialist Unity Party (SED) and some (generally the less important scientists) were allowed to go West. Others, who stayed in the GDR, may have been recruited by Western intelligence services as “agents-in-place” in important research institutes, factories and ministries. Their controllers were particularly interested in any connections between these institutions and institutes, factories and ministries in the USSR itself.

Loyalty and how to buy it is the dominant theme of the first report. Dated 31 December 1954, the report was written in anticipation of the return to East Germany in 1955 of the most important of the atomic scientists taken by force to the Soviet Union in 1945. The SED was eager to keep in the GDR those scientists, engineers and technicians who had been employed on atomic tasks in the Soviet Union. The well-informed Soviets (referred to in the report with the characteristic SED term “die Freunde” — “our Friends”) provided its officials with information on the returning men and women. Both Soviet and East German officials examined the returning scientists and their background closely, looking for sympathy towards Communism, affection for the Soviet Union, and a lack of ties to the West, all of which would help to prevent them from going West as soon as they found themselves on German soil. Equally useful to the Party were flaws in the character of each scientific worker. Financial greed and a need for admiration from others (Geltungsbedürfnis) would lay the target open to bribery and flattery, activities at which the nomenklatura state excelled. Both failings were rightly detected in abundance in Baron Manfred von Ardenne, who is discussed in the first report below. The SED’s officials saw it would be worthwhile to make a show of admiration for von Ardenne, and Ulbricht made sure to send a personal representative, Fritz Zeiler, to greet him when he arrived in Frankfurt-an-der-Oder three months later. Zeiler’s report to Ulbricht on the encounter is the second document below. Zeiler was an appropriate choice to meet von Ardenne, as he was the department chief in the SED’s Central Committee responsible for economic management. In his autobiography, von Ardenne mistakenly remembers his name as Eichler.

Just as the SED waited expectantly for the return of scientists it saw as likely to be useful to the development of science in the fledgling GDR, the CIA, British Intelligence and the CIA-controlled Gehlen Organization also prized these people for their value to intelligence. Thus, on the other side of the Berlin sectoral divide, the Western intelligence services also waited for the returnees. The East German Ministry of State Security [Ministerium für Staatssicherheit, or MfS], aware of the Western intelligence services’ interests in these scientists, kept two lists. The first list is of eleven men whom the SED regarded as security risks because it suspected that the men had “links with secret services, were formerly counter-intelligence officers in the Gestapo, displayed a hostile attitude at work and have interesting connections with persons in foreign capitalist countries.” The MfS would investigate these men [Des weiteren müssen folgende Spezialisten operativ bearbeitet werden].

The second list, the A-list of eighteen scientists, is composed of men who, for security reasons, were to be kept in the GDR. They had worked on important research projects in the USSR, and the Soviets did not want their knowledge to become available to the Americans, British or West Germans. Misspellings complicate the task of establishing to whom the surnames on the list refer, but an additional list, prepared at about the same time entitled “List of German specialists, workers and their families who are being released from work in the USSR and wish to return to their homeland” [Liste der deutschen Spezialisten, Arbeiter und ihrer Familien, die von der Arbeit in der UdSSR entbunden werden und in die Heimat zurückkehren wollen] contained in the same SAPMO-Bundesarchiv file, eases this task, since those on it with the same or similar names are likely the same as those on the A-list. All but two of those on the A-list had certainly worked on atomic projects in the USSR; it is likely that they all had.

The A-list is dominated by the “Riehl Group,” a group...
of fourteen scientists who, in the years just after World War II, had worked on the production of pure uranium at Factory No. 12 at Elektrostal, not far from Moscow. Of the nine remaining people on the A-list, at least seven were employed on atomic research projects conducted at the Hertz and von Ardenne Institutes at Sukhumi on the Black Sea.

Many of those on these two lists were awarded particularly high salaries on their return to the GDR. In July 1955, the Secretariat of the SED’s Central Committee decided to award a salary of DM 12,000 to Nikolaus Riehl and one of DM 8,000 to Heinz Barwich. Other leading atomic scientists, such as Ludwig Ziehl, Hans Born, Henry Ortmann, Walter Herrmann, Justus Mühlenpfordt, Herbert Thieme and Fritz Bernhardt were also awarded large salaries. The highest salary of all—DM 15,000—was awarded to another repatriated atomic scientist, Max Volmer.4 Remarkably, the Central Committee Secretariat decided to award Riehl this salary some six weeks after he had defected to the West. It was either hopelessly inefficient or desperately wanted his return.

The choice of the people mentioned in the first report—whether, after their return to East Germany, to stay or to defect—reflects the country’s growing division. The SED was successful in enlisting the support of some of those on the lists. As the report shows, the communist officials correctly perceived that Manfred von Ardenne had no commitment to communism, the GDR or the USSR. But they saw that he was an egotistical opportunist who could therefore be kept in East Germany. He was both very greedy and horribly vain and thus a perfect collaborator. Of course, von Ardenne drove a hard bargain for remaining in East Germany. He was allowed to set up a private research institute in Dresden, which became the largest private employer in the GDR.5 This makes a mockery of the nickname he later acquired—“the Red Baron.” The institute’s financial security in its early years was guaranteed through an agreement by Walter Ulbricht to allocate to it, every year, a number of state research tasks. The First Secretary thus hoped to keep scientific and technical staff in the East. In agreeing to this arrangement, he responded to the stress laid on the crucial importance of finding proper employment for von Ardenne’s team. Von Ardenne himself became an aristocrat in Ulbricht’s nomenklatura state, the winner of a National Prize 1st Class (in 1958) and other awards, and a member of the Volkskammer [the GDR Parliament].

As suggested in the reports, Ulbricht did indeed apply the personal touch to impress on certain scientists how highly the regime thought of them. He visited von Ardenne the day after he arrived at his new institute. The visit had the desired effect on the vain baron who, thirty years later, wrote in his autobiography: “He seemed to be extraordinarily interested in our plans and stayed past lunch into the afternoon.” A week later, the mayor of Dresden turned up at von Ardenne’s front door and presented him with a gift from Ulbricht—a Soviet SIS limousine. Von Ardenne never had to drive the car himself; a chauffeur came with it. Nor was the First Secretary von Ardenne’s only visitor of consequence. A month later, the Interior Minister, Willi Stoph, made a trip to Dresden, and over the years, much of the GDR’s elite followed in the two men’s wake. Stoph had overall responsibility for the “loyalty measures” [Betreuungsmaßnahmen] taken to provide for the well-being of the returning scientists.6

The SED’s purchase of von Ardenne reflects the problem the Party faced building communism in East Germany. In the absence of strong popular support for the creation of a communist society, the Party had to build it on opportunism within the political elite. Even those bought “for the GDR” were often just as opportunistic. Von Ardenne was only committed to communism insofar as he expected to derive some benefit from it. Of course, he was not only the “specialist” to be bought. Werner Hartmann became a professor and the director of one of the most important factories in East Germany, the VEB Meßelektronik Dresden.7 Honors were piled on Max Volmer to keep him in the GDR. In 1956, only one year after his return to Germany, he was made president of the Academy of Sciences.8

Von Ardenne was so satisfied with the treatment accorded to him by the SED that he proved willing to spy for it at international conferences abroad. The last document is a report sent by von Ardenne to Ulbricht about a possible defense being considered in the United States against attack by long-range ballistic missiles. This report by “our Professor Manfred von Ardenne” was sent by Ulbricht to the CPSU First Secretary Nikita Khrushchev. It is of interest not only because it shows how successful the SED had been in buying von Ardenne’s loyalty, but also because the radar-absorbing shield described in it anticipated modern Stealth technology. The idea foreshadowed current theories regarding a missile defense project.

However, many atomic scientists defected to the West soon after their return to Germany and were interrogated by the intelligence services of Britain, the United States and West Germany. The names of some appear on the two lists. According to a recent history of the CIA’s operations in Germany, in the 1950s these informants identified scientists working on Soviet atomic programs and revealed the locations of atomic installations in the USSR. This intelligence was checked against similar information acquired at the same time from the Soviet high-security cables tapped in the famous Berlin tunnel enterprise, Operation “Gold.”9

The West’s prize catch among the returned atomic scientists was the star of the A-list, a “Hero of Socialist Labor” and winner of the “Stalin Prize 1st Class,” the man described in this report as “the most important person among the remaining scientists,” Dr. Nikolaus Riehl. Since he was well-informed about scientific developments in the USSR, the report demands that he be kept in the GDR.10 However, Riehl defected to the British a few weeks after returning to East Berlin. He arrived back in East Germany
on 4 April 1955; by the beginning of June he was in the hands of the British Intelligence Organization (Germany).\textsuperscript{11} Others on the A-list also fled West such as: Günther Wirths, Karl Zimmer, Alexander Catsch and Karl-Franz Zühlke. Riehl, Wirths, Zimmer and Zühlke were all interrogated by British and American intelligence officers.\textsuperscript{12}

Interestingly, the name of Heinz Barwich appears on both the A-list of scientists with knowledge of value to the West and on the list of security suspects. The fact seems surprising at first, for he was known for his communist views, yet his subsequent actions justify the SED’s uncertainty about him in 1954. A considerable effort was made to enlist him in the service of the Communist state and he was named director of the GDR’s Central Institute for Nuclear Research and even vice-president of the Soviet Bloc’s United Institute for Nuclear Research, based near Moscow. He became such a trusted figure that in 1964 he was allowed to attend a conference on nuclear matters in Geneva. He used this opportunity to defect and settled in West Germany.

\section*{DOCUMENT No. 1}
\textbf{Report on the Specialists Returning from the Soviet Union, 31 December 1954}

After consultation with the responsible administration and State Security representatives, perusal of the available documents and personal discussions with 100 specialists in Sukhumi and Moscow, the following material has been put together:

1. A general professional evaluation of the individual specialists.
2. Their political attitude towards the Soviet Union and the German Democratic Republic.
3. Their links with West Berlin, West Germany and foreign capitalist countries.
4. Operational information which has been obtained on 48 people.
5. The possibilities of tying them to the German Democratic Republic.
6. Specialists intending to go to West Germany.

Currently, there are in:
Sukhumi: 104 families=309 persons
Volga: 26 families=77 persons
Moscow: 5 families=11 persons
Kharkov: 2 families= 5 persons
Voronezh: 1 family=2 persons
Rostov-on-Don: 1 family =1 persons
Total, 139 families=405 persons

\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline

Sub-division according to profession
1 professor of chemistry
19 doctors of physics
6 doctors of chemistry
4 doctors of medicine
22 engineers/designers
9 chemists
2 physicists
57 skilled workers
1 journalist
1 student
17 without a profession

\hline
\end{tabular}

\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline

\textbf{The von Ardenne Collective}

The von Ardenne group forms a closed collective of 15 people. This group will work with him at the institute in Dresden.

The responsible comrades of the Soviet administration said that among the remaining specialists are experts, some of greater scientific importance than von Ardenne.

The following is known about von Ardenne:

Von Ardenne is an engineer and has no further scientific qualification. He is an outstanding specialist.

Our information is that upon his return he intends to undertake research projects which are of great importance to the USSR and the GDR.

Our Friends [the Soviets] do not yet know anything about these [projects]; they still intend to talk to him some time about them.

He was head of an institute in Berlin and had connections with Himmler, Göring and Goebbels.

He paid financial contributions to the NSDAP [National Socialist German Workers’ Party] and carried out military research tasks during the war.

His conduct up to recent times has still displayed an anti-Soviet attitude, though outwardly he presents himself as loyal.

He has a bank account in West Germany into which sums of money are regularly deposited by the Americans in respect of patents and [of] his house.

He is very greedy and makes thorough and inconsiderate use of his co-workers.

One of his characteristics is a need for [personal] admiration.

He has links with West Berlin, West Germany and foreign, capitalist countries.

At the end of the war he intended to work for the Americans, however as the Soviet troops were quicker into Berlin he offered his services to the Soviet government.

A letter [in this regard] to the American Military Government is available.

In our opinion and that of our Friends, it is necessary to bring von Ardenne home with the first transport, so as to make it clear that his importance is fully recognized.

By making use of his greed and his need for admiration, it is possible to keep him in the GDR.

Upon their return, seven people in von Ardenne’s
collective must be subjected to operational processing. The reasons are suspicions of espionage, anti-Soviet views, connections with the Gestapo and anti-democratic opinions. [...] Concerning the other people, nothing of importance is known.

The most important person among the remaining scientists is:

Riehl, Nikolaus - Dr. of Physics
Riehl is an internationally-known scientist, he is a member of many scientific societies, has extensive connections with West Germany and foreign, capitalist countries and has visited almost all European countries.

He is a “Hero of Socialist Labor” and has once won the “Stalin Prize 1st Class” (receiving 200,000 rubles). In the Soviet Union all his wishes were fulfilled.

It is known that the Americans, as well as West Germany, for scientific and political reasons, are very interested in him and will try, by all means, to convince him to leave the GDR.

He is politically inscrutable, extremely cunning and knows how to adapt himself to the prevailing circumstances. He thinks very highly of himself and knows his worth.

In the opinion of our Friends it is imperative to keep him in the GDR. He is well-informed about a number of developments in the USSR. Only by showing him appropriate respect and by finding him appropriate employment can he be kept in the GDR.

Information is available, according to which he intends to leave the German Democratic Republic. [...] The following specialists must be subjected to operational processing:

Barwich, Heinz
Dr. of Physics
Bumm, Helmut
Dr. of Physics
Siewert, Gerhard
Dr. of Chemistry
Ortmann, Henry
Dr. of Chemistry
Herrmann, Walter
Dr. of Physics
Hartmann, Werner
Dr. of Physics
Schütze, Werner
Dr. of Physics
Fröhlich, Heinz
Dr. of Physics
Kirst, Werner
Engineer, Chemistry
Bernhardt, Fritz
Engineer, Physics
Sille, Karl
Engineer, Fine Mechanics

These people have links to secret services, were formerly counter-intelligence officers in the Gestapo, displayed a hostile attitude at work or have interesting connections with persons in foreign, capitalist countries.

No operational material of importance exists concerning the remaining specialists. They did their work satisfactorily. [...] The following people have shown a positive attitude towards developments in the USSR:

Prof. Vollmer
Mühlenfort
Dr. of Physics

No operational material of importance exists concerning the skilled workers and those people who are not doing any work. In general, they have done their work satisfactorily and did not display a negative attitude. 3 skilled workers were members of the SED. [...] Once the specialists had been consulted and the available information examined, a final discussion was held with the management of the Sukhumi Institute and with Comrade Colonel Kuznetsov.

By way of summary, on the basis of the personal impressions formed in the discussions with the specialists, of the available information and [of the] the opinion of our Friends, the following conclusion can be reached:

The majority of the scientists and engineers will only make a decision upon their return to the GDR and according to the criterion of [the availability of] work. Almost all of them intend to obtain a good job. Their employment will be decisive in tying them to the GDR. For this reason it is imperative to arrange an appropriate reception for the specialists.

Our Friends are interested in the following scientists remaining in the GDR, since they worked on important research projects:

Schimor [misspelled: actually Schimohr] Schilling
Barwich Born
Mühlenfort [misspelled: actually Mühlenpfordt] Ziel
[misspelled: actually Ziehl]
Schmidt Lange
Wirs [misspelled: actually Wirths] Riehl
Kirst Thieme
Toppin [misspelled: actually Tobin] Siewert
Katsch [misspelled: actually Catsch] Zimmer
Zühlke Schibilla [perhaps misspelled and actually Przybilla]

Further, our Friends are further of the opinion that those of the specialists’ children who express the wish to complete their study in the USSR should be assigned to the “Deutsche Landsmannschaft.” 14

Furthermore, the Soviet administration explained that there were no contracts with the specialists which placed obligations on the GDR.

The Soviets are again examining whether the
specialists have entitlements deriving from their contracts. Should this be the case, the GDR government will be notified.

A list is available with the names of those individuals who are considered for the first transport.

Of importance are the von Ardenne collective and Prof. Vollmer (1st transport).

The Soviet administration again asks for official confirmation via the GDR embassy that the GDR government is ready to admit the planned 139 families to the GDR. This will also facilitate the organization of the transports.

The private notes of some scientists will be examined by a commission and handed over to the embassy for forwarding. Thus it will be possible to ascertain whether [any] research results have been achieved which are of importance for the GDR. The result of the examination and the documents will be handed over to the embassy.

It is proposed to send the first transport from Sukhumi to Dresden, since in it will be chiefly composed of specialists who will live and work in Dresden. For reasons of competence, the transport from the Volga must be sent to Berlin, since 11 families are to be accommodated in Berlin and 6 families are going to West Berlin.

The remaining 9 families will be distributed among the various cities in the GDR.

The same applies to the Moscow group. 3 people must be accommodated in Berlin, and one person is going to West Berlin.

In accordance with the wishes of the individual specialists, a list was drawn up concerning:
(a) the specialists who will work at the Academy [of Sciences],
(b) the specialists who want to work in industry,
(c) the specialists who want to study or work at the universities and technical high schools,
(d) other persons, as well as those who will pursue no profession,
(e) persons who will go to West Berlin or West Germany.

[Source: DY 30/3732, SAPMO-Bundesarchiv, Berlin-Lichterfelde. Translated by Paul Maddrell.]

---

**DOCUMENT No. 2**

**Fritz Zeiler to SED First Secretary**

**Walter Ulbricht,**

**25 September 1958**

To Comrade Ulbricht [initialled “FZ”]

Technical Department

Berlin, 25 March 1955-Ze/Bö

**Subject: Return of the German Specialists from the Soviet Union**

1. Collective of Mr. von Ardenne

Comrades Dr. Wittbrodt and Zeiler greeted each and every member of the collective, led by Mr. von Ardenne. Owing to the smooth unfolding of events and the excellent service in the Mitropa restaurant, von Ardenne said that they were immensely impressed and still could not believe that in a few hours they would be in their future home, Dresden.

After a large lunch we accompanied the transport by the train to Dresden.

During the journey to Dresden we had the opportunity, in a four-hour conversation with von Ardenne, to exchange a number of thoughts, the essence of which I pass on [to you] as follows:

Our overall impression is that von Ardenne wants to proceed at once, with great energy and zest, to implement a number of excellent new inventions or developments in his field.

During the journey I had the opportunity, owing to the long absence of Dr. Wittbrodt in another compartment, to speak privately with Mr. von Ardenne. I informed him that the Deputy Prime Minister, Cde. Walter Ulbricht, had expressed the wish, if it were possible, to speak personally with him on Saturday.

This news filled von Ardenne with enthusiasm. He asked me to tell the Deputy Prime Minister that, naturally, he would be at his disposal at any time and in particular would like [me] to express his pleasure that he saw in this offer the extraordinary generosity and interest of a member of the government, which, as he said, would not have been possible at all in earlier times (he meant before 1945).

Von Ardenne continued that he would like to express the modest wish, that, if it were possible, he could be allowed to set out before Mr. Ulbricht his plan of action and thoughts, and in addition, that he could with all his strength satisfy at once all the wishes and demands that the government might have. In this regard, von Ardenne informed me that he and his collective could undertake the manufacture of all the necessary prerequisites for the operation of an atomic pile, but not the construction itself.

Furthermore, he stressed that another, smaller collective led by (Dr. of Physics) Werner Hartmann would arrive, which would be very important in co-ordinating the work of the Ardenne collective. Later in the conversation, which continued in the presence of Comrade Dr. Wittbrodt, I had the impression that Dr. Wittbrodt and probably, through him, a number of people at the Academy, displayed extraordinary interest in the work of Mr. von Ardenne. I would like to back up this conjecture of mine by quoting a remark Dr. Wittbrodt made before the arrival of the collective in Frankfurt-an-der-Oder. He said that he could not entirely understand why he had to greet the collective as the representative of the Academy, as Comrade Ziller told him some time before that the Academy would have no connections at all with the Ardenne
collective and, moreover, did not need to concern itself with it.

Although this is only conjecture on my part, I must mention all the same that even the form of the conversation which Dr. Wittbrodt conducted in my presence during the journey from Frankfurt to Dresden led me to this view, since Dr. Wittbrodt showed particular interest, whenever possible, in learning much about the things which von Ardenne was thinking about building for us.

It should be mentioned, though, that von Ardenne was very careful, and when I was alone with him also said that he would not discuss his future work at all until he had talked about it with Cde. Ulbricht and heard what he had to recommend.

Drawing conclusions from the conversation we had, I would like to make the following remarks about the discussion:

(a) Remarks were made about the situation in the GDR with regard to the influence of the West and, in particular, its efforts to lure away well-qualified scientists. In this regard, von Ardenne, and in particular his wife, said that she was very afraid that when her husband went alone in the streets there was a danger that he might be kidnapped and taken by force to the West.

In this regard, of course, I supplied some general explanations, but considered further advice from an authorized body to be called for.

(b) [We discussed] the relation of his activity to that of particular scientific institutions in the GDR and in the West.

(c) [There were] questions concerning his personal relationship with our government bodies and particular branches of industry, which are connected with the production of devices developed by him.

It should also be mentioned that von Ardenne told me that there were a number of specialists in the Soviet Union who had let it be known that they wanted to go West, but he is utterly convinced that, if they are given employment in accord with their wishes and qualifications they will remain here [in the GDR]; he is prepared, at any time, to use his own influence in our support.

In this connection I had the impression that von Ardenne’s wife has very great influence over the wives of particular specialists.

On our arrival in Dresden we drove to the Hotel Astoria where, among other things, the Chairman of the District Council, Comrade Jahn, was present. He congratulated each of the specialists on their return to their homeland and expressed the hope that they would quickly settle in Dresden. He himself would do everything possible in his.

1. Some issues in connection with Prof. Dr. Max Vollmer

As I was informed by Comrade Hager and some of his colleagues, Prof. Vollmer is the most famous authority in the field of physical chemistry in Germany.

Prof. Vollmer, Prof. Herz and Prof. von Laue (formerly head of the Kaiser-Wilhelm-Institute in West Berlin) are known as the Big Three scientists in this field in all of Germany.

Prof. Vollmer, who until 1945 was a full professor and director of the Institute for Physical Chemistry at the TH [Technical University] in Berlin, in a conversation with Comrade Professor Rompe and in the presence of Comrade Reetz of our Department for Academic Life, asked for advice in the following matter:

Prof. von Laue, from West Berlin, whom I mentioned above, probably at the direction of the Americans at the Technical University in West Berlin, had a big celebration arranged at the TH to greet Prof. Vollmer, at which Prof. Vollmer is to be awarded an honorary doctorate from the Technical High School in West Berlin.

Furthermore, his former institute and some rooms have been named after him.

Prof. Rompe suggested to Prof. Vollmer to do nothing for the time being and not to accept the invitation to [go to] West Berlin himself, but, if Prof. von Laue attends a further discussion with members of the Academy in the Democratic [East] Sector [of Berlin], to speak with him then.

For all the reasons given, Comrade Hager took the view that, if at all possible, Comrade Ulbricht should pay a personal visit to Prof. Vollmer in Potsdam. At the same time, Prof. Herz should likewise be asked to visit Prof. Vollmer.

Moreover, I was able to discover that Prof. Vollmer, after consulting with Prof. Brucksch about his kidneys, wants to apply himself to a large research project concerned with the defense against atomic emissions.

In my opinion, the visit suggested by Comrade Hager would undoubtedly be of great significance, since, as the evidence shows, Prof. Vollmer is an outstanding authority and personally refuses to take up work in the West.

2. Prof. Max Vollmer (Dr. in Chemistry), born 3 May 1885 in Hilden.

1910-1914: Assistant at Institute for Physical Chemistry of Leipzig University
1914-1918: Soldier
1918-1920: Chemist at the Auer Company
1920-1922: Full Professor at Hamburg University
1922-1945: Professor and Director of the Institute for Physical Chemistry at the Technical University, Berlin
1945: USSR

1. von Ardenne, Manfred, born 20 January 1907 in Hamburg.

1923: High School
1923-1925: Faculty of Mathematics of Berlin University
1943: Awarded title “Private Lecturer” at Berlin University. He has published approx. 250 scientific treatises in German journals and 15 books about high frequency, superheterodyne reception15, micro-
phones\textsuperscript{16} and television.
1925-1942: Head of his own scientific research institute in Berlin
1942-1945: Head of the scientific research institute of the Ministry for Post and Telecommunications.

F. Zeiler

[Source: DY 30/3732, SAPMO-Bundesarchiv, Berlin-Lichterfelde. Translated by Paul Maddrell.]

\section*{DOCUMENT No. 3}
SED First Secretary Walter Ulbricht to CPSU
First Secretary Nikita S. Khrushchev,
25 September 1958

25 September 1958

To the First Secretary of the CC of the CPSU
Comrade N. S. Khrushchev

Dear Comrade Nikita Sergeyevich!

On the occasion of the international congress on electron microscopy in West Berlin, our Professor Manfred von Ardenne spoke with the former head of radar of the West German enterprise Telefunken, as well as with American experts on electronics. Their conversations touched on defense against long-range ballistic rockets. Professor von Ardenne is of the view that it would be necessary to make a protective surface for the rocket hull, which switches off the radar detection.

In the enclosure I pass on to you the ideas of Professor von Ardenne.

With friendly greetings,

W. Ulbricht.

Enclosure

Highly confidential!

Subject: Defense against long-range ballistic rockets with nuclear payloads

At an international scientific congress, conversations took place with leading scientists from Washington in the field of radar technology and electronics. In these conversations the Americans talked very openly about the above-mentioned topic. It transpires that in leading scientific-technical circles in the USA hold the view that, in approximately 5 to 8 years, a defense against long-range ballistic rockets will be possible, using counter-rockets charged with atomic explosive. The idea is that both the incoming ballistic rocket and its flight path are detected in good time by “long-range” radar sets. Then, in fractions of a second, electronic calculating machines calculate all the quantities which are necessary for the unerring control of the defensive rocket. That is as far as the American information goes, which in view of the current state of technology reveals very natural development trends.

The following technical conclusion, drawn by us from these conversations, seems important, since taking it promptly into account could be crucial for future military potential. This technical conclusion is [that] we must expect the opposite side to introduce the following developments. That is to say, [we must] make our own study of these questions, and we should begin the following developments at once:

Structuring long-range ballistic rockets in such a way that during their flight outside the Earth’s atmosphere they can no longer be detected by “long-range” radar sets. This could be achieved if, from the time the rocket broke out of the atmosphere until it re-entered it—therefore during its flight in a vacuum—a screen, equipped with a surface which absorbed the radar waves, were automatically to appear and open up on the rocket’s head. Such surfaces are in fact already known. However, owing to their structure, [the screen] would be destroyed by air friction as the rocket broke out of the atmosphere. Hence, the suggestion that the screen first be opened out after breaking out of the atmosphere. The method described would make a sufficiently precise analysis of the flight path of an incoming rocket impossible.

15 September 1958

[Source: DY 30/3733, SAPMO-Bundesarchiv, Berlin-Lichterfelde. Translated by Paul Maddrell.]

\begin{center}
Dr. Paul Maddrell is a Lecturer in the History of International Relations at the University of Salford, Manchester (U.K.).
\end{center}

\textsuperscript{1} These reports are today to be found in the archive of the office of Walter Ulbricht, First Secretary of the GDR’s Socialist Unity Party (\textit{Sozialistische Einheitspartei Deutschlands}, or SED) and Deputy Prime Minister, at the Stiftung Archiv der Parteien und Massenorganisationen der DDR im Bundesarchiv [SAPMO-Bundesarchiv] in
Berlin.

2 “Über die zurückkehrenden SU-Spezialisten” [concerning the returning SU-specialists]—the GDR authorities adopted the Soviet term, “specialists,” for the returning scientists, engineers and technicians.

3 The Gehlen Organization became West Germany’s Federal Intelligence Service (Bundesnachrichtendienst) in 1956.

4 Minutes of the meeting of the Secretariat of the SED Central Committee on 13 July 1955, DY 30/IV/2/3/479, SAPMO-Bundesarchiv, Berlin-Lichterfelde.


7 “VEB” stands for “Volkseigener Betrieb” (factory owned by the people) and “RFT” for “Rundfunk-und-Fernmeldewesen” (radio and telecommunications technology), while “Meßelektronik” means “measurement electronics”.


9 These cables were tapped from May 1955 until April 1956 and the information gathered for this cross-checking was “the tunnel’s main contribution to scientific-technical information.” However, the contribution of the human sources was clearly as important as that of the tunnel. For more information see David E. Murphy, Sergei A.


10 In the German document: “Nach Meinung der Freunde ist es unbedingt notwendig, ihn in der DDR zu halten. Er ist über einige Entwicklungsthemen in der UdSSR gut informiert.”

11 STIB/P/I/843 dated 2 June 1955, DEFE 41/142, Public Record Office (PRO), London. In this telegram David Evans, the Director of the BIO(G)’s Scientific and Technical Intelligence Branch informed the Ministry of Defense in London that, “Dr. Nikolaus Riehl ex 1037 now in West under British auspices”. “1037(P) Moscow” had been the German atomic scientists’ postal address in the Soviet Union.

12 STIB Interview Reports Nos. 234 & 261 on Dr. Nikolaus Riehl, DEFE 41/104 & DEFE 41/106; No. 232 on Dr. Günther Wirths, DEFE 41/104; No. 253 on Dr. Karl-Franz Zühlke, DEFE 41/106; No. 221 on Dr. Karl Zimmer, DEFE 21/43, PRO.

13 Fröhlich went to the West and was interrogated by British Intelligence. See STIB Interview Report No. 300 on Dr. Heinz Fröhlich, DEFE 41/107, PRO.

14 The “Deutsche Landsmannschaft” was an association of university students from the Eastern areas of the former German Reich.

15 This is a form of radio reception.

16 This is a mistake. Von Ardenne was a pioneer of electron microscopy, not of microphony.
Letters to the Editor

I received today the latest issue of the Bulletin, and found it as fascinating as always.

I noted the exchange between Raymond Garthoff and T. Naftali and A. Fursenko. Perhaps I can shed a little light on a few of the technical issues raised in the article. I am currently working with a team of authors on a history of the Scud missile, and my research has touched on some of the issues raised in the recent Bulletin.

The reason why Khrushchev rejected the deployment of the Scud brigade to Cuba was more likely a technical decision than a policy decision. A Scud brigade could not be deployed by air in September 1962 whether Khrushchev wished it or not. The 8U218 launcher vehicle was simply too large and heavy for any existing Soviet cargo aircraft until the advent of the Antonov An-22 which did not enter service until later in the decade. Khrushchev probably rejected the deployment after having been told of this problem. The Cuban experience led the Soviet Army to push for the development of a light weight, air transportable version of the Scud launcher in 1963 based on this experience (the 9K73 system). Secondly, the R-11M missile is called SS-1b Scud A under the US/NATO intelligence nomenclature system, not the Scud B as mentioned in the Garthoff notes. This is worth noting as the R-11M had a range of only 150 km, vs. 300 km for the Scud B (Russian: R-17) and is a fundamentally different system.

Related to this, Raymond Garthoff correctly pointed out the translation problems relating to the S-75 missile system from the previous article. However, the implications of this issue have not been adequately drawn out in either article. The S-75 is the Soviet designation for the SA-2 Guideline air defense missile system of the type deployed on Cuba during the crisis. In the early 1960s, the Soviets were conducting tests on this system to use it in a secondary role for the delivery of tactical nuclear warheads, much as the US Army was doing with the Nike Hercules missile. Given the missile’s small conventional warhead and mediocre accuracy in the surface-to-surface role, it made no sense to use it in such a fashion with a conventional warhead. The implication that can be drawn from this document is that the Soviet Ministry of Defense was considering a secondary use of the S-75 batteries already in Cuba as a means to deliver tactical nuclear warheads.

A clearer explanation should be made about the Russian word for division. The problem stems from the fact that there are actually two Russian words involved, diviziya and divizion. These two words are an endless source of confusion when dealing with military units in Russian, and the problem crops up in other Slavic languages as well, including Polish. The Russian word diviziya means a division or other large unit, divizion means a battalion or other small unit. I am sure that Raymond Garthoff understands this distinction, but his explanation was not very clear, especially to readers who may not be familiar with Russian.

On some other missile issues: the S-2 Sopka was known by the US/NATO nomenclature SSC-2b Samlet and was a Navy coastal defense version of the Mikoyan KS-1 Kometa (AS-1 Kennel) air-launched anti-ship missile. The FKR-1 Meteor was known by the US/NATO nomenclature SSC-2a Salish, and was a Soviet Air Force surface-to-surface version of the same Mikoyan missile. Although both systems used a related missile, the FKR-1 missile used inertial guidance and was armed exclusively with nuclear warheads, while the S-2 missile used active radar guidance and was usually armed with a large shaped-charge high explosive warhead. The two systems also differed in their launchers and support equipment, the S-2 Sopka using a four-wheel semi-trailer, and the FKR-1 Meteor using a longer semi-fixed ramp.

These details are worth noting as there has been continuing confusion over these missiles in accounts of the crisis. This confusion is not confined to historians of the crisis. It would appear that US intelligence was unaware of the FKR-1 Meteor configuration of this missile at the time of the missile crisis, and considered all of these missiles deployed in Cuba to be the conventionally armed anti-ship version. As a result, there was apparently no attempt to have them removed along with the other Soviet nuclear-capable missiles. Indeed, there is some evidence that the nuclear-capable FKR-1 Meteor missiles remained in Cuba after the crisis. I am not suggesting that their warheads remained there. But considering that more than half of the nuclear warheads deployed to Cuba were intended for this system, it is surprising that this weapon has received so little attention in recent accounts of the missile crisis. I think that some of this lack of attention has been due to this confusion over the nature and role of the different types of cruise missiles deployed on Cuba.

Sincerely,

Steven Zaloga
Stamford, CT
Response by Raymond Garthoff

I welcome Steven Zaloga’s commentary on my article, in particular his correction in identifying the R-11M as the Scud-1b (or Scud A) rather than the Scud-1c (Scud B). The history on which he is working will be most welcome, in particular inasmuch as Western publications almost always have used only NATO designations without relating them to the designations used in Soviet archival documents.

The suggestions that Krushchev’s decision not to send such missiles to Cuba was probably owing to the technical consideration that the system could not have been sent by air is, I believe, not supported. Indeed, as the Memorandum of 6 September points out, neither could the Luna system—yet it was sent to Cuba, by ship. The R-11M could equally well have been sent by ship, as were the SS-4 and SS-5 missiles and all the warheads.

Mr. Zaloga’s suggestion that the discussion of possible employment of the S-75 (SA-2) surface-to-air missile system as a surface-to-surface tactical delivery system in that same Memorandum implied that the Ministry of Defense was “considering” its possible use as a means of tactical nuclear weapons delivery is, I believe, well taken. Both by technical qualities, which he notes, and by virtue of its inclusion in a memorandum discussing possible tactical nuclear reinforcement, it would seem that the Ministry was drawing attention to an additional possible tactical nuclear delivery capability. It was not, however, followed up and no tactical nuclear warheads for converted S-75 missile delivery were sent to Cuba.

Mr. Zaloga reiterates the distinction between diviziya (division) and divizion which I had noted. I am puzzled why he did not find my statement of the distinction sufficiently clear. I noted that divizion was not “division,” but in artillery and missile elements referred to a battalion sized unit. I even illustrated the point by noting “The air defense missile units in Cuba comprised two divisions (divizi), with 24 subordinate battalions (diviziony).” I thought I had made the distinction quite clear.

Mr. Zaloga spells out very well the differences between the naval coastal cruise missile system Sopka (SSC-2b Samlet) and the Air Force surface-to-surface tactical ground support FKR-1 (SSC-2a Salish). He further notes the confusion of some commentaries on the Cuban missile crisis, and apparently of US intelligence analysts at the time, in not recognizing the presence of the nuclear-capable FKR-1 cruise missile system in Cuba. He is quite right. I did not go into this subject in my brief article accompanying the translated archival documents, but perhaps I should at least have made reference to an extensive discussion of the matter in my recent article on “US Intelligence in the Cuban Missile Crisis,” in Intelligence and National Security (Vol. 13, No. 3, Autumn 1998), in which (pp. 29, 41 and 51) I explained that US intelligence analysts at the time had detected 100-115 crated cruise missiles in Cuba, but had failed to realize that only 32 were for the 4 Sopka naval coastal defense barriers (with 8 launchers, four missiles per launcher), and that the other 80—with nuclear warheads—were loading of five each for 16 FKR cruise missiles launchers in 2 ground support air force regiments. It is only since 1994 that we have had first the testimony of former Soviet officers and the archival documentation establishing the presence of the FKR with tactical nuclear warheads for that system.

Indeed, as I noted in that article, if US intelligence had in 1962 correctly identified the presence of the two different cruise missile systems, and the presence of about 100 tactical nuclear weapons in Cuba (80 warheads for the FKR cruise missiles, 12 for Luna rockets, 6 IL-28 bombs, and possibly 4-6 naval mines), “uncertainties over whether they all had later been removed would have seriously plagued the settlement of the crisis” (p. 29, and see 53-53). This may be one time when less that perfect intelligence was a boon. In any case, clarifying these matters now is surely important to a correct historical evaluation of the whole missile crisis.

Raymond L. Garthoff
Washington, DC
“Goodbye, Comrade”—Images from the Revolutions of ‘89

During 1999, to mark the tenth anniversary of the revolution that toppled communist regimes throughout Central and Eastern Europe, the Cold War International History Project, together with the National Security Archive and the Gelman Library at George Washington University, supported an exhibition of political posters and other memorabilia of those dramatic events collected during the visits to Easter Europe and the former Soviet Union by former CWIHP Director James G. Hershberg, now an associate professor of history and international affairs at GWU. Taking its title from a Romanian poster depicting a Ceausescu-like figure skulking off into the distance carrying a hurriedly-packed suitcase, the exhibition was called “‘Goodbye, Comrade’—Images from the Revolutions of ‘89,” and curated by the Special Collections Branch of the Gelman Library. To kick the exhibition off, the full-day symposium was held at Gelman at which scholars and participants presented findings and memories of the anti-communist uprisings. The 50 posters displayed ranged from official Soviet images of hailing glasnost and perestroika, to nationalistic exhortations from Georgia and the Baltic former USSR republics, to anti-communist and dissident signs from all of the East-Central European countries as they made their escape from the Soviet empire. In their own way, they vividly illustrate the process of change and the power of images in the sweeping transformations that changed the world and ended the Cold War. Also on display were various items Hershberg collected, such as chunks of the Berlin Wall and bullet casings from the Romanian revolution, sample publications taking advantage of the new sources opened as a result of the revolutions, and examples of the Soviet underground rock n’ roll movement, including samizdat fanzines, donated by Gelman’s Mark Yoffe. Two catalogues were also printed—one, published by Gelman, contains glossy images of selected posters, while the other contains Hershberg’s detailed commentaries; a few copies remain available at the National Security Archive. After the exhibition concluded at Gelman in December 1999, it was the shown in the headquarters of the Central Intelligence Agency for several months in 2000. The materials were donated to Gelman and are available for display at other institutions. For further information, contact Hershberg at jhershb@gwu.edu